

S Y S T E M

OF

F R E N C H

ACCIDENCE AND SYNTAX,

INTENDED AS AN

Illustration, Correction, *and* Improvement,

OF THE

PRINCIPLES laid down by CHAMBAUD,

ON THOSE SUBJECTS,

IN HIS GRAMMAR.

By the Rev. Mr. HOLDER, of BARBADOES.

THIRD EDITION.

With NOTES by G. SATIS.

L O N D O N :

Printed for C. DILLY, in the Poultry. 1791.

Price FOUR SHILLINGS. bound.

Educ T 21517.91.10

✓

HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY
GIFT OF THE
CONGREGATIONAL LIBRARY OF BOSTON

OCT 6 1938


G E N E R A L

P R E F A C E.

SOME years have elapsed since I presumed to offer to the Public an Improvement of *Chambaud's* French Syntax:—I have now to acknowledge with gratitude their favourable reception of that Work.—Having lately been informed that it would prove more useful, by having an *Accidence* prefixed to it, accommodated to the alterations therein suggested, I have been induced to undertake a Compilation from the same Author, taking in a wider compass, as it comprehends those Rudiments of the Language, which learners must first acquire, before the Treatise upon Syntax can be of any use to them.—I have made as few alterations as possible;

IV GENERAL PREFACE.

having only aimed at greater perspicuity and brevity, and a happier arrangement, than, I conceive, is to be found in his original Work.—If I have been successful in these designs, my end is answered, and my labours are rewarded.



Barbadoes,

October, 1789.

P R E-

P R E F A C E

TO THE

FORMER EDITION

OF

Mr. *HOLDER*'s SYNTAX.

SOME apology may be necessary for undertaking to correct and new-model a work so long established in the esteem of the public, as CHAMBAUD's Grammar: I shall simply relate the motives which induced me to attempt it, and leave every one to judge of them as he thinks proper.

The Syntax of the Grammar published by CHAMBAUD can by no means be defended as entirely free from imperfections. Though he has enriched it with many excellent and useful rules, he has not been happy in the formation, division, and arrangement of them: his reasoning, too, I conceive to be often defective, and sometimes erroneous; hence many things, of importance to

the illustration of the subject, require to be supplied, and some to be corrected. These considerations have induced me to endeavour to form a new Treatise upon French Syntax, from his materials, arranged and modelled after my own plan, and augmented by some select observations from *Restaut*, *Buffier*, and *Wailly*; and by more remarks of my own, which have been suggested by a careful perusal of many of the best French authors, and by a particular attention which I have for some time paid to the study of Grammar in general, and of French Grammar in particular. If I have unwarily given my own feeble judgment so great a latitude as that it should have led me into errors, I profess myself open to conviction, and patient under correction; and shall think myself happy in having excited the attention of more skilful persons, on subjects which, I think, require to be considered; and in having this, my first essay to serve the literary world, amended and improved by their well-directed criticism. It will not be improper to point out an alteration which I have made in CHAMBAUD's System:—From the similitude between the Nominative and Accusative Cases of Nouns in the French language (as well as in other modern languages), which, admitting of no change of termination, must have those cases, which are not necessarily preceded by Prepositions, entirely alike, he has considered French Nouns as having no Accusative. The Pronouns Personal he could not so easily deprive of their Accusative; he has therefore been obliged sometimes to describe Verbs as governing the Accusative of Pronouns,

Pronouns, in contradistinction to Nouns, and sometimes to make them govern the Nominative Case, contrary to the usage of all other languages, and to the precepts of the best Grammarians of his own language; and thus has created a strange perplexity, where there was no necessity for it; which is by no means diminished, by his calling the cases, generally known by the names of the *Nominative, Genitive, Dative, and Accusative*, by the new appellations of *first, second, third, and fourth States*. To remedy these inconveniences, I have restored the Accusative Case to the Nouns, the ancient names of the cases to all the declinable parts of Speech, and the accustomed regimen to the Verbs, as being more familiar than the innovations of our Grammarians, and of course better adapted to the purposes of instruction. I shall avoid mentioning any farther alterations which I have attempted, referring the reader to a comparison, which he may himself easily make, of the works in question; and appealing to such a comparison, and to his candour, for the justification of them.

CONTENTS.

	Page
<i>Of the Parts of Speech</i>	1
<i>Of the Noun</i>	ibid.
<i>Of the Number of Nouns</i>	2
<i>Formation of the Plural of Nouns</i>	2 and 3
<i>Of Nouns and Adjectives having no Plural in use</i>	4
<i>Nouns having only the Plural in use</i>	5
<i>Of the Gender of Nouns</i>	6
<i>Cases of Nouns</i>	11
<i>Of the Article</i>	12
<i>Examples of all the ways of considering the Noun</i>	ibid.
<i>Of Adjectives</i>	14
<i>Comparison of Adjectives and Adverbs</i>	16
<i>Of Pronouns</i>	18
<i>Of Numbers</i>	22
<i>Of Verbs</i>	27
<i>The auxiliary Verb avoir</i>	29
<i>The substantive Verb être</i>	32
<i>First Conjugation, of Verbs in er</i>	34
<i>Second Conjugation, of Verbs in ir</i>	36
<i>Third Conjugation, of Verbs in tir</i>	38
<i>Fourth Conjugation, of Verbs in enir</i>	39
<i>Fifth Conjugation, of Verbs in evoir</i>	41
<i>Sixth Conjugation, of Verbs in aire</i>	44
<i>Seventh Conjugation, of Verbs in aindre, eindre, and oindre</i>	46
<i>Eighth Conjugation, of Verbs in ôître</i>	49
<i>Ninth Conjugation, of Verbs in uire</i>	51
<i>Tenth Conjugation, of Verbs in endre and ondre</i>	53
<i>The reflected Verb se bleſſer</i>	56
<i>Se lever</i>	58
<i>Verbs neuter, which form their compound tenſes from être</i>	61
<i>Irregular Verbs, aller, puer, envoyer</i>	ibid.
<i>Aller</i>	

C O N T E N T S.

12

Page

Aller	-	-	-	-	-	62
S'en aller	-	-	-	-	-	64
Acquérir, bouillir	-	-	-	-	-	67
Courir, cueillir, fuir, and s'enfuir	-	-	-	-	-	68
Hair, mourir, ouvrir	-	-	-	-	-	69
Saillir, assaillir, tressaillir, and revêtir	-	-	-	-	-	70
S'asseoir, rasseoir, surseoir, and seoir	-	-	-	-	-	71
Pouvoir and savoir	-	-	-	-	-	72
Voir, vouloir, and valoir	-	-	-	-	-	73
Mouvoir and plaire	-	-	-	-	-	74
Traire, boire, and croire	-	-	-	-	-	75
Naître, dire, and lire	-	-	-	-	-	76
Rire, écrire, and vivre	-	-	-	-	-	77
Suivre, prendre, and rompre	-	-	-	-	-	78
Battre, mettre, and conclure	-	-	-	-	-	79
Convaincre, coudre, and moudre	-	-	-	-	-	80
Résoudre, clorre, déclorre, enclorre, &c.	-	-	-	-	-	81
Impersonal Verbs	-	-	-	-	-	82
Adverbs	-	-	-	-	-	83
Prepositions	-	-	-	-	-	92
Conjunctions	-	-	-	-	-	95
Particles discursive	-	-	-	-	-	98
Interjections	-	-	-	-	-	99
Orthography	-	-	-	-	-	100
Elision	-	-	-	-	-	ibid.
Hyphen	-	-	-	-	-	101
Marks used in writing French	-	-	-	-	-	102
Accent	-	-	-	-	-	103
Capitals and Stops	-	-	-	-	-	106
Parenthesis, Index, Obelisk, Asterism, Quotation	-	-	-	-	-	107
Section, Paragraph, Caret, Abbreviations	-	-	-	-	-	108
Syntax of Nouns	-	-	-	-	-	109
Of the Article	-	-	-	-	-	113
Prepositions requiring the Article before the Noun	-	-	-	-	-	117
Prepositions which sometimes require, and sometimes do not require, the Article	-	-	-	-	-	118
De used to limit the sense of Nouns	-	-	-	-	-	120
Sorte, espèce, genre, &c. require the preposition de	-	-	-	-	-	124
Words of quantity requiring the preposition de	-	-	-	-	-	125
Bien used for beaucoup	-	-	-	-	-	126
Nouns used without either Article or Preposition	-	-	-	-	-	127
Adjectives	-	-	-	-	-	131
Adjectives that precede, and Adjectives that follow, the Noun	-	-	-	-	-	132

Adjectives

C O N T E N T S.

	Page
<i>Adjectives, by changing their construction, change their signification</i>	134
<i>Adjectives requiring the Preposition de before the Noun</i>	136
<i>Nouns of Measure</i>	137
<i>Adjectives requiring à before the Noun following</i>	ibid.
<i>Comparison of Adjectives</i>	140
<i>Pronouns</i>	146
<i>Construction of Conjunctive Pronouns</i>	147
<i>Disjunctive Pronouns</i>	149
<i>Construction of Pronouns governed by the Verb</i>	153
<i>Analysis of voici and voilà</i>	ibid.
<i>Construction of ne, and pas or point</i>	158
<i>Construction of Pronouns with the Imperative, with and without a Negation</i>	160
<i>Je, tu, nous, vous, repeated before each verb</i>	161
<i>The several ways of asking questions</i>	163
<i>Observations upon the Construction of Pronouns Personal of the Third Person</i>	165
<i>Use and Construction of the indeterminate Pronoun on</i>	168
<i>Of foi</i>	171
<i>Of même</i>	172
<i>Of the Pronouns le, en, y</i>	175
<i>Critical Observations upon en and y</i>	177
<i>Le declinable when it relates to a Substantive</i>	180
<i>Of the Use and Construction of Pronominal Adjectives</i>	182
<i>Of the Pronouns relative qui, lequel, &c.</i>	188
<i>Of dont</i>	191
<i>Of où</i>	192
<i>Of quoi</i>	198
<i>Qu'est-ce qui and Qu'est-ce que</i>	202
<i>Use and Construction of the Pronouns demonstrative, ce, celui, ceci, cela, &c.</i>	204
<i>Of the Pronouns indeterminate, quelqu'un, chacun, quiconque, personne, nul, &c.</i>	212
<i>Pas un, aucun, ni l'un ni l'autre, l'un & l'autre</i>	218
<i>Tout</i>	219
<i>Autrui, quelconque</i>	225
<i>Quelque</i>	226
<i>Qui que ce soit</i>	229
<i>Quoi que ce soit</i>	230
<i>Tel</i>	231
<i>Rien</i>	232
<i>Nouns of Number</i>	234
<i>Of Verbs</i>	245
	<i>Use</i>

C O N T E N T S.

xi

	Page
<i>Use of the Tenses of the Indicative</i>	249
<i>Critical Remarks on the Past Tenses of the simple form</i>	253
<i>Use of the Tenses of the Subjunctive</i>	258
<i>Of the Indicative Mood</i>	261
<i>List of Conjunctions governing the Indicative</i>	262
<i>Use of the Subjunctive Mood—Verbs governing the Subjunctive Mood</i>	263
<i>Impersonal Verbs governing the Subjunctive</i>	268
<i>List of Conjunctions governing the Subjunctive</i>	269
<i>Of the Government of Verbs</i>	270
<i>Verbs which govern the Infinitive with de</i>	272
<i>Verbs which require de before the Noun or Infinitive</i>	273
<i>Adjectives construed with être, requiring de before the Infinitive</i>	275
<i>Nouns construed with avoir, governing the Infinitive with de</i>	276
<i>List of Nouns requiring de before the next Infinitive</i>	277
<i>Terms of comparison requiring que de before the Infinitive</i>	279
<i>Verbs governing the Infinitive with à</i>	ibid.
<i>Adjectives construed with être, requiring à before the next Infinitive</i>	281
<i>Verbs sometimes taking à, and sometimes de, before the next Infinitive</i>	283
<i>Verbs which do not require a Preposition before the next Infinitive</i>	284
<i>Pour before the Infinitive</i>	285
<i>De, à, and pour, compared with English Prepositions</i>	286
<i>Particulars relating to the regimen of certain Verbs</i>	289
<i>Of C'est personal</i>	292
<i>Conjunctions governing the Infinitive</i>	294
<i>Remarks on the Infinitive</i>	ibid.
<i>Of the Gerund and Participle</i>	296
<i>The Participle Past</i>	299
<i>C'est and il est</i>	301
<i>Il est</i>	304
<i>Il y a</i>	305
<i>Il fait</i>	307
<i>Il faut</i>	308
<i>Of Negatives</i>	310
<i>Words requiring ne, but without pas or point, before the Verb</i>	311
<i>Particular cases where ne is used, without pas or point</i>	313
<i>Of the Formation of Adverbs</i>	317
	Of

	Page
<i>Of the Position of Adverbs</i>	319
<i>Of the Application of Adverbs as Substantives</i>	321
<i>Of Prepositions—of à</i>	322
De	326
Avant	331
Après	332
Devant	333
Derrière	334
Chez and contre	335
Dans and en	336
Depuis	340
Jusque or jusques	341
Hors, hormis, excepté, à la réserve	343
Loin, malgré, en dépit, par	344
Pour	346
Près	348
Auprès	350
Proche, vis-à-vis, à l'opposite, à côté (de), sans	351
Selon, suivant, sur	352
Au-dessus, au-dessous	354
Vers, envers, à l'égard	356
Au lieu, à rebours, au rebours, à travers, au travers	357
<i>Miscellaneous Observations concerning the French Prepositions</i>	358
<i>Observations on the manner of rendering certain English Prepositions and Particles</i>	360
<i>Of Conjunctions—of que</i>	362
Quand and lorsque	369
D'où vient que, pourtant, cependant, toutefois	370
Donc, c'est pourquoi	371
Encore	371
Au moins, du moins, pour le moins	372
Either and or rendered by soit	ibid.
Soit de, soit que, ou bien, ou, sinon, après	373
<i>Observations upon the Construction, Use, and Signification of certain Words</i>	374
Amitié, amours, an, année	ibid.
Accoutumer, agir, aller, venir	376
Il y va, apparôître, and paroître	377
Avoir, avoir beau	378
N'avoir garde, avoir affaire de, au reste, du reste, savoir, and connoître	379
Devoir, écouter, entendre	380
Emplir, remplir, enfermer, renfermer, enfer	381
Entendre,	

	Page
Entendre, espérer, éveiller, <i>and</i> réveiller	382
Faire	383
Faire grâce, fleurir	384
Se fier, fournir, gens	385
Bonne grâce	386
Jouer	387
Jour <i>and</i> journée, laisser	388
Livres <i>and</i> francs	389
Un coup de main	390
Marcher <i>and</i> se promener	391
Marier, épouser, se marier, mener, <i>and</i> porter	392
Mourir, neuf <i>and</i> nouveau, parens	393
Personne	394
Paques, se passer de quelque chose, penser, <i>and</i> songer	396
Plus, davantage, encore, plaire	397
Peinture, portrait, <i>and</i> tableau	398
Prendre, prendre garde, se donner de garde, n'avoir garde de	399
Rompre, briser, casser, seulement, suppléer	400
Traiter mal, valoir, voilà, <i>and</i> voici	401
Il y a— <i>Names of some Parts of the Bodies of some Animals</i>	402
<i>The Sounds of Beasts and Birds</i>	403
<i>List of Verbs attended by certain Nouns without the Article</i>	404
<i>Idiomatical Transposition of the Negation in French</i>	414

The following is a list of the names of the persons who have been appointed to the various positions in the various departments of the Government of the State of New York, for the year 1900.

E R R A T A.

- Page 6, line 16, for *sexes*, read *sex*
- 21, — 1, Sing. Masc. Fem. Plur. Masc. Fem. *should not have been printed*
- 71, — 31, for *fit*, read *set*
- 117, — 13, for *unc*, read *un*
- 124, — 39, for “ the preposition *de* is used in the same manner after pronouns indeterminate,” &c. read “ the preposition *de* is used in the same manner, immediately before the next adjective or participle, after,” &c.
- 148, — 9, for *eccuses*, read *excuses*
- 151, — 22, for *French*, read *English*
- 154, — 2, for *and ici*, read *or ici*
- 156, — 16, for *He drinks*, read *She drinks*, &c.
- 157, — 26, for *and we may likewise observe*, read *and it may likewise be observed*, &c.
- 160, — 9, for *This is perhaps to avoid*, &c. read *This is perhaps to avoid the disagreeable sounds of $\alpha\acute{e}$ and $\alpha\acute{i}$ in *conduis $\alpha\acute{e}$ -y*, which is pronounced *conduis $\alpha\acute{e}$ $\alpha\acute{i}$: s* in French between two vowels being articulated like $\alpha\acute{e}$, and $\alpha\acute{i}$ having its natural sound.*
- 206, — 4, for *Britanicus*, read *Britannicus*
- 206, — 5, read *conduit par l'artifice de son flatteur*, &c.
- 209, — 32, for *above*, read *following*
- 220, — 5, for *toute*, read *tout*
- 229, — 24, for *parla* read *parlât*
- 234, — 30, for *Il ne faut quitter*, read *Il ne faut pas quitter*
- 235, — 9, for *Quatre-vingt-un*, read *Quatre-vingt-onze*
- 237, — 1, read *quatre semaines*
- 239, — 5, for *four*, read *two*
- 239, — 7, for *a dozen*, read *eleven*
- 240, — 22, for *quatre*, read *quarte*
- 240, — 35, for *une dixme*, read *un dixième*
- 252, — 9, for *compound of the perfect*, read *compound of the preterite*
- 259, — 2, for *simple perfect*, read *simple preterite*
- 259, — 6, for *compound of the perfect*, read *compound of the preterite*
- 259, — 10, for *simple perfect*, read *simple preterite*
- 260, — 17, for *compound of the perfect*, read *compound of the preterite*
- 260, — 25, for *simple perfect*, read *simple preterite*; and for *compound perfect*, read *compound of the preterite*
- 312, — 1, for *à, moins que*, read *à moins que*
- 325, — 3, for *rheumatismes*, read *rhumatismes*
- 335, — 36, for *La maison*, &c. read *Sa maison*, &c.

TO FRENCH TEACHERS.

The Directions how to use the Exercise-books and the Guide adapted to this Grammar, are to be found in the Prefaces of those Books.

How plain soever I flatter myself the Directions are, there will perhaps be some among those Gentlemen but just come from France, who, wishing to teach French by the Exercise-book, will not be able clearly enough to understand them; but who, by applying to me at my Chambers, No. 6, Clifford's-Inn, any Monday, Wednesday, or Saturday Evening, after Seven o'clock, will have those things they may not comprehend, made plain to them.

G. S A T I S.

re,
ust
be
nd
6,
ay
ey

Year	Month	Day	Time	Place	Event
1890	Jan	1	10:00	St. Paul	Arrived
1890	Jan	2	10:00	St. Paul	Departed
1890	Jan	3	10:00	St. Paul	Arrived
1890	Jan	4	10:00	St. Paul	Departed
1890	Jan	5	10:00	St. Paul	Arrived
1890	Jan	6	10:00	St. Paul	Departed
1890	Jan	7	10:00	St. Paul	Arrived
1890	Jan	8	10:00	St. Paul	Departed
1890	Jan	9	10:00	St. Paul	Arrived
1890	Jan	10	10:00	St. Paul	Departed
1890	Jan	11	10:00	St. Paul	Arrived
1890	Jan	12	10:00	St. Paul	Departed
1890	Jan	13	10:00	St. Paul	Arrived
1890	Jan	14	10:00	St. Paul	Departed
1890	Jan	15	10:00	St. Paul	Arrived
1890	Jan	16	10:00	St. Paul	Departed
1890	Jan	17	10:00	St. Paul	Arrived
1890	Jan	18	10:00	St. Paul	Departed
1890	Jan	19	10:00	St. Paul	Arrived
1890	Jan	20	10:00	St. Paul	Departed
1890	Jan	21	10:00	St. Paul	Arrived
1890	Jan	22	10:00	St. Paul	Departed
1890	Jan	23	10:00	St. Paul	Arrived
1890	Jan	24	10:00	St. Paul	Departed
1890	Jan	25	10:00	St. Paul	Arrived
1890	Jan	26	10:00	St. Paul	Departed
1890	Jan	27	10:00	St. Paul	Arrived
1890	Jan	28	10:00	St. Paul	Departed
1890	Jan	29	10:00	St. Paul	Arrived
1890	Jan	30	10:00	St. Paul	Departed
1890	Jan	31	10:00	St. Paul	Arrived

A T A

OF THE

FORMATION OF THE SIMPLE TENSES

Con- jug- tions.	Infinitive Mood.	Gerund.	Par- tici- ple.	Present Tense.	Imperfect.	Preterite.	Future.	Conditional.	
1. PARL-	cr.	-ant.	-é	--e, es, e, -ons, ez, ent.	On, ois, oit, -ions, iez, oient.	-ai, as, a, -âmes, âtes, èrent.	-e-rai, ras, ra, -e-rons, rez, ront.	-e-rois, rois, roit, -e-rions, riez, roient.	PA
2. AG-	ir.	-issant.	-i	-is, is, it, -issions, iissez, issent.	-i-ois, ois, oit, -i-ions, iez, oient.	-is, is, it, -îmes, îtes, irent.	-i-rai, ras, ra, -i-rons, rez, ront.	-i-rois, rois, roit, -i-rions, riez, roient.	AG
3. SEN-	tir.	-tant.	-ti	--ts, ts, t, -tons, tez, tent.	-t-ois, ois, oit, -t-ions, iez, oient.	-tis, is, it, -tîmes, tîtes, tirent.	-ti-rai, ras, ra, -ti-rons, rez, ront.	-ti-rois, rois, roit, -ti-rions, riez, roient.	SE
4. T-	cnir.	-enant.	-enu	-iens, iens, ient, -enons, enez, iennent.	-en-ois, ois, oit, -en-ions, iez, oient.	-ins, ins, int, -îmes, îtes, inrent.	-iend-rai, ras, ra, -iend-rons, rez, ront.	-iend-rois, rois, roit, -iend-rions, riez, roient.	T
5. REÇ- D--	avoir.	-evant.	-u	-ois, ois, oit, -evons, evez, oivent.	-ev-ois, ois, oit, -ev-ions, iez, oient.	-us, us, ut, -ûmes, ûtes, urent.	-ev-rai, ras, ra, -ev-rons, rez, ront.	-ev-rois, rois, roit, -ev-rions, riez, roient.	RE D
6. FAI-	re.	-fant.	-ait	-s, s, t, -sons, tez, font.	-f-ois, ois, oit, -f-ions, iez, oient.	-fis, fis, fit, -fîmes, fîtes, firent.	-fe-rai, ras, ra, -fe-rons, rez, ront.	-fe-rois, rois, roit, -fe-rions, riez, roient.	F
7. CRA- Jo--	indre.	-ignant.	-int	-ins, ins, int, -ignons, ignez, ignent.	-ign-ois, ois, oit, -ign-ions, iez, oient.	-ignis, is, it, -ignîmes, îtes, irent.	-ind-rai, ras, ra, -ind-rons, rez, ront.	-ind-rois, rois, roit, -ind-rions, riez, roient.	CR Jo
8. CONN-	ôître.	-oissant.	-u	-ois, ois, oit, -oissions, oïssiez, oïssent.	-oïss-ois, ois, oit, -oïss-ions, iez, oient.	-us, us, ut, -ûmes, ûtes, urent.	-oît-rai, ras, ra, -oît-rons, rez, ront.	-oît-rois, rois, roit, -oît-rions, riez, roient.	C
9. INSTR-	uire.	-uissant.	-uit	-uis, uis, uit, -uifions, uifiez, uifent.	-uif-ois, ois, oit, -uif-ions, iez, oient.	-uifis, is, it, -uifîmes, îtes, irent.	-ui-rai, ras, ra, -ui-rons, rez, ront.	-ui-rois, rois, roit, -ui-rions, riez, roient.	IN
10. VEN- RÉPON-	-dre.	-dant.	-du	-ds, ds, d, -dons, -dez, dent.	-d-ois, ois, oit, -d-ions, iez, oient.	-dis, is, it, -dîmes, îtes, irent.	-d-rai, ras, ra, -d-rons, rez, ront.	-d-rois, rois, roit, -d-rions, riez, roient.	V R

B L E

THE

ENSES OF THE FRENCH VERBS.

	<i>Gerund.</i>	<i>Subjunctive Present Tense.</i>	<i>From the Second Person Preterite Tense Indicative is formed the Subjunctive Preterite.</i>	<i>English.</i>	<i>Num- ber of regular Verbs.</i>	<i>Irregular Verbs excepted.</i>	<i>Irre- gular Primi- tives.</i>	<i>Irre- gular Deriva- tives.</i>
it, ient.	PARL - - - ant	-e, es, e, ions, iez, ent.	PARLAS - - -fe, ses, ât, fions, fiez, sent.	to speak,	2700.	aller, puer.	2.	
it, ient.	AGISS - - - ant	-e, es, e, ions, iez, ent.	AGISS - - -fe, ses, ît, fions, fiez, sent.	to act.	200.	acquérir, courir, cueillir, dor- mir, fuir, ouvrir, offrir, faillir, vêtir, (<i>with their Derivatives</i>).	15.	20.
it, ient.	SENT - - - ant	-e, es, e, ions, iez, ent,	SENTIS - - -fe, ses, ît, fions, fiez, sent.	to feel.	20.	bouillir, faillir, haïr, mou- rir, ouïr, souffrir.		
it, ient.	T - - - - - enant	-ienne, es, e, enions, iez, iennent.	TINS - - -fe, ses, înt, fions, fiez, sent.	to hold.	24.			
it, ient.	REÇ - - - - evant	-oive, es, e, evions, iez, oivent.	REÇUS - - -fe, ses, ât, DUS - - -fions, fiez, sent.	to receive. to owe.	6.	asseoir, choir, mouvoir, va- loir, voir, (<i>with Deriv.</i>) pou- voir, vouloir.	8.	12.
it, ient.	F - - - - - aissant	-aff-e, es, e, -aff-ions, iez, ent.	FIS - - -fe, ses, ît, fions, fiez, sent,	to do.	7.	plaire, croire, (<i>with Deriv.</i>) traire, boire, braire.	5.	8.
it, ient.	CRAIGN - - - ant	-e, es, e, ions, iez, ent.	CRAIGN - is -fe, ses, ît, JOIGN - -fions, fiez, sent.	to fear. to join.	19.			
it, ient.	CONNOIS - - ant	-e, es, e, ions, iez, ent.	CONNUS - -fe, ses, ât, fions, fiez, sent.	to know.	10.	naître, and paître, (<i>with Derivatives.</i>)	2.	2.
it, ient.	INSTRUIS - - ant	-e, es, e, ions, iez, ent.	INSTRUISIS -fe, ses, ît, fions, fiez, sent.	to instruct.	19.	dire, écrire, lire, rire, vivre, suivre, (<i>with Deriv.</i>) frire.	7.	22.
it, ient.	VEND - - - ant	-e, es, e, ions, iez, ent,	VEND - is -fe, ses, ît, RÉPOND - fions, fiez, sent.	to sell. to answer.	23.	prendre, rompre, battre, mettre, conclure, vaincre, coudre, moudre, résoudre, éclorre, (<i>with Deriv.</i>)	10.	28.
					3028.			
					141.			
					3169.			
							49.	92.
							141.	

A
S Y S T E M
O F
FRENCH ACCIDENCE,

COMPILED AND -ALTERED FROM

C H A M B A U D.

Of the PARTS of SPEECH.

THE French Language, like other tongues, is composed of eight parts of speech; the *Noun* or *Substantive*—the *Adjective*—the *Pronoun*—the *Verb*—the *Adverb*—the *Preposition*—the *Conjunction*—and the *Particle*, whether *discursive* or *interjective*.

C H A P I.

Of the NOUN.

THE *Noun* or *Substantive* is a part of speech, which serves to name every thing that subsists in nature, or can be conceived by the imagination: as *un homme*, a man; *une femme*, a woman; *Alexandre*, Alexander; *Londres*, London; *virtue*, *la vertu*; vice, *le vice*, &c.

There are three remarkable Accidents of Nouns; their *Number*, *Gender*, and the *Extent of the Sense in which they are taken*, denoted by the *Article*.

Note. In considering the *Number of Nouns*, that of *Adjectives* will unavoidably come under observation.

ACCIDENCE

SECTION I.

Of NUMBER.

Nouns have *two* Numbers, the *singular* and the *plural*.

A Noun is *singular*, when it denotes *one* thing only; as *un homme*, a man; *une femme*, a woman.

A Noun is *plural*, when it denotes *more than one*; as *des hommes*, men; *des femmes*, women, &c.

Of the Formation of the PLURAL.

2. It may be considered as a *general* Rule in French, though liable to a variety of exceptions, that the plural number is formed from the singular by the addition of *s*; as,

Sing.		Plur.	
<i>un homme,</i>	a man,	<i>des hommes,</i>	men,
<i>une maison,</i>	a house,	<i>des maisons,</i>	houses,
<i>un jour,</i>	a day,	<i>des jours,</i>	days.

3. Nouns whose singular ends in *s*, or *x*, have their plural alike, without any alteration or addition; as,

Sing.		Plur.	
<i>le fils,</i>	the son,	<i>les fils,</i>	the sons,
<i>une voix,</i>	a voice,	<i>des voix,</i>	voices.

4. In Nouns ending in *nt*, the final *t* in the plural is usually left out before *s*; as,

Sing.		Plur.	
<i>un enfant,</i>	a child,	<i>des enfans,</i>	children,
<i>prudent,</i>	prudent,	<i>prudents, &c.</i>	

NOTE.

5. Monosyllables retain the *t*: as, *des ponts*, bridges; *des dents*, teeth; from *pont*, and *dent*: Except *cent* and *tout*; as, *deux cens hommes*, two hundred men; *sous les ans*, every year.

EXCEPTIONS.

6. 1st, Nouns ending in *au* or *eau*, *eu* or *œu*, and *ieu*, take *x*, and not *s*, for their plural termination; as,

Sing.		Plur.	
<i>chapeau,</i>	hat,	<i>chapeaux,</i>	hats,
<i>jeu,</i>	game,	<i>jeux,</i>	games,
<i>lieu,</i>	place,	<i>lieux,</i>	places.

N. B. The adjective *bleu* retains the *s*, and makes *bleus*.

Nouns

OF NOUNS.

Nouns in *ou* generally take also *x* instead of *s*; as *un chou*, 8.
a cabbage; *des choux*, cabbages, &c. &c.

NOTE.

N.B. The following, however, take *s* in the plural: *trou*, a hole; *cou* or *col*, 9.
the neck; *clou*, a nail; *filou*, a pickpocket; *fou*, a fool; *matou*, a large cat; *meu* or
mol, soft; *bibou*, an owl; *licou*, a halter; and *loup-garou*, a were-wolf.

2dly, Nouns in *al* and *ail*, change *al* and *ail* into *aux* for 10.
their plural; as,

Sing.	{ <i>animal</i> , a living creature,		Plur.	{ <i>animaux</i> ,
	<i>travail</i> , work,			

ail garlick, makes *aule*, though seldom used.

NOTE.

N.B. These five; *bal*, a ball or masquerade; *cal* [or rather *calus*], a hard skin; 11.
carnaval, carnival; *pal*, pale (a term of heraldry); *régal*, a noble treat; form their
plural in *s*.—So proper nouns in *al*; as *deux Juvenals*, two Juvenals; *trois Martials*, 12.
three Martials.

The following nouns in *ail* follow also the general rule: 13.

<i>attirail</i> , train;	<i>éventail</i> , a fan;	<i>portail</i> , front gate of a
<i>camail</i> , a sort of priestly	<i>épouvantail</i> , a scare-crow;	church;
dress;	<i>gouvernail</i> , a helm;	<i>férail</i> , a seraglio.
<i>détail</i> , particulars;	<i>mail</i> , a mall;	

These two; *bercail*, a sheepfold; and *portail*, the breast of an horse; have no plural. 14.
Bétail, cattle, is a noun of multitude singular without plural; as *bestiaux* is a noun 15.
plural of the same signification without singular.

3dly, <i>Ciel</i> ,	heaven,	{	make	{	<i>cieux</i> ,	16.
<i>œil</i> ,	the eye,				<i>yeux</i> ,	17.
<i>aïeul</i> ,	a grandfather,				<i>aïeux</i> ,	18.
<i>gentilhomme</i> ,	a gentleman,				<i>gentilshommes</i> .	19.

NOTE.

But we say, *des œils de bœuf* (a term of architecture), ovals; and *des ciels de lit*, 20.
testerns of a bed.

We also say, *ciels*, the clouds in a picture; and, in the plural, *des arc-en-ciels*, 21.
rainbows.

Nouns compounded of the pronoun *mon*, *ma* (my), change 22.
mon, *ma*, into *mes* in the plural, besides the characteristic final
letter (*s*) of that number; as,

Sing.	{	<i>Monseigneur</i> , Master or Mr.		Plur.	{	<i>Messieurs</i> , Gentlemen,
		<i>Madame</i> , Madam,				<i>Mesdames</i> , Ladies,
		<i>Monseigneur</i> , My Lord,				<i>Messieurs</i> , My Lords,
		<i>Mademoiselle</i> , Miss,				<i>Mesdemoiselles</i> , Ladies.

Other compound Nouns follow the general rule, except *jet* 23.
d'eau, a water-spout, which in the plural number does not
make *des jet d'eaux*, but *des jets d'eau*.

A C C I D E N C E.

Nouns and Adjectives having no plural in use.

24. The following Adjectives in *al* have no plural in use for the masculine :

<i>austral</i> , southern ;	<i>jovial</i> , jovial ;	<i>pastoral</i> , pastoral ;
<i>boreal</i> , northern ;	<i>lustral</i> , lustral ;	<i>pascal</i> *, pascal ;
<i>claustral</i> , claustral ;	<i>litéral</i> , literal ;	<i>total</i> , total ;
<i>conjugal</i> , conjugal ;	<i>matinal</i> , early ;	<i>trivial</i> , trivial ;
<i>diametral</i> , diametral ;	<i>nasal</i> , nasal ;	<i>vénal</i> , venal ;
<i>fatal</i> , fatal ;	<i>natal</i> , native ;	<i>spécial</i> , special ;
<i>filial</i> , filial ;	<i>naval</i> , naval ;	<i>libéral</i> *, liberal ;
<i>final</i> , final ;	<i>nuptial</i> , nuptial ;	<i>martial</i> *, martial.
<i>frugal</i> , frugal ;		

NOTE.

25. * We say *les arts libéraux*, the liberal arts ; and *les cierges pascals* (large wax tapers burnt in churches at Easter among the Roman catholicks) ; in exception to the rule laid down concerning *libéral* and *pascal*.

In French, as in all languages, there are many Nouns which by their application do not admit of a plural :

26. 1st, Nouns of *virtues* and *vices* ; *la charité*, charity ; *la haine*, hatred, &c.
 27. 2^{dly}, Nouns of *metals* ; *de l'or*, gold ; *du cuivre*, copper ; &c.

28. 3^{dly}, These following miscellaneous Nouns :

<i>absinthe</i> , wormwood ;	<i>courroux</i> , wrath ;	<i>le toucher</i> , feeling ;
<i>artillerie</i> , artillery ;	<i>Eucharistie</i> , Eucharist ;	<i>repos</i> , rest ;
<i>attirail</i> , implements ;	<i>Extrême onction</i> †, ex-	<i>naturel</i> , nature ;
<i>bonheur</i> , happiness ;	treme unction ;	<i>noblesse</i> , nobility ;
<i>colère</i> , anger ;	<i>faim</i> , hunger ;	<i>pauvreté</i> , poverty ;
<i>gloire</i> , glory ;	<i>fiel</i> , gall ;	<i>soif</i> , thirst ;
<i>honte</i> , shame ;	<i>fumée</i> , smoke ;	<i>sang</i> , blood ;
<i>jeunesse</i> , youth ;	<i>disette</i> , scarcity ;	<i>salut</i> , safety ;
<i>lait</i> , milk ;	<i>suite</i> , flight ;	<i>sommeil</i> , sleep ;
<i>mollesse</i> , effeminacy ;	<i>enfance</i> , infancy ;	<i>total</i> , whole ;
<i>le prochain</i> , our neigh-	<i>la vue</i> , the sight ;	<i>vieillesse</i> , old-age ;
bour ;	<i>l'ouïe</i> , the hearing ;	<i>virilité</i> , manhood ;
<i>réputation</i> , reputation ;	<i>l'odorat</i> , smelling ;	<i>miel</i> , honey.
<i>renommée</i> , fame ;	<i>le goût</i> , the taste ;	

† One of the seven sacraments of the church of Rome.

29. 4^{thly}, *Infinitives* and *Adjectives* used *substantively* ; as *le boire* & *le manger*, eating and drinking ; *l'utile* & *l'agréable*, profit and pleasure.
 30. 5^{thly}, Nouns of *number*, in a plural use, do not take the final s : as, *trois*, *deux*, three two's ; *deux*, *quatre*, two fours ; *quatre*, *six*, four sixes ; *dix mille*, ten thousand ; &c.

NOTE.

31. Except *vingt*, *cent*, and *million* : as *six vingts hommes*, six score men ; *deux cent écus*, two hundred crowns ; &c.

6^{thly}, *Prépos.*

OF NOUNS.

6thly, Proper names have no plural.

NOTE.

Except they are used metaphorically: Thus, though we say, *les deux Corneille*, *les Turenne*, *les Lamignon*, &c. we say, *ils sont les Césars & les Alexandres de leur siècle*, they are the Césars and the Alexanders of their age.

Oui and *non*, used substantively, have no plural in use; as, *Je ne me soucie ni de vos oui ni de vos non*, I care neither for your yeas nor your nays.

Nouns having only the plural in use:

<i>Alpes</i> , the Alps;	<i>dépens</i> , cost;	<i>mânes</i> , the ghost of one
<i>annales</i> , annals;	<i>écrouelles</i> , the King's	deceased;
<i>ancêtres</i> , ancestors;	evil;	<i>matériaux</i> , materials;
<i>aïeux</i> , forefathers;	<i>entraves</i> , shackles;	<i>matines</i> *, matins;
<i>aguets</i> (<i>être aux</i>), to	<i>entrailles</i> , entrails;	<i>mœurs</i> , manners;
be upon the catch;	<i>entrefaites</i> , transactions;	<i>mouchettes</i> , snuffers;
<i>arrérages</i> , arrears;	<i>étrivières</i> , sound lash-	<i>munitions</i> †, ammunition;
<i>affises</i> , affizes;	ing;	<i>nippes</i> , goods, things;
<i>atours</i> , apparel;	<i>épousailles</i> , espousals;	<i>nones</i> *, the nones;
<i>avivres</i> (<i>vivres</i>), a dis-	<i>fiançailles</i> , betrothing;	<i>obèques</i> , obsequies;
ease in horses;	<i>funérailles</i> , funerals;	<i>pleurs</i> , tears;
<i>béatilles</i> , dainties;	<i>fonts</i> , the font for christ-	<i>proches</i> , relations;
<i>besicles</i> , spectacles;	ening;	<i>prémices</i> , first fruits;
<i>broussailles</i> , briars;	<i>frais</i> , expences;	<i>Pyrénées</i> , Pyrennees;
<i>calendes</i> , calends;	<i>gallions</i> , galleons;	<i>représailles</i> , reprisals;
<i>catacombes</i> , catacombs;	<i>gens</i> , people;	<i>rets</i> , a net;
<i>ciseaux</i> , scissars;	<i>bardes</i> , clothes;	<i>rogations</i> , rogation-day;
<i>complies</i> *, closing pray-	<i>bémorroides</i> , piles;	<i>stigmates</i> , points, marks;
ers of the day;	<i>immondices</i> , filth;	<i>ténèbres</i> , darkness;
<i>confins</i> , confines;	<i>laudes</i> *, morning pray-	<i>vêpres</i> *, vespers;
<i>confitures</i> , sweetmeats;	ers;	<i>vergettes</i> , a brush;
<i>décombres</i> , rubbish;	<i>limites</i> , limits;	<i>vivres</i> , victuals.
<i>délices</i> , delight;		

* *Matines*, *laudes*, *nones*, *vêpres*, & *complies*, are part of the divine service called in the church of Rome the canonical hours.

† Except that we say, *du pain de munition*, ammunition-bread.

The following Nouns, merely Latin, are of both numbers:

We say,

<i>des alleluia</i> , <i>des libera</i> , (church terms);	<i>trois in folio</i> , three folio's;
<i>des alibi</i> , (a law term);	<i>six in quarto</i> , six quarto's;
<i>des alinea</i> , (new paragraphs);	<i>huit in octavo</i> , eight octavo's;
<i>des accessit</i> , (certificates);	<i>cing pater & cing ave</i> , five pater-nos-
<i>des petits item</i> , small articles;	ters;
<i>des duo</i> , <i>des trio</i> , <i>des quatuor</i> .	<i>des ave</i> , <i>des ave Maria</i> .
<i>trois errata</i> , three errata's;	<i>des oremus</i> , collects;
<i>quatre duplicata</i> , four duplicates;	<i>des Te Deum</i> , Te Deums;
<i>des acacia</i> , Acacias;	<i>ses ergo</i> , his therefore's;
<i>des exeat</i> , (leave to go out);	And <i>des aparté</i> , aside, (what an actor
<i>des impromptu</i> , extempore's;	speaks aside upon
<i>des fac-tum</i> , people who do every	the stage).
thing in a family;	

A C C I D E N C E.

NOTE.

38. But we use these Latin Nouns with each number, in this manner :

Sing.	{	<i>un factum,</i>	the pleading of a		{	<i>des factions,</i>	pleadings ;
			counsellor ;				
		<i>un dictum,</i>	a common saying ;			<i>des dictions,</i>	sayings ;
		<i>un rogatum,</i>	scraps of victuals ;			<i>des rogations,</i>	scraps ;
		<i>un reliqua,</i>	a petition ;			<i>des reliquas,</i>	petitions.
		<i>un placet,</i>				<i>des placets,</i>	

SECTION II.

Of the GENDER of Nouns.

Nouns are either of the *masculine* or *feminine* gender.

39. Besides the general and obvious rule, that *Nouns relating to males are masculine*, and *those relating to females are feminine*, a variety of rules are given in the French language to ascertain the gender of those nouns which refer to substances that do not admit of the distinction of sexes.

1st. Masculine Nouns,

40. 1st, All nouns in *ail* or *al*, *'eil* and *el* ;

41. And likewise all nouns whose last syllable is *a* alone, or followed by one or many consonants :

42. Except *une part*, and *la hart*, the band of a faggot.

43. 2^{dly}, All nouns having a nasal termination ;

44. Except *une dent*, a tooth.

45. 3^{dly}, All nouns in *œil*, *ueil*, and *euil*, &c. &c.

46. 4^{thly}, All nouns in *é* cute without *i*, before ; as *du caffè*, coffee : Also those in *e*, followed by any consonant, and those in *ier*, *ais* and *ois*, *air* and *oir*, *ait* and *ay* :

47. Except *une clé* or *clef*, a key ; *une cueiller*, a spoon ; *la forêt*, the forest ; *la mer*, the sea ; *la soif*, thirst ; and *la nef*, the body of a church.

48. 5^{thly}, All nouns in *eu* and *lieu*.

49. 6^{thly}, Nouns in *au* or *eau* :

50. Except *de l'eau*, water ; and *une peau*, a skin.

51. 7^{thly}, Nouns whose last syllable is *o*, followed by any consonant :

52. Except *une dot*, a portion ; and *la mort*, death.

53. 8^{thly}, Nouns whose last syllable is *i* or *ui*, followed by any consonant :

54. Except *une brebis*, a sheep ; *une fourmi*, an ant ; *la merci*, mercy ; *la nuit*, the night ; *une souris*, a mouse ; *une vis*, a screw.

9^{thly}, Nouns

OF NOUNS.

- 9^{thly}, Nouns ending in *ain*, *aim*, *in*, *ins*, *uin*, *oin*, and *ien*: 55.
 Except *la main*, the hand; *la fin*, the end; and *la faim*, 56.
 hunger.
- 10^{thly}, Nouns in *ou*, either alone, or followed by a consonant: 57.
 Except *la cour*, the court; and *une tour*, a tower. 58.
- 11^{thly}, Nouns ending in *son* or *con*, and all the combinations 59.
 with nasal *on* which have not *i*, or *s*, or *z*, before *on*:
 Except of nouns in *son*, *la boisson*, drinking, and *la moisson*, 60.
 harvest; and of the others, *une chanson*, a song; *la façon*,
 the making; *une leçon*, a lesson; *la rançon*, the ransom;
 which are feminines, as nouns in *son*.
- 12^{thly}, Nouns whose last syllable terminates in *u* alone, or 61.
 followed by any consonant:
 Except *de la glu*, bird-lime; *la vertu*, virtue; and *une tribu*, 62.
 a tribe.
- 13^{thly}, Nouns of *days*, *months*, and *seasons*, are masculine: 63.
 Except *Automne*, Autumn: and when nouns of months 64.
 take *mi* before them, they are feminine; as *la mi-Juin*,
 Midsummer; *la mi-Août*, the middle of August; *mi* be-
 ing in fact an abbreviate of *moitié*, half, which is femi-
 nine, and the expression being elliptical for *la moitié de*
Juin, &c. &c.
- 14^{thly}, Nouns of *countries*, *kingdoms*, *counties*, and *provinces*, 65.
 are masculine:
- Except those ending in *e*, not founded, of which all are femi- 66.
 nine but *le Mexique*, Mexico.

NOTE.

The names of cities, towns, and boroughs, most commonly follow the gender of 67.
 their termination; but in case of doubt, we need only add the word *ville* to them,
 and the difficulty ceases; as *Londres est une ville bien grande*, London is a fine city,
 instead of *Londres est bien grand*, or *grande*; and that is, in fact, the best mode of
 expression, even when the gender of *sub nouns* is clearly determined.

- 15^{thly}, Nouns ending in 68.
- | | | | | |
|-------|------|-----------------------|-----------------|-----------------------|
| age, | } as | <i>un héritage,</i> | an inheritance; | } are mascu-
line; |
| age, | | <i>le déluge,</i> | the deluge; | |
| acle, | | <i>un tabernacle,</i> | a tabernacle; | |
| ême, | | <i>le baptême,</i> | baptism; | |
| ume, | | <i>du baume,</i> | balm; | |
| ôme, | | <i>un dôme,</i> | a cupola; | |
| isme, | | <i>le catéchisme,</i> | the catechism; | |

Except these seven; *une cage*, a cage; *une image*, an image; 69.
une page, a page; *la rage*, the rage; *une plage*, a flat shore;
de la crème, cream; *la paume*, the palm of the hand.

N O T E.

70. The only rule to be given concerning the gender of nouns ending in *e silent*, which will most nearly apply to all cases within its scope, is this:—That nouns derived from *Latin masculine nouns*, or *neuter nouns*, are *masculine* in French; and nouns derived from *Latin feminine nouns*, are *feminine* in French. I have subjoined examples to the last division of masculine nouns, on purpose to prove the first part of the assertion; as the exceptions serve to prove the second part of it. Chambaud has given a long list of masculines in *e silent*, which is not in any respect more useful than any common Dictionary, which marks the genders of nouns, as it can only be referred to as occasion requires, being evidently too long to be imposed upon the memory of the learner.
71. 16thly, *Names of mountains* are masculine:
72. Except *les Alpes couvertes de neige*, the Alps covered with snow.
73. 17thly, *Nouns expressing the names of winds* are masculine:
74. Except *la Bise*, the North-East wind; and *la Tramontane*.
75. 18thly, As to the *names of rivers*, they follow the rule of their termination, or Latin derivation.
76. 19thly, *Adjectives used substantively*, nouns of *number*, *ordinal*, *proportional*, and *distributive*, *infinitives*, *adverbs*, and *prepositions*, also taken *substantively*, are masculine:
77. Except that we make *antique* feminine; as *une antique*, an antique; *statue* or *médaille* being understood. In mathematical language we also say, *une courbe*, a curve; *une perpendiculaire*, a perpendicular; *une tangente*, a tangent; *ligne* being likewise understood.
78. 20thly, *Nouns compounded of a noun and verb* are likewise masculine; as *un cure-oreille*, an ear-picker; *un casse-noisette*, a nut-cracker, &c.
79. Except *une passe-velours*, a velvet-flower; and *une garde-robe*, a wardrobe.

N O T E.

80. The following are miscellaneous observations concerning the gender of particular nouns which will hardly admit of any regular arrangement.
81. *Comté* and *Duché* were formerly common, but now they are masculine; but we say *la Franche Comté*, the county of Burgundy; and *une Vi-comté*, a Viscounty; as likewise *une Comté pairie*, and *une Duché pairie*.
82. *Couple*, when it stands for *number*, is feminine; as *une couple d'œufs*, a couple of, i. e. two eggs: when used without that immediate reference to number, it is masculine; as *un beau couple*, (speaking of two married people). *Amour* (love) and *orgue* (an organ) are masculine in the singular and feminine in the plural.
83. But observe, that *orgue* is seldom used in the singular; and *Amour*, when signifying *Cupid*, is masculine.
84. In opposition to the rule before hinted at, of the Latin genders influencing the French, the following nouns are feminine.

<i>Anagramme</i> ,	an anagram;	<i>épithète</i> ,	an epithet;
<i>énigme</i> ,	an enigma;	<i>horoscope</i> ,	an horoscope;
<i>épitaphe</i> ,	an epitaph;		

We may fairly consider this anomaly as an error and defect in the language.

2d. Feminine Nouns.

1st, Nouns in *tié* and *té* are feminine:

85.

Except

86.

<i>un arrêté de compte</i> , a settled ac-	<i>un pâté</i> , a pye;
<i>compt</i> ;	<i>un traité</i> , a treaty;
<i>le côté</i> , the side;	<i>du thé</i> , tea;
<i>l'été</i> , summer;	<i>le benédicité</i> , the first word of
<i>un comité</i> , a committee;	the Catholics' prayer before
<i>un comté</i> , a county or earldom;	their meals.

2dly, Nouns in *ion* are feminine;

87.

Except

88.

<i>un alérion</i> , an eagle;	<i>un lampion</i> , a sort of lamp;
<i>l'alcion</i> , the halcyon;	<i>un million</i> , a million;
<i>un bastion</i> , a bastion;	<i>le morion</i> , a military punish-
<i>le bestion</i> , the head of a ship;	ment;
<i>un camion</i> , a sort of cart;	<i>un morpion</i> , a crab-louse;
<i>un champion</i> , a champion;	<i>l'Orion</i> , the constellation
<i>le chorian</i> , the chorian;	Orion;
<i>le croupion</i> , the rump;	<i>un pion</i> , a chess or draughts
<i>un embryon</i> , an embryo;	man;
<i>un fanion</i> , a standard;	<i>le Septentrion</i> , the North;
<i>un gabion</i> , a gabion;	<i>un scion</i> , a sprig;
<i>les gallions</i> , the galleons;	<i>un scorpion</i> , a scorpion;
<i>le gavion</i> , the throat;	<i>le tallion</i> , retaliation.
<i>un horion</i> , a blow;	

Nouns in *zon* and *son*;

89.

Except

90.

<i>le blason</i> , heraldry;	<i>un oison</i> , a young goose;
<i>un frison</i> , an under-petticoat;	<i>un peson</i> , a steel-yard;
<i>un gason</i> , a grass-plat;	<i>du poison</i> , poison;
<i>l'horison</i> , the horison;	<i>un tison</i> , a fire-brand.

Nouns in *eur* and *eure*:

91.

Except, of nouns in *eur*,

92.

<i>un bonheur</i> , a piece of good	<i>l'Equateur</i> , the Equator;
fortune;	<i>l'honneur</i> , honour;
<i>un malheur</i> , a misfortune;	<i>le déshonneur</i> , dishonour;
<i>le cœur</i> , the heart;	<i>le labeur</i> , labour;
<i>un chœur</i> , a choir;	<i>le lecteur</i> , the reader;
<i>l'intérieur</i> , the inward part;	<i>le faiseur</i> , the maker;
<i>l'extérieur</i> , the outside;	

And all other nouns in *eur*, derived from verbs, which change *eur* into *euse*, for their feminine, or which are only applicable

to men; as *un docteur*, a doctor; *un voleur*, *une voleuse* (from *voler*, to steal), a thief, &c. Except also *pleurs*, tears, which is masculine.

94. Of nouns in *eure*, except

du beurre, butter; *le leurre*, the lure of a hawk; *du feurre*, straw.

95. 5thly, Nouns in *x* are feminine;

96. Except

<i>du borax</i> ,	borax;	<i>le flux</i> ,	the flowing;
<i>le choix</i> ,	choice;	<i>un lynx</i> ,	a lynx;
<i>un crucifix</i> ,	a crucifix;	<i>le prix</i> ,	the price;
<i>le faix</i> ,	the burthen;	<i>le Styx</i> ,	the Stygian river;
<i>du houx</i> ,	holly-oak;	<i>du Storax</i> ,	a gum;
<i>un phénix</i> ,	a phoenix;	And the letter <i>x</i> .	
<i>le reflux</i> ,	the ebb;		

97. 6thly, Nouns ending in any vowel or diphthong before silent *e*: such are these terminations;

**ée*,
aie or *aye*,
 **ie* and *uie*,

**oie* and *oye*,
oue and **ue*;

98. Except, from nouns in **ée*,

<i>l'Apogée</i> ,	Apogee;	<i>le périgée</i> ,	the perigee;
<i>un caducée</i> ,	a caduceus;	<i>le péripnée</i> ,	
<i>un colisée</i> ,	a coliseum;	<i>le périnée</i> ,	the perinæum;
<i>le coriphée</i> ,	the chief;	<i>le Pirée</i> ,	the Pyræus;
<i>l'Empirée</i> ,	the Empyrean;	<i>les Pyrénées</i> ,	the Pyrenees;
<i>les champs élysées</i> ,	Elysium;	<i>le Ruphée</i> ,	
<i>le gynécée</i> ,	females' apartments	<i>un spondée</i> ,	a spondee;
among the ancients;		<i>un trochée</i> ,	a trochee;
<i>un hyménée</i> ,	a marriage;	<i>les testacées</i> ,	testaceous fish;
<i>la Lycée</i> ,	the Lycæum;	<i>les crustacées</i> ,	crustaceous sub-
<i>le mausolée</i> ,	a mausoleum;		stances;
<i>le nymphée</i> ,	apartments set apart	<i>un trophée</i> ,	a trophy.
for the celebration of a wed-			
ding among the ancients;			

99. Except also, from nouns in **ie*, **oie*, and **ue*,

<i>Aphélie</i> ,	Aphelion;	<i>un pavie</i> ,	a nectarine;
<i>un génie</i> ,	a genius;	<i>un périhélie</i> ,	the perihelium;
<i>un incendie</i> ,	a fire;	<i>un parélie</i> ,	a mock sun;
<i>le Messie</i> ,	the MESSIAH;	<i>le bain Marie</i> ,	balneum-Mariae;
<i>un menstrue</i> ,	a menstruum;	<i>le foie</i> ,	the liver;
<i>un parapluie</i> ,	an umbrella;	<i>du pou de saie</i> ,	paduasoy.

7thly, Nouns

OF NOUNS.

11

7thly, Nouns ending in *ance* or *ance*, *ence* or *ence* ; 100.
Except *la silence*, silence. 101.

8thly, Nouns in *aïlle*, *eille*, and *elle* (where not compounded of a verb and noun). 102.

9thly, All nouns in *ace* and *esse*. 103.

10thly, Nouns in *ile* and *ille*, *uille*, *euille*, *isse*, and *ise* or *ize* ; 104.

Except, of those in *ile* and *ille*, 105.

<i>un asile</i> ,	a sanctuary ;	<i>un domicile</i> ,	an abode ;
<i>le cadrille</i> ,	quadrille ;	<i>l'Évangile</i> ,	the GOSPEL ;
<i>le chyle</i> ,	the chyle ;	<i>spadille forcé</i> ,	spadille forced ;
<i>un codicil</i> ,	a codicil ;	<i>un style</i> ,	a style ;
<i>codille</i> ,	a codil ;	<i>un ustensile</i> ,	an utensil ;
<i>un crocodile</i> ,	a crocodile ;	<i>un vaudeville</i> ,	a ballad ;

And of those in *euille*, these compounds ; 106.

<i>du chevre-feuille</i> ,	honey-suckle ;
<i>un porte-feuille</i> ,	a pocket book.

11thly, Nouns ending in 107.

<i>igue</i> ,	} as {	<i>une brigue</i> ,	a cabal ;	} are feminine :
<i>ougue</i> ,		<i>la fougue</i> ,	the fury ;	
<i>oure</i> ,		<i>la bravoure</i> ,	bravery ;	
<i>ine</i> ,		<i>une cuisine</i> ,	a kitchen ;	
<i>une</i> ,		<i>la rancune</i> ,	grudge ;	
<i>ure</i> ,		<i>une ordure</i> ,	filth ;	
<i>ière</i> ,		<i>une tabatière</i> ,	a snuff-box ;	
<i>ire</i> ,		<i>une lyre</i> ,	a lyre ;	

Except from nouns in *ure*, 108.

<i>augure</i> ,	an augury ;	<i>parjure</i> ,	perjury ;
<i>murmure</i> ,	a murmur ;	<i>Colures</i> ,	Coluri :

And, from those in *ire*, 109.

<i>le délire</i> ,	delirium ;	<i>un empire</i> ,	an empire ;
<i>un navire</i> ,	a ship ;	<i>du porphire</i> ,	porphyry.

12thly, These seven consonants, *f*, *b*, *l*, *m*, *n*, *r*, *s*, are feminine ; the other letters of the alphabet are masculine. 110.

SECTION III.

OF CASES.

Cases are different grammatical relations of the noun, and its adjuncts, or representatives, with respect to other words in the sentence wherein they occur.

In

In French, there are four Cases;

The Nominative,	The Dative, and
The Genitive,	The Accusative.

The French Genitive and Dative, like the English, are not distinguished by different terminations, but by the prepositions *de*, *of*; and *à*, *to*.

The Accusative is only to be known by its situation in the sentence.

Of the ARTICLE.

The Article is a particle established to specify the extent of the sense in which the noun is taken.

	Sing. Numb.			Plur. Numb.
	Masc.	Fem.	M.& F.	Masc. & Fem.
N.&A.	<i>le,</i>	<i>la,</i>	<i>l'</i>	<i>les,</i> the;
G.	<i>du,</i>	<i>de la,</i>	<i>de l'</i>	<i>des,</i> of the;
D.	<i>au,</i>	<i>à la,</i>	<i>à l'</i>	<i>aux,</i> to the.

14. The article agrees with the noun in gender and number; the
22. elision of the *e* of the masculine article, and of the *a* of the feminine, is occasioned by the following noun beginning with a vowel or *h* mute.

30. *Du* is for *de le*, *au* for *à le*, *des* for *de les*, and *aux* for *à les*.

Example of a noun masculine beginning with a consonant.

	Singular Number.			Plural.
1. N.&A.	<i>le Prince,</i>	the Prince;	<i>les Princes,</i>	the Princes;
2. Gen.	<i>du Prince,</i>	of the Prince;	<i>des Princes,</i>	of the Princes;
3. Dat.	<i>au Prince,</i>	to the Prince;	<i>aux Princes,</i>	to the Princes.

Example of a noun masculine beginning with *h* aspirate.

4. N.&A.	<i>le héros,</i>	the hero;	<i>les héros,</i>	the heroes;
5. G.	<i>du héros,</i>	of the hero;	<i>des héros,</i>	of the heroes;
6. D.	<i>au héros,</i>	to the hero;	<i>aux héros,</i>	to the heroes.

A noun masculine beginning with a vowel.

7. N.&A.	<i>l'oiseau,</i>	the bird;	<i>les oiseaux,</i>	the birds;
8. G.	<i>de l'oiseau,</i>	of the bird;	<i>des oiseaux,</i>	of the birds;
9. D.	<i>à l'oiseau,</i>	to the bird;	<i>aux oiseaux,</i>	to the birds.

A noun masculine beginning with *h* mute.

10. N.&A.	<i>l'homme,</i>	the man;	<i>les hommes,</i>	the men;
11. G.	<i>de l'homme,</i>	of the man;	<i>des hommes,</i>	of the men;
12. D.	<i>à l'homme,</i>	to the man;	<i>aux hommes,</i>	to the men.

A noun

A noun feminine beginning with a consonant.

Singular Numb.

Plural.

N.&A.	la Princeſſe,	the Princeſs;	les Princeſſes,	the Princeſſes;	13.
G.	de la Princeſſe,	of the Princeſs;	des Princeſſes,	of the Princeſſes;	14.
D.	à la Princeſſe,	to the Princeſs;	aux Princeſſes,	to the Princeſſes.	15.

A noun feminine beginning with a vowel.

N.&A.	l'ame,	the ſoul;	les ames,	the ſouls;	16.
G.	de l'ame,	of the ſoul;	des ames,	of the ſouls;	17.
D.	à l'ame,	to the ſoul;	aux ames,	to the ſouls.	18.

A noun feminine beginning with h aspirate.

N.&A.	la harangue,	the ſpeech;	les harangues,	the ſpeeches;	19.
G.	de la harangue,	of the ſpeech;	des harangues,	of the ſpeeches;	20.
D.	à la harangue,	to the ſpeech;	aux harangues,	to the ſpeeches.	21.

A noun feminine beginning with h mute.

N.&A.	l'habitude,	the habit;	les habitudes,	the habits;	22.
G.	de l'habitude,	of the habit;	des habitudes,	of the habits;	23.
D.	à l'habitude,	to the habit;	aux habitudes,	to the habits.	24.

A noun masculine, taken in a limited or partitive ſenſe, beginning with a conſonant.

N & A.	du pain,	bread;	des pains,	loaves;	25.
Dat.	à du pain,	to bread;	à des pains,	to loaves.	26.

A noun feminine, in a limited ſenſe, beginning with a conſonant.

N.&A.	de la viande,	meat;	des viandes,	meats;	27.
Dat.	à de la viande,	to meat;	à des viandes,	to meats.	28.

A noun masculine, limited, with a vowel.

N.&A.	de l'eſprit,	wit;	des eſprits,	wits;	29.
Dat.	à de l'eſprit,	to wit;	à des eſprits,	to wits.	30.

A noun feminine limited, with a vowel.

N.&A.	de l'eau,	water;	des eaux,	waters;	31.
Dat.	à de l'eau,	to water;	à des eaux,	to waters.	32.

Limited nouns where the adjective preceſſes them.

N.&A.	de bon pain,	good bread;	de bonne viande,	good meat;	33.
Dat.	à de bon pain,	to good bread;	à de bonne viande,	to good meat.	34.

Nouns taking no article before them.

N.&A.	Dieu,	God;	Londres,	London;	Newton,	Newton;	35.
G.	de Dieu,	of God;	de Londres,	of London;	de Newton,	of Newton;	36.
D.	à Dieu,	to God;	à Londres,	to London;	à Newton,	to Newton.	37.

Sing.

	Sing.	Plur.
38. N.&A.	<i>Monsieur</i> , Master or Mr.	<i>Messieurs</i> , Gentlemen;
39. G.	<i>de Monsieur</i> , of Master;	<i>de Messieurs</i> , of Gentlemen;
40. D.	<i>à Monsieur</i> , to Master;	<i>à Messieurs</i> , to Gentlemen.

Nouns declined with the particle *un* and *une*.

41. N.&A.	<i>un Roi</i> , a King;	<i>des Rois</i> , Kings;
42. G.	<i>d'un Roi</i> , of a King;	<i>de Rois</i> , of Kings;
43. D.	<i>à un Roi</i> , to a King;	<i>à des Rois</i> , to Kings.
44. N.&A.	<i>une Reine</i> , a Queen;	<i>des Reines</i> , Queens;
45. G.	<i>d'une Reine</i> , of a Queen;	<i>de Reines</i> , of Queens;
46. D.	<i>à une Reine</i> , to a Queen;	<i>à des Reines</i> , to Queens.

C H A P. II.

Of ADJECTIVES.

THE Adjective is a part of speech, expressing the *qualities* of things, or what they are; as *une belle femme*, a fine woman; *une maison commode*, a convenient house; wherein *belle* and *commode* are adjectives expressing the qualities of the nouns *femme* and *maison*.

Of the Formation of the Feminine Gender of Adjectives.

1. Adjectives ending in *e* not sounded are of both genders; i. e. are the same in masculine and feminine; as,

un honnête homme, an honest man;
une honnête femme, an honest woman:

2. The others, generally speaking, only add *e* not sounded for their feminine gender; as

Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.
<i>grand</i>	<i>grande</i>	<i>savant</i>	<i>savante</i>	<i>aisé</i>	<i>aisée</i>
great;		learned;		easy;	
<i>pris</i>	<i>prise</i>	<i>perdu</i>	<i>perdue</i>	<i>joli</i>	<i>jolie</i>
taken;		lost;		pretty:	

3. Except *béni*, *bénite*, holy; | *favori*, *favorite*, favourite.

☞ *Particular Modifications of the Rule of e not sounded for the feminine.*

4. Observe, 1st, That adjectives ending in *eur* and *eux* change *eur* and *eux* into *euse*; (i. e. change *r* and *x* into *s*, and then take the silent *e*); as,

Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.
<i>railleur</i>	<i>raillieuse</i>	<i>heureux</i>	<i>heureuse</i>
jeering;		happy.	

EXCEPTIONS.

EXCEPTIONS.

Except these eleven, which follow the general rule.

<i>antérieur,</i>	former;	<i>intérieur,</i>	inward;	<i>supérieur,</i>	superior;
<i>postérieur,</i>	latter;	<i>extérieur,</i>	outward;	<i>inférieur,</i>	inferior;
<i>citérieur,</i>	citerior;	<i>majeur,</i>	senior;	<i>meilleur,</i>	better;
<i>ultérieur,</i>	forthmost;	<i>mineur,</i>	junior;		

Except also *vieux*, old, which makes *vieille*, from its old masculine *vieil*, still used before some substantives beginning with a vowel or *b* mute; as *un vieil habit*, an old suit of clothes. It is used with *bomme* only in the evangelical phrase of *dépouiller le vieil homme*, to put off the old man. To express the idea of an old man, in common speech, we use *un vieillard*.

2dly, Adjectives ending with *c*, which are only eight in number, form their feminine, the three first, in changing their final *c* into *ch*, and the five others into *qu*, adding afterwards the silent *e*, agreeable to the general rule; as,

Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.	
<i>blanc,</i>	<i>blanche,</i>	white;	<i>public,</i>	<i>publique,</i> publick;
<i>franc,</i>	<i>franche,</i>	sincere;	<i>Grec,</i>	<i>Grecque,</i> Greek;
<i>sec,</i>	<i>sèche,</i>	dry;	<i>Turc,</i>	<i>Turque,</i> Turkish;
<i>caduc,</i>	<i>caduque,</i>	in decay;	<i>Ammoniac,</i>	<i>Ammoniaque,</i> Ammoniac.

3dly, Adjectives in *f* change it into *v*, before the *e* mute of the feminine; as,

Masc.	Fem.		Masc.	Fem.	
<i>neuf,</i>	<i>neuve,</i>	new;	<i>vif,</i>	<i>vive,</i>	quick, living.

4thly, Of adjectives ending in *l*, those which have *a* or *i* before *l*, follow the general rule:—The others, which have *e*, *u*, or *ei*, before *l*, double that final *l*; as does also *gentil*; as,

Masc.	Fem.		Masc.	Fem.	
<i>cruel</i> ,	<i>cruelle</i> ,	cruel ;	<i>pareil</i> ,	<i>pareille</i> ,	alike.
<i>nul</i> ,	<i>nulle</i> ,	no man ;	<i>gentil</i> ,	<i>gentille</i> ,	genteel.

NOTE.

<i>mou,</i>	soft,	form their	<i>mol,</i>	and, agreeable to the	<i>molle,</i>	15.
<i>fou,</i>	foolish,	feminine	<i>fol,</i>	above rule, they	<i>folle,</i>	16.
<i>beau,</i>	fine,	of their old	<i>bel,</i>	double the final <i>l</i>	<i>belle,</i>	17.
<i>nouveau,</i>	new,	masculine	<i>nouvel,</i>	before the <i>e</i> mute,	<i>nouvelle,</i>	18.

which old masculines are still used before nouns beginning with a vowel, and a silent *b*.

5thly, Adjectives ending in *n*, after *o* and *ie* (*on* and *ien*), double *n* in the feminine; as,

Masc.	Fem.		Masc.	Fem.	
<i>bon,</i>	<i>bonne,</i>	good ;	<i>ancien,</i>	<i>ancienne,</i>	ancient.

6thly, Of adjectives in *s*, those which have *e* or *o* before it, (a few only being excepted, as *secret*, *complet*, *dévoit*,) double *s* in the feminine:

Masc.	Fem.		Masc.	Fem.
<i>net,</i>	<i>nette,</i>	neat;	<i>sot,</i>	<i>sotte,</i>
				foolish.

7thly, These

22. 7thly, These six following double their final *s* before *e*.

Masc. Fem.		Masc. Fem.		Masc. Fem.	
<i>bas, basse,</i>	low ;	<i>épais, épaisse,</i>	thick ;	<i>gros, grosse,</i>	thick ;
<i>expres, expresse, expresé ;</i>		<i>gras, grasse,</i>	fat ;	<i>las, lasse,</i>	tired.

23. 8thly, The following are miscellaneous deviations from the general rule :

	Masc. Fem.		Masc. Fem.	
24. <i>bénin, bénigne,</i>	benign ;	<i>jaloux, jalouse,</i>	jealous ;	
25. <i>malin, maligne,</i>	malignant ;	<i>nud, nue,</i>	naked ;	
26. <i>long, longue,</i>	long ;	<i>verd, verte,</i>	green ;	
27. <i>doux, douce,</i>	sweet ;	<i>To which add these two Participles ;</i>		
28. <i>frais, fraîche,</i>	cool, fresh ;			
29. <i>roux, rousse,</i>	reddish ;			
30. <i>crud, crue,</i>	raw ;	<i>absous, absoute,</i>	absolved ;	
31. <i>faux, fausse,</i>	false ;	<i>dissous, dissoute,</i>	dissolved.	

Of the Comparison* of Adjectives and Adverbs.

As the qualities attributed to one subject, may be supposed to exist in a greater, or less, or equal degree, with respect to the same qualities in another subject, hence have arisen what grammarians call the *three* degrees of comparison, the *positive*, the *comparative*, and the *superlative*.

1. 1. The simple adjective, expressing only the existence of a particular quality in the subject, is called *positive* ; as *sage*, wise, *beau*, handsome ; *méchant*, bad, &c.
2. 2. The quality of one thing compared with that of another, and affirmed to equal it, or exceed it, or fall short of it, is called *comparative* ; as, *aussi sage que lui*, as wise as he ; *plus beau qu'elle*, handsomer than she ; *moins méchant qu'eux*, less wicked than they.
3. 3. The quality of a thing affirmed in the highest degree is called *superlative*, which is either absolute, as *très-sage*, most wise ; *fort beau*, very handsome ; *bien méchant*, very bad ; or *relative*, as *le plus sage*, *le plus beau*, & *le plus méchant de tous*, the wisest, the handsomest, and the wickedest of all.
4. 4. The comparative of adjectives is expressed in French by these particles prefixed to them ; *plus*, more ; *moins*, less ; *aussi*, *si* (as, so) ; *tant*, *autant* (so much, so many, as much, as many) ; and *mieux*, better ; before participles : as, *aussi sage que lui*, *plus beau qu'elle*, *moins méchant qu'eux*, *mieux fait*, better made : — *Il n'est pas si grand qu'elle*, he is not so tall as she.

Elle n'a pas tant d'esprit que sa sœur, mais elle a autant de vivacité, & elle est aussi aimable. | She has not so much wit as her sister, but she has as much life, and is as amiable.

And

And for denoting the highest or lowest degree of the quality, 5:
we put one of these adverbs of excess before it; as, *très*, most;
bien, *fort*, very; *infiniment*, *extrêmement*, *prodigieusement* (ex- 6.
tremely, vastly, mightily): or, if the superlative is relative, 7.
we put the article before the comparative particles, which
article we make agree in number and gender with the noun;
as,

Masc.	Fem.
<i>le plus sage</i> ,	<i>la plus sage</i> , the wisest;
<i>le mieux fait</i> ,	<i>la mieux faite</i> , the best made;
<i>le moins mauvais</i> ,	<i>les moins mauvaises</i> , the least bad.

Three adjectives only, in French, denote by themselves the 8.
degrees of comparison; *meilleur*, better; *pire*, worse; and *moins*-
dre, less.

Meilleur is the comparative of *bon*, good; and its superlative 9.
is formed by putting the article before its comparative; as,

Positive,	<i>bon</i> , good;
Comparative,	<i>meilleur</i> , better;
Superlative,	<i>le meilleur</i> , the best.

After the same manner, *mauvais*, bad, has for its compara- 10.
tive, *pire*, worse; and for its superlative, *le pire*, the worst.

And *petit*, little; comp. *moindre*, less; and superl. *le moindre*, 11.
the least.

Although these two last form their comparatives and super- 12.
latives, also, with *plus* and *le plus*,

It is to be observed, that the pronominal adjective has the 13.
same effect as the article, in making the superlative degree;
as, *mon meilleur ami* expressing the same idea as *le meilleur de mes*
amis, the best of my friends.

Adverbs increase or decrease also in their signification; 14.
très-sagement, very wisely; *le plus subtilement qu'on puisse ima-*
giner, with the greatest subtilty imaginable.

These three form their comparative and superlative irregularly: 15.

Positive.	Comp.	Superl.
<i>bon</i> , well;	<i>mieux</i> , better;	<i>le mieux</i> , the best.
<i>mal</i> , ill;	<i>pis</i> , <i>plus mal</i> , worse;	<i>le pis</i> , <i>le plus mal</i> , the worst.
<i>petit</i> , little;	<i>moins</i> , less;	<i>le moins</i> , the least.

NOTE.

Bien denotes either the quality or quantity:—In the former sense, its comparative 19.
mieux; if in the latter, it is *plus*:—as, *bien fait*, well made; *mieux fait*, better 20.
made;—*bien fatigué*, much fatigued; *plus fatigué*, more fatigued.

These two adjectives, *prochain* and *voisin*, next, near, can be used only in the 21.
positive, and never in the comparative or superlative. These are supplied by the
comparative and superlative of the other adjective, *proche*, near; *plus proche*, nearer;

22. *le plus proche*, the nearest; instead of *plus prochain*, &c. *plus voisin*, &c.—However, *voisin* may well take *fort* or *trap* before it: as, *nous sommes fort voisins*, we are very near one another; *nos maisons sont trop voisines*, our houses are too near to one another.
23. There are, besides, six other words of a superlative form and signification, which end in *issime*, in direct imitation of the *Latin* superlative: as, *sérénissime*, most serene; *éminentissime*, most eminent; *révérendissime*, most reverend; *illustrissime*, most illustrious; *généralissime*, generalissimo; and *savantissime*, most learned.—This last is rather a burlesque word.

C H A P. III.

Of PRONOUNS.

PRONOUNS, as their name implies, stand in the place of nouns, to avoid tautology, and obscurity, in consequence of the frequent repetition of the same name.

There are four sorts of Pronouns;

The personal,		The demonstrative, and
The relative,		The indeterminate.

Of PRONOUNS Personal.

Pronouns *personal* are of five kinds:

1st. Pronouns of the first Person.

	Sing. Number.		Plur. Number.	
1. Nom.	<i>Je, moi,</i>	I;	<i>Nous,</i>	we
2. Gen.	<i>de moi,</i>	of me;	<i>de nous,</i>	of us
3. Dat.	<i>à moi, moi, me,</i>	to me;	<i>à nous, nous,</i>	to us
4. Acc.	<i>me, moi,</i>	me;	<i>nous,</i>	us

2d. Pronouns of the second Person.

5. Nom.	<i>Tu, toi,</i>	thou;	<i>Vous,</i>	ye, you
6. Gen.	<i>de toi,</i>	of thee;	<i>de vous,</i>	of you
7. Dat.	<i>à toi, toi, te,</i>	to thee;	<i>à vous, vous,</i>	to you
8. Acc.	<i>te, toi,</i>	thee;	<i>vous,</i>	you

3d. Pronouns of the third Person, masculine.

9. Nom.	<i>Il, lui,</i>	he, it;	<i>Ils, eux,</i>	they
10. Gen.	<i>de lui,</i>	of him, of it;	<i>d'eux,</i>	of them
11. Dat.	<i>à lui, lui,</i>	to him, to it;	<i>à eux, leur,</i>	to them
12. Acc.	<i>le, lui,</i>	him, it;	<i>les, eux,</i>	them

4th. Pronouns of the third Person, feminine.

13. Nom.	<i>Elle,</i>	—she, it;	<i>Elles,</i>	they
14. Gen.	<i>d'elle,</i>	of her, of it;	<i>d'elles,</i>	of them
15. Dat.	<i>à elle, lui,</i>	to her, to it;	<i>à elles, leur,</i>	to them
16. Acc.	<i>la, elle,</i>	her, it;	<i>les, elles,</i>	them

5th. Pronouns

5th. Pronouns of the third Person, indeterminate.

Nom.	On, soi;	one's self;	17.
Gen.	de soi,	of one's self;	18.
Dat.	à soi, se,	to one's self;	19.
Acc.	se, soi,	one's self.	20.

From the pronouns personal are derived some *pronominal Adjectives*, called also *possessive*, as they imply *possession*.

These pronominals are of *two* kinds;

The *absolute*, and the *relative*.

1. *Pronominal adjectives absolute* always come before the noun which they qualify, doing the office of the article: They are *fix* in number.

	Masc. Fem. Plur.	M. & F.	
I. & A.	{ mon, ma, mes,	my;	{ Gen. de mon, de ma, de mes; 21.
	{ ton, ta, tes,	thy;	{ Dat. à mon, à ma, à mes, 22.
	{ son, sa, ses,	his, her, its;	{ &c. &c. 23.
I. & A.	{ notre, nos,	our;	{ Gen. de notre, de nos, of our; 24.
	{ votre, vos,	your;	{ Dat. à notre, à nos, to our; 25.
	{ leur, leurs,	their;	{ &c. &c. 26.

2. *Pronominal adjectives relative* are so called, because that, not being joined to their noun, they suppose it either expressed before, or understood, and are related to it. They are also *fix*, which answer to the pronominal adjectives absolute, and take the article.

	Sing. Masc. Fem.	Plur. Masc. Fem.	
I. & A.	{ le mien, la mienne,	les miens, les miennes,	mine;
	{ le tien, la tienne,	les tiens, les tiennes,	thine;
	{ le sien, la sienne,	les siens, les siennes,	his, hers;
			Masc. & Fem.
I. & A.	{ le nôtre, la nôtre,	les nôtres,	ours;
	{ le vôtre, la vôtre,	les vôtres,	yours;
	{ le leur, la leur,	les leurs,	theirs;
			Gen. du mien, 28.
			de la mienne, 29.
			des miens, 30.
			des miennes, 30.
			of mine, &c.
			Gen. du nôtre, de la nôtre, 31.
			des nôtres; 32.
			Dat. au nôtre, à la nôtre, 32.
			aux nôtres, &c. 33.

Of PRONOUNS Relative.

Pronouns relative are so called, because they refer to some antecedent noun or pronoun personal; and to which they are in *so* nearly related, that without them they have no precise signification.

There are *four* pronouns relative, *qui*, *lequel*, *quoi*, and *le*. — *Qui*, *quoi*, and *le*, are of both genders and numbers, and take

no article; but *lequel* does, and admits of a variation of gender and number.

1. N.		<i>qui,</i>	who, that;		<i>quoi, que,</i>	what;
2. G.		<i>de qui, dont,</i>	of whom, whose;		<i>de quoi, dont,</i>	of what;
3. D.		<i>à qui,</i>	to whom;		<i>à quoi,</i>	to what;
4. A.		<i>que, qui,</i>	whom, that;		<i>que, quoi,</i>	what.
5.		N. & A.		<i>le,</i>	him, it;	
6.		Gen.		<i>en,</i>	of him, her, it, them;	
7.		Dat.		<i>y,</i>	to him, her, it, them.	

Sing. Masc. Fem. Plur. Masc. Fem.

8. N. & A.		<i>lequel, laquelle, lesquels, lesquelles,</i>	which;
9. Gen.		<i>duquel, de laquelle, desquels, desquelles, dont,</i>	of which, whose;
10. Dat.		<i>auquel, à laquelle, auxquels, auxquelles,</i>	to which.

11. These pronouns, excepting *le*, are *interrogative*, to which we may add *quel*, another pronominal adjective, which is never used without a noun or pronoun after it: as,

Quel est cet homme-là ? Who is that man ?

Quels sont-ils ? Quelles sont-elles ? Who or What are they ?

12. It is declined precisely as *lequel*, only dropping the article, of which *lequel* is compounded; [*lé-quel, la-quelle, &c.*]

Of PRONOUNS Demonstrative.

These are so called, principally from their precisely demonstrating or shewing the object designed by the noun they precede or represent.

13. The pronoun *ce*, from which they are all derived, is used before nouns masculine *with a consonant* or *h aspirate*:—before
14. nouns masculine beginning *with a vowel* or *h mute*, it takes *s*, and becomes *cet*:—It is thus declined:

	Sing. Masc.	Fem.	Plur. M. & F.
15. N. & A.		<i>ce, or cet, cette,</i>	this or that; <i>ces,</i> these or those;
16. Gen.		<i>de ce, cet, de cette,</i>	of this, that; <i>de ces,</i> of these, those;
17. Dat.		<i>à ce, cet, à cette,</i>	to this, that; <i>à ces,</i> to these, those.

	Sing. Masc.	Fem.	Plur. Masc. Fem.
18. N. & A.		<i>celui, he or that; celle, she or that;</i>	<i>ceux, celles,</i> they or those;
19. Gen.		<i>de celui, of him; de celle, of her;</i>	<i>de ceux, de celles,</i> of them;
20. Dat.		<i>à celui, to him; à celle, to her;</i>	<i>à ceux, à celles,</i> to them.

21. N. & A.		<i>celui-ci, celle-ci,</i>	this; <i>ceux-ci, celles-ci,</i> these;
22. Gen.		<i>de celui-ci, de celle-ci,</i>	of this; <i>de ceux-ci, de celles-ci,</i> of these;
23. Dat.		<i>à celui-ci, à celle-ci,</i>	to this; <i>à ceux-ci, à celles-ci,</i> to these.

24. N. & A.		<i>celui-là, celle-là,</i>	that; <i>ceux-là, celles-là,</i> those;
25. Gen.		<i>de celui-là, de celle-là,</i>	of that; <i>de ceux-là, de celles-là,</i> of those;
26. Dat.		<i>à celui-là, à celle-là,</i>	to that; <i>à ceux-là, à celles-là,</i> to those.

Sing.

	Sing. Masc.	Fem.	Plur. Masc.	Fem.
N. & A.	<i>ceci, this;</i>	<i>cela, that;</i>	<i>ce qui, ce que,</i>	<i>which, that which, what;</i>
Gen.	<i>de ceci, of this;</i>	<i>de cela, of that;</i>	<i>de ce qui, de ce que,</i>	<i>of which, that, &c.</i>
Dat.	<i>à ceci, to this;</i>	<i>à cela, to that;</i>	<i>à ce qui, à ce que,</i>	<i>to which, that, &c.</i>

Of PRONOUNS Indeterminate.

They are called *indeterminate*, because they denote their object rather in a vague, indeterminate manner.

	Masc.	Fem.	
N. & A.	<i>chacun,</i>	<i>chacune,</i>	<i>every body, or each one;</i>
Gen.	<i>de chacun,</i>	<i>de chacune,</i>	<i>of every body, or each one;</i>
Dat.	<i>à chacun,</i>	<i>à chacune,</i>	<i>to every body, or each one.</i>
	Sing. Masc.	Fem.	
N. & A.	<i>quelqu'un,</i>	<i>quelqu'une,</i>	<i>somebody, or some one;</i>
Gen.	<i>de quelqu'un,</i>	<i>de quelqu'une,</i>	<i>of somebody, or some one;</i>
Dat.	<i>à quelqu'un,</i>	<i>à quelqu'une,</i>	<i>to somebody, or some one.</i>
	Plur. Masc.	Fem.	
N. & A.	<i>quelques-uns,</i>	<i>quelques-unes,</i>	<i>some ones;</i>
Gen.	<i>de quelques-uns,</i>	<i>de quelques-unes,</i>	<i>of some ones;</i>
Dat.	<i>à quelques-uns,</i>	<i>à quelques-unes,</i>	<i>to some ones.</i>
	Sing. Masc.	Fem.	
N. & A.	<i>aucun,</i>	<i>aucune,</i>	<i>nobody, or none;</i>
Gen.	<i>d'aucun,</i>	<i>d'aucune,</i>	<i>of nobody, or none;</i>
Dat.	<i>à aucun,</i>	<i>à aucune,</i>	<i>to nobody, or none.</i>
	Sing. Masc.	Fem.	
N. & A.	<i>nul,</i>	<i>nulle,</i>	<i>none, or nobody;</i>
Gen.	<i>de nul,</i>	<i>de nulle,</i>	<i>of none, or nobody;</i>
Dat.	<i>à nul,</i>	<i>à nulle,</i>	<i>to none, or nobody.</i>
	Sing. Masc.	Fem.	
N. & A.	<i>pas un,</i>	<i>pas une,</i>	<i>not one, or nobody;</i>
Gen.	<i>de pas un,</i>	<i>de pas une,</i>	<i>of not one, or nobody;</i>
Dat.	<i>à pas un,</i>	<i>à pas une,</i>	<i>to not one, or nobody.</i>
	Sing. Masc.	Fem.	
N. & A.	<i>l'un l'autre,</i>	<i>l'une l'autre,</i>	<i>one another;</i>
Gen.	<i>l'un de l'autre,</i>	<i>l'une de l'autre,</i>	<i>of one another;</i>
Dat.	<i>l'un à l'autre,</i>	<i>l'une à l'autre,</i>	<i>to one another.</i>
	Plur. Masc.	Fem.	
N. & A.	<i>les uns les autres,</i>	<i>les unes les autres,</i>	<i>one another;</i>
Gen.	<i>les uns des autres,</i>	<i>les unes des autres,</i>	<i>of one another;</i>
Dat.	<i>les uns aux autres,</i>	<i>les unes aux autres,</i>	<i>to one another.</i>
	Sing. Masc.	Fem.	
N. & A.	<i>l'un & l'autre,</i>	<i>l'une & l'autre,</i>	<i>both;</i>
Gen.	<i>de l'un & de l'autre,</i>	<i>de l'une & de l'autre,</i>	<i>of both;</i>
Dat.	<i>à l'un & à l'autre,</i>	<i>à l'une & à l'autre,</i>	<i>to both.</i>

A C C I D E N C E.

	Plur. Masc.	Fem.	
28. N. & A.	<i>les uns & les autres,</i>	<i>les unes & les autres,</i>	both ;
29. Gen.	<i>des uns & des autres,</i>	<i>des unes & des autres,</i>	of both ;
30. Dat.	<i>aux uns & aux autres,</i>	<i>aux unes & aux autres,</i>	to both.

	Sing. Masc.	Fem.	
31. N. & A.	<i>l'un ou l'autre,</i>	<i>l'une ou l'autre,</i>	either ;
32. Gen.	<i>de l'un ou de l'autre,</i>	<i>de l'une ou de l'autre,</i>	of either ;
33. Dat.	<i>à l'un ou à l'autre,</i>	<i>à l'une ou à l'autre,</i>	to either.

	Plur. Masc.	Fem.	
34. N. & A.	<i>les uns ou les autres,</i>	<i>les unes ou les autres,</i>	either ;
35. Gen.	<i>des uns ou des autres,</i>	<i>des unes ou des autres,</i>	of either ;
36. Dat.	<i>aux uns ou aux autres,</i>	<i>aux unes ou aux autres,</i>	to either.

	Sing. Masc.	Fem.	
37. N. & A.	<i>ni l'un ni l'autre,</i>	<i>ni l'une ni l'autre,</i>	neither ;
38. Gen.	<i>ni de l'un ni de l'autre,</i>	<i>ni de l'une ni de l'autre,</i>	of neither ;
39. Dat.	<i>ni à l'un ni à l'autre,</i>	<i>ni à l'une ni à l'autre,</i>	to neither.

	Plur. Masc.	Fem.	
40. N. & A.	<i>ni les uns ni les autres,</i>	<i>ni les unes ni les autres,</i>	neither ;
41. Gen.	<i>ni des uns ni des autres,</i>	<i>ni des unes ni des autres,</i>	of neither ;
42. Dat.	<i>ni aux uns ni aux autres,</i>	<i>ni aux unes ni aux autres,</i>	to neither.

	Sing. Masc.	Fem.	Plur. Masc.	Fem.	
43. N. & A.	<i>tout,</i>	<i>toute,</i>	<i>tous,</i>	<i>toutes,</i>	all, or every thing ;
44. Gen.	<i>de tout,</i>	<i>de toute,</i>	<i>de tous,</i>	<i>de toutes,</i>	of all, or every thing ;
45. Dat.	<i>à tout,</i>	<i>à toute,</i>	<i>à tous,</i>	<i>à toutes,</i>	to all, or every thing.

These two are of the Singular number only, and both Genders.

46. N. & A.	<i>quiconque,</i>	any body ;	<i>personne,</i>	nobody ;
47. Gen.	<i>de quiconque,</i>	of any body ;	<i>de personne,</i>	of nobody ;
48. Dat.	<i>à quiconque,</i>	to any body.	<i>à personne,</i>	to nobody.

These are likewise of both Genders.

49. N. & A.	<i>plusieurs,</i>	many ;	<i>rien,</i>	nothing ;
50. Gen.	<i>de plusieurs,</i>	of many ;	<i>de rien,</i>	of nothing ;
51. Dat.	<i>à plusieurs,</i>	to many.	<i>à rien,</i>	to nothing.

C H A P. IV.

O F N U M B E R S.

NUMBERS are a species of quality, by which we arrange and reckon the things and actions spoken of:—They are of five sorts; namely, *Cardinal*, *Ordinal*, *Collective*, *Distributive*, and *Multiplicative*.

Cardinal

OF NUMBERS.

Cardinal Numbers are such as these that follow :

<i>Un,</i>	One,	1.	I.
<i>Deux,</i>	Two,	2.	II.
<i>Trois,</i>	Three,	3.	III.
<i>Quatre,</i>	Four,	4.	IV.
<i>Cinq (q is founded),</i>	Five,	5.	V.
<i>Six (pron. <i>sifs</i>),</i>	Six,	6.	VI.
<i>Sept (pron. <i>set</i>),</i>	Seven,	7.	VII.
<i>Huit,</i>	Eight,	8.	VIII.
<i>Neuf,</i>	Nine,	9.	IX.
<i>Dix (pron. <i>difs</i>),</i>	Ten,	10.	X.
<i>Onze,</i>	Eleven,	11.	XI.
<i>Douze,</i>	Twelve,	12.	XII.
<i>Treize,</i>	Thirteen,	13.	XIII.
<i>Quatorze,</i>	Fourteen,	14.	XIV.
<i>Quinze,</i>	Fifteen,	15.	XV.
<i>Seize (sei is broad),</i>	Sixteen,	16.	XVI.
<i>Dix-sept (pron. <i>difs-set</i>),</i>	Seventeen,	17.	XVII.
<i>Dix-huit (pron. <i>dix-uit</i>),</i>	Eighteen,	18.	XVIII.
<i>Dix-neuf (pron. <i>dix-neuf</i>),</i>	Nineteen,	19.	XIX.
<i>Vingt (gt are dropped),</i>	Twenty,	20.	XX.
<i>Vingt & un,</i>	One and Twenty,	21.	XXI.
<i>Vingt-deux (g is dropped, t is founded),</i>	Two and Twenty,	22.	XXII.
<i>Vingt-trois,</i>	Three and Twenty,	23.	XXIII.
<i>Vingt-quatre,</i>	Four and Twenty,	24.	XXIV.
<i>Vingt-cinq,</i>	Five and Twenty,	25.	XXV.
<i>Vingt-six,</i>	Six and Twenty,	26.	XXVI.
<i>Vingt-sept,</i>	Seven and Twenty,	27.	XXVII.
<i>Vingt-huit,</i>	Eight and Twenty,	28.	XXVIII.
<i>Vingt-neuf,</i>	Nine and Twenty,	29.	XXIX.
<i>Trente,</i>	Thirty,	30.	XXX.
<i>Trente & un,</i>	Thirty-one,	31.	XXXI.
<i>Trente-deux, &c.</i>	Thirty-two, &c.	32. &c.	XXXII, &c.
<i>Quarante,</i>	Forty,	40.	XL.
<i>Cinquante,</i>	Fifty,	50.	L.
<i>Soixante (pron. <i>soissante</i>),</i>	Sixty,	60.	LX.
<i>Soixante & un,</i>	Sixty-one,	61.	LXI.

<i>Soixante & deux,</i> &c.	} Sixty-two, &c.	62, &c. LXII, &c.
<i>Soixante & dix,</i>	Seventy,	70. LXX.
<i>Soixante & onze,</i>	Seventy-one,	71. LXXI.
<i>Soixante & douze,</i> &c.	} Seventy-two, &c.	72, &c. LXXII, &c.
<i>Quatre - vingts</i> (gts are dropped, and in the following two),	} Eighty,	80. LXXX.
<i>Quatre-vingt-un,</i>	Eighty-one,	81. LXXXI.
<i>Quatre-vingt-deux,</i> &c.	} Eighty-two, &c.	{ 82, &c. LXXXII, &c.
<i>Quatre-vingt-dix,</i>	Ninety,	90. XC.
<i>Quatre-vingt-onze,</i> &c.	} Ninety-one, &c.	91, &c. XCI, &c.
<i>Cent,</i>	an Hundred,	100. C.
<i>Cent-un,</i> &c.	an Hundred and one,	101. CI, &c.
<i>Cent-vingt,</i>	an Hundred & Twenty,	120. CXX.
<i>Cent-vingt & un,</i> &c.	} an Hundred & Twenty one,	{ 121, &c. CXXI.
<i>Cent-trente,</i> &c.	an Hundred & Thirty,	130, &c. CXXX, &c.
<i>Deux Cens</i> (x is dropped, and the final consonants in the following also),	} Two Hundred,	200. CC.
<i>Trois Cens,</i>	Three Hundred,	300. CCC.
<i>Quatre Cens,</i>	Four Hundred,	400. CD.
<i>Cinq Cens,</i>	Five Hundred,	500. D. or I ^o .
<i>Six Cens,</i>	Six Hundred,	600. DC.
<i>Sept Cens,</i>	Seven Hundred,	700. DCC.
<i>Huit Cens,</i>	Eight Hundred,	800. DCCC.
<i>Neuf Cens,</i>	Nine Hundred,	900. CM. or DCCCC.
<i>Mille,</i>	a Thousand,	1000. M. or CI ^o .
<i>Deux Mille,</i>	Two Thousand,	2000. II CI ^o . or II. M.
<i>Trois Mille,</i>	Three Thousand,	3000. III. M.
<i>Quatre Mille,</i>	Four Thousand,	4000. IV. M.
<i>Cinq Mille,</i>	Five Thousand,	5000. V. M.
<i>Six Mille,</i>	Six Thousand,	6000. VI. M.
<i>Sept Mille,</i>	Seven Thousand,	7000. VII. M.
<i>Huit Mille,</i>	Eight Thousand,	8000. VIII. M.
<i>Neuf Mille,</i>	Nine Thousand,	9000. IX. M.

Dix Mille,

10000.

Vingt Mille,

20000.

Trente Mille,

30000.

Quarante Mille,

40000.

Cinquante Mille,

50000.

Cent Mille,

100000.

Deux Cens Mille,

200000.

Cinq Cens Mille,

500000.

Un Million,

1000000.

Ten Thousand,

XM. or CCI⁰⁰. or XCI⁰.

Twenty Thousand,

XXCI⁰.

Thirty Thousand,

XXXCI⁰.

Forty Thousand,

XLCI⁰.

Fifty Thousand,

I⁰⁰⁰.

an Hundred Thousand,

CCCI⁰⁰⁰.

Two Hundred Thousand,

CC. M. or CC. 00.

Five Hundred Thousand,

DM. or D. 00.

a Million,

CCCCI⁰⁰⁰⁰.

Ordinal Numbers denote the order and rank of things : such are,

le Premier,

1^{er}.

the First,

1st.

le Second, le Deuxième,

2^e.

the Second,

2^d.

le Troisième,

3^e.

the Third,

3^d.

le Quatrième,

4^e.

the Fourth,

4th.

le Cinquième,

5^e.

the Fifth,

5th.

le Sixième,

6^e.

the Sixth,

6th.

le Septième,

7^e.

the Seventh,

7th.

le Huitième,

8^e.

the Eighth,

8th.

le Neuvième,

9^e.

the Ninth,

9th.

le Dixième,

10^e.

the Tenth,

10th.

le Onzième,

11^e.

the Eleventh,

11th.

le Douzième,

12^e.

the Twelfth,

12th.

le Treizième,

13^e.

the Thirteenth,

13th.

le Quatorzième,

14^e.

the Fourteenth,

14th.

le Quinzième,

15^e.

the Fifteenth,

15th.

le Seizième,

16^e.

the Sixteenth,

16th.

le Dix-septième,

17^e.

the Seventeenth,

17th.

le Dix-huitième,

18^e.

the Eighteenth,

18th.

le Dix-neuvième,

19^e.

the Nineteenth,

19th.

le Vingtième,

20^e.

the Twentieth,

20th.

le Vingt & unième,

the Twenty-first.

le Vingt-deuxième, &c.

the Twenty-second, &c.

le Trentième,

the Thirtieth.

le Quarantième,
le Cinquantième,
le Soixantième,
le Soixante & dixième,
le Quatre-vingtième,
le Quatre-vingt-dixième,
le Centième,
le Cent-cinquantième,
le Deux-centième,
le Millièmè,

the Fortieth.
 the Fiftieth.
 the Sixtieth.
 the Seventieth.
 the Eightieth.
 the Ninetieth.
 the Hundredth.
 the Hundred and Fiftieth.
 the Two Hundredth.
 the Thousandth.

Collective Numbers denote a plurality of things expressed by a denomination of the singular number. Such are,

<i>Un tercet,</i>	a stanza of three verses;
<i>une tierce,</i>	a tierce, a sequence of three cards;
<i>un tricon,</i>	a trial or pair-royal;
<i>un quatrain,</i>	a quatrain, a stanza of four verses;
<i>une quarte,</i>	a quart, a fourth;
<i>un sixain (pron. sixain),</i>	a stanza of six verses, also six packs of cards;
<i>un huitain,</i>	a stanza of eight verses;
<i>une huitaine,</i>	eight days together;
<i>un huitième,</i>	the eighth part;
<i>une huitième,</i>	a sequence of eight cards;
<i>une octave,</i>	an octave, a stanza of eight verses, &c.
<i>une neuvaine,</i>	a novena, a nine days devotion;
<i>un neuvième,</i>	a ninth part or day;
<i>un dizain,</i>	a stanza of ten verses;
<i>une dixaine,</i>	ten, tithing;
<i>un dixième,</i>	a tenth;
<i>une douzaine,</i>	a dozen;
<i>une demi-douzaine,</i>	half a dozen;
<i>un quinzain,</i>	terms of tennis-court, fifteen all;
<i>une quinzaine,</i>	fifteen things;
<i>une quinte,</i>	a quint, fifth, or quintal;
<i>une vingtaine,</i>	a score or twenty;
<i>un vingtième,</i>	a twentieth part;
<i>une trentaine,</i>	thirty;
<i>un trentain,</i>	terms of tennis-court, thirty all;
<i>une quarantaine,</i>	forty, quarantain;
<i>une cinquantaine,</i>	fifty;
<i>une soixantaine,</i>	the number of sixty;
<i>une centaine,</i>	an hundred;
<i>un millier,</i>	a thousand;

un million, a million;
 un milliart, ten hundred thousand millions;
 une milliaffe (a term of con- } thousands and thousands, a vast
 tempt or of familiarity), } number.

Armée, an army; *peuple*, people; &c. are also collective nouns; but they differ from the numbers in this, that they indicate no quantum.

Distributive Numbers are those that express the parts of a totum or whole divided; as *la moitié*, the half; *le tiers*, *le quart*, &c. the third or fourth part.

Multiplicative Numbers, also called *Proportional*, indicate an increase both of number and quantity; as *le double*, double; *le triple*, treble; *le centuple*, an hundred fold.

C H A P. V.

OF VERBS.

A VERB expresses *being*, *doing*, or *suffering*.

Verbs are either *active*, *neuter*, or *passive*; to which may be added the *reflected* verb, which is a species of French verb, something similar to the Greek middle verb, and the Hebrew conjugation of *Hithpael*.

1. The action of an *active* verb refers to an object distinct from the agent:—*Il a reçu des lettres*; where *lettres* is the object, and *il* the agent, of the verb active *a reçu*, and they are totally distinct:—(*He has received some letters*).

2. In a *neuter* verb, the agent and the object are the same; such verbs therefore take no case after them, immediately governed by themselves: as, *Je dors*, I sleep, which is a neuter verb; the object and agent of the *sleeping* being the same; namely, *I myself*.

3. In a *passive* verb, the agent becomes the object, and suffers, instead of doing, the action it describes: as, *Des lettres ont été reçues par lui*;—where *lui*, &c. the former agent, under the example of the active verb, becomes the object; and *les lettres*, the former object, becomes the agent of the verb, now made *passive*; (*Some letters have been received by him*.)

NOTE.

The Passive in French being intirely formed by the auxiliary (*être*) and the participle past, it is useless to set down the conjugation of passive verbs, and therefore they will be wholly omitted.

4. The

4. The *reflected* verb has, like the neuter verb, *its object and subject in one and the same person or thing*; but then *this reciprocal relation is always expressed by a pronoun, representing the agent of the verb, and standing itself as its object*. Sometimes the idiom of the English language will admit that the reflected force of the verb should be literally expressed; at other times it is lost in the translation, which assumes either a neuter or passive form, as circumstances may be: thus, *Je me blesse*, we render literally, *I hurt myself*; but *Je me plains*, we render by the verb *I complain*, which is *neuter*;—and for the expression *Il se donna de grandes batailles* (which is the same as *de grandes batailles se donnèrent*), we say, *great battles were fought*.

We must distinguish in verbs, their Moods, Tenses, Numbers, and Persons.

1st. Of MOODS.

By *moods*, we mean the different modes or manners of applying the energy of the verb, either directly or indirectly, positively or conditionally, or in a sense indeterminate and unspecified.

Verbs have *four Moods*, the *Infinitive*, the *Indicative*, the *Subjunctive*, and the *Imperative*.

1. The *Infinitive* expresses simply the energy of the verb, without a reference to agent, or time; and is the root of the verb: as *aimer*, to love.

2. The *Indicative* declares directly the energy of the verb, with reference both to agent and time; as, *Je fais*, I do; *je fis*, I did; *je ferai*, I will do.

3. The *Subjunctive indirectly and conditionally* expresses the energy of the verb; being, as it were, *subjoined* to some other indicative verb, on which it is grammatically dependant; or under the regimen of some conjunction which governs it:—*Il faut que je fasse*, it is *necessary* that I *should* do (*i. e.* I must do); *afin qu'il vienne*, that he may come.

4. The *Imperative* commands, desires, intreats, or exhorts: as, *faites cela*, do that; *qu'il parle*, let him speak.

2d. Of TENSES, NUMBERS, and PERSONS.

Tenses are the periods of time in which the energy of the verb is transacted and exhibited.

The grand divisions of the *Tenses* are three; the *present*, *past*, and *future*.

These are again subdivided by grammatical refinement; as we shall hereafter see.

Each

Each tense has two numbers, the singular and the plural; and each number, three persons. The first person is the speaker, expressed by *je*, I, for the singular, and *nous*, we, for the plural. The second person is spoken to, expressed by *tu*, thou, and *vous*, you or ye. The third person is spoken of, and is expressed by *il*, he, for the singular masculine; *ils*, they, for the plural; *elle*, she, for the singular feminine; *elles*, they, for the plural; or *on*, or some noun; which noun always demands the third person, and regulates the number of the verb by its own.

In French, as in English, the second person plural (*vous*) is used instead of the second person singular (*tu*): as, *vous êtes sage & prudent*, or *belle & vertueuse*, you are wise and prudent, or beautiful and virtuous.

In the Indicative mood, there are ten Tenses, of which five are simple, and five compound.

The Present,	} which are simple Tenses;
The Imperfect,	
The Preterite,	
The Future,	
The Conditional,	

And

The Compound of the Present,
 The Compound of the Imperfect,
 The Compound of the Preterite,
 The Compound of the Future,
 The Compound of the Conditional.

The Subjunctive has four Tenses, two whereof are likewise the compounds of the two first:

The Present,	} and {	The Compound of the Present,
The Preterite;		The Compound of the Preterite.

There being in French ten sorts of verbs, which have different terminations in their Infinitive, the regular verbs will be divided into ten conjugations: and as those verbs form their compound tenses from the auxiliary verbs *avoir*, to have, and *être*, to be, with them we shall begin, and recommend them particularly to the attention of the learner.

A V O I R.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present Tense	— — —	<i>avoir</i> ,	to have.	1.
Gerund	— — —	<i>ayant</i> ,	having.	2.
Participle	— — —	<i>eu</i> ,	had.	3.
Compound of the Present	—	<i>avoir eu</i> ,	to have had.	4.
Compound of the Gerund	—	<i>ayant eu</i> ,	having had.	5.

INDICATIVE.

INDICATIVE.

Present.

First Persons.

Second Persons.

Third Persons.

6. S. <i>J'ai</i> , I have.	<i>tu as</i> , thou hast.	<i>il a</i> , he has.
7. P. <i>Nous avons</i> , we have.	<i>vous avez</i> , ye or you have.	<i>ils ont</i> , they have.

Imperfect Tense.

8. S. <i>J'avois</i> , I had.	<i>tu avois</i> , thou hadst.	<i>il avoit</i> , he had.
9. P. <i>Nous avions</i> , we had.	<i>vous aviez</i> , ye or you had.	<i>ils avoient</i> , they had.

Preterite Tense.

10. S. <i>J'eus</i> , I had.	<i>tu eus</i> , thou hadst.	<i>il eut</i> , he had.
11. P. <i>Nous eumes</i> , we had.	<i>vous eutes</i> , ye or you had.	<i>ils eurent</i> , they had.

Future Tense.

12. S. <i>J'aurai</i> , I shall or will have.	<i>tu auras</i> , thou shalt or wilt have.	<i>il aura</i> , he shall or will have.
13. P. <i>Nous aurons</i> , we shall or will have.	<i>vous aurez</i> , ye or you shall or will have.	<i>ils auront</i> , they shall or will have.

Conditional Tense.

14. S. <i>J'aurais</i> , I would, could, should, or might have.	<i>tu aurois</i> , thou wouldst, couldst, shouldst, or mightst have.	<i>il auroit</i> , he would, could, should, or might have.
15. P. <i>Nous aurions</i> , we would, could, should, or might have.	<i>vous auriez</i> , ye or you would, could, should, &c.	<i>ils auroient</i> , they would, could, should, or might have.

Compound of the Present Tense.

16. S. <i>J'ai eu</i> , I have had.	<i>tu as eu</i> , thou hast had.	<i>il a eu</i> , he has had.
17. P. <i>Nous avons eu</i> , we have had.	<i>vous avez eu</i> , ye or you have had.	<i>ils ont eu</i> , they have had.

Compound of the Imperfect Tense.

18. S. <i>J'avois eu</i> , I had had.	<i>tu avois eu</i> , thou hadst had.	<i>il avoit eu</i> , he had had.
19. P. <i>Nous avions eu</i> , we had had.	<i>vous aviez eu</i> , ye or you had had.	<i>ils avoient eu</i> , they had had.

Compound

Compound of the Preterite Tense.

First Persons.	Second Persons.	Third Persons.
S. <i>J'eus eu</i> , I had had.	<i>tu eus eu</i> , thou hadst had.	<i>il eut eu</i> , he had had. 20.
P. <i>Nous eumes eu</i> , we had had.	<i>vous eutes eu</i> , ye or you had had.	<i>ils eurent eu</i> , they had had. 21.

Compound of the Future Tense.

S. <i>J'aurai eu</i> , I shall have had.	<i>tu auras eu</i> , thou shalt have had.	<i>il aura eu</i> , he shall have had. 22.
P. <i>Nous aurons eu</i> , we shall have had.	<i>vous aurez eu</i> , ye or you shall have had.	<i>ils auront eu</i> , they shall have had. 23.

Compound of the Conditional Tense.

S. <i>J'aurois eu</i> , I would, could, should, or might have had.	<i>tu aurois eu</i> , thou wouldst, couldst, shouldst, or, &c.	<i>il auroit eu</i> , he would, could, should, or might have had. 24.
P. <i>Nous aurions eu</i> , we would, could, &c. have had.	<i>vous auriez eu</i> , ye or you would, &c. have had.	<i>ils auroient eu</i> , they would, could, &c. have had. 25.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present Tense.

S. <i>J'aie</i> , I may have.	<i>tu aies</i> , thou mayst have.	<i>il ait</i> , he may have. 26.
P. <i>Nous ayons</i> , we may have.	<i>vous ayez</i> , ye or you may have.	<i>ils aient</i> , they may have. 27.

Preterite Tense.

S. <i>J'eusse</i> , I had, or might have.	<i>tu eusses</i> , thou hadst, or mightst have.	<i>il eut</i> , he had, or might have. 28.
P. <i>Nous eussions</i> , we had, or, &c.	<i>vous eussiez</i> , ye or you had, or, &c.	<i>ils eussent</i> , they had, or might have. 29.

Compound of the Present Tense.

S. <i>J'aie eu</i> , I may have had, or can.	<i>tu aies eu</i> , thou mayst have had.	<i>il ait eu</i> , he may have had. 30.
P. <i>Nous ayons eu</i> , we may, &c.	<i>vous ayez eu</i> , ye or you may have had.	<i>ils aient eu</i> , they may have had. 31.

Compound

Compound of the Preterite Tense.

First Persons.	Second Persons.	Third Persons.
32. S. <i>J'eusse eu,</i> I had, or might have had.	<i>tu eusses eu,</i> thou hadst had, or mightst have, &c.	<i>il eut eu,</i> he had had, or might have had.
33. P. <i>Nous eussions eu,</i> we had had, or, &c.	<i>vous eussiez eu,</i> ye or you had had, or might, &c.	<i>ils eussent eu,</i> they had had, or might have had.

I M P E R A T I V E.

34. S.	<i>Aie,</i> have, or have thou.	<i>il ait,</i> let him have.
35. P. <i>Ayons,</i> let us have.	<i>ayez,</i> have, or have ye.	<i>ils aient,</i> let them have.

Ê T R E.

I N F I N I T I V E M O O D.

1. Present Tense	—	—	<i>être,</i>	to be.
2. Gerund	—	—	<i>étant,</i>	being.
3. Participle	—	—	<i>été,</i>	been.
4. Compound of the Present	—	—	<i>avoir été,</i>	to have been.
5. Compound of the Gerund	—	—	<i>ayant été,</i>	having been.

I N D I C A T I V E.

Present Tense.

First Persons.	Second Persons.	Third Persons.
6. S. <i>Je suis,</i> I am.	<i>tu es,</i> thou art.	<i>il est,</i> he is.
7. P. <i>Nous sommes,</i> we are.	<i>vous êtes,</i> ye or you are.	<i>ils sont,</i> they are.

Imperfect Tense.

8. S. <i>J'étois,</i> I was.	<i>tu étois,</i> thou wast.	<i>il étoit,</i> he was.
9. P. <i>Nous étions,</i> we were.	<i>vous étiez,</i> ye or you were.	<i>ils étoient,</i> they were.

Preterite Tense.

10. S. <i>Je fus,</i> I was.	<i>tu fus,</i> thou wast.	<i>il fut,</i> he was.
11. P. <i>Nous fumes,</i> we were.	<i>vous fûtes,</i> ye or you were.	<i>ils furent,</i> they were.

Future Tense.

12. S. <i>Je serai,</i> I shall or will be.	<i>tu seras,</i> thou shalt or wilt be.	<i>il sera,</i> he shall or will be.
13. P. <i>Nous serons,</i> we shall or will be.	<i>vous serez,</i> ye or you shall or will be.	<i>ils seront,</i> they shall or will be.

Conditional

Conditional Tense.

First Persons.	Second Persons.	Third Persons.
S. <i>Je ferois</i> , I would, could, should, or might be.	<i>tu serois</i> , thou wouldst, couldst, shouldst, &c.	<i>il seroit</i> , he would, could, should, or might be.
P. <i>Nous serions</i> , we would, could, &c.	<i>vous seriez</i> , ye or you would, could, &c.	<i>ils seroient</i> , they would, could, &c.

Compound of the Present Tense.

S. <i>J'ai été</i> , I have been.	<i>tu as été</i> , thou hast been.	<i>il a été</i> , he has been.
P. <i>Nous avons été</i> , we have been.	<i>vous avez été</i> , ye or you have been.	<i>ils ont été</i> , they have been.

Compound of the Imperfect Tense.

S. <i>J'avois été</i> , I had been.	<i>tu avois été</i> , thou hadst been.	<i>il avoit été</i> , he had been.
P. <i>Nous avions été</i> , we had been.	<i>vous aviez été</i> , ye or you had been.	<i>ils avoient été</i> , they had been.

Compound of the Preterite Tense.

S. <i>J'eus été</i> , I had been.	<i>tu eus été</i> , thou hadst been.	<i>il eut été</i> , he had been.
P. <i>Nous eûmes été</i> , we had been.	<i>vous eûtes été</i> , ye or you had been.	<i>ils eurent été</i> , they had been.

Compound of the Future Tense.

S. <i>J'aurai été</i> , I shall have been.	<i>tu auras été</i> , thou shalt have been.	<i>il aura été</i> , he shall have been.
P. <i>Nous aurons été</i> , we shall have been.	<i>vous aurez été</i> , ye or you shall have been.	<i>ils auront été</i> , they shall have been.

Compound of the Conditional Tense.

S. <i>J'aurais été</i> , I would, could, should, or might have been.	<i>tu aurais été</i> , thou wouldst, couldst, shouldst, or, &c.	<i>il aurait été</i> , he would, could, should, or might have been.
P. <i>Nous aurions été</i> , we would, could, &c.	<i>vous auriez été</i> , ye would, could, &c.	<i>ils auraient été</i> , they would, could, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

S. <i>Je sois</i> , I may be.	<i>tu sois</i> , thou may'st be.	<i>il soit</i> , he may be.
P. <i>Nous soyons</i> , we may be.	<i>vous soyez</i> , ye or you may be.	<i>ils soient</i> , they may be.

D

Preterite

Preterite Tense.

	First Persons.	Second Persons.	Third Persons.
28. S.	<i>Je fusse</i> , I was or were, or might be.	<i>tu fusses</i> , thou wast or wert, or mightst be.	<i>il fût</i> , he was, were, or might be.
29. P.	<i>Nous fussions</i> , we were, &c.	<i>vous fussiez</i> , ye or you were, or, &c.	<i>ils fussent</i> , they were or might be.

Compound of the Present Tense.

30. S.	<i>J'ai été</i> , I may have been.	<i>tu aies été</i> , thou may- est have been.	<i>il ait été</i> , he may have been.
31. P.	<i>Nous ayons été</i> , we may have been.	<i>vous ayez été</i> , ye or you may have been.	<i>ils aient été</i> , they may have been.

Compound of the Preterite Tense.

32. S.	<i>J'eusse été</i> , I had been, or might, &c.	<i>tu eusses été</i> , thou hadst been, or mightst, &c.	<i>il eût été</i> , he had been, or might have been.
33. P.	<i>Nous eussions été</i> , we had been, or, &c.	<i>vous eussiez été</i> , ye or you had been, &c.	<i>ils eussent été</i> , they had been, &c.

IMPERATIVE.

34. S.	<i>sois</i> , be, or be thou.	<i>qu'il soit</i> , let him be.
35. P.	<i>soyez</i> , be, or be ye.	<i>qu'ils soient</i> , let them be.

The Regular CONJUGATIONS.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

Of VERBS in *er*.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense	—	—	<i>Parler</i> ,	to speak.
2. Gerund	—	—	<i>Parlant</i> ,	speaking.
3. Participle	—	—	<i>Parlé</i> ,	spoken.
4. Compound of the Present	—	<i>Avoir parlé</i> ,	to have spoken.	
5. Compound of the Gerund	—	<i>Ayant parlé</i> ,	having spoken.	

INDICATIVE.

Present Tense.

6. S.	<i>Je parle</i> *, I speak.	<i>tu parles</i> , i speakst.	<i>il parle</i> , he speaks.
7. P.	<i>Nous parlons</i> , we speak.	<i>vous parlez</i> , ye or you speak.	<i>ils parlent</i> , they speak.

* or I do speak, or am speaking; thou dost speak, or thou art speaking, &c.

Imperfect.

Imperfect.

First Persons.	Second Persons.	Third Persons.
S. <i>Je parlois*</i> , I did speak.	<i>tu parlois</i> , thou didst speak.	<i>il parloit</i> , he did speak.
P. <i>Nous parlions</i> , we did speak.	<i>vous parliez</i> , ye or you did speak.	<i>ils parloient</i> , they did speak.

* or I spoke; or I was speaking; thou wast speaking, &c.

Preterite.

S. <i>Je parlai</i> , I spoke.	<i>tu parlas</i> , thou spokett.	<i>il parla</i> , he spoke. 10.
P. <i>Nous parlâmes</i> , we spoke.	<i>vous parlâtes</i> , ye or you spoke.	<i>ils parlèrent</i> , they spoke. 11.

Future.

S. <i>Je parlerai</i> , I shall or will speak.	<i>tu parleras</i> , thou shalt or wilt speak.	<i>il parlera</i> , he shall or will speak. 12.
P. <i>Nous parlerons</i> , we shall or will, &c.	<i>vous parlerez</i> , ye or you shall or will, &c.	<i>ils parleront</i> , they shall or will speak. 13.

Conditional.

S. <i>Je parlerois</i> , I would, could, should, or might speak.	<i>tu parlerois</i> , thou wouldst, couldst, shouldst, or, &c.	<i>il parleroit</i> , he would, could, should, or, &c. 14.
P. <i>Nous parlerions</i> , we would, could, &c.	<i>vous parleriez</i> , ye or you would, &c.	<i>ils parleroient</i> , they would, could, &c. 15.

Comp. of Pres. <i>J'ai</i>	} <i>parlé</i> , &c.	I have*	16.
Comp. of Imp. <i>J'avois</i>		I had	17.
Comp. of Pret. <i>J'eus</i>		I had	18.
Comp. of Fut. <i>J'aurai</i>		I shall have . .	19.
Comp. of Cond. <i>J'aurois</i>		I would, &c. have	20.

* or I spoke; or I did speak; or I have been speaking.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

S. <i>Je parle</i> , I may speak.	<i>tu parles</i> , thou mayst speak, &c.	<i>il parle</i> , he may speak. 21.
P. <i>Nous parlions</i> , we may, &c.	<i>vous parliez</i> , ye or you may speak.	<i>ils parlent</i> , they may speak. 22.

Preterite.

	First Persons.	Second Persons.	Third Persons.
23. S.	<i>Je parlasse, I spoke, or might speak.</i>	<i>tu parlasses, thou spokest, &c.</i>	<i>il parlât, he spoke.</i>
24. P.	<i>Nous parlâmes, we, &c.</i>	<i>vous parlassiez, ye or you spoke.</i>	<i>ils parlassent, they spoke.</i>

25. Comp. of Pres. *que j'aie, } parlé, { I have or may have } spoken,*
 26. Comp. of Pret. *que j'eusse, } &c. { I had or might have } &c.*

I M P E R A T I V E.

27. S. *parle, speak thou*.* *qu'il parle, let him speak.*
 28. P. *Parlons, let us parlez, speak, or ils parlent, let them speak.*

After the same manner are conjugated about 2700 verbs ending in *er*, there being but two irregular in that conjugation.

* or do thou speak, do you speak.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Of VERBS in *ir* in general.

I N F I N I T I V E M O O D.

1. Pres. *Agir*, to act. Ger. *Agissant*, acting. Part. *Agi*, acted.
 2. C. Pres. *Avoir agi*, to have acted. C. Ger. *Ayant agi*, having acted.

I N D I C A T I V E.

Present Tense.

3. S. *J'agis, I act.* *tu agis, thou actest.* *il agit, he acts.*
 4. P. *Nous agissons, we, vous agissez, ye, or, ils agissent, they act.*
&c. &c.

Imperfect.

5. S. *J'agissois, I did act.* *tu agissois, thou, &c. il agissait, he did act.*
 6. P. *Nous agissions, we did act.* *vous agissiez, ye or you did act.* *ils agissaient, they did act.*

Preterite.

7. S. *J'agis, I acted.* *tu agis, thou actedst.* *il agit, he acted.*
 8. P. *Nous agîmes, &c. vous agîtes, ye, or, &c. ils agirent, they, &c.*

Preterite.

Future.

First Persons.	Second Persons.	Third Persons.	
S. <i>J'agirai</i> , I shall or will act.	<i>tu agiras</i> , thou shalt or wilt act.	<i>il agira</i> , he shall or will act.	9.
P. <i>Nous agirons</i> , we shall or will act.	<i>vous agirez</i> , ye or you shall, or, &c.	<i>ils agiront</i> , they shall or will act.	10.

Conditional.

S. <i>J'agirois</i> , I would, could, should, &c.	<i>tu agirois</i> , thou mightst act.	<i>il agiroit</i> , he would, could, should, &c.	11.
P. <i>Nous agirions</i> , we would, could, &c.	<i>vous agiriez</i> , ye or you would, &c.	<i>ils agiroient</i> , they would, could, &c.	12.

Comp. of Pres.	<i>J'ai</i>	} agi, {	I have - - - -	} acted, &c.	13.
Comp. of Imp.	<i>J'avois</i>		I had - - - -		14.
Comp. of Pret.	<i>J'eus</i>		I had - - - -		15.
Comp. of Fut.	<i>J'aurai</i>		I shall have - -		16.
Comp. of Cond.	<i>J'aurois</i>		I would, &c. have		17.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

S. <i>J'agisse</i> , I may act.	<i>tu agisses</i> , thou mayst act.	<i>il agisse</i> , he may act.	18.
P. <i>Nous agissions</i> , we may act.	<i>vous agissiez</i> , ye or you may act.	<i>ils agissent</i> , they may act.	19.

Preterite.

S. <i>J'agisse</i> , I acted or might act.	<i>tu agisses</i> , thou act- edit.	<i>il agit</i> , he acted.	20.
P. <i>Nous agissions</i> , we acted.	<i>vous agissiez</i> , ye or you acted.	<i>ils agissent</i> , they acted.	21.

Comp. of Pres.	que {	<i>J'aie</i>	} agi, {	I have or may have	} acted,	22.
Comp. of Pret.		<i>J'eusse</i>		&c. { I had or might have		23.

IMPERATIVE.

S.		<i>agis</i> , act thou.	qu'	<i>il agisse</i> , let him act.	24.
P. <i>Agissons</i> , let us act.		<i>agissez</i> , act or act ye.		<i>ils agissent</i> , let them act.	25.

About 200 verbs in *cir*, *dir*, *mir*, *nir*, *tir*, &c. are conjugated after this verb,

ACCIDENCE.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

Of more particular VERBS in tir.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

1. Pres. *Sentir*, to smell. Ger. *Sentant*, smelling. Part. *Senti*, smelt.
2. C. Pres. *Avoir senti*, to have smelt. C. Ger. *Ayant senti*, having smelt.

INDICATIVE.

First Persons.	Second Persons.	Third Persons.
3. S. <i>Je sens</i> , I smell.	<i>tu sens</i> , thou smellest.	<i>il sent</i> , he smells.
4. P. <i>Nous sentons</i> , we smell.	<i>vous sentez</i> , ye or you smell.	<i>ils sentent</i> , they smell.

Imperfect.

5. S. <i>Je sentois</i> , I did smell.	<i>tu sentois</i> , thou didst smell.	<i>il sentoit</i> , he did smell.
6. P. <i>Nous sentions</i> , we did smell.	<i>vous sentiez</i> , ye or you did smell.	<i>ils sentoient</i> , they did smell.

Preterite.

7. S. <i>Je sentis</i> , I smelt.	<i>tu sentis</i> , thou smeltst.	<i>il sentit</i> , he smelt.
8. P. <i>Nous sentimes</i> , we smelt.	<i>vous sentîtes</i> , ye or you smelt.	<i>ils sentirent</i> , they smelt.

Future.

9. S. <i>Je sentirai</i> , I shall or will smell.	<i>tu sentiras</i> , thou shalt or wilt smell.	<i>il sentira</i> , he shall or will smell.
10. P. <i>Nous sentirons</i> , we shall or will, &c.	<i>vous sentirez</i> , ye or you shall, or, &c.	<i>ils sentiront</i> , they shall or will smell.

Conditional.

11. S. <i>Je sentirois</i> , I would, could, should, or might smell.	<i>tu sentirois</i> , thou wouldst, couldst, shouldst, or, &c.	<i>il sentiroit</i> , he would, could, should, or might smell.
12. P. <i>Nous sentirions</i> , we would, could, &c.	<i>vous sentiriez</i> , ye or you would, &c.	<i>ils sentiroient</i> , they would, could, &c.

13. Comp. of Pres.	<i>J'ai</i>	} <i>senti</i> , } &c.	} I have - - - } smelt, } I had - - - } &c. } I had - - - } } I shall have - - } } I would, &c. have }
14. Comp. of Imp.	<i>J'avois</i>		
15. Comp. of Pret.	<i>J'eus</i>		
16. Comp. of Fut.	<i>J'aurai</i>		
17. Comp. of Cond.	<i>J'aurais</i>		

SUBJUNCTIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

First Persons.	Second Persons.	Third Persons.
S. <i>Je sente</i> , I may que smell.	<i>tu sentes</i> , thou mayst smell.	<i>il sente</i> , he may smell. 18.
P. <i>Nous sentions</i> , we may smell.	<i>vous sentiez</i> , ye or you may smell.	<i>il sentent</i> , they may smell. 19.

Preterite.

S. <i>Je sentisse</i> , I que smelt, or might smell.	<i>tu sentisses</i> , thou smeltst.	<i>il sentit</i> , he smelt. 20.
P. <i>Nous sentissions</i> , we smelt.	<i>vous sentissiez</i> , ye or you smelt.	<i>ils sentissent</i> , they smelt. 21.

Comp. of Pres. <i>que</i> { <i>J'aie</i> } <i>senti</i> , { I have or may have } smelt, 22.		
Comp. of Pret. <i>que</i> { <i>J'eusse</i> } &c. { I had or might have } &c. 23.		

IMPERATIVE.

S. <i>Sentons</i> , let us smell.	<i>sens</i> , smell thou. <i>sentex</i> , smell, &c.	<i>qu'il sente</i> , let him, &c. 24. <i>ils sentent</i> , let them smell. 25.
--------------------------------------	---	--

Of this Conjugation there are eighteen verbs, both Primitive and Derivative;
to wit:

<i>mentir</i> , to lie;	<i>servir</i> , to serve;	<i>ressentir</i> , to resent, or
<i>démentir</i> , to give a lie;	<i>desservir</i> , to clear a table,	feel again;
<i>partir</i> , to set out;	or do an ill office;	<i>dormir</i> , to sleep;
<i>repartir</i> , to set out again,	<i>sentir</i> , to smell or feel;	<i>redormir</i> , to sleep again;
or to reply;	<i>consentir</i> , to consent;	<i>endormir</i> , to lull asleep;
<i>sortir</i> , to go, or get out;	<i>pressentir</i> , to have a fore-	<i>s'endormir</i> , to fall asleep;
<i>ressortir</i> , to get out again;	sight;	<i>se rendormir</i> , to fall
<i>se repentir</i> , to repent;		asleep again.

Partir and *repartir*, *sortir* and *ressortir*, are conjugated with *être*.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Of VERBS in *enir*.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. <i>Tenir</i> , to hold.	Ger. <i>Tenant</i> , holding.	Part. <i>Tenu</i> , held. 1.
C. Pres. <i>Avoir tenu</i> , to have held.	C. Ger. <i>Ayant tenu</i> , having held.	2.

INDICATIVE.

Present Tense.

S. <i>Je tiens</i> , I hold.	<i>tu tiens</i> , thou holdest.	<i>il tient</i> , he holds. 3.
P. <i>Nous tenons</i> , &c.	<i>vous tenez</i> , ye or, &c.	<i>ils tiennent</i> , they hold. 4.

Imperfect.

First Persons.	Second Persons.	Third Persons.
5. S. <i>Je tenois</i> , I did hold.	<i>tu tenois</i> , thou didst hold.	<i>il tenoit</i> , he did hold.
6. P. <i>Nous tenions</i> , we did hold.	<i>vous teniez</i> , ye or you did hold.	<i>ils tenoient</i> , they did hold.

Preterite.

7. S. <i>Je tins</i> , I held.	<i>tu tins</i> , thou heldest.	<i>il tint</i> , he held.
8. P. <i>Nous tinmes</i> , we held.	<i>vous tintes</i> , ye or you held.	<i>ils tinrent</i> , they held.

Future.

9. S. <i>Je tiendrai</i> , I shall or will hold.	<i>tu tiendras</i> , thou shalt or wilt hold.	<i>il tiendra</i> , he shall or will hold.
10. P. <i>Nous tiendrons</i> , we shall or will hold.	<i>vous tiendrez</i> , ye or you shall, or, &c.	<i>ils tiendront</i> , they shall or will hold.

Conditional.

11. S. <i>Je tiendrois</i> , I would, could, should, or might hold.	<i>tu tiendrois</i> , thou wouldst, couldst, shouldst, &c.	<i>il tiendrait</i> , he would, could, should, or might hold.
12. P. <i>Nous tiendrions</i> , we would, &c.	<i>vous tiendriez</i> , ye or you would, &c.	<i>ils tiendraient</i> , they would, could, &c.

13. Comp. of Pres.	<i>J'ai</i>	} tenu, &c.	} { I have - - - } held, &c.
14. Comp. of Imp.	<i>J'avais</i>		
15. Comp. of Pret.	<i>J'eus</i>		
16. Comp. of Fut.	<i>J'aurai</i>		
17. Comp. of Cond.	<i>J'aurais</i>		

S U B J U N C T I V E.

Present.

18. S. <i>Je tiennes</i> , I may hold.	<i>tu tiennes</i> , thou mayst hold.	<i>il tienne</i> , he may hold.
19. P. <i>Nous tenions</i> , we may hold.	<i>vous teniez</i> , ye or you may hold.	<i>ils tiennent</i> , they may hold.

Preterite.

20. S. <i>Je tinsses</i> , I held, or might hold.	<i>tu tinsses</i> , thou heldst.	<i>il tint</i> , he held.
21. P. <i>Nous tinssions</i> , we held.	<i>vous tinssiez</i> , ye or you held.	<i>ils tinssent</i> , they held.

Comp. of Pres.	} <i>J'aie</i> } tenu, &c.	} { I have or might have } held, &c.
Comp. of Pret. <i>que</i>		

I M P E R A T I V E.

IMPERATIVE.

First Persons.	Second Persons.	Third Persons.
S. <i>Tenons</i> , let us hold.	<i>tiens</i> , hold, or, &c.	<i>il tienne</i> , let him &c. 24.
P. <i>Tenons</i> , let us hold.	<i>tenez</i> , hold, or hold ye.	<i>qu'ils tiennent</i> , let them hold. 25.

The Verbs of this Conjugation, to the number of twenty-four, are

<i>s'abstenir</i> , to abstain;	<i>entretenir</i> , to keep up;	<i>se souvenir</i> , to remember;
<i>appartenir</i> , to belong;	<i>maintenir</i> , to maintain;	<i>se ressouvenir</i> , to recollect, call to mind;
<i>contenir</i> , to contain;	<i>venir</i> , to come;	<i>avenir</i> †, to happen;
<i>détenir</i> , to detain;	<i>intervenir</i> , to intervene;	<i>parvenir</i> , to attain to;
<i>contrevenir</i> *, to contravene, to infringe;	<i>devenir</i> , to become;	<i>prévenir</i> , to prevent;
<i>obtenir</i> , to obtain;	<i>convenir</i> , to agree, or to become;	<i>revenir</i> , to come again;
<i>retenir</i> , to retain, keep;	<i>disconvenir</i> , to disagree;	<i>subvenir</i> , to relieve;
<i>soutenir</i> , to maintain, to hold, uphold;	<i>provenir</i> , to proceed, to come from;	<i>survenir</i> , to befall, happen unexpectedly.

venir, *revenir*, *devenir*, *convenir*, *disconvenir*, *provenir*, *parvenir*, and *survenir*, are conjugated with *être*.

* *contrevenir* is a law term, and used in few tenses too. Its compound tenses, when used, are formed from *avoir*, though its primitive *venir* has them of *être*.

† *avenir* is an obsolete verb impersonal. We now-a-days say *il arrive*, it happens, *il arriva*, it happened, instead of *il avient*, *il avint*, &c.

bénir, to bless, and *benir*, to neigh; are of the second conjugation, having the same inflexions as *agir*.—The Participle of *bénir* is *béni*, and *bénie*, blessed; but we also say *béni* and *bénite*, speaking of such church-ceremonies; as *du pain béni*, hallowed bread; *de l'eau bénite*, holy water, &c.

FIFTH CONJUGATION.

Of VERBS in *avoir*.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pr. <i>Recevoir</i> , to receive.	Ger. <i>Recevant</i> , receiving.	Part. <i>Reçu</i> , &c. 1.
C.Pr. <i>Avoir reçu</i> , to have received.	C.Ger. <i>Ayant reçu</i> , having received.	2.

INDICATIVE.

Present Tense.

S. <i>Je reçois</i> , I receive.	<i>tu reçois</i> , thou receivest.	<i>il reçoit</i> , he receives. 3.
P. <i>Nous recevons</i> , we receive.	<i>vous recevez</i> , ye or you receive.	<i>ils reçoivent</i> , they receive. 4.

Imperfect.

S. <i>Je recevois</i> , I did receive.	<i>tu recevois</i> , thou didst receive.	<i>il recevoit</i> , he did receive. 5.
P. <i>Nous recevions</i> , we did receive.	<i>vous receviez</i> , ye or you did, &c.	<i>ils recevoient</i> , they did receive. 6.

Præterite,

Preterite.

First Persons.	Second Persons.	Third Persons.
7. S. <i>Je reçus</i> , I received.	<i>tu reçus</i> , thou receivedst.	<i>il reçut</i> , he received.
8. P. <i>Nous reçûmes</i> , we received.	<i>vous reçûtes</i> , ye or you received.	<i>ils reçurent</i> , they received.

Future.

9. S. <i>Je recevrai</i> , I shall or will receive.	<i>tu recevras</i> , thou shalt or wilt, &c.	<i>il recevra</i> , he shall receive.
10. P. <i>Nous recevrons</i> , we shall or will, &c.	<i>vous recevrez</i> , ye or you shall, or, &c.	<i>ils recevront</i> , they shall receive.

Conditional.

11. S. <i>Je recevrais</i> , I would, could, &c.	<i>tu recevrais</i> , thou wouldst, &c.	<i>il recevrait</i> , he would, could, &c.
12. P. <i>Nous recevriions</i> , we would, &c.	<i>vous recevriez</i> , ye or you would, &c.	<i>ils recevraient</i> , they would, &c.

13. Comp. of Pres.	<i>J'ai</i>	} <i>recu</i> , <i>&c.</i>	{	I have - - -	} received, <i>&c.</i>
14. Comp. of Imp.	<i>J'avois</i>			I had - - -	
15. Comp. of Pret.	<i>J'eus</i>			I had - - -	
16. Comp. of Fut.	<i>J'aurai</i>			I shall have - -	
17. Comp. of Cond.	<i>J'aurais</i>			I would <i>&c.</i> have	

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

18. S. <i>Je reçoive</i> , I may receive.	<i>tu reçoives</i> , thou mayst receive.	<i>il reçoive</i> , he may receive.
19. P. <i>Nous recevions</i> , we may receive.	<i>vous receviez</i> , ye or you, &c.	<i>ils reçoivent</i> , they may receive.

Preterite.

20. S. <i>Je reçusse</i> , I received, or might receive.	<i>tu reçusses</i> , thou receivedst.	<i>il reçût</i> , he received.
21. P. <i>Nous reçussions</i> , we received.	<i>vous reçussiez</i> , ye received.	<i>ils reçussent</i> , they received.

22. Comp. of Pres.	{ J'aie }	} reçu,	{ I have, or may have, }	} received,	
23. Comp. of Pret, <i>que</i>					{ J'eusse }

IMPERATIVE.

OF VERBS.

IMPERATIVE.

First Person.	Second Persons.	Third Persons.
S. <i>Recevois</i> , let us receive.	<i>reçois</i> , receive thou.	<i>il reçoit</i> , let him receive.
P. <i>Recevons</i> , let us receive.	<i>recevez</i> , receive ye.	<i>ils reçoivent</i> , let them receive.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. <i>Devoir</i> , to owe.	Ger. <i>Devant</i> , owing.	Part. <i>Dû</i> , owed.
C. Pres. <i>Avoir dû</i> , to have owed.	C. Ger. <i>Ayant dû</i> , having owed.	

INDICATIVE.

Present.

S. <i>Je dois</i> , I owe.	<i>tu dois</i> , thou owest.	<i>il doit</i> , he owes.
P. <i>Nous devons</i> , we owe.	<i>vous devez</i> , ye owe.	<i>ils doivent</i> , they owe.

Imperfect.

S. <i>Je devois</i> , I did owe.	<i>tu devois</i> , thou didst owe.	<i>il devoit</i> , he did owe.
P. <i>Nous devions</i> , we did owe.	<i>vous deviez</i> , ye did owe.	<i>ils devoient</i> , they did owe.

Preterite.

S. <i>Je dus</i> , I owed.	<i>tu dus</i> , thou owedst.	<i>il dut</i> , he owed.
P. <i>Nous dûmes</i> , we owed.	<i>vous dûtes</i> , ye owed.	<i>ils durent</i> , they owed.

Future.

S. <i>Je devrai</i> , I shall owe.	<i>tu devras</i> , thou shalt owe.	<i>il devra</i> , he shall owe.
P. <i>Nous devrons</i> , we will owe.	<i>vous devrez</i> , ye will owe.	<i>ils devront</i> , they will owe.

Conditional.

S. <i>Je devrois</i> , I should owe.	<i>tu devrois</i> , thou shouldst owe.	<i>il devrait</i> , he should owe.
P. <i>Nous devrions</i> , we should owe.	<i>vous devriez</i> , ye should owe.	<i>ils devraient</i> , they should owe.

Comp. of Pres.	<i>J'ai</i>	} <i>dû</i> , &c.	I have	-	-	-	13.
Comp. of Imp.	<i>J'avois</i>		I had	-	-	-	14.
Comp. of Pret.	<i>J'eus</i>		I had	-	-	-	15.
Comp. of Fut.	<i>J'aurai</i>		I shall have	-	-	-	16.
Comp. of Cond.	<i>J'aurais</i>		I would, &c. have	-	-	-	17.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

A C C I D E N C E.

S U B J U N C T I V E.

Present.

	First Persons.	Second Persons.	Third Persons.
18. S.	<i>Je dois</i> , I may	<i>tu dois</i> , thou mayst	<i>il doit</i> , he may owe.
que	owe.	owe.	
19. P.	<i>Nous devons</i> , we may owe.	<i>vous deviez</i> , ye may owe.	<i>ils doivent</i> , they may owe.

Preterite.

20. S.	<i>Je dusse</i> , I	<i>tu dusses</i> , thou	<i>il dût</i> , he owed.
que	owed.	owedst.	
21. P.	<i>Nous dussions</i> , we owed.	<i>vous dussiez</i> , ye owed.	<i>ils dussent</i> , they owed.

22. Comp. of Pres.	<i>que</i> { <i>J'aie</i> } <i>dût</i> , { I have or may have } owed,
23. Comp. of Pret.	{ <i>J'eusse</i> } &c. { I had or might have } &c.

I M P E R A T I V E.

24. S.	<i>dois</i> , owe thou.	<i>qu'il doive</i> , let him owe.
25. P. <i>Devons</i> , let us owe.	<i>devez</i> , owe ye.	<i>qu'ils doivent</i> , let them owe.

The seven regular Verbs of the Fifth Conjugation are

<i>s'apercevoir</i> , to per- ceive;	<i>devoir</i> , to owe;	<i>recevoir</i> , to receive;
<i>concevoir</i> , to conceive;	<i>redevoir</i> , to owe again;	<i>percevoir</i> , (a law term for <i>recevoir</i>).
	<i>décevoir</i> , to deceive;	

décevoir is quite out of use; we now-a-days make use of *tromper*.

See in the Tenth Chapter of the Syntax another signification of *devoir*, as also its true use.

S I X T H C O N J U G A T I O N.

Of V E R B S in *aire*.

I N F I N I T I V E M O O D.

1. Pres. *Faire*, to do. Ger. *Faisant*, doing. Part. *Fait*, done.
2. C.Pres. *Avoir fait*, to have done. C. Ger. *Ayant fait*, having done.

I N D I C A T I V E.

Present.

3. S. <i>Je fais</i> , I do.	<i>tu fais</i> , thou doest.	<i>il fait</i> , he does.
4. P. <i>Nous faisons</i> , we do.	<i>vous faites</i> , ye or you do.	<i>ils font</i> , they do.

Imperfect.

Imperfect.

First Persons.	Second Persons.	Third Persons.
S. <i>Je faisais</i> , I did.	<i>tu faisais</i> , thou didst.	<i>il faisoit</i> , he did. 5.
P. <i>Nous faisions</i> , we did.	<i>vous faisiez</i> , ye or you did.	<i>ils faisoient</i> , they did. 6.

Preterite.

S. <i>Je fis</i> , I did.	<i>tu fis</i> , thou didst.	<i>il fit</i> , he did. 7.
P. <i>Nous fîmes</i> , we did.	<i>vous fîtes</i> , ye, or, &c.	<i>ils firent</i> , they did. 8.

Future.

S. <i>Je ferai</i> , I shall or will do.	<i>tu feras</i> , thou shalt or wilt do.	<i>il fera</i> , he shall or will do. 9.
P. <i>Nous ferons</i> , we shall or will do.	<i>vous ferez</i> , ye or you shall or will do.	<i>ils feront</i> , they shall or will do. 10.

Conditional.

S. <i>Je ferois</i> , I would, could, should, &c.	<i>tu ferois</i> , thou wouldst, &c.	<i>il feroit</i> , he would, could, should, &c. 11.
P. <i>Nous ferions</i> , we would, could, &c.	<i>vous feriez</i> , ye or you would, could, &c.	<i>ils feroient</i> , they would, could, &c. 12.

Comp. of Pres.	<i>J'ai</i>	} fait, &c.	I have - - -	} done, &c.	13.
Comp. of Imp.	<i>J'avois</i>		I had - - -		14.
Comp. of Pret.	<i>J'eus</i>		I had - - -		15.
Comp. of Fut.	<i>J'aurai</i>		I shall have - - -		16.
Comp. of Cond.	<i>J'aurais</i>		I would, &c. have		17.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

S. <i>Je fasse</i> , I may que do.	<i>tu fasses</i> , thou, &c.	<i>il fasse</i> , he may do. 18.
P. <i>Nous fassions</i> , we may do.	<i>vous fassiez</i> , ye or you may do.	<i>ils fassent</i> , they may do. 19.

Preterite.

S. <i>Je fissé</i> , I did, que or might do.	<i>tu fissés</i> , thou didst.	<i>il fit</i> , he did. 20.
P. <i>Nous fissions</i> , &c.	<i>vous fissiez</i> , ye, &c.	<i>ils fissent</i> , they did. 21.

Comp. of Pres. que	<i>J'aie</i>	} fait, &c.	I have or may have	} done, &c.	22.
Comp. of Pret.	<i>J'eusse</i>		I had or might have		23.

IMPERATIVE.

A C C I D E N C E.

I M P E R A T I V E.

First Person.	Second Persons.	Third Persons.
24. S. <i>Fais</i> , do.	<i>fais</i> , do, or do thou.	<i>il fasse</i> , let him do.
25. P. <i>Faisons</i> , let us do	<i>faites</i> , do, or do ye.	<i>qu'ils fassent</i> , let them do.

The Derivatives of *faire*, which are six, and of a very extensive use, are the only regular Verbs of the Sixth Conjugation.

<i>contrefaire</i> , to counterfeit;	<i>refaire</i> , to do again, to make up again;	<i>satisfaire</i> , to satisfy;
<i>désaire</i> , to undo;	<i>redésaire</i> , to undo again;	<i>surfaire</i> , to exact, to ask too much:

To which add *forfaire*, to trespass or fail, though used only in the infinitive and compound of the present, as in this phrase, *une fille qui a forfait à son bonheur*, a maid that has forfeited or lost her honour.

S E V E N T H C O N J U G A T I O N.

Of V E R B S in *aindre*, *eindre*, and *oindre*.

I N F I N I T I V E M O O D.

1. Pr. *Craindre*, to fear. Ger. *Craignant*, fearing. Part. *Craint*, feared.
 2. C. P. *Avoir craint*, to have feared. C. Ger. *Ayant craint*, having feared.

I N D I C A T I V E.

Present Tense.

3. S. <i>Je crains</i> , I fear.	<i>tu crains</i> , thou, &c.	<i>il craint</i> , he fears.
4. P. <i>Nous craignons</i> , &c.	<i>vous craignez</i> , &c.	<i>ils craignent</i> , &c.

Imperfect.

5. S. <i>Je craignois</i> , I did fear.	<i>tu craignois</i> , thou didst fear.	<i>il craignoit</i> , he did fear.
6. P. <i>Nous craignions</i> , we did fear.	<i>vous craigniez</i> , ye or you did fear.	<i>ils craignoient</i> , they did fear.

Preterite.

7. S. <i>Je craignis</i> , I feared.	<i>tu craignis</i> , thou fearedst, &c.	<i>il craignit</i> , he feared.
8. P. <i>Nous craignîmes</i> , we feared.	<i>vous craignîtes</i> , ye or you feared.	<i>ils craignirent</i> , they feared.

Future.

9. S. <i>Jecraindrai</i> , I shall or will fear.	<i>tu craindras</i> , thou shalt or wilt fear.	<i>il craindra</i> , he shall or will fear.
10. P. <i>Nous craindrons</i> , we, &c.	<i>vous craindrez</i> , ye or you, &c.	<i>ils craindront</i> , they shall or will, &c.

Conditional.

Conditional.

First Persons.	Second Persons.	Third Persons.	
S. <i>Je craindrois,</i> I would, could, &c.	<i>tu craindrois,</i> thou shouldst, or, &c.	<i>il craindroit,</i> he would, could, &c.	11.
P. <i>Nous craindrions,</i> we would, &c.	<i>vous craindriez,</i> ye or you would, &c.	<i>ils craindroient,</i> they would, could, &c.	12.
Comp. of Pres. <i>J'ai</i>	craint, &c.	I have - - -	13.
Comp. of Imp. <i>J'avois</i>		I had - - -	14.
Comp. of Pret. <i>J'eus</i>		I had - - -	15.
Comp. of Fut. <i>J'aurai</i>		I shall have - - -	16.
Comp. of Cond. <i>J'aurais</i>		I would, &c. have	17.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

S. <i>Je craigne,</i> I may que fear.	<i>tu craignes,</i> thou mayst fear.	<i>il craigne,</i> he may fear.	18.
P. <i>Nous craignons,</i> we may fear.	<i>vous craigniez,</i> ye may fear.	<i>ils craignent,</i> they may fear.	19.

Preterite.

S. <i>Je craignisse,</i> I que feared, or might fear.	<i>tu craignisses,</i> thou fearedst, or, &c.	<i>il craignît,</i> he feared, or, &c.	20.
P. <i>Nous craignissions,</i> we feared, &c.	<i>vous craignissiez,</i> ye feared, or, &c.	<i>ils craignissent,</i> they feared, or, &c.	21.
Comp. of Pres. <i>que J'aie</i>	craint, &c.	{ I have or may have } { I had or might have }	feared, &c. 22.
Comp. of Pret. <i>que J'eusse</i>			

IMPERATIVE.

S.	<i>crains,</i> fear, or fear thou.	<i>il craigne,</i> let him qu' fear.	24.
P. <i>Craignons,</i> let us fear.	<i>craignez,</i> fear ye.	<i>ils craignent,</i> let them fear.	25.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. <i>Joindre,</i> to join.	Ger. <i>Joignant,</i> joining.	Part. <i>Joint,</i> joined.	1.
C. Pr. <i>Avoir joint,</i> to have joined.	C. Ger. <i>Ayant joint,</i> having joined.		2.

INDICATIVE.

Present.

S. <i>Je joins,</i> I join.	<i>tu joins,</i> thou joinest.	<i>il joint,</i> he joins.	3.
P. <i>Nous joignons,</i> we join.	<i>vous joignez,</i> ye, &c.	<i>ils joignent,</i> they join.	4.

Imperfect.

A C C I D E N C E.

Imperfect.

First Persons.	Second Persons.	Third Persons.
5. S. <i>Je joignois</i> , I did join.	<i>tu joignois</i> , thou didst join.	<i>il joignoit</i> , he did join.
6. P. <i>Nous joignons</i> , we did join.	<i>vous joigniez</i> , ye did join.	<i>ils joignoient</i> , they did join.

Preterite.

7. S. <i>Je joignis</i> , I joined.	<i>tu joignis</i> , thou joinedst.	<i>il joignit</i> , he joined.
8. P. <i>Nous joignîmes</i> , we joined.	<i>vous joignîtes</i> , ye joined.	<i>ils joignirent</i> , they joined.

Future.

9. S. <i>Je joindrai</i> , I shall or will, &c.	<i>tu joindras</i> , thou shalt or wilt, &c.	<i>il joindra</i> , he shall or will, &c.
10. P. <i>Nous joindrons</i> , we shall or will, &c.	<i>vous joindrez</i> , ye shall or will, &c.	<i>ils joindront</i> , they shall or will, &c.

Conditional.

11. S. <i>Je joindrois</i> , I would, could, &c.	<i>tu joindrois</i> , thou wouldst, &c.	<i>il joindroit</i> , he would, &c.
12. P. <i>Nous joindrions</i> , we would, could, &c.	<i>vous joindriez</i> , ye would, &c.	<i>ils joindraient</i> , they would, &c.

13. Comp. of Pres.	<i>J'ai</i>	} joint, &c. {	I have - - -	} joined, &c.
14. Comp. of Imp.	<i>J'avois</i>		I had - - -	
15. Comp. of Pret.	<i>J'eus</i>		I had - - -	
16. Comp. of Fut.	<i>J'aurai</i>		I shall have - -	
17. Comp. of Cond.	<i>J'aurais</i>		I would, &c. have	

S U B J U N C T I V E.

Present.

18. S. { <i>Je joigne</i> , I may join.	<i>tu joignes</i> , thou mayst join.	<i>il joigne</i> , he may join.
19. P. { <i>Nous joignons</i> , we may join.	<i>vous joigniez</i> , ye may join.	<i>ils joignent</i> , they may join.

Preterite.

20. S. { <i>Je joignisse</i> , I joined, or might join.	<i>tu joignisses</i> , thou joinedst.	<i>il joignît</i> , he joined.
21. P. { <i>Nous joignissions</i> , we joined.	<i>vous joignissiez</i> , ye joined.	<i>ils joignissent</i> , they joined.

22. Comp. of Pres.	} joint, &c. {	I have or may have	} joined, &c.
23. Comp. of Pret. <i>que</i>		I had or might have	

IMPERATIVE.

IMPERATIVE.

First Person.

Second Persons.

Third Persons.

S. <i>Joignons</i> , let us join.	<i>joins</i> , join thou.	<i>il joigne</i> , let him join.	24.
P. <i>Joignons</i> , let us join.	<i>joignez</i> , join, or join ye.	<i>qu'ils joignent</i> , let them join.	25.

The Verbs of the Seventh Conjugation, to the number of nineteen, are			
<i>astreindre</i> , to oblige, to tie up;	<i>enceindre</i> , to inclose, to encompass;	<i>oindre</i> †, to anoint;	
<i>atteindre</i> , to reach, hit;	<i>enfreindre</i> †, to infringe;	<i>peindre</i> , to paint, draw;	
<i>aveindre</i> *, to take, reach, or fetch out;	<i>enjoindre</i> , to injoin;	<i>plaindre</i> , to pity;	
<i>ceindre</i> , to gird;	<i>éteindre</i> , to extinguish, to put out;	<i>se plaindre</i> , to complain;	
<i>contraindre</i> , to constrain, to compel;	<i>feindre</i> , to feign, dissemble;	<i>poindre</i> , to peep, to dawn;	
<i>craindre</i> , to fear;	<i>joindre</i> , to join;	<i>restreindre</i> , to restringe, to limit;	
		<i>teindre</i> , to dye, or to colour.	

* *aveindre* is confined to some common forms of speech, but quite banished from all style. Its imperfect, two preterites, and imperative, are never used.

† *enfreindre* is seldom used in common conversation, and is only of the sublime style.

‡ *oindre* is used only in speaking of sacred ceremonies (particularly in the church of Rome) wherein oil is used; otherwise we say *frotter*, to rub. The only phrase wherein *oindre* is kept, is in this proverbial saying (which also grows obsolete), *Oignez vilain, il vous poindra*, Save a thief from hanging; and he'll cut your throat.

|| *poindre* is another obsolete word, used only in the infinitive, and that too in poetry, after the verb *commencer*: as *Le jour commençoit à poindre*, the day began to peep; in which case it is neuter, and of quite another signification than in the just-mentioned proverb, wherein it signifies to hurt.

EIGHTH CONJUGATION.

Of VERBS in *oître*.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

P. <i>Connoître</i> , to know.	Ger. <i>Connoissant</i> , knowing.	Part. <i>Conna</i> , &c.	1.
C. Pres. <i>Avoir connu</i> , to have known.	C. Ger. <i>Ayant connu</i> , having known.		2.

INDICATIVE.

Present Tense.

S. <i>Je connois</i> , I know.	<i>tu connois</i> , thou, &c.	<i>il connoît</i> , he knows.	3.
P. <i>Nous connoissons</i> , we know.	<i>vous connoissez</i> , ye know.	<i>ils connoissent</i> , they know.	4.

Imperfect.

S. <i>Je connoissois</i> , I did know.	<i>tu connoissois</i> , thou didst know.	<i>il connoissoit</i> , he did know.	5.
P. <i>Nous connoissions</i> , we did know.	<i>vous connoissiez</i> , ye or you did know.	<i>ils connoissoient</i> , they did know.	6.

E

Preterite.

The eleven Verbs of the Eighth Conjugation are

<i>accroître</i> , to accrue;	<i>comparôtre</i> *, to appear;	<i>recroître</i> , to grow again;
<i>apparoître</i> *, to appear;	make one's appear-	<i>méconnoître</i> , to forget, to
<i>connoître</i> , to know;	ance;	know no more;
<i>paroître</i> , to appear;	<i>croître</i> , to grow;	<i>reconnoître</i> , to know
<i>disparoître</i> , to disappear;	<i>décroître</i> , to decrease, to	again, to acknow-
	grow less;	ledge.

* *apparoître* and *comparôtre* are only used in law.

NINTH CONJUGATION.

Of VERBS in uire.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. <i>Instruire</i> , to instruct.	Ger. <i>Instruisant</i> , instructing.	Part. <i>Instruit</i> , instructed.	1.
C. Pres. <i>Avoir instruit</i> , having instructed.	C. Ger. <i>Ayant instruit</i> , having instructed.		2.

INDICATIVE.

Present Tense.

First Persons.	Second Persons.	Third Persons.	
S. <i>J'instruis</i> , I instruct.	<i>tu instruis</i> , thou instructest.	<i>il instruit</i> , he instructs.	3.
P. <i>Nous instruisons</i> , we instruct.	<i>vous instruisez</i> , ye instruct.	<i>ils instruisent</i> , they instruct.	4.

Imperfect.

S. <i>J'instruisois</i> , I did instruct.	<i>tu instruisois</i> , thou didst instruct.	<i>il instruisoit</i> , he, &c. did instruct.	5.
P. <i>Nous instruisions</i> , we did, &c.	<i>vous instruissiez</i> , ye did instruct.	<i>ils instruisoient</i> , they did instruct.	6.

Preterite.

S. <i>J'instruisis</i> , I instructed.	<i>tu instruisis</i> , thou instructedst.	<i>il instruisit</i> , he instructed.	7.
P. <i>Nous instruisîmes</i> , we instructed.	<i>vous instruisîtes</i> , ye instructed.	<i>ils instruisirent</i> , they instructed.	8.

Future.

S. <i>J'instruirai</i> , I shall or will instruct.	<i>tu instruiras</i> , thou shalt or wilt, &c.	<i>il instruira</i> , he shall or will, &c.	
P. <i>Nous instruirons</i> , we shall or will, &c.	<i>vous instruirez</i> , ye shall or will, &c.	<i>ils instruiront</i> , they shall or will, &c.	10.

Conditional.

First Persons.		Second Persons.	Third Persons.
11. S.	<i>J' instruerois,</i> would, &c.	I <i>tu instruerois,</i> wouldst, &c.	thou <i>il instruirait,</i> would, &c.
12. P.	<i>Nous instruirions,</i> we would, &c.	<i>vous instruiriez,</i> would, &c.	ye <i>ils instruiroient,</i> would instruct.
13. Comp. of Pres.	<i>J'ai</i>	} <i>instruit,</i> &c.	{ I have - - - I had - - - I had - - - I shall have - - I would, &c. have } instructed.
14. Comp. of Imp.	<i>J'avois</i>		
15. Comp. of Pret.	<i>J'eus</i>		
16. Comp. of Fut.	<i>J'aurai</i>		
17. Comp. of Cond.	<i>J'aurais</i>		

S U B J U N C T I V E.

Present.

18. S.	<i>J'instruise,</i> I	<i>tu instruis,</i> thou	<i>il instruisse,</i> he, &c.
	<i>que</i> { may instruct.	{ mayst, &c.	{ may instruct.
19. P.	<i>Nous instruisi-</i> <i>ons,</i> we, &c.	<i>vous instruisiez,</i> ye may, &c.	<i>ils instruisent,</i> they may instruct.

Preterite.

20. S.	<i>J'instruisisse,</i> I	<i>tu instruisisses,</i> thou,	<i>il instruisît,</i> he in-
	<i>que</i> { instructed, or might, &c.	{ &c.	{ structed.
21. P.	<i>Nous instruisis-</i> <i>sions,</i> we, &c.	<i>vous instruisissiez,</i> ye, &c.	<i>ils instruisissent,</i> they, &c.
22. Comp. of Pres.	<i>J'aie</i>	<i>instruit,</i>	{ I may have } instructed,
23. Comp. of Pret.	<i>que J'eusse</i>	&c.	{ I might have } &c.

I M P E R A T I V E.

24. S.	<i>instruis,</i> instruct, &c.	<i>il instruisse,</i> let him <i>qu'</i> instruct.
25. P.	<i>Instruisez,</i> instruct us instruct.	<i>ils instruisent,</i> let you or ye, &c. them instruct.

The nineteen Verbs of the Ninth Conjugation are

<i>bruire</i> *, to rustle;	<i>recuire</i> , to boil again;	<i>introduire</i> , to introduce;
<i>conduire</i> , to conduct;	<i>enduire</i> , to plaster, or to	<i>produire</i> , to produce;
<i>reconduire</i> , to reconduct;	do over;	<i>réduire</i> , to reduce, to
<i>cuire</i> †, to boil, to bake;	<i>induire</i> , to induce;	bring to;

séduire,

* *bruire* is said of thunder, wind, and waves, and used only in the imperfect and participle, which is a mere adnoun. As the gerund *bruyant* is irregular, so is the imperfect *bruyoit*.

26. † *cuire*, besides boiling and baking, is also englished by *to do*: *Cela n'est pas assez cuit*, that is not done enough; *faites recuire cette viande-là*, get that meat done better.
27. — *cuire*, used in the third persons only, signifies *to smart*.

<i>séduire</i> , to seduce;	<i>instruire</i> , to instruct;	<i>nuire</i> ‡, to hurt;
<i>traduire</i> , to translate;	<i>détruire</i> , to destroy;	<i>déduire</i> , to deduct, to
<i>construire</i> , to construct,	<i>luire</i> ‡, to shine;	abate,
or to build;	<i>reluire</i> ‡, to shine;	

‡ *luire*, *reluire*, and *nuire*, take no t at the end of the participle as the others do, 28. and therefore make *lui*, *relui*, and *nui*.

TENTH CONJUGATION.

Of VERBS in *endre*, and *ondre*.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres. *Vendre*, to sell. Ger. *Vendant*, selling. Part. *Vendu*, sold. 1.
C. Pres. *Avoir vendu*, to have sold. C. Ger. *Ayant vendu*, having sold, 2.

INDICATIVE.

Present Tense.

First Persons.

S. *Je vends*, I sell.
P. *Nous vendons*, we sell.

Second Persons.

tu vends, thou, &c.
vous vendez, ye or you sell.

Third Persons.

il vend, he sells. 3.
ils vendent, they sell. 4.

Imperfect.

S. *Je vendois*, I did sell.
P. *Nous vendions*, we did sell.

tu vendois, thou didst sell.
vous vendiez, ye or you did sell.

il vendoit, he did sell. 5.
ils vendaient, they did sell. 6.

Preterite.

S. *Je vendis*, I sold.
P. *Nous vendîmes*, we sold.

tu vendis, thou, &c.
vous vendîtes, ye or you sold.

il vendit, he sold. 7.
ils vendirent, they sold. 8.

Future.

S. *Je vendrai*, I shall or will sell.
P. *Nous vendrons*, we shall or will sell.

tu vendras, thou shalt or wilt sell.
vous vendrez, ye shall or will sell.

il vendra, he shall or will sell. 9.
ils vendront, they shall or will sell. 10.

Conditional.

S. *Je vendrois*, I would, could, &c.
P. *Nous vendrions*, we would, &c.

tu vendrois, thou wouldst, &c.
vous vendriez, ye would, &c.

il vendroit, he would, could, &c. 11.
ils vendraient, they would, &c. sell. 12.

Comp. of Pres. *J'ai*
Comp. of Imp. *J'avois*
Comp. of Pret. *J'eus*
Comp. of Fut. *J'aurai*
Comp. of Cond. *J'aurais*

}
}
}
}
}

vends
&c.

{ I have
I had
I had
I shall have
I would, &c. have

{ sold,
&c.
13.
14.
15.
16.
17.

S U B J U N C T I V E.

Present.

	First Persons.	Second Persons.	Third Persons.
18. S.	<i>Je vende, I may que sell.</i>	<i>tu vendes, thou mayst sell.</i>	<i>il vende, he may sell.</i>
19. P.	<i>Nous vendions, we may sell.</i>	<i>vous vendiez, ye may sell.</i>	<i>ils vendent, they may sell.</i>

Preterite.

20. S.	<i>Je vendisse, I fold, or might que sell.</i>	<i>tu vendisses, thou foldest.</i>	<i>il vendit, he fold.</i>
21. P.	<i>Nous vendissions, we, &c.</i>	<i>vous vendissiez, ye fold.</i>	<i>ils vendissent, they fold.</i>
22. Comp. of Pres.	<i>que { J'aie } vendu, { I may have } fold.</i>		
23. Comp. of Pret.	<i>{ J'eusse } &c. { I might have } fold.</i>		

I M P E R A T I V E.

24. S.	<i>vends, sell, or sell thou.</i>	<i>il vende, let him qu' sell.</i>
25. P. Vendons, let us sell.	<i>vendez, sell, or sell ye.</i>	<i>ils vendent, let them sell.</i>

The regular Verbs of this termination are

<i>attendre, to expect, or to wait for;</i>	<i>entendre, to hear, to un- derstand;</i>	<i>prétendre, to pretend, to claim;</i>
<i>condescendre, to conde- scend, to comply;</i>	<i>étendre, to stretch out;</i>	<i>rendre, to give away, return, render;</i>
<i>descendre, to go, come, or get down;</i>	<i>pendre, to hang; vendre, to sell;</i>	<i>répandre, to spill, to pour down; tendre, to tend, to bend.</i>

I N F I N I T I V E M O O D.

1. Pres. Répondre, to answer.	Ger. Répondant, an- swering.	Part. Répondu, an- swered.
2. C. Pres. Avoir répondu, to have answered.	C. Ger. Ayant répondu, having answered.	

I N D I C A T I V E.

Present Tense.

3. S. Je réponds, I an- swer.	<i>tu réponds, thou an- swer'st.</i>	<i>il répond, he an- swers.</i>
4. P. Nous répondons, we answer.	<i>vous répondez, ye answer.</i>	<i>ils répondent, they answer.</i>

Imperfect,

Imperfect.

First Persons.	Second Persons.	Third Persons.
S. <i>Je répondois</i> , I did answer.	<i>tu répondois</i> , thou didst answer.	<i>il répondoit</i> , he did answer.
P. <i>Nous répondions</i> , we did answer.	<i>vous répondiez</i> , ye did answer.	<i>ils répondoient</i> , they did answer.

Preterite.

S. <i>Je répondis</i> , I answered.	<i>tu répondis</i> , thou answeredst.	<i>il répondit</i> , he answered.
P. <i>Nous répondîmes</i> , we answered.	<i>vous répondîtes</i> , ye answered.	<i>ils répondirent</i> , they answered.

Future.

S. <i>Je répondrai</i> , I shall or will, &c.	<i>tu répondras</i> , thou shalt or wilt, &c.	<i>il répondra</i> , he shall or will answer.
P. <i>Nous répondrons</i> , we shall or will, &c.	<i>vous répondrez</i> , ye shall or will, &c.	<i>ils répondront</i> , they shall or will, &c.

Conditional.

S. <i>Je répondrais</i> , I would, could, &c.	<i>tu répondrais</i> , thou wouldst, &c.	<i>il répondrait</i> , he would, &c.
P. <i>Nous répondrions</i> , we would, &c.	<i>vous répondriez</i> , ye would, &c.	<i>ils répondraient</i> , they would, &c.

Comp. of Pres. <i>J'ai</i>	} <i>répondu</i> , &c.	} { I have - - - } answer-	} 13.
Comp. of Imp. <i>J'avois</i>			
Comp. of Pret. <i>J'eus</i>			
Comp. of Fut. <i>J'aurai</i>			
Comp. of Cond. <i>J'aurois</i>			
		{ I had - - - }	14.
		{ I had - - - }	15.
		{ I shall have - - }	16.
		{ I would, &c. have }	17.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

S. <i>Je réponde</i> , I may answer.	<i>tu répondes</i> , thou mayst, &c.	<i>il réponde</i> , he may answer.
P. <i>Nous répondions</i> , we, &c.	<i>vous répondiez</i> , ye may, &c.	<i>ils répondent</i> , they may answer.

Preterite.

S. <i>Je répondisse</i> , I answered, or might answer.	<i>tu répondisses</i> , thou answeredst, &c.	<i>il répondît</i> , he answered.
P. <i>Nous répondissions</i> , we, &c.	<i>vous répondissiez</i> , ye, &c.	<i>ils répondissent</i> , they answered.

22. Comp. of Pres. { *J'ai* } *répondu*, { I may have } answered,
 23. Comp. of Pret. ^{que} { *J'eusse* } &c. { I might have } &c.

I M P E R A T I V E.

First Persons.	Second Persons.	Third Persons.
24. S.	<i>réponds</i> , answer, or answer thou.	<i>il réponde</i> , let him <i>qu'</i> answer.
25. P. <i>Répondons</i> , let us answer.	<i>répondez</i> , answer, or answer ye.	<i>ils répondent</i> , let them answer.

The regular Verbs of this termination, making about 23 verbs in all, of the Tenth Conjugation, are

<i>confondre</i> , to confound;	<i>refondre</i> , to cast, new-	<i>pondre</i> , to lay eggs;
<i>correspondre</i> , to corre-	mould;	<i>répondre</i> , to answer;
spond;	<i>morfondre</i> , to make catch	<i>tondre</i> , to shear.
<i>fondre</i> , to melt;	cold;	

<i>perdre</i> , to lose;	Ger. <i>perdant</i> , losing;	Part. <i>perdu</i> , lost;
<i>mordre</i> , to bite;	Ger. <i>mordant</i> , biting;	Part. <i>mordu</i> , bit;

follow also the Tenth Conjugation; to which one may add *tordre*, to twist, of which the participle is *tordu*: its old participle *tors* is now-a-days an adjective, used in these expressions; *du fil tors*, twisted thread; *une colonne torse*, a wreathed column; *bouche torte*, a wry mouth.

I have said that Reflected Verbs are so called, because they govern no other object but the subject they are governed by. They are therefore conjugated with a double pronoun before each person, one of which governs the verb as its subject, and the other is governed as its object; as *se blesser*, to hurt one's self; *je me blesse*, I hurt myself; in which instance the English verb answers exactly to that which the French call reflected.

- a. The reflected verbs in French take the auxiliary *être* to form
 b. their compound tenses; whereas the English make use of the other auxiliary, *avoir*.

I N F I N I T I V E M O O D.

1. Pres. <i>Se blesser</i> , to hurt one's self.	Ger. <i>Se blessant</i> , hurt- ing one's self.	Part. <i>Blessé</i> , hurt.
2. C. Pres. <i>S'être blessé</i> , to have hurt one's self.	C. Ger. <i>S'étant blessé</i> , having hurt one's self.	

I N D I C A T I V E.

Present Tense.

3. S. <i>Je me blesse</i> , I hurt myself.	<i>tu te blesses</i> , thou hurtest, &c.	<i>il se blesse</i> , he hurts himself.
4. P. <i>Nous nous ble- sons</i> , we hurt, &c.	<i>vous vous blesses</i> , ye hurt yourselves.	<i>ils se blessent</i> , they hurt themselves.

Imperfect,

Imperfect.

First Persons.	Second Persons.	Third Persons.
S. <i>Je me bleffois</i> , I did hurt myself.	<i>tu te bleffois</i> , thou didst hurt, &c.	<i>il se bleffoit</i> , he did hurt himself.
P. <i>Nous nous bleffions</i> , we did hurt, &c.	<i>vous vous bleffiez</i> , ye did hurt, &c.	<i>ils se bleffoient</i> , they did hurt, &c.

Preterite.

S. <i>Je me bleffai</i> , I hurt myself.	<i>tu te bleffas</i> , thou didst hurt, &c.	<i>il se bleffa</i> , he hurt himself.
P. <i>Nous nous bleffâmes</i> , we, &c.	<i>vous vous bleffâtes</i> , ye hurt yourselves.	<i>ils se bleffèrent</i> , they hurt themselves.

Future.

S. <i>Je me blefferai</i> , I shall or will, &c.	<i>tu te blefferas</i> , thou shalt or wilt, &c.	<i>il se bleffera</i> , he shall or will, &c.
P. <i>Nous nous blefferons</i> , we shall, &c.	<i>vous vous blefferez</i> , ye shall or will, &c.	<i>ils se blefferont</i> , they shall or will, &c.

Conditional.

S. <i>Je me blefferois</i> , I would hurt myself.	<i>tu te blefferois</i> , thou wouldst, &c.	<i>il se blefferoit</i> , he would, &c.
P. <i>Nous nous blefferions</i> , we would, &c.	<i>vous vous blefferiez</i> , ye would, &c.	<i>ils se blefferoient</i> , they would, &c.

Compound of the Present.

S. <i>Je me suis bleffé</i> , I have hurt myself.	<i>tu t'es bleffé</i> , thou hast hurt thyself.	<i>il s'est bleffé</i> , he has hurt himself.
P. <i>Nous nous sommes bleffés</i> , we have, &c.	<i>vous vous êtes bleffés</i> , ye have, &c.	<i>ils se sont bleffés</i> , they have hurt, &c.

Compound of the Imperfect.

S. <i>Je m'étois bleffé</i> , I had hurt myself.	<i>tu t'étois bleffé</i> , thou hadst hurt thyself.	<i>il s'étoit bleffé</i> , he had hurt himself.
P. <i>Nous nous étions bleffés</i> , we had, &c.	<i>vous vous étiez bleffés</i> , ye had, &c.	<i>ils s'étoient bleffés</i> , they had, &c.

Compound of the Preterite.

S. <i>Je me fus bleffé</i> , I had hurt myself.	<i>tu te fus bleffé</i> , thou hadst hurt thyself.	<i>il se fut bleffé</i> , he had hurt himself.
P. <i>Nous nous fûmes bleffés</i> , we, &c.	<i>vous vous fûtes bleffés</i> , ye had, &c.	<i>ils se furent bleffés</i> , they had, &c.

Compound of the Future.

S. <i>Je me serai bleffé</i> , I shall have, &c.	<i>tu te seras bleffé</i> , thou shalt have, &c.	<i>il se sera bleffé</i> , he shall have, &c.
P. <i>Nous nous serons bleffés</i> , we shall, &c.	<i>vous vous serez bleffés</i> , ye shall have, &c.	<i>ils se seront bleffés</i> , they shall, &c.

Compound

ACCIDENCE.

Compound of the Conditional.

First Persons.	Second Persons.	Third Persons.
21. S. <i>Je me ferois blessé,</i> I would have, &c.	<i>tu te ferois blessé,</i> thou wouldst, &c.	<i>il se feroit blessé,</i> he would have, &c.
22. P. <i>Nous nous serions</i> <i>blessés, we, &c.</i>	<i>vous vous seriez blessés,</i> ye would, &c.	<i>ils se feroient blessés,</i> they would, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present Tense.

23. S. <i>Je me blesse,</i> I <i>que</i> { may hurt, &c.	<i>tu te blesses,</i> thou mayst, &c.	<i>il se blesse,</i> he may hurt himself.
24. P. <i>Nous nous bles-</i> <i>sions, we, &c.</i>	<i>vous vous blessiez,</i> ye may, &c.	<i>ils se blessent,</i> they may, &c.

Preterite.

25. S. <i>Je me blessasse,</i> <i>que</i> { I might hurt myself.	<i>tu te blessasses,</i> thou mightst, &c.	<i>il se blessât,</i> he might hurt himself.
26. P. <i>Nous nous bles-</i> <i>sassions, we, &c.</i>	<i>vous vous blessassiez,</i> ye might, &c.	<i>ils se blessassent,</i> they might, &c.

Compound of the Present.

27. S. <i>Je me sois blessé,</i> <i>que</i> { I may have hurt myself.	<i>tu te sois blessé,</i> thou mayst, &c.	<i>il se soit blessé,</i> he may have, &c.
28. P. <i>Nous nous soyons</i> <i>blessés, we, &c.</i>	<i>vous vous soyez blessés,</i> ye may, &c.	<i>ils se soient blessés,</i> they may, &c.

Compound of the Preterite.

29. S. <i>Je me fusse</i> <i>que</i> { <i>blessé,</i> I had hurt myself.	<i>tu te fusses blessés,</i> thou hadst, &c.	<i>il se fût blessé,</i> he had hurt himself.
30. P. <i>Nous nous fus-</i> <i>sions blessés, &c.</i>	<i>vous vous fussiez</i> <i>blessés, ye, &c.</i>	<i>ils se fussent blessés,</i> they had, &c.

IMPERATIVE.

31. S.	<i>blesse toi,</i> hurt thy- self.	<i>il se blesse,</i> let him <i>qu'</i> hurt himself.
32. P. <i>Blessons nous,</i> let us hurt, &c.	<i>blessiez vous,</i> hurt yourselves.	<i>ils se blessent,</i> let them hurt themselves.

The French have a great many more reflected verbs that are rendered into English by mere neuter; as *se lever*, to rise.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

1. Pres. *Se lever*, to rise. Ger. *Se levant*, rising. Part. *Levé*, risen.
2. C. Pres. *S'être levé*, to have risen. C. Ger. *S'étant levé*, having risen.

INDICATIVE.

INDICATIVE.

Present Tense.

First Persons.	Second Persons.	Third Persons.
S. <i>Je me lève</i> , I rise.	<i>tu te lève</i> , thou risest.	<i>il se lève</i> , he rises. 3.
P. <i>Nous nous levons</i> , we rise.	<i>vous vous levez</i> , ye or you rise.	<i>ils se lèvent</i> , they rise. 4.

Imperfect.

S. <i>Je me levais</i> , I did rise.	<i>tu te levais</i> , thou didst rise.	<i>il se levait</i> , he did rise. 5.
P. <i>Nous nous levions</i> , we did rise.	<i>vous vous leviez</i> , ye did rise.	<i>ils se levoient</i> , they did rise. 6.

Preterite.

S. <i>Je me levai</i> , I rose.	<i>tu te levais</i> , thou, &c.	<i>il se leva</i> , he rose. 7.
P. <i>Nous nous levâmes</i> , we rose.	<i>vous vous levâtes</i> , ye rose.	<i>ils se levèrent</i> , they rose. 8.

Future.

S. <i>Je me leverai</i> , I shall or will rise.	<i>tu te leveras</i> , thou shalt or wilt rise.	<i>il se lèvera</i> , he shall or will rise. 9.
P. <i>Nous nous leverons</i> , we shall, &c.	<i>vous vous leverez</i> , ye shall or will rise.	<i>ils se leveront</i> , they shall or will rise. 10.

Conditional.

S. <i>Je me leverois</i> , I would or should, &c.	<i>tu te leverois</i> , thou wouldst or, &c.	<i>il se leveroit</i> , he would or should, &c. 11.
P. <i>Nous nous leverions</i> , we should or, &c.	<i>vous vous leveriez</i> , ye would or, &c.	<i>ils se leveroient</i> , they would or should, &c. 12.

Compound of the Present.

S. <i>Je me suis levé</i> , I have risen.	<i>tu t'es levé</i> , thou hast risen.	<i>il s'est levé</i> , he has risen. 13.
P. <i>Nous nous sommes levés</i> , we, &c.	<i>vous vous êtes levés</i> , ye have risen.	<i>ils se sont levés</i> , they have risen. 14.

Compound of the Imperfect.

S. <i>Je m'étois levé</i> , I had risen.	<i>tu t'étois levé</i> , thou hadst risen.	<i>il s'étoit levé</i> , he had risen. 15.
P. <i>Nous nous étions levés</i> , we had risen.	<i>vous vous étiez levés</i> , ye had risen.	<i>ils s'étoient levés</i> , they had risen. 16.

Compound of the Preterite.

S. <i>Je me fus levé</i> , I had risen.	<i>tu te fus levé</i> , thou hadst risen.	<i>il se fut levé</i> , he had risen. 17.
P. <i>Nous nous fûmes levés</i> , we had, &c.	<i>vous vous fûtes levés</i> , ye or you had, &c.	<i>ils se furent levés</i> , they had risen. 18.

Compound

Compound of the Future.

First Persons.	Second Persons.	Third Persons.
19. S. <i>Je me ferai levé</i> , I shall have risen.	<i>tu te seras levé</i> , thou shalt have risen.	<i>il se fera levé</i> , he shall have risen.
20. P. <i>Nous nous serons levés</i> , we shall, &c.	<i>vous vous serez levés</i> , ye or you, &c.	<i>ils se seront levés</i> , they shall have risen.

Compound of the Conditional.

21. S. <i>Je me serois levé</i> , I would have risen.	<i>tu te serois levé</i> , thou wouldst have risen.	<i>il se seroit levé</i> , he would have risen.
22. P. <i>Nous nous serions levés</i> , we, &c.	<i>vous vous seriez levés</i> , ye or you, &c.	<i>ils se seroient levés</i> , they would, &c.

S U B J U N C T I V E.

Present Tense.

23. S. <i>Je me lève</i> , I may rise.	<i>tu te lèves</i> , thou mayst rise.	<i>il se lève</i> , he may rise.
24. P. <i>Nous nous levions</i> , we, &c.	<i>vous vous leviez</i> , ye or you, &c.	<i>ils se lèvent</i> , they may rise.

Preterite.

25. S. <i>Je me levasse</i> , I rose or might rise.	<i>tu te levasses</i> , thou rodest.	<i>il se levât</i> , he rose.
26. P. <i>Nous nous levassions</i> , we, &c.	<i>vous vous levassiez</i> , ye or you, &c.	<i>ils se levassent</i> , they rose.

Compound of the Present.

27. S. <i>Je me sois levé</i> , I may have, &c.	<i>tu te sois levé</i> , thou hast risen.	<i>il se soit levé</i> , he has risen.
28. P. <i>Nous nous soyons levés</i> , we, &c.	<i>vous vous soyez levés</i> , ye or you, &c.	<i>ils se soient levés</i> , they have risen.

Compound of the Preterite.

29. S. <i>Je me fusse levé</i> , I had or might have risen.	<i>tu te fusses levé</i> , thou hadst, &c.	<i>il se fût levé</i> , he had risen.
30. P. <i>Nous nous fussions levés</i> , &c.	<i>vous vous fussiez levés</i> , ye or you, &c.	<i>ils se fussent levés</i> , they had risen.

I M P E R A T I V E.

31. S. <i>lève-toi</i> , rise, or rise thou.	<i>lève-toi</i> , rise, or rise thou.	<i>il se lève</i> , let him rise.
32. P. <i>Levons-nous</i> , let us rise.	<i>levez-vous</i> , rise, or rise ye or you.	<i>ils se lèvent</i> , let them rise.

NOTE,

NOTE.

The following Verbs neuter form likewise their compound from *être*:

<i>accourir</i> , to run to;	<i>entrer</i> , to enter, to come,	<i>sortir</i> , to go out;
<i>aller</i> , to go;	or get in;	<i>tomber</i> , to fall down;
<i>aborder</i> , to land;	<i>monter</i> , to go up, to	<i>venir</i> , to come;
<i>arriver</i> , to arrive;	come or get up;	<i>revenir</i> , to come again;
<i>boir</i> , to fall;	<i>mourir</i> , to die;	<i>devenir</i> , to become;
<i>déchoir</i> , to decay;	<i>naître</i> , to be born;	<i>convenir</i> , to agree;
<i>décéder</i> , to die;	<i>partir</i> , to go, to depart,	<i>disconvenir</i> , to disagree;
<i>descendre</i> , to go, come,	to set out;	<i>provenir</i> , to come from;
or get down;	<i>retourner</i> , to return;	<i>parvenir</i> , to attain;
<i>rester</i> , to stay;	<i>revenir</i> , to come back	<i>survenir</i> , to befall;
	again;	<i>intervenir</i> , to intervene;

Therefore don't say *J'ai arrivé ce matin*, but *Je suis arrivé ce matin*, I arrived this morning; *Elle a venu cette après-midi*, but *Elle est venue*, &c. she came this afternoon.

Some of these verbs are also used actively, that is, attended by a noun as their object: then they form their compounds from *avoir*. Therefore, though we say, when the verb is neuter, *Elle est montée*, she is got up; *Elle est descendue*, she has come, or got down; yet, when the verb is attended by a noun, we say, *Elle a descendu l'escalier plus aisément qu'elle ne l'a monté*, she went or got down the stairs more easily than she got up.

croître to grow, *sortir* to go out, *demeurer* to live, *rester* to stay, are equally well conjugated with *être* or *avoir*; as *il est*, or *il a fort cru*, he is very much grown; *j'ai sorti*, or *je suis sorti ce matin*, I went out this morning. We say equally well *J'ai accouru*, and *Je suis accouru à son secours*, I ran to his assistance. But *avoir* and *être* construed with *sortir* and *demeurer*, imply two different things. *Il est sorti* signifies that he is not at home, or within the place where one is, and is englished thus, *he is gone out*, or *abroad*; and *il a sorti* signifies that he has been out on some business or other, but is come back again since: *il a sorti ce matin*, he went out this morning. In the same manner, *il a demeuré à Paris* signifies that he has lived at *Paris* for a while, and is no more there; and *il est demeuré à Paris*, that he remained at *Paris*, to continue to live there; or at least that he is there still.

Again; *sortir* and *promener* are also used actively: as *sortez ce cheval de l'écurie*, &c. *le promenez*, get the horse out of the stable and walk him.

When the verb *passer* is attended by a noun and a preposition, it is conjugated with *avoir*, and with *être* when it is used absolutely without any retinue; as *j'ai passé par l'Allemagne*, I passed through Germany; *vous attendez le courier*, *il est passé*, you stay for the express, he is passed, or gone.

OF VERBS IRREGULAR.

There are but two * Verbs irregular in the First Conjugation; *aller*, to go; and *puer*, to stink; which is irregular only in the spelling of the three persons sing. of the Pres. of the Indicative, *Je pus*, *tu pus*, *il put*, instead of *je pue*, *tu pues*, *il pue*, all the rest being regular. However, French politeness dislikes the very word *puer*, and, instead of it, we, in conversation, make use of *sentir mauvais*.

Aller

* *J'enverrai* and *j'enverrais* have prevailed instead of the regular future and conditional of *envoyer* (*j'envoyerais* and *j'envoyerois*.)

Aller is very irregular throughout; and as it is of a very extensive use with the expletive *en* and a double pronoun, it shall be also set down here at length; but children must first learn the plain verb *aller*, before they conjugate the reciprocal *s'en aller*.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

1. Pres. *Aller*, to go. Ger. *Allant*, going. Part. *Allé*, gone.
 2. C.Pr. *Etre allé*, to have gone. C.Ger. *Étant allé*, having gone.

INDICATIVE.

Present Tense.

First Persons.	Second Persons.	Third Persons.
3. S. <i>Je vais</i> , I go.	<i>tu vas</i> , thou goest.	<i>il va</i> , he goes.
4. P. <i>Nous allons</i> , we go.	<i>vous allez</i> , ye go.	<i>ils vont</i> , they go.

Imperfect.

5. S. <i>J'allois</i> , I did go.	<i>tu allois</i> , thou didst go.	<i>il alloit</i> , he did go.
6. P. <i>Nous allions</i> , we did go.	<i>vous alliez</i> , ye did go.	<i>ils alloient</i> , they did go.

Preterite.

7. S. <i>J'allai</i> , I went.	<i>tu allas</i> , thou wentest.	<i>il alla</i> , he went.
8. P. <i>Nous allâmes</i> , we went.	<i>vous allâtes</i> , ye or you went.	<i>ils allèrent</i> , they went.

Future.

9. S. <i>J'irai</i> , I shall or will go.	<i>tu iras</i> , thou shalt or wilt go.	<i>il ira</i> , he shall go.
10. P. <i>Nous irons</i> , we shall or will go.	<i>vous irez</i> , ye or you shall go.	<i>ils iront</i> , they shall go.

Conditional.

11. S. <i>J'irois</i> , I should go.	<i>tu irois</i> , thou shouldst go.	<i>il iroit</i> , he should go.
12. P. <i>Nous irions</i> , we should go.	<i>vous iriez</i> , ye or you should go.	<i>ils iroient</i> , they should go.

Compound of the Present.

13. S. <i>Je suis allé</i> , I have gone.	<i>tu es allé</i> , thou hast gone.	<i>il est allé</i> , he had gone.
14. P. <i>Nous sommes allés</i> , we had gone.	<i>vous êtes allés</i> , ye or you, &c.	<i>ils sont allés</i> , they had gone.

Compound

Compound of the Imperfect.

First Persons.	Second Persons.	Third Persons.
S. <i>J'étois allé, I had gone.</i>	<i>tu étois allé, thou hadst gone.</i>	<i>il étoit allé, he had gone.</i> 15.
P. <i>Nous étions allés, we had gone.</i>	<i>vous étiez allés, ye or you had gone.</i>	<i>ils étoient allés, they had gone.</i> 16.

Compound of the Preterite.

S. <i>Je fus allé, I had gone.</i>	<i>tu fus allé, thou hadst gone.</i>	<i>il fut allé, he had gone.</i> 17.
P. <i>Nous fûmes allés, we had gone.</i>	<i>vous fûtes allés, ye had gone.</i>	<i>ils furent allés, they had gone.</i> 18.

Compound of the Future.

S. <i>Je serai allé, I shall have gone.</i>	<i>tu seras allé, thou shalt have gone.</i>	<i>il sera allé, he shall have gone.</i> 19.
P. <i>Nous serons allés, we shall have, &c.</i>	<i>vous serez allés, ye or you, &c.</i>	<i>ils seront allés, they shall have gone.</i> 20.

Compound of the Conditional.

S. <i>Je serois allé, I would have gone.</i>	<i>tu serois allé, thou wouldst, &c.</i>	<i>il seroit allé, he would, &c.</i> 21.
P. <i>Nous serions allés, we would, &c.</i>	<i>vous seriez allés, ye would, &c.</i>	<i>ils seroient allés, they would, &c.</i> 22.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

S. <i>J'aïlle, I may go.</i>	<i>tu aïlles, thou mayst go.</i>	<i>il aïlle, he may go.</i> 23.
P. <i>Nous allions, we may go.</i>	<i>vous alliez, ye or you may go.</i>	<i>ils aïllent, they may go.</i> 24.

Preterite.

S. <i>J'allasse, I might go.</i>	<i>tu allasses, thou mightest go.</i>	<i>il allât, he might go.</i> 25.
P. <i>Nous allassions, we might, &c.</i>	<i>vous allassiez, ye or you might go.</i>	<i>ils allassent, they might go.</i> 26.

Compound of the Present.

S. <i>Je sois allé, I have gone.</i>	<i>tu sois allé, thou hast gone.</i>	<i>il soit allé, he has gone.</i> 27.
P. <i>Nous soyons allés, we, &c.</i>	<i>vous soyez allés, ye or you, &c.</i>	<i>ils soient allés, they had gone.</i> 28.

Compound

Compound of the Preterite.

First Persons.	Second Persons.	Third Persons.
29. S. <i>Je fusse allé, I</i> had gone.	<i>tu fusses allé, thou</i> hadst gone.	<i>il fut allé, he had</i> gone.
30. P. <i>Nous fussions</i> <i>allés, we, &c.</i>	<i>vous fussiez allés, you</i> had gone.	<i>ils fussent allés, they</i> had gone.

I M P E R A T I V E.

31. S. <i>va,</i>	<i>go thou.</i>	<i>il aille, let him go.</i>
32. P. <i>Allons, let us</i>	<i>allez, go ye.</i>	<i>qu'ils aillent, let them</i> <i>go.</i>

S'EN ALLER.

I N F I N I T I V E M O O D.

1. Pres. <i>S'en aller, to</i> go away.	Ger. <i>S'en allant, go-</i> ing away.	Part. <i>Allé, gone</i> away.
2. C. Pres. <i>S'en être allé, to have</i> gone away.	C. Ger. <i>S'en étant allé, having</i> gone away.	

I N D I C A T I V E.

Present Tense.

3. S. <i>Je m'en vais, I</i> go away.	<i>tu t'en vas, thou goest</i> away.	<i>il s'en va, he goes</i> away.
4. P. <i>Nous nous en al-</i> <i>lons, we go away.</i>	<i>vous vous en allez,</i> <i>ye or you, &c.</i>	<i>ils s'en vont, they</i> go away.

Imperfect.

5. S. <i>Je m'en allois, I</i> did go away.	<i>tu t'en allois, thou</i> didst go away.	<i>il s'en alloit, he did</i> go away.
6. P. <i>Nous nous en al-</i> <i>lions, we did, &c.</i>	<i>vous vous en alliez,</i> <i>ye or you, &c.</i>	<i>ils s'en alloient, they</i> did go away.

Preterite.

7. S. <i>Je m'en allai, I</i> went away.	<i>tu t'en allas, thou</i> wentest away.	<i>il s'en alla, he went</i> away.
8. P. <i>Nous nous en al-</i> <i>lâmes, we, &c.</i>	<i>vous vous en allâtes,</i> <i>ye or you, &c.</i>	<i>ils s'en allèrent, they</i> went away.

Future.

9. S. <i>Je m'en irai, I shall</i> or will go away.	<i>tu t'en iras, thou shalt</i> or wilt, &c.	<i>il s'en ira, he shall</i> or will go away.
10. P. <i>Nous nous en irons,</i> we shall, &c.	<i>vous vous en irez, ye</i> or you shall, &c.	<i>ils s'en iront, they</i> shall or will, &c.

Conditional.

Conditional.

First Persons.	Second Persons.	Third Persons.
S. <i>Je m'en irois, I would, could, or, &c. go away.</i>	<i>tu t'en irois, thou wouldst, &c.</i>	<i>il s'en iroit, he would, &c. go away.</i>
P. <i>Nous nous en irions, we would, &c.</i>	<i>vous vous en iriez, ye or you, &c.</i>	<i>ils s'en iroient, they would, &c.</i>

Compound of the Present.

S. <i>Je m'en suis allé, * I have gone away.</i>	<i>tu t'en es allé, thou hast gone away.</i>	<i>il s'en est allé, he has gone away.</i>
P. <i>Nous nous en sommes allés, we, &c.</i>	<i>vous vous en êtes allés, ye have, &c.</i>	<i>ils s'en sont allés, they have, &c.</i>

Compound of the Imperfect.

S. <i>Je m'en étois allé, † I had gone away.</i>	<i>tu t'en étois allé, thou hadst, &c.</i>	<i>il s'en étoit allé, he had gone away.</i>
P. <i>Nous nous en étions allés, we, &c.</i>	<i>vous vous en étiez allés, ye had, &c.</i>	<i>ils s'en étoient allés, they had gone, &c.</i>

Compound of the Preterite.

S. <i>Je m'en fus allé, ‡ I had gone away.</i>	<i>tu t'en fus allé, thou hadst gone away.</i>	<i>il s'en fut allé, he had gone away.</i>
P. <i>Nous nous en fûmes allés, we, &c.</i>	<i>vous vous en fûtes allés, ye or, &c.</i>	<i>ils s'en furent allés, they had, &c.</i>

Compound of the Future.

S. <i>Je m'en serai allé, ¶ I shall have, &c.</i>	<i>tu t'en seras allé, thou shalt have gone.</i>	<i>il s'en sera allé, he shall have, &c.</i>
P. <i>Nous nous en serons allés, we, &c.</i>	<i>vous vous en serez allés, ye, &c.</i>	<i>ils s'en seront allés, they shall, &c.</i>

Compound of the Conditional.

S. <i>Je m'en serois allé, I would, &c.</i>	<i>tu t'en serois allé, thou wouldst, &c.</i>	<i>il s'en seroit allé, he would have, &c.</i>
P. <i>Nous nous en serions allés, we, &c.</i>	<i>vous vous en seriez allés, ye, &c.</i>	<i>ils s'en seroient allés, they would, &c.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.

S. <i>Je m'en aille, I may go away.</i>	<i>tu t'en ailles, thou mayst go away.</i>	<i>il s'en aille, he may go away.</i>
P. <i>Nous nous en allions, we, &c.</i>	<i>vous vous en alliez, ye or you, &c.</i>	<i>ils s'en aillent, they may go away.</i>

* or I have been gone away, or I am gone away.

† or I had been gone away, or I was gone away.

‡ or I had been gone away, or I was gone away.

¶ or I shall have been gone away, or I shall be gone away.

Preterite.

	First Persons.	Second Persons.	Third Persons.
25. S.	<i>Je m'en allasse, I went or might go away.</i>	<i>tu t'en allasses, thou wentst away.</i>	<i>il s'en allât, he went away.</i>
26. P.	<i>Nous nous en allassions, &c.</i>	<i>vous vous en allassiez, ye or you, &c.</i>	<i>ils s'en allassent, they went, &c.</i>

Compound of the Present.

27. S.	<i>Je m'en sois allé, I have, &c.</i>	<i>tu t'en sois allé, thou hast, &c.</i>	<i>il s'en soit allé, he has, &c.</i>
28. P.	<i>Nous nous en soyons allés, &c.</i>	<i>vous vous en soyez allés, ye or, &c.</i>	<i>ils s'en soient allés, they, &c.</i>

Compound of the Preterite.

29. S.	<i>Je m'en fusse allé, I had or might have gone.</i>	<i>tu t'en fusses allé, thou hadst, &c.</i>	<i>il s'en fût allé, he had gone away.</i>
30. P.	<i>Nous nous en fussions allés, &c.</i>	<i>vous vous en fussiez allés, ye or, &c.</i>	<i>ils s'en fussent allés, they, &c.</i>

I M P E R A T I V E.

31. S.	<i>Va-t-en, go thou away†.</i>	<i>il s'en aille, let qu' him, &c.</i>
32. P.	<i>Allons-nous-en, let us go away*.</i>	<i>allez-vous-en, go a- way, get away†, &c. ils s'en aillent, let them, &c.</i>

* or let us be gone away.

† or get you gone.

33. Observe, 1st, That all the compound tenses of *aller* are double, they being equally well formed with the verb substantive *être* and the participle *allé*; as
 34. *je suis allé, j'étois allé*, and with the auxiliary *avoir*, and the participle *été*; as *j'ai été, j'avois été*, &c.

35. 2^{dly}, One must very warily distinguish the proper compound tenses of *aller* (*j'ai été, j'avois été*, &c.) from the use that the participle of the same verb (*allé*) is put to with the verb *être* (*je suis allé, j'étois allé*), which imply quite another sense than that signified by the action of the verb: for *Il est allé à Paris* (for example), far from expressing the action signified by the compound of the present of *aller*, intimates that either *he is at Paris*, or at least *is still on his journey thither*, which is properly englished thus; *he is gone to Paris*. But *Il a été à Paris*, he has been at Paris, (which is the proper compound of the present of *aller*) signifies that *he has travelled to Paris*, and is returned from thence. I have therefore set down the two ways in English (*I am gone away*, and *I have been gone away*, for *je m'en suis allé*), which may be both used conformable to this observation.

36. 3^{dly}, The preterite tenses of *aller* and *s'en aller* are also double, those of the verb *être* being equally well used. *J'allai* or *Je fus*, *J'allasse* or *Je fusse*, I went; *Je m'en allai* or *Je m'en fus*, I went away. But we don't say with the double pronoun and the particle *en*, *Je m'en ai été*, as we say without them, *J'ai été*, I have been, or have gone.

4thly, The difference between *aller* and *s'en aller* is this. The first is used to denote only the going from one place to another; whereas *s'en aller* denotes the very departure, the just going away directly; or at least shews the specified time of setting out from one mentioned or supposed place.

5thly, *s'en aller* is also said of liquors, to signify their running away from the vessels wherein they are kept: as *le vin s'en va*, *le tonneau ne vaut rien*, the wine runs away, the vessel is good for nothing.

6thly, *venir* to come, *revenir* to come back again, and *retourner* to return, are also conjugated with a double pronoun and the particle *en*: as *Je m'en reviens*, I am coming back again; *Il s'en retourne*, he is returning; and either way must be used according to the afore said difference between *aller* and *s'en aller*.

7thly, Though the participle of *recouvrer* to recover, or get again, is now-a-days *recouvré*, as usual to all verbs of the first conjugation, yet custom keeps still the old participle *recouvert* in law-style, as likewise in this proverb, *Pour un perdu deux recouverts*, for one lost two recovered, or found again.

8thly Verbs of the first conjugation which in the infinitive mood have for the first letter of the last syllable, retain the letter *e* in those tenses which in other verbs of the same conjugation require *o* and *a*, and that for sound's sake, which would be harsh before those vowels.

VERBS IRREGULAR of the SECOND and THIRD CONJUGATION, viz. in ir.

Inf. ACQUÉRIR, to acquire, to get, to purchase.

acquérir, to acquire. Ger. *acquérant*, acquiring. Part. *acquis*, acquired.

Pres. *J'acqui-ers, iers, iert*; *Nous acqué-rons, rez, acquièrent*.

Imp. *J'acquér-ois, ois, oit*; *Nous acquér-ions, iez, oient*.

Pret. *J'acqu-is, is, it*; *Nous acqu-îmes, îtes, irent*.

Fut. *J'acquerrai, ras, ra*; *Nous acquerrons, rez, ront*.

Cond. *J'acquerrais, rois, roit*; *Nous acquerrions, riez, roient*.

S.P. *J'acqu-ierre, ierres, ierre*; *Nous acquér-ions, iez, acquièrent*.

Pr. *J'acqu-isse, isse, it*; *Nous acqui-ssions, ssez, sent*.

Imper. *Acquiers, qu'il acquierre*; *acqué-rons, rez, qu'ils acquièrent*.

The other verbs that follow the same conjugation are *conquérir*, to conquer, and *requérir*, to require, which last is only used in law: *conquérir* is used only in the infinitive, both preterite and compound tenses. As for *quérir*, to fetch, it has but the infinitive in use, and that too immediately after the verbs *aller*, to go, *venir*, to come, and *envoyer*, to send: and *s'enquérir de*, to inquire after, is become obsolete; instead of which we now-a-days say *s'informer*.

BOUILLIR.

Inf. *bouillir*, to boil. Ger. *bouillant*, boiling. Part. *bouilli*, boiled.

Pres. *Je bous, bous, bout*; *Nous bouill-ons, ez, ent*.

Imp. *Je bouill-ois, ois, oit*; *Nous bouill-ions, iez, oient*.

Pret. *Je bouill-is, is, it*; *Nous bouill-îmes, îtes, irent*.

Fut. *Je bouillirai, ras, ra*; *Nous bouillirons, rez, ront*.

Cond. *Je bouillirais, rois, roit*; *Nous bouillirions, riez, roient*.

S.P. *Je bouill-e, es, e*; *Nous bouill-ions, iez, ent*.

Pr. *Je bouill-isse, isse, it*; *Nous bouill-issions, ssez, sent*.

Imper. *Bous, qu'il bouille*; *bouill-ons, ez, qu'ils bouillent*.

27. Its compound is *rebouillir*, to boil again.—That verb is seldom used but in the
 28. infinitive and 3d persons of its tenses: and it is always neuter. Therefore don't say
 29. *bouillir de la viande*, as in English, to boil meat, but *faire bouillir de la viande*.

30. C O U R I R.

31. Inf. *courir*, to run. Ger. *courant*, running. Part. *couru*, run.
 32. Pres. *Je cours*, *cours*, *court*; *Nous cour* -ons, *ez*, *ent*.
 33. Imp. *Je cour* -ois, *ois*, *oit*; *Nous cour* -ions, *iez*, *oient*.
 34. Pret. *Je cour* -us, *us*, *ut*; *Nous cour* -ûmes, *ûtes*, *urent*.
 35. Fut. *Je cour* -rai, *ras*, *ra*; *Nous cour* -rons, *rez*, *ront*.
 36. Cond. *Je cour* -rais, *rais*, *roit*; *Nous cour* -rions, *riez*, *roient*.
 37. S. P. *Je cour* -re, *es*, *e*; *Nous cour* -ions, *iez*, *ent*.
 38. Pr. ^{que} *Je cour* -usse, *usses*, *ût*; *Nous couru* -ssions, *ssiez*, *ssent*.
 39. Imper. *Cours*, *qu'il coure*; *cour-ons*, *ez*, *qu'ils courent*.

After the same manner are conjugated these seven Verbs:

- | | | |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 40. <i>accourir</i> , to run to; | <i>discourir</i> , to discourse; | <i>secourir</i> , to succour, to |
| 41. <i>concourir</i> , to concur, | <i>parcourir</i> , to run over, | relieve: but the com- |
| 42. to conspire; | to survey; | pound tenses of <i>ac-</i> |
| 43. <i>encourir</i> , to incur, to | <i>recourir</i> , to have re- | <i>courir</i> are conjugated |
| fall under; | course to; | with <i>être</i> . |

44. C U E I L L I R, to gather, to pick up.

45. Inf. *cueillir*, to gather. Ger. *cueillant*, gathering.
 46. Part. *cueilli*, gathered.

47. Pres. *Je cueill* -e, *es*, *e*; *Nous cueill* -ons, *ez*, *ent*.
 48. Imp. *Je cueill* -ois, *ois*, *oit*; *Nous cueill* -ions, *iez*, *oient*.
 49. Pret. *Je cueill* -is, *is*, *it*; *Nous cueill* -îmes, *îtes*, *irent*.
 50. Fut. *Je cueille* -rai, *ras*, *ra*; *Nous cueille* -rons, *rez*, *ront*.
 51. Cond. *Je cueille* -rais, *rais*, *roit*; *Nous cueille* -rions, *riez*, *roient*.
 52. S. P. *Je cueill* -e, *es*, *e*; *Nous cueill* -ions, *iez*, *ent*.
 53. Pr. ^{que} *Je cueill* -isse, *isses*, *ît*; *Nous cueilli* -ssions, *ssiez*, *ssent*.
 54. Imper. *Cueille*, *qu'il cueille*; *cueill-ons*, *ez*, *qu'ils cueillent*.

55. *accueillir*, to welcome, is very little used; in lieu thereof we say *faire accueil*,
 56. and *faire bon accueil*. *Recueillir*, to collect, or gather together, is conjugated after the same manner.

57. F U I R, and s' E N F U I R.

58. *Fuir* is both active and neuter: when it is neuter, 'tis to run
 59. away; and to shun, to avoid, when active.
 60. Inf. *fuir*, to shun. Ger. *fuyant*, shunning. Part. *fui*, shunned.
 61. Pres. *Je fuis*, *fuis*, *fuit*; *Nous fuy* -ons, *ez*, *fuient*.
 62. Imp. *Je fuy* -ois, *ois*, *oit*; *Nous fuy* -ions, *iez*, *oient*.
 63. Pret. *Je fuis*, *fuis*, *fuit*; *Nous fu* -îmes, *îtes*, *irent*.

This

This Preterite is seldom used; instead of *je suis*, and *je m'en suis*, we say 64.
(when the verb is neuter) *je pris la fuite*, from *prendre la fuite*, to run 65.
away: and *j'évitai*, from *éviter*, to avoid, to shun (when it is active). 66.

Fut. *Je fui-rai*, *ras*, *ra*; *Nous fui-rons*, *rez*, *ront*. 67.

Cond. *Je fui-rois*, *rais*, *roit*; *Nous fui-rions*, *riez*, *roient*. 68.

S. P. *Je fui-e*, *es*, *fuit*; *Nous fui-ions*, *iez*, *fuient*. 69.

Pr. ^{que} *Je fui-ssé*, *sses*, *fût*; *Nous fui-ssions*, *ssiez*, *ssent*. 70.

The Pres. tense of the Subjunctive Mood is very little used, and the Pret. 71.
tense still less; instead of them we say, *Je prenne la fuite*, *je prise la fuite*; 72.
j'évite, *j'évitasse*.

Imper. *Faie*, *qu'il fuie*; *fuy-ous*, *ex*, *qu'ils fuient*. 73.

H A Ï R.

Inf. *haïr*, to hate. Ger. *haïssant*, hating. Part. *haï*, hated. 1.

Pres. *Je hais*, *ais*, *it*; *Nous haïss-ons*, *ex*, *ent*. 3.

Imper. *Haï*, *qu'il haïsse*; *haïss-ous*, *ex*, *qu'ils haïssent*. 4.

The irregularity of this verb falls only upon those tenses. All the other 5.
tenses are regular. (See the Second Conjugation.) 6.

MOURIR, and Se MOURIR, to be a dying. 7.

Inf. *mourir*, to die. Ger. *mourant*, dying. Part. *mort*, dead. 8.

Pres. *Je meurs*, *meurs*, *meurt*; *Nous mour-ons*, *ex*, *meurent*. 9.

Imp. *Je mour-ois*, *ois*, *oit*; *Nous mour-ions*, *iez*, *oient*. 10.

Pret. *Je mour-us*, *us*, *ut*; *Nous mour-ûmes*, *ûtes*, *urent*. 11.

Fut. *Je mour-rai*, *ras*, *ra*; *Nous mour-rons*, *rez*, *ront*. 12.

Cond. *Je mour-rois*, *rais*, *roit*; *Nous mour-rions*, *riez*, *roient*. 13.

S. P. *Je meur-e*, *es*, *e*; *Nous mour-ions*, *iez*, *meurent*. 14.

Pr. ^{que} *Je mour-usse*, *usses*, *ût*; *Nous mouru-ssions*, *ssiez*, *ssent*. 15.

Imper. *Meurs*, *qu'il meure*; *mour-ous*, *ex*, *qu'ils meurent*. 16.

The Compound Tenses are formed from *être*. 17.

O U V R I R.

Inf. *ouvrir*, to open. Ger. *ouvrant*, opening. Part. *ouvert*, open. 18.

Pres. *J'ouvr-e*, *es*, *e*; *Nous ouvr-ons*, *ex*, *ent*. 19.

Imp. *J'ouvr-ois*, *ois*, *oit*; *Nous ouvr-ions*, *iez*, *oient*. 20.

Pret. *J'ouvr-is*, *is*, *it*; *Nous ouvr-îmes*, *îtes*, *irent*. 21.

Fut. *J'ouvr-irai*, *ras*, *ra*; *Nous ouvr-irons*, *rez*, *ront*. 22.

Cond. *J'ouvr-irais*, *rais*, *roit*; *Nous ouvr-irions*, *riez*, *roient*. 23.

S. P. *J'ouvr-e*, *es*, *e*; *Nous ouvr-ions*, *iez*, *ent*. 24.

Pr. ^{que} *J'ouvr-isse*, *isses*, *ît*; *Nous ouvr-issions*, *ssiez*, *ssent*. 25.

Imper. *Ouvre*, *qu'il ouvre*; *ouvr-ous*, *ex*, *qu'ils ouvrent*. 26.

Souffrir, to suffer, or bear, and *offrir*, to offer, with its derivative *mésoffrir*, to under-
bid (very little used), *couvrir*, to cover, *découvrir*, to discover, and *recouvrir*, to cover
again, are conjugated after *ouvrir*. 27.

29. **SAILLIR**, to gush out, is out of use; as also **ASSAILLIR**,
 30. to assault, except perhaps in the participle *assailli*, assaulted.
 31. And **TRESSAILLIR**, which is commonly attended by *de*
 32. *joie*, with which it makes a particular expression (*tressaillir*
 33. *de joie*, to leap for joy), is more used in the infinitive, the
 34. gerund, and the pres. imp. and pret. than in the other tenses.
 35. Inf. *tressaillir*, to start. Ger. *tressaillant*, starting. Part. *tressailli*, started.

36. Pres. *Je tressaill -e, es, e; Nous tressaill -ons, ez, ent.*
 37. Imp. *Je tressaill -ois, ois, oit; Nous tressaill -ions, iez, oient.*
 38. Pret. *Je tressaill -is, is, it; Nous tressaill -îmes, îtes, irent.*
 39. Fut. *Je tressailli -rai, ras, ra; Nous tressailli -rons, rez, ront.*
 40. Cond. *Je tressailli -rois, rois, roit; Nous tressailli -rions, riez, roient.*
 41. S. P. *Je tressaill -e, es, e; Nous tressaill -ions, iez, ient.*
 42. Pr. *Je tressaill -isse, isses, ît; Nous tressailli -ssions, ssiez, ssent.*
 43. No Imperative.

44. *Saillir* may still be used in these persons; *les eaux saillissent*, the waters gush out; *le sang saillissoit*, the blood gushed out; *mon sang a sailli fort loin*, my blood has gushed out a great way.

46. R E V Ê T I R,

to invest with, bestow, or confer a dignity upon one, is always used in a figurative sense.

47. Inf. *revêtir*, to invest. Ger. *revêtant*, investing. Part. *revêtu*, invested.
 48. Pres. *Je rev -êts, êts, ét; Nous revêt -ons, ez, ent.*
 49. Imp. *Je revêt -ois, ois, oit; Nous revêt -ions, iez, oient.*
 50. Pret. *Je revêt -is, is, it; Nous revêt -îmes, îtes, irent.*
 51. Fut. *Je revêti -rai, ras, ra; Nous revêti -rons, rez, ront.*
 52. Cond. *Je revêti -rois, rois, roit; Nous revêti -rions, riez, roient.*
 53. S. P. *Je revêt -e, es, e; Nous revêt -ions, iez, ent.*
 54. Pr. *Je revêt -isse, isses, ît; Nous revêti -ssions, ssiez, ssent.*
 55. Imper. *Revêts, qu'il revête; revêt-ons, ez, qu'ils revêtent.*

56. *Vêtir*, to clothe, is used only in the infinitive, and part. *vêtu*, clothed: as to the
 57. other tenses, we make use of *habiller*. — *Se revêtir*, to put on one's clothes, is some-
 58. times used, though not throughout: but *travestir*, to disguise, and *investir*, to invest,
 59. are regular verbs of the 2d conj. although they are seldom used but in the infinitive, the participle, future, conditional, and preterite.

60. *Faillir*, to fail, and *défaillir*, to faint away, are quite become obsolete. We have

61. substituted to the former *manquer*, and to the latter *s'évanouir*, or *tomber en défaillance*.

62. *Oùir*, to hear, is used only in the compound tenses, and that too with the verb

63. *dire* after it; *J'ai oùi dire*, I have heard; *J'avois oùi dire*, I have heard, &c. In

64. all other cases we make use of *entendre* or *apprendre*.

65. *Féris*: an old obsolete word. Its infinitive is kept in this phrase only, *sans coup féris*, without striking one blow.

IRREGULAR VERBS of the Fifth Conjugation, or in *oir*.

s'ASSEOIR.

Inf. *s'asseoir*, to sit down. Ger. *s'assoyant*, sitting down.

Part. *assis*, sat down.

Pr. *Je m'ass* -ieds, ieds, ied; *Nous nous ass* -eyons, eyez, eyent.

Im. *Je m'ass*ey-ois, ois, oit; *Nous nous ass*ey-ions, iez, oient.

Pr. *Je m'ass* -is, is, it; *Nous nous ass* -îmes, îtes, irent.

Fu. *Je m'assierai*, *m'assèrai*, *m'assèyera*, &c. Authors are

Co. *Je m'assierois*, or *m'assèrois*, or *m'assèyerois*, &c. divided about

the spelling and pronouncing of these two tenses, but it is better to avoid using them.

Sub. *Je m'ass* -eye, eyes, eye; *Nous nous ass*ey-ions, iez, ent.

Pr. *Je m'ass*i-ssè, ssès, it; *Nous nous ass*i-ssions, ssiez, ssent.

Imper. *Assied-toi*, qu'il *s'assèye*; *assoyons-nous*, *assèyez-vous*, qu'ils *s'assèyent*.

Instead of using the three persons singular, and the third plural of the Pres. of both moods, it is better to take another turn, and use the persons of either of these verbs, *se mettre sur*, *se reposer*, *se placer*, *prendre place*, according to the sense. But

This following regular way of conjugating *s'asseoir* begins to prevail, which is doubtless occasioned by the difficulties attending the irregular way of conjugating it. However, I don't recommend it before it be entirely established by use.

Inf. *s'asseoir*, to sit down. Ger. *s'assoyant*, sitting down. Part. *assis*, sat down.

Pres. *Je m'ass* -ois, ois, oit; *Nous nous ass*oy-ons, ez, ent.

Imp. *Je m'ass*oy-ois, ois, oit; *Nous nous ass*oy-ions, iez, oient.

Pret. *Je m'ass* -is, is, it; *Nous nous ass* -îmes, îtes, irent.

Fut. *Je m'assoi*-rai, ras, ra; *Nous nous assoi*-rons, rez, roient.

Cond. *Je m'assoi*-rois, rois, roit; *Nous nous assoi*-rions, riez, roient.

S. P. *Je m'assoi*-e, es, e; *Nous nous ass*oy-ions, iez, ent.

Pret. *Je m'ass* -fisse, fisses, sit; *Nous nous ass*i-ssions, ssiez, ssent.

asseoir is also used actively; as *assoyez*, or *assèyez cet enfant*, sit down the child.

raseoir, besides its reduplicative signification of *sitting again*, is also used neutrally in the sense of *settling*; as *laisser raseoir une liqueur*, or *ses esprits*, to let a liquor, or one's spirits settle; in which sense its use is confined to the infinitive.

surseoir, to adjourn, is used only in law, in the infinitive, the participle *suris*, and perhaps the future *surseira*. On the contrary,

seoir, to become, or sit well, is never used in the infinitive, but only in the third persons of both numbers of the subjunctive tenses: as,

Cette couleur vous sied bien, That colour fits you well;

Ces couleurs ne vous siéent pas, Those colours dont fit you well;

and never *sient* or *seyent*. It being not therefore conjugated like *asseoir*, I'll set down here the tenses wherein the verb is used. It has no preterite or compound tenses, and is said both with respect to manners, drefs, colours, or any thing like relating to persons. Its gerund should be *seyant*; as

Cette couleur vous seyant bien, vous n'en devriez jamais changer;

Since that colour fits you well, you should never change it.

V O I R,

23.

Inf. voir, to see. Ger. voyant, seeing. Part. vu, seen.

24.

Pres. Je vois, vois, voit; Nous voy-ons, ez, voient. 25.

Imp. Je voy-ois, ois, oit; Nous voy-ions, iez, oient. 26.

Pret. Je vis, vis, vit; Nous vîmes, vîtes, virent. 27.

Fut. Je ver-rai, ras, ra; Nous ver-rons, rez, ront. 28.

Cond. Je ver-rois, rois, roit; Nous ver-rions, riez, roient. 29.

In those two Tenses pronounce double r like a single one.

30.

S. P. Je voy-e, es, e; Nous voy-ions, iez, ent. 31.

Pr. Je visse, visses, vit; Nous vissions, vissiez, vissent. 32.

Imper. Vois, qu'il voye; Voy-ons, ez, qu'ils voyent. 33.

After voir, are conjugated, *entrevoir*, to have a glimpse of; *pouvoir*, to provide; 34.

prévoir, to foresee; and *revoir*, to see again: but *pouvoir* and *prévoir* don't make 35.

their future and conditional in *errai* and *errois*, as their primitive does; but in *oirai* 36.

and *oirais* (*je pourvoirai*, *tu prévoiras*, *il pourvoirait*, *nous prévoirions*, &c.); *pouvoir* 37.

differs also from all others in its preterite tenses, which are not ended in *is* and *isse*, 38.

but in *us* and *usse*, (*je pourvus*, *je pourvusse*).

V O U L O I R.

39.

Inf. vouloir, to be willing. Ger. voulant, being willing.

40.

Part. voulu, been willing.

Pres. Je veux, veux, veut; Nous vou-lons, lez, veulent. 41.

Imp. Je vou-lois, lois, loit; Nous vou-lions, liez, loient. 42.

Pret. Je vou-lus, lus, lut; Nous vou-lûmes, lûtes, lurent. 43.

Fut. Je vou-drai, dras, dra; Nous vou-drons, drez, dront. 44.

Cond. Je vou-drois, drois, droit; Nous vou-drions, driez, droient. 45.

S. P. Je veuill-e, es, e; Nous vou-lions, liez, veuillent. 46.

Pr. Je vou-lusse, lusses, lût; Nous vou-lussions, lussiez, lussent. 47.

No Imperative. 48.

V A L O I R.

49.

Inf. valoir, to be worth. Ger. valant, being worth. Part. 50.

valu, been worth.

Pres. Je vau-s, vau-s, vaut; Nous va-lons, lez, lent. 51.

Imp. Je va-lois, lois, loit; Nous va-lions, liez, loient. 52.

Pret. Je va-lus, lus, lut; Nous va-lûmes, lûtes, lurent. 53.

Fut. Je vau-drai, ras, ra; Nous vau-drons, drez, dront. 54.

Cond. Je vau-drois, rois, rôt; Nous vau-drions, driez, droient. 55.

S. P. Je vaill-e, es, e; Nous va-lions, liez, vaillent. 56.

Pr. Je va-lusse, lusses, lût; Nous va-lussions, lussiez, lussent. 57.

Imper. Vaux, qu'il vaille; Va-lons, lez, qu'ils valent. 58.

Revaloir, to be even with one, and *prévaloir*, to prevail, follow the same conju- 59.

gation, except that *prévaloir* makes in the present subj. *prévale*, and not *prévaille*. 60.

M O U V O I R .

61. Inf. *mouvoir*, to move. Ger. *mouvant*, moving. Part. *mu*, moved.
62. Pres. *Je meus*, *meus*, *meut*; *Nous mou-vons*, *vex*, *meuvent*.
63. Imp. *Je mou-vois*, *vois*, *voit*; &c.
64. Fut. & Cond. (if used) *mouvrai*, and *mouvrais*, &c.
65. Sub. *Je mou-ve*, *ves*, *ve*; *Nous mou-vions*, *viez*, *meuvent*.
66. The Preterite Tenses, which should be *Je mus*, *Je musse*, are very seldom used.
67. Imper. *Meus*, *qu'il meuve*; *Mou-vons*, *vex*, *qu'ils meuvent*.
68. *Mouvoir* is a technical term, which also has few tenses in use. In common conversation we use *remuer*. Its derivatives are *émouvoir*, *démouvoir*, and *promouvoir*.
69. *démouvoir* is a law term used only in the infinitive in such phrases as these: *se*
70. *démouvoir*, to desist; *démouvoir quelqu'un de ses prétentions*, to make one desist from his pretentions.
71. *apparaître*, v. n. another law-term, used only in the infinitive, and third person sing. as *Comme il appert par un tel acte*, As it appears by such an act.
72. *promouvoir* has only the part. in use, and that too speaking of Church preferments and holy orders: as *promu à l'Épiscopat*, promoted to a Bishoprick.
73. *émouvoir* is used only in the infinitive, and in the sense of *working* with respect to
74. purges; as *Il est difficile à émouvoir*, he is hard to be purged: *émouvoir* is also used for
75. *exciter*, to excite; as *émouvoir les passions*, *une sédition*. Its part. as also compound
76. tenses, are used in the last sense, to wit, that of *being concerned* (*ému*, concerned); *s'émouvoir* is sometimes also used in the third pers. of the pres. in the same sense: as *Il s'émue de rien*, The least thing gives him concern; *Il ne s'émue de rien*, He is concerned at nothing.
77. As for *cboir* and *décboir*, they are quite out of use, except in the infinitive, and
78. participles *échu* and *déchu*; and *tomber*, to fall, has taken their place.—Its derivative
79. *échoir*, is only used in the part. *échu*, in the third pers. sing. of the pres. and fut.
80. and perhaps the gerund (*écheant*), as in such phrases like these;
81. *Si le cas y échoit* (pron. sometimes *échet*), If the occasion occurs, if there be occasion;
82. *Le terme échoit le six du mois*, The rent expires the sixth of the month;
83. *Mon terme échoira demain*, My rent will be out to-morrow;
84. *Le terme est échu*, The rent or quarter is out, or expired;
85. *Cela lui est échu par sort*, That fell to him by lot.
86. *avoir*, to have, has also its derivatives; *ravoir*, to have again; and *se ravoir*, to
87. recover one's strength; but they are used in the infinitive only: as
88. *Il veut le ravoir*, He desires to have it again;
89. *Il a de la peine à se ravoir*, He recovers his strength but slowly.

IRREGULAR VERBS of the Sixth Conjugation, or in *aire*.

P L A I R E .

1. Inf. *plaire*, to please. Ger. *plaisant*, pleasing. Part. *plu*, pleased.
2. Pres. *Je plais*, *plais*, *plaît*; *Nous plai-sons*, *sez*, *sont*.
3. Imp. *Je plai-sois*, *sois*, *soit*; *Nous plai-sions*, *siez*, *soient*.
4. Pret. *Je plus*, *plus*, *plut*; *Nous pl -îmes*, *ûtes*, *urent*.
5. Fut. *Je plai-rai*, *ras*, *ra*; *Nous plai-rions*, *rez*, *ront*.
6. Cond. *Je plai-rois*, *rois*, *roit*; *Nous plai-rions*, *riez*, *roient*.
7. S. P. *Je plai-se*, *ses*, *se*; *Nous plai-sions*, *sez*, *sont*.
8. Pr. *Je plu -sse*, *sses*, *plût*; *Nous plu -ssions*, *ssiez*, *ssent*.
9. Imper. *Plais*, *qu'il plaise*; *plai-sons*, *sez*, *qu'ils plaisent*.

Its derivatives, *déplaire*, to displease; *complaire*, to comply; and *taire*, to conceal; 11.
or *se taire*, to hold one's tongue, follow the same conjugation. 12.

TRAIRE.

Inf. <i>traire</i> , to milk.	Ger. <i>trayant</i> , milking.	Part. <i>trait</i> , milkd.	13.
Pres. <i>Je trais</i> ,	<i>trais</i> , <i>trait</i> ;	<i>Nous tray-ons</i> , <i>ex</i> , <i>traient</i> .	14.
Imp. <i>Je tray-ois</i> ,	<i>ois</i> , <i>oit</i> ;	<i>Nous tray-ions</i> , <i>iez</i> , <i>oient</i> .	15.
Fut. <i>Je trai-rai</i> ,	<i>ras</i> , <i>ra</i> ;	<i>Nous trai-rions</i> , <i>rez</i> , <i>ront</i> .	16.
Cond. <i>Je trai-rois</i> ,	<i>rois</i> , <i>roit</i> ;	<i>Nous trai-rions</i> , <i>riez</i> , <i>roient</i> .	17.
Sub. <i>Je tray-e</i> ,	<i>es</i> , <i>e</i> ;	<i>Nous tray-ions</i> , <i>iez</i> , <i>ent</i> .	18.
Imper. <i>Trais</i> , qu'il traye ;	<i>tray-ons</i> , <i>ex</i> , qu'ils trayent.		19.

Traire has no preterite in use.—Its derivatives, *abstraire*, to abstract; *distraire*, to divert from; *extraire*, to extract; and *soustraire*, to subtract, or take from; have only the infin. pres. and fut. in use (and that too in the singular number), as also the part. *distrait*, *extraît*, *abstrait*, *soustrait*, and the compound tenses. Instead of the tenses and number out of use, we use a periphrase, saying, *nous faisons abstraction*.—The part. of *traire* is used in these expressions, *de l'or ou de l'argent trait*, gold and silver wire.—*Rentraire*, to finedraw, is also conjugated like *traire*, without preterite tenses. 20.

braire, to bray like an ass, is used in the infinitive, and third persons of the pres. only, (*il brait*, *ils braient*). 21.

BOIRE.

Inf. boire, to drink.	Ger. buvant, drinking.	Part. bu, drank.	28.
Pres. Je bois,	bois, bait ;	Nous bu-vons, vez, boivent.	29.
Imp. Je bu-vois,	vois, voit ;	Nous bu-vions, viez, voient.	30.
Pret. Je bus,	bus, but ;	Nous bûmes, bûtes, burent.	31.
Fut. Je boi-rai,	ras, ra ;	Nous boi-rions, rez, ront.	32.
Cond. Je boi-rois,	rois, roit ;	Nous boi-rions, riez, roient.	33.
S. P. Je boi-ve,	ves, ve ;	Nous bu-vions, viez, boivent.	34.
Pr. Je bu- ^{que} ssé,	sses, bût ;	Nous bu-ssions, ssiez, ssent.	35.
Imper. Bois, qu'il boive ;	Bu-vons, vez, qu'ils boivent.		36.

CROIRE.

Inf.	<i>croire</i> , to believe.	Ger.	<i>croyant</i> , believing.	Part.	<i>cru</i> , believed.	37.	
Pres.	<i>Je crois</i> ,	<i>crois</i> ,	<i>croit</i> ;	<i>Nous croy-ons</i> ,	<i>ex</i> ,	<i>croient</i> .	38.
Imp.	<i>Je croy-ois</i> ,	<i>ois</i> ,	<i>oit</i> ;	<i>Nous croy-ions</i> ,	<i>iez</i> ,	<i>oient</i> .	39.
Pret.	<i>Je crus</i> ,	<i>crus</i> ,	<i>crut</i> ;	<i>Nous cr -ûmes</i> ,	<i>ûtes</i> ,	<i>urent</i> .	40.
Fut.	<i>Je croi-rai</i> ,	<i>ras</i> ,	<i>ra</i> ;	<i>Nous croi-rions</i> ,	<i>rez</i> ,	<i>ront</i> .	41.
Cond.	<i>Je croi-rois</i> ,	<i>rois</i> ,	<i>roit</i> ;	<i>Nous croi-rions</i> ,	<i>riez</i> ,	<i>roient</i> .	42.
S. P.	<i>Je croie</i> ,	<i>croies</i> ,	<i>croie</i> ;	<i>Nous croy-ions</i> ,	<i>iez</i> ,	<i>croient</i> .	43.
Pr.	^{que} <i>Je cru-ssé</i> ,	<i>sses</i> ,	<i>erût</i> ;	<i>Nous cru-ssions</i> ,	<i>ssiez</i> ,	<i>ssent</i> .	44.
Imper.	<i>Crois</i> ,	<i>qu'il croie</i> ;	<i>Croy-ons</i> ,	<i>ex</i> ,	<i>qu'ils croient</i> .		45.

Its derivative *accroire* is used in the infinitive only, and that too with the verb *faire* before it; as *faire accroire*, or *en faire accroire*, to impose upon one; and *s'en faire accroire*, to be self-conceited. 46.

IRREGULAR VERBS of the Eighth Conjugation, or in *aitre*. N A I T R E.

1. Inf. *naître*, to be born. Ger. *naissant*, being born. Part. *né*, born.
2. Pref. *Je nais, nais, naît; Nous naiss-ons, ez, ent.*
3. Imp. *Je naiss-ois, ois, oit; Nous naiss-ions, iez, oient.*
4. Pret. *Je na -quis, quis, quit; Nous na -quîmes, quîtes, quirent.*
5. Fut. *Je nai -tras, tras, tra; Nous nai -trons, trez, tront.*
6. Cond. *Je nai -trois, trois, troit; Nous nai -trions, triez, troient.*
7. S. P. *Je naiss-e, es, e; Nous naiss-ions, iez, ent.*
8. Pr. *Je na-quiss^{que}e, quiss^{que}es, quît; Nous na-quiss^{que}ions, quiss^{que}iez, quiss^{que}ent.*
9. Imper. *Nais, qu'il naisse; Naiss^{que}ons, ez, qu'ils naissent.*
10. *Naître* forms its compounds of *être*: its derivative is *renaître*, to be born again.—
11. *paître*, to graze, follows the same conjugation, but it has no participle nor preterite
12. tenses in use; though *se repaître*, to feed upon (very little used), has *repu* for its
13. participle, and *je repus* and *repuss^{que}e* for its preterites. *L'oiseau a pu*, the bird has fed, is a phrase of falconry.

IRREGULAR VERBS of the Ninth Conjugation, or in *ire*.

D I R E.

14. Inf. *dire*, to say, or tell. Ger. *disant*, saying. Part. *dit*, said.
15. Pref. *Je dis, dis, dit; Nous disons, dites, disent.*
16. Imp. *Je di-sois, sois, soit; Nous di-sions, siez, soient.*
17. Pret. *Je dis, dis, dit; Nous dites, dites, dirent.*
18. Fut. *Je di-rai, ras, ra; Nous di-rons, rez, ront.*
19. Cond. *Je di-rois, rois, roit; Nous di-rions, riez, roient.*
20. S. P. *Je di-se, ses, se; Nous di-sions, siez, sent.*
21. Pr. *Je di-ss^{que}e, sses, dit; Nous di-ss^{que}ions, ssiez, dissent.*
22. Imper. *Dis, qu'il dise; disons, dites, qu'ils disent.*
23. *contradire*, to contradict; *maudire*, to curse; *prédire*, to foretell;
24. *se dédire*, to unsay, retract; *interdire*, to interdict, to *redire*, to tell again;
25. *médire*, to slander, speak ill; *confire*, to preserve fruit;
26. follow the same conjugation; with this exception, that, except *redire*, which is con-
27. jugated all throughout like its primitive, they form regularly the 2d pers. plur. of the
28. pres. and make *disez* instead of *dites*; and *maudire* doubles its *s* through the whole verb
29. (*maudissant, nous maudissons, je maudissois, &c.*)

L I R E.

30. Inf. *lire*, to read. Ger. *lisant*, reading. Part. *lu*, read.
31. Pref. *Je lis, lis, lit; Nous li-sons, sez, sent.*
32. Imp. *Je li-sois, sois, soit; Nous li-sions, siez, soient.*
33. Pret. *Je lus, lus, lut; Nous l-ûmes, ûtes, urent.*
34. Fut. *Je li-rai, ras, ra; Nous li-rons, rez, ront.*
35. Cond. *Je li-rois, rois, roit; Nous li-rions, riez, roient.*
36. S. P. *Je li-se, ses, se; Nous li-sions, siez, sent.*
37. Pr. *Je lu-ss^{que}e, sses, lût; Nous lu-ss^{que}ions, ssiez, ssent.*
38. Imper. *Lis, qu'il lise; li-sons, sez, qu'ils lisent.*

élire,

élire, to elect, and *relire*, to read again, are conjugated after the same manner; to which you may add *circoncire*, to circumcise; and *suffire*, to suffice; which differ only in the pretérite tenses; for their participles being *circoncis* (with a final s), and *suffi* (without a final s), they make in their pret. *Je circoncis, je circoncisse*, I circumcised; *Je suffis, je suffisse*, I sufficed.

R I R E.

Inf. *rire*, to laugh. Ger. *riant*, laughing. Part. *ri*, laughed.

Pres. *Je ris, ris, rit; Nous ri-ons, ez, ent.*

Imp. *Je ri-ois, ois, oit; Nous ri-ions, iez, oient.*

Pret. *Je ris, ris, rit; Nous r-imes, ites, irent.*

Fut. *Je ri-rai, ras, ra; Nous ri-ront, rez, ront.*

Cond. *Je ri-rois, rois, roit; Nous ri-rions, riez, roient.*

S. P. *Je ri-e, es, e; Nous ri-ions, iez, ent.*

Pr. *Je ri-ssé, ssés, rît; Nous ri-ssions, ssiez, ssent.*

Imper. *Ris, qu'il rie; ri-ons, ez, qu'ils rient.*

sourire, to smile, is conjugated like *rire*.

É C R I R E.

Inf. *écrire*, to write. Ger. *écrivant*, writing. Part. *écrit*, written.

Pres. *J'écris, cris, crit; Nous écri-vons, vez, vent.*

Imp. *J'écri-vois, vois, voit; Nous écri-vions, viez, voient.*

Pret. *J'écri-vis, vis, vit; Nous écri-vîmes, vîtes, virent.*

Fut. *J'écri-rai, ras, rà; Nous écri-ront, rez, ront.*

Cond. *J'écri-rois, rois, roit; Nous écri-rions, riez, roient.*

S. P. *J'écri-ve, ves, ve; Nous écri-vions, viez, vent.*

Pr. *J'écri-vissé, vissés, vît; Nous écri-vîssions, ssiez, ssent.*

Imper. *écris, qu'il écrive; écrivons, vez, qu'ils écrivent.*

After the same manner are conjugated,

décrire, to describe; *proscrire*, to proscribe; *souscrire*, to subscribe;

inscrire, to inscribe; *to outlaw*; *transcrire*, to transcribe;

prescrire, to prescribe; *récrire*, to write again; *circonscrire*, to circumscribe.

V I V R E.

Inf. *vivre*, to live. Ger. *vivant*, living. Part. *vécu*, lived.

Pres. *Je vis, vis, vit; Nous vi-vons, vez, vent.*

Imp. *Je vi-vois, vois, voit; Nous vi-vions, viez, voient.*

Pret. *Je vé-cus, cus, cut; Nous vé-cûmes, cûtes, curent.*

Fut. *Je vi-vrai, vras, vra; Nous vi-vront, vrez, vront.*

Cond. *Je vi-vrais, vrais, vroit; Nous vi-vrions, vriez, vroient.*

S. P. *Je vi-ve, ves, ve; Nous vi-vions, viez, vent.*

Pr. *Je vé-cussé, cusses, cût; Nous vé-cussions, cussiez, cussent.*

Imper. *Vis, qu'il vive; Vi-vons, vez, qu'ils vivent.*

Its derivatives are *revivre*, to revive; and *survivre*, to survive, outlive.

SUIVRE.

S U I V R E.

76. Inf. *suivre*, to follow. Ger. *suisvant*, following. Part. *suiui*, followed.

77. Pres. *Je suis, suis, suit*; *Nous sui-vons, vez, vent.*
 78. Imp. *Je sui-vois, vois, voit*; *Nous sui-vions, viez, voient.*
 79. Pret. *Je sui-vis, vis, vit*; *Nous sui-vîmes, vites, virent.*
 80. Fut. *Je sui-vrai, vras, vra*; *Nous sui-vrons, vrez, vront.*
 81. Cond. *Je sui-vrois, vrois, vroit*; *Nous sui-vrions, vriez, vroient.*
 82. S. P. *Je sui-ve, ves, ve*; *Nous sui-vions, viez, vent.*
 83. Pr. *Je sui-visse, visses, vît*; *Nous sui-vîssions, ssiez, ssent.*
 84. Imper. *Suis, qu'il suive*; *sui-vons, vez, qu'ils suivent.*

85. Its derivatives are *poursuivre*, to pursue, and *s'ensuivre*, which is used only in the 3d. third persons of both numbers. It is also used impersonally; as *Il s'ensuit de-là que*, &c. from whence it follows that, &c.

87. *Frîre*, to fry, is used only in the infinitive; the participle *frit* with the compound

23. tenses; in the sing. of the pres. *Je fris, tu fris, il frit*; and perhaps in the fut. *Je*

89. *frirai, ras, ra*, &c. In many other circumstances one must make use of a peri-

90. phrase; as *faisant frîre*, frying, instead of its gerund; *Vous faites trop frîre ce poisson*, You fry that fish too much.

91. *Brûire*, to rustle, is used only in the infinitive, and the 3d persons of the imperfect,

92. *Il bruïoit*, it rustled; *Les flots bruïoient*, the billows roared, although the gerund be *bruissant*; *bruyant*, *ante*, being a verbal adjective.

IRREGULAR VERBS of the Tenth Conjugation, or in *endre*, *ompre*, *ettre*.

P R E N D R E.

1. Inf. *prendre*, to take. Ger. *prenant*, taking. Part. *pris*, taken.

2. Pres. *Je prends, prends, prend*; *Nous pre -nons, nez, nncnt.*
 3. Imp. *Je pre -nois, nois, noit*; *Nous pre -nions, niez, noient.*
 4. Pret. *Je pris, pris, prit*; *Nous pr -îmes, îtes, irant.*
 5. Fut. *Je pren-drai, dras, dra*; *Nous pren-drons, drez, dront.*
 6. Cond. *Je pren-drois, drois, droit*; *Nous pren-drions, driez, droient.*
 7. S. P. *Je pre -nne, nnes, nne*; *Nous pre -nions, niez, nncnt.*
 8. Pr. *Je prisse, prisses, prît*; *Nous pri -ssions, ssiez, ssent.*

9. Imper. *Prends, qu'il prenne*; *pre-nons, nez, qu'ils prennent.*

10. Its derivatives are, *apprendre*, to learn; *déapprendre*, to unlearn; *comprendre*, to understand; *entreprendre*, to undertake; *se méprendre*, to be mistaken; *repandre*, to rebuke, chide, also to take again; and *surprendre*, to surprise: all which are conjugated like their primitive.

R O M P R E.

13. Inf. *rompre*, to break. Ger. *rompant*, breaking. Part. *rompu*, broken.

24. Pres. *Je romps, romps, rompt*; *Nous rom-pous, pez, pent.*
 14. Imp. *Je rom-pois, pois, poit*; *Nous rom-pions, piez, poient.*
 Pret.

Pret.	<i>Je rom-pis, pis, pit ;</i>	<i>Nous rom-pîmes, pîtes, pirent.</i>	16.
Fut.	<i>Je rom-prai, pras, pra ;</i>	<i>Nous rom-prons, prez, pront.</i>	17.
Cond.	<i>Je rom-prois, prois, proit ;</i>	<i>Nous rom-prions, priez, proient.</i>	18.
S. P.	<i>Je rom-pe, pes, pe ;</i>	<i>Nous rom-pions, piez, pent.</i>	19.
Pr.	<i>Je rom-pisse, pisses, pît ;</i>	<i>Nous rom-pissions, pissiez, pissent.</i>	20.
Imper.	<i>Romps, qu'il rompe ; Rom-pons, pez, qu'ils rompent.</i>		21.
	Its derivatives are <i>corrompre</i> , to corrupt ; and <i>interrompre</i> , to interrupt.		22.

B A T T R E.

Inf.	<i>battre, to beat.</i>	Ger. <i>battant, beating.</i>	Part. <i>battu, beaten.</i>	23.
Pref.	<i>Je bats, bats, bat ;</i>	<i>Nous bat-tons, tez, tent.</i>		24.
Imp.	<i>Je bat-tois, tois, toit ;</i>	<i>Nous bat-tions, tiez, toient.</i>		25.
Pret.	<i>Je bat-tis, tis, tit ;</i>	<i>Nous bat-tîmes, tîtes, tirent.</i>		26.
Fut.	<i>Je bat-trai, tras, tra ;</i>	<i>Nous bat-trons, trez, tront.</i>		27.
Cond.	<i>Je bat-trois, trois, troit ;</i>	<i>Nous bat-trions, triez, troient.</i>		28.
S. P.	<i>Je bat-te, tes, te ;</i>	<i>Nous bat-tions, tiez, tent.</i>		29.
Pr.	<i>Je bat-tisse, tisses, tît ;</i>	<i>Nous bat-tissions, tissiez, tissent.</i>		30.
Imper.	<i>Bats, qu'il batte ; Bat-tons, tez, qu'ils battent.</i>			31.
	<i>Abatre</i> , to pull down ; <i>combattre</i> , to fight ; <i>se débattre</i> , to struggle ; <i>débattre</i> , to sport, (an expression of the burlesque style) ; <i>rabattre</i> , to bate, abate ; and <i>rebattre</i> , to beat again ; are conjugated like <i>battre</i> .			32.
				33.
				34.

M E T T R E.

Inf.	<i>mettre, to put.</i>	Ger.	<i>mettant, putting.</i>	Part.	<i>mis, put.</i>	35.
Pres.	<i>Je mets, mets, met ;</i>		<i>Nous met-tons, tez, tent.</i>			36.
Imp.	<i>Je met-tois, tois, toit ;</i>		<i>Nous met-tions, tiez, toient.</i>			37.
Pret.	<i>Je mis, mis, mit ;</i>		<i>Nous mîmes, mîtes, mirent.</i>			38.
Fut.	<i>Je met-trai, tras, tra ;</i>		<i>Nous met-trons, trez, tront.</i>			39.
Cond.	<i>Je met-trois, trois, troit ;</i>		<i>Nous met-trions, triez, troient.</i>			40.
S. P.	<i>Je met-te, tes, te ;</i>		<i>Nous met-tions, tiez, tent.</i>			41.
Pr.	<i>Je misse, missés, mît ;</i>		<i>Nous missions, missiez, missent.</i>			42.
Imper.	<i>Mets, qu'il mette ; Met-tons, tez, qu'ils mettent.</i>					43.
	These following are conjugated after the same manner.					44.
<i>admettre,</i>	to admit ;	<i>s'entremettre,</i>	to inter-	<i>compromettre,</i>	to compro-	45.
<i>commettre,</i>	to commit ;		meddle ;		mise ;	46.
<i>démettre,</i>	to remove, turn	<i>permettre,</i>	to permit ;	<i>soumettre,</i>	to submit ;	47.
	out ;	<i>promettre,</i>	to promise ;	<i>transmettre,</i>	to transmit,	48.
<i>se démettre,</i>	to resign ;	<i>remettre,</i>	to deliver, put		convey.	49.
<i>omettre,</i>	to omit ;		again ;			50.

C O N C L U R E.

Inf.	<i>conclure, to conclude.</i>	Ger. <i>concluant, concluding.</i>	Part. <i>conclu, concluded.</i>	51.
Pref.	<i>Je conclus, clus, clut ;</i>	<i>Nous conclu-ons, ez, ent.</i>		52.
Imp.	<i>Je conclu-ois, ois, oit ;</i>	<i>Nous conclu-ions, iez, oient.</i>		53.
			Pret.	54.

55. Pret. *Je con -clus, clus, clut ; Nous concl -âmes, âtes, urent.*
 56. Fut. *Je conclu-rai, ras, ra ; Nous conclu-rons, riez, rent.*
 57. Cond. *Je conclu-rois, rois, roit ; Nous conclu-rions, riez, roient.*
 58. S. P. *Je con -clue, clues, clue ; Nous conclu-ions, iez, ent.*
 59. Pr. *Je con-clusse, clusses, clût ; Nous conclu-ssions, ssiez, ssent.*
 60. Imper. *Conclus, qu'il conclue ; conclu-ons, ex, qu'ils concluent.*
 61. *exclure, to exclude, is conjugated after the same, except that the part. is exclus*
 62. *with a final r, and the feminine is both exclus and excluse : as Il fut exclus de l'assem-*
 63. *blée, he was excluded from the assembly ; Elle en fut aussi exclue, or excluse, she was*
also excluded from it.

C O N V A I N C R E.

1. Inf. *convaincre, to convince. Ger. convainquant, convincing.*
 2. Part. *convaincu, convinced.*
 3. Pres. *Je con-vains, vains, vaine ; convain-quons, quex, quent.*
 4. Imp. *Je convain-quois, quois, quoit ; convain-quions, quiez, quient.*
 5. Pret. *Je convain-quis, quis, quit ; convain-quîmes, quîtes, quirent.*
 6. Fut. *Je convain-crai, cras, cra ;* *Nous* *convain-crons, crez, croent.*
 7. Cond. *Je convain-crois, crois, croit ; convain-crions, criez, croient.*
 8. S. P. *Je convain-que, ques, que ; convain-quions, quiez, quent.*
 9. Pr. *Je convain-quisse, quisses, quît ; convainqui-ssions, ssiez, ssent.*
 10. Imper. *Convaines, qu'il convainque ; convain-quons, quex, qu'ils convainquent.*
 11. *vaincre, to vanquish, or to overcome, is conjugated after the same manner ; but it*
 12. *is not used in the pres. nor in some other tenses ; instead of which we say triompher,*
 13. *or être victorieux. You may also spell convaincant and convaincons with a e instead of*
qu.

C O U D R E.

14. Inf. *coudre, to sew. Ger. cousant, sewing. Part. cousu, sewed.*
 15. Pres. *Je couds, couds, coud ; Nous cou-sons, sez, sent.*
 16. Imp. *Je cou-sois, sois, soit ; Nous cou-sions, siez, soient.*
 17. Pret. *Je cou-sis, sis, sit ; Nous cou-sîmes, îtes, irent.*
 18. Fut. *Je cou-drai, dras, dra ; Nous cou-drons, drez, dront.*
 19. Cond. *Je cou-drois, droit, droit ; Nous cou-drions, driez, droient.*
 20. S. P. *Je cou-se, ses, se ; Nous cou-sions, siez, sent.*
 21. Pr. *Je cou-sifses, sifses, sît ; Nous cou-sifssions, ssiez, ssent.*
 22. Imper. *Couds, qu'il couse ; Cou-sons, sez, qu'ils cousent.*—In the preter.
 23. *tenses, beware of saying Je cousus, je coususse, as some people do.*
 24. *The only compounds this verb has are découdre, to unsew, and recoudre, to sew*
again.

M O U D R E.

25. Inf. *moudre, to grind. Ger. moulant, grinding. Part. moulu, ground.*
 26. Pres. *Je mouds, mouds, moud ; Nous mou-lons, lez, lent.*
 27. Imp. *Je mou-lois, lois, loit ; Nous mou-lions, liez, loient.*
 Pret.

Pret.	<i>Je mou-lus, lus, lut ;</i>	<i>Nous mou-lûmes, lûtes, lurent.</i>	28.
Fut.	<i>Je mou-drai, dras, dra ;</i>	<i>Nous mou-drons, drez, dront.</i>	29.
Cond.	<i>Je mou-drois, drois, droit ;</i>	<i>Nous mou-drions, driez, droient.</i>	30.
S.P.	<i>Je mou-le, les, le ;</i>	<i>Nous mou-lions, liez, lent ;</i>	31.
Pr.	<i>Je moulu-^{que}sse, sses, lût ;</i>	<i>Nous moulu-ssions, ssiez, ssent.</i>	32.
Imper.	<i>Mouls, qu'il moule ;</i>	<i>Mou-lons, lez, qu'ils moulent.</i>	33.
Its derivatives are <i>émoudre</i> , to whet, to set an edge ; and <i>remoudre</i> , to grind again.			34.

R É S O U D R E.

Inf. *résoudre*, to resolve. Ger. *résolvant*, resolving. Part. *résolu*, 35.
resolved.

Pres.	<i>Je ré-souds, souds, soud ;</i>	<i>Nous résol-vons, vez, vent.</i>	36.
Imp.	<i>Je résol-vois, vois, voit ;</i>	<i>Nous résol-vions, viez, voient.</i>	37.
Pret.	<i>Je réso-lus, lus, lut ;</i>	<i>Nous résol-lûmes, lûtes, urent.</i>	38.
Fut.	<i>Je résou-drai, dras, dra ;</i>	<i>Nous résou-drons, drez, dront.</i>	39.
Cond.	<i>Je résou-drois, drois, droit ;</i>	<i>Nous résou-drions, driez, droient.</i>	40.
S.P.	<i>Je résol-ve, ves, ve ;</i>	<i>Nous résol-vions, viez, vent.</i>	41.
Pr.	<i>Je résolu-^{que}sse, sses, lût ;</i>	<i>Nous résolu-ssions, ssiez, ssent.</i>	42.
Imper.	<i>Résous, qu'il résolve ;</i>	<i>résol-vons, vez, qu'ils résol-vent.</i>	43.

Soudre, to solve, is used in the infinitive only. *Absoudre*, to absolve, and *dissoudre*, 44.
to dissolve, or liquefy, follow the same conjugation : but they have no preterite in 45.
use, and their participles are *absous* and *dissous* ; as likewise that of *résoudre* is *résous*, 46.
when that verb signifies *changing a thing into another*. Example ; *un brouillard résous*
en pluie, a mist resolved into rain. *Absous* is not used in the feminine, but *dissous*
makes *dissoute*. *Mais de quelle manière, & en quel temps a-t-elle été dissoute ?* But in 47.
what manner, and when was it dissolved ?

As for *clorre*, to close, or shut close ; *déclorre*, to unclose ; *enclorre*, to inclose ; and 48.
éclore, to be hatched, or to blow open ; they are words defective ; and are very seldom 49.
used but in the inf. and part. with both *avoir* and *être* : as, 50.

Il a été condamné à déclorre son champ, He has been condemned to pull down the en-
closure of his field ;

J'ai enclos mon jardin d'un bon mur, I have inclosed my garden with a good wall ;

Je n'ai pas clos l'œil de la nuit, I did not shut my eyes last night ;

Mes vers à soie sont éclos, My silk-worms are hatched.

clorre is used only in the infinitive, participle, the three pers. sing. of the pres. 51.
Je clos, tu clos, il clot ; the fut. *Je clorrai* ; and the cond. *Je clorrais*. 52.

éclore may also be used in the fut. as (speaking of the same insects), *Ils n'écloreont* 53.
jamais sans chaleur, they will never be hatched without heat. In any other tense we 54.
make use of a periphrase with the verb *faire*, and the inf. of the verb : as *Mettez-les* 55.
au soleil pour les faire éclore, instead of *pour qu'ils éclosent*, set them in the sun to make 56.
them hatch : though we also not improperly say in the present, *Mes vers à soie éclosent* 57.
à merveille, my silk-worms come out charmingly.

From three other obsolete verbs, there remain some tenses and persons consecrated 60.
by custom to certain sciences, and phrases ; though their infinitive is now-a-days 61.
hardly known.

I. The third persons of the pres. and imp. of *gésir* (*git, gissent, gissoit*), chiefly 58.
used in Epitaphs : as *Ci gît*, Here lies, &c.

II. The participle of *issir* (*issu*), used in speaking of Lineage and Genealogy : as 59.
Il se prétend issu des anciens Comtes de, he pretends that he is descended from the ancient 60.
Earls of, &c. *Cousin issu de germain*, second cousin : as likewise the gerund of the 61.
same verb (*issant*), used in Heraldry only : as *Il porte de sinople au lion issant de gueules*, 62.
he bears sinople a lion rising out of gules.

III. The part. of *tistre* (*tissu*), generally used in all compound tenses with both 63.
avoir and *être* : as *Ce drap-là est bien tissu*, that cloth is well woven, or weaved.

Of VERBS Impersonal.

In French, as in all other languages, there are certain Verbs, used in the third person singular, and sometimes in the infinitive and participle, which have no reference to persons or things, and which are therefore called *impersonal*. They are thus conjugated.

Indicative Mood.

1. Pres.	<i>Il y a,</i>	there is ;	<i>Il faut,</i>	} one, or it must, or it is necessary, it was requisite, needful.
2. Imp.	<i>Il y avoit,</i>	there was ;	<i>Il falloit,</i>	
3. Pret.	<i>Il y eut,</i>	there was ;	<i>Il fallut,</i>	
4. Fut.	<i>Il y aura,</i>	there shall or will be ;	<i>Il faudra,</i>	
5. Cond.	<i>Il y auroit,</i>	there would, &c.	<i>Il faudrait,</i>	it will be necessary, &c. be, &c. &c.

Subjunctive.

6. Pres.	<i>qu'il y ait,</i>	there be, or may be.	<i>qu'il faille,</i>	} necessary, requisite, &c.
7. Pret.	<i>qu'il y eût,</i>	there was, or were, or might be.	<i>qu'il fallût,</i>	

Infinitive.

8. Pres.	<i>y avoir,</i>	there to be ;	} See, in that part of the Syntax which treats of verbs, what concerns this impersonal.
9. Part.	<i>y ayant,</i>	there being.	

10. Which impersonal verbs have also their compound tenses,
 11. formed by adding *eu* to each tense : as *il y a eu*, there has been ;
 12. *il y avoit eu*, there had been, &c. The others form them from *avoir*, and their participle : as *il a fallu*, it has been requisite ;
 13. *il avoit fallu*, it had been, &c.—*Il faut* has no infinitive in use ; but the others have one, as also gerunds and participles, which shall be set down here.

Indicative.

			Infinitive.	Ger.	Part.
14.	<i>Il pleut,</i>	it rains ;	from <i>pleu-voir,</i>	<i>vant,</i>	<i>plu*.</i>
15.	<i>Il bruine,</i>	it drizzles ;		<i>nant,</i>	<i>né.</i>
16.	<i>Il gèle,</i>	it freezes ;		<i>ge -ler,</i>	<i>lé.</i>
17.	<i>Il grêle,</i>	it hails ;		<i>grê -ler,</i>	<i>lé.</i>
18.	<i>Il neige,</i>	it snows ;		<i>nei -ger,</i>	<i>gé.</i>
19.	<i>Il tonne,</i>	it thunders ;		<i>ton -ner,</i>	<i>né.</i>
20.	<i>Il éclaire,</i>	it lightens ;	<i>éclairer,</i>	<i>vant,</i>	<i>ré.</i>

21. *Il est,*
 22. *c'est,*
 23. *Il fait,*
- } it is ; { *il fait* is used with adjectives and some nouns denoting the disposition of the weather : as *il fait chaud, beau, crotté*, it is hot, fine, dirty ; *il fait du vent*, the wind blows, &c.

24. * The future and conditional of *pleuvoir* are not *pleuvra* and *pleuvrait*, but *il pleuvra*, *il pleuvrait*.

Indicative.	Inf.	Ger. Part.	
<i>Il arrive</i> , it happens;	<i>arri-ver</i> , <i>vant</i> , <i>vé.</i>	25.	
<i>Il convient</i> , it becomes;	<i>conve-nir</i> , <i>nant</i> , <i>nu.</i>	26.	
<i>Il est à-propos</i> , <i>convenable</i> , &c. it is fit, proper, meet, &c.		27.	
<i>Il importe</i> , it matters, it concerns;	<i>impor-ter</i> , <i>tant</i> , <i>té.</i>	28.	
<i>Il semble</i> , it seems;	<i>sem-bler</i> , <i>blant</i> , <i>blé.</i>	29.	
<i>Il paroît</i> , it appears;	<i>paroi-tre</i> , <i>ssant</i> , <i>paru.</i>	30.	
<i>Il sied</i> , it is decent, or becoming;		31.	
<i>Il s'ensuit que</i> , it follows that;	<i>s'ensui-vre</i> , <i>vant</i> , <i>vi.</i>	32.	
<i>Il s'agit de cela</i> , that is the matter in } hand;	<i>ag-ir</i> , <i>issant</i> , <i>i.</i>	33.	
<i>Il vaut mieux que</i> , it is better that;	<i>va-loir</i> , <i>lant</i> , <i>lu.</i>	34.	
<i>Il ne tient pas à lui que</i> , it is not his } fault if;	<i>te-nir</i> , <i>nant</i> , <i>nu.</i>	35.	
<i>Il m'ennuie de</i> , &c. it tires me to, &c.	<i>ennuy-er</i> , <i>ant</i> , <i>é.</i>	36.	
<i>Il plaît à Madame de</i> , my Lady likes, } or is pleased to, &c.	<i>plai-re</i> , <i>sant</i> , <i>plu.</i>	37.	
<i>Il se peut que</i> , } it may be, }	<i>pou-voir</i> , <i>vant</i> , <i>pu.</i>	38.	
<i>Il se peut faire que</i> , } that, &c. }			
<i>Il suffit que</i> , &c. it is enough that, &c.	<i>suffi-re</i> , <i>sant</i> , <i>suffi.</i>	39.	
<i>Il y va de la vie</i> , life is at stake;		40.	
<i>Il se tint hier un conseil</i> , a council was } held yesterday;	<i>te-nir</i> , <i>nant</i> , <i>nu.</i>	41.	

C H A P. VI.

Of ADVERBS.

THE ADVERB is a part of speech invariable, which neither governs nor is governed by any other, and serves to denote some circumstance of that which is signified by a Noun, an Adjective, a Verb, or even an Adverb: as

<i>Véritablement ami</i> , truly friend;	<i>très-souvent</i> , very often;
<i>aimer bien</i> , to love well;	<i>étroitement unis</i> , strictly united;
<i>infiniment juste</i> , infinitely just;	<i>toujours à contre-temps</i> , always unseasonable.

Adverbs are either simple, as *hier*, yesterday; *beaucoup*, much; *présentement*, presently; or compound, as *avant-hier*, the day before yesterday; *en quantité*, in plenty; *à présent*, *tout-à-l'heure*, at present, instantly.

Adverbs may be considered with respect to Time, Place, Order, Quantity and Number, Quality and Manner, Affirmation, Negation and Doubt, Comparison, Collection or Division, and Interrogation.

ADVERBS of Time.

I. Of the Present Time.

A présent, at present.
pour le présent, for the present.
présentement, presently.
maintenant, now.
aujourd'hui, to-day, now-a-days.
à cette heure, { at this hour, or
 time, presently.
tout-à-l'heure, { this minute,
 even now.
sur-le-champ, { directly, upon
 the spot.
à l'instant, instantly.
vîte, quick.

II. Of the Time past.

hier, yesterday.
avant-hier, { the day before
 yesterday.
le jour précédent, the day before.
autrefois, formerly, once.
jadis, in times of yore.
anciennement, anciently.
dernièrement, lately.
depuis peu, of late.
n'aguères, not long since, or ago.
auparavant, before.
récemment, recently.
tout récemment, {
nouvellement, { newly.
la dernière fois, the last time.
l'autre jour, the other day.
hier matin, { yesterday morn-
 ing.
hier au matin, {
la semaine passée, the last week.
le mois dernier, the last month.
l'année passée, {
l'année dernière, { last year.
jusqu'ici, hitherto.
jusqu'à présent, till now.
il y a huit jours, a week ago.

il y a quinze jours, a fortnight ago.
il y a long-temps, { a great
 while ago.
il n'y a pas long-temps, { not long ago.
il y a quelque temps, { some time ago.
il n'y a qu'un moment, { just now.
il y a trois jours, { three days, a
un mois, un an, { a month, a
une année, { year ago.

III. Of the Time to come.

demain, to-morrow.
après demain, { the day after
 to-morrow.
le lendemain, the next day.
le sur-lendemain, two days after.
le jour suivant, the following day.
ce matin, this morning.
ce soir, { this, or to-night,
 this evening.
cette après-midi, { this after-
 noon.
cette après-dînée, {
cette après-souper, { this after-
 supper.
demain matin, { to-morrow
 morning.
demain au soir, { to-morrow
 night.
bientôt, { soon, very soon, in a
 short time.
dans peu, shortly.
dans peu de temps, { within a
 little while.
tantôt, { anon, by and by,
 now and then.
l'année qui vient, the next year.
le mois prochain, the next month.
déformais, hereafter.
dorénavant,

<i>dorénavant,</i>	henceforth.	<i>tôt,</i>	soon.
<i>à l'avenir,</i>	for the future.	<i>tard,</i>	late.
<i>dans deux ou trois</i>	{ two or three	<i>trop tôt,</i>	too soon.
<i>jours d'ici,</i>		<i>trop tard,</i>	too late.
<i>dans six mois,</i>	{ six months, a	<i>de bonne heure,</i>	early, betimes.
<i>un an d'ici,</i>		<i>de bon, or de grand</i>	{ very early,
<i>avant qu'il soit</i>	{ before it is	<i>matin,</i>	
<i>long-temps,</i>			early in the morning.

IV. *Of a Time unspecified.*

<i>d'abord,</i>	first, at first.	<i>pas encore,</i>	not yet.
<i>souvent,</i>	often, oftentimes.	<i>bien long-temps,</i>	mighty long.
<i>quelquefois,</i>	sometimes.	<i>alors,</i>	then.
<i>rarement,</i>	seldom.	<i>pour lors,</i>	at that time.
<i>soudain,</i>	on a sudden.	<i>dès-lors,</i>	from that time.
<i>subitement,</i>	suddenly.	<i>depuis,</i>	since.
<i>au plus tôt,</i>	the soonest.	<i>depuis ce temps-là,</i>	ever since,
<i>au plus tard,</i>	the latest.	<i>encore,</i>	{ again.
<i>au plus tôt,</i>	as soon as possible.	<i>derechef,</i>	
<i>au plus vite,</i>	{ with all	<i>de nouveau,</i>	a-new.
<i>en toute diligence,</i>		<i>de plus belle,</i>	a-fresh.
<i>jamais,</i>	never, ever, at any time.	<i>à loisir,</i>	leisurely.
<i>à jamais,</i>	for ever.	<i>quand,</i>	when.
<i>toujours,</i>	always.	<i>le matin,</i>	{ in the morn-
<i>pour toujours,</i>	for ever and ever.	<i>dans la matinée,</i>	
<i>à toute heure,</i>	every moment.	<i>dans l'après-dinée,</i>	{ in the after-
<i>à tout moment,</i>	every minute.		
<i>à tout bout de</i>	{ ever and anon,	<i>le soir,</i>	in the evening.
<i>champ,</i>		<i>sur le soir,</i>	{ towards night, or
<i>continuellement,</i>	at every turn.		
<i>sans cesse,</i>	{ without ceas-	<i>en même temps,</i>	at the same time.
<i>incessamment,</i>		<i>de jour,</i>	by day, in the day-time.
<i>cependant,</i>	in the mean while.	<i>de nuit,</i>	{ by night, in the
<i>d'ordinaire,</i>	mostly, most times.		
<i>à l'ordinaire,</i>	usually, as usual.	<i>jour & nuit,</i>	night and day.
<i>ordinairement,</i>	ordinarily.	<i>en plein jour,</i>	{ at noon-day.
<i>communément,</i>	commonly.	<i>en plein midi,</i>	
<i>fréquemment,</i>	frequently.	<i>de deux jours l'un,</i>	{ every other
<i>presque tou-</i>	{ almost always,	<i>tous les deux jours,</i>	
<i>jours,</i>			day.
<i>presque jamais,</i>	never hardly.	<i>tout d'un coup,</i>	{ all at once, at
<i>la plupart du temps,</i>	most times.		
		<i>tout-à-coup,</i>	{ one dash, all
		<i>plus que jamais,</i>	more than ever.

<i>à point nommé,</i>	{	in the nick of time.	<i>de là,</i>	{	from thence.
<i>à propos,</i>		seasonably, a-propos.	<i>par là,</i>	{	that way, through that place.
<i>fort à propos,</i>		very seasonably.	<i>la haut,</i>		above.
<i>dans l'occasion,</i>		upon the occasion.	<i>en haut,</i>		up, up stairs.
<i>en moins de rien,</i>		in a trice.	<i>ici dessus,</i>		here, above.
<i>en un clin d'œil,</i>	{	in the twinkling of an eye.	<i>bas, à bas,</i>		down.
<i>tous les jours,</i>		every day.	<i>en bas,</i>		down on the ground.
<i>tout le jour,</i>		all the day.	<i>là bas,</i>		below, there, yonder.
<i>tout le long du jour,</i>	{	all the day long.	<i>ici dessous,</i>	{	under here, here below.
<i>tant que le jour dure,</i>	{	as long as it is day-light.	<i>d'en haut,</i>		from above.
<i>toute la nuit,</i>		all the night.	<i>d'en bas,</i>		from below.
<i>de jour en jour,</i>		daily.	<i>par haut,</i>	{	upward.
<i>au premier jour,</i>	{	the next day, or with the first opportunity.	<i>par en haut,</i>	{	
<i>à la première occasion,</i>	{		<i>par bas,</i>	{	downward.
<i>à temps,</i>		in time, in good time.	<i>par en bas,</i>		
<i>avec le temps,</i>		in time.	<i>de côté & d'autre,</i>		up and down.
<i>de temps en temps,</i>	{	now and then, from time to time.	<i>dedans,</i>	{	
<i>en tout temps,</i>		at all times.	<i>en dedans,</i>	{	within.
<i>en temps & lieu,</i>	{	in a proper time and place.	<i>là dedans,</i>		
			<i>dehors,</i>		out, without doors.
			<i>en dehors,</i>		without.
			<i>jusqu'ou,</i>		how far.
			<i>jusqu'ici,</i>	{	so far, down to here, as far as this place.
			<i>jusques là,</i>	{	so far, down to there, as far as that place.

ADVERBS of Place.

<i>où,</i>		where, whither.	<i>à l'entour,</i>	{	round about.
<i>d'ou,</i>		whence, from where.	<i>tout autour,</i>	{	
<i>de quel endroit,</i>		from what place.	<i>ici autour,</i>		hereabout.
<i>par où,</i>	{	which way, through where.	<i>là autour,</i>	{	thereabout.
<i>par quel endroit,</i>	{	through what place.	<i>aux environs,</i>	{	
<i>ici,</i>		here, hither, to this place.	<i>tout les lieux,</i>	{	all places round about.
<i>d'ici,</i>		hence, from here.	<i>d'alentour,</i>	{	
<i>par ici,</i>	{	this way, through this place.	<i>loin,</i>		far.
<i>là,</i>		there.	<i>bien loin,</i>		very far.
			<i>près,</i>		near.
			<i>bien près,</i>		very near.
			<i>proche,</i>		by.
					<i>tout</i>

tout proche,	}	hard by.	d'un côté &	}	about and
tout auprès,			d'autre,		about.
tout contre,			au même en-		in the same
près d'ici,			droit,		place.
ici-près	}	just by.	dans ce lieu-là,	}	in that
tout près d'ici,			dans cet endroit-là,		
la porte voi-	}	the next door	dans ce même	}	in that very
gnante,			endroit-là,		
de près,	}	near, by.	par de-là,	}	further.
de plus près,			plus loin,		
vis-à-vis,	}	over-against.	ça & là,	}	up and down.
à côté,			dans le voisi-		
de côté,	}	by.	nage,	}	in the neigh-
à terre,			céans,		
par terre,	}	down.	à droite,	}	here, within.
devant,			sur la droite,		
par devant,	}	before.	à main droite,	}	on the right,
sur le de-			à gauche,		
vant,	}	on the fore part,	sur la gauche,	}	or on the
derrière,			à main gauche,		
par derrière,	}	or forwards.	tout droit,	}	right-hand.
sur le der-			tout du long,		
rière,	}	behind.	tout le long,	}	on the left, or
dessus,			depuis le haut		
dessous,	}	on the hind-part,	jusqu'en bas,	}	on the left-
quelque part,			au dedans & au dehors,		
nulle part,	}	somewhere, any	dans le royaume &	}	hand.
en aucun endroit,			hors du royaume, ou		
ailleurs,	}	where.	dans les pays étran-	}	from the top to
autre part,			gers,		
par-tout,	}	no where.		}	the bottom.
deçà,					
en deçà,	}	in no place.		}	at home
de ce côté-ci,					
de-là,	}	in no place.		}	and
en de-là,					
de ce côté-là,	}	elsewhere.		}	abroad.
des deux côtés,					
de part & d'autre,	}	somewhere else.		}	ADVERBS of Order.
de tout côté,					
de toutes parts,	}	all about, every where.		}	premièrement, first, or firstly.
	}	on this side.		}	secondement, secondly.
	}	on that side.		}	deuxièmement, &c. thirdly, &c.
	}	on both		}	en premier lieu, in the first place.
	}	sides.		}	en second lieu, in the second place.
	}	on every side,		}	en dernier lieu, lastly, in the
	}	on all sides.		}	last place.
	}	before.		}	avant,
	}	after.		}	après,

avant toutes choses, { above all things.
de suite, one after another.
route de suite, together.
ensuite, { afterwards, next to that, or in the next place.
tout de suite, { in a breath, at once, without any stop.
ensemble, together.
à la file, one after another.
de front, { abreast.
de rang, {
tour à tour, by turns.
à la ronde, round about.
alternativement, alternatively.
l'un après l'autre, { one after another.
à la fois, at once.
enfin, { at length, in short, in the end.
à la fin, in fine, finally, at last.
pour conclusion, to conclude.
d'ordre, { orderly, in or with order.
par ordre, {
en ordre, {
confusément, confusedly.
pêle-mêle, { promiscuously, in a jumble.
en foule, in a crowd.
de fond en comble, { utterly, wholly.
sens dessus, { upside down, topsy-turvy.
dessous, {
sens devant, { preposterously.
derrière, {
tout à-re- { the wrong way, or bours, { side.
pareillement, likewise.
semblablement, { in the like, or de la même { same manner.
manière, {

ADVERBS of Quantity and Number.

combien, how much, how many.
peu, little, few.
un peu, a little, some.
tant soit peu, never so little.
beaucoup, much.
guères, but little.
pas beaucoup, not much.
assez, enough.
suffisamment, sufficiently.
trop, too much.
trop peu, too little.
peu à peu, little by little.
à-peu-près, { near about, pretty near.
environ, about.
à peu de choses, { within a small matter.
près, {
tant, so much.
autant, as much.
plus, { more.
d'avantage, {
moins, less.
de plus, { moreover, over and above.
tout au plus, at most.
par dessus, { over, or into the le marché, { bargain.
au moins, { at least.
du moins, {
pour le moins, {
en abondance, in plenty.
abondamment, plentifully.
en grand nombre, { in a great number.
en grande quantité, { in a great quantity.
à pleines mains, plentifully.
à foison, largely.
cher, dear.
trop cher, too dear.
chèrement,

<i>chèrement,</i>	dearly.	<i>sagement,</i>	wisely.
<i>à bon marché,</i>	cheap.	<i>justement,</i>	justly.
<i>à grand marché,</i>	very cheap.	<i>joliment,</i>	prettily.
<i>à vil prix,</i>	at a low price.	<i>galamment,</i>	cleverly.
<i>entièrement,</i>	entirely, wholly.	<i>prudemment,</i>	prudently.
<i>à plate couture,</i>	totally.	<i>civilement,</i>	civilly.
<i>à demi,</i>	half, by half, by halves.	<i>constamment,</i>	constantly.
<i>infiniment,</i>	infinitely.	<i>vivement,</i>	briskly.
<i>à l'infini,</i>	vastly.	<i>à l'aise,</i>	{ easily, at ease, com- fortably.
<i>tout-à-fait,</i>	quite, altogether.	<i>nonchalamment,</i>	carelessly.
<i>étrangement,</i>	strangely.	<i>négligemment,</i>	negligently.
<i>admirablement,</i>	admirably.	<i>au préalable,</i>	previously.
<i>merveilleusement,</i>	wonderfully.	<i>préalablement,</i>	first of all.
<i>presque,</i>	{ almost.	<i>de but en blanc,</i>	{ point blank,
<i>quasi,</i>			bluntly.
<i>absolument,</i>	{ absolutely, by all means.	<i>à fond,</i>	thoroughly.
<i>passablement,</i>	{ tolerably, indif- ferent.	<i>à plomb,</i>	perpendicularly.
<i>médiocrement,</i>	indifferently.	<i>à nud,</i>	bare, naked.
<i>combien de</i>	{ how many times, how often.	<i>à plein,</i>	fully.
<i>fois,</i>		<i>à plaisir,</i>	for pleasure sake.
<i>une fois,</i>	once.	<i>à faux,</i>	falsely.
<i>deux fois,</i>	twice.	<i>à moitié chemin,</i>	half-way.
<i>trois fois,</i>	thrice, or three times.	<i>à peine,</i>	hardly, scarce, scarcely.
<i>dix fois,</i>	ten times.	<i>à regret,</i>	{ grudgingly, with reluctancy.
<i>vingt fois,</i>	twenty times.	<i>à contre-cœur,</i>	against the grain.
<i>cinquante fois,</i>	fifty times.	<i>à contre gré,</i>	{ against one's will, or mind.
<i>cent fois,</i>	a hundred times.	<i>de bon cœur,</i>	heartily.
<i>mille fois,</i>	a thousand times.	<i>de bonne volonté,</i>	very willingly.

ADVERBS of Quality and Manner.

<i>bien,</i>	well, right.	<i>de guet-à-pens,</i>	wilfully.
<i>mal,</i>	bad, wrong.	<i>de gré,</i>	willingly.
<i>fort bien,</i>	{ very well, or very right.	<i>de plein gré,</i>	{ of one's own ac- cord.
<i>fort mal,</i>	{ very bad, very ill, very wrong.	<i>de bon gré,</i>	
<i>à merveilles,</i>	{ admirably well, wonderfully.	<i>à mon gré,</i>	to my mind.
<i>ni bien,</i>	{ neither well nor bad ; neither right nor wrong.	<i>à votre gré,</i>	to your mind.
<i>ni mal,</i>		<i>à son gré,</i>	to his or her mind.
		<i>à leur gré,</i>	to their mind.
		<i>de force,</i>	{ forcibly, by force.
		<i>par force,</i>	
		<i>à contre,</i>	adversely.

<i>à couvert,</i>	{ secure, under a cover or shelter.	<i>étourdimement,</i>	giddily.
<i>à découvert,</i>	openly.	<i>à l'étourdie,</i>	heedlessly.
<i>au naturel,</i>	to the life.	<i>follement,</i>	stilly.
<i>à reculons,</i>	backwards.	<i> témérairement,</i>	rashly.
<i>en arrière,</i>		<i>à la légère,</i>	lightly.
<i>à la renverse,</i>	upon one's back.	<i>à la volée,</i>	{ headlong, incon-
<i>à tâtons,</i>	groping.		siderately.
<i>à l'endroit,</i>	on the right side.	<i>à la hâte,</i>	{ hastily, in a hurry,
<i>du bon sens,</i>	the right way.		in a huddle.
<i>à l'envers,</i>	{ the wrong side out-	<i>précipitamment,</i>	{ with precipi-
	wards.		tation.
<i>du mauvais sens,</i>	{ the wrong way, or	<i>brusquement,</i>	bluntly.
	the wrong side.	<i>par inadvertance,</i>	inadvertently.
<i>de tout sens,</i>	{ every way.	<i>par mégarde,</i>	by oversight.
<i>de tous les sens,</i>		<i>par méprise,</i>	through mistake.
<i>à bon droit,</i>	{ deservedly, justly,	<i>au hasard,</i>	at random.
	rightly.	<i>par hasard,</i>	{ by chance, ac-
<i>à tort,</i>	wrongfully.		cidentally.
<i>avec raison,</i>	with a cause.	<i>à l'aventure,</i>	at a venture.
<i>sans raison,</i>	without a cause.	<i>à tout hasard,</i>	{ let the worst
	in emulation of one	<i>au pis aller,</i>	come to the
<i>à l'envi,</i>	{ another, with a con-		worst.
	tention who shall	<i>goutte à goutte,</i>	by drops.
	do best.	<i>à l'étroit,</i>	narrowly.
<i>à la rigueur,</i>	strictly.	<i>d'accord,</i>	agreed.
<i>de sens rassis,</i>	{ with a sound	<i>à genoux,</i>	{ on one's knees, with
	judgement.		my, his, her, their
<i>de sang froid,</i>	in cool blood.		bended knees.
<i>exprès,</i>	{ on purpose, for the	<i>à mort,</i>	mortally.
	purpose.	<i>à la mort,</i>	{ at the
<i>à dessein,</i>	designedly, purposely.	<i>à l'article de la mort,</i>	point of
<i>par malice,</i>	{ maliciously, mis-	<i>au point de la mort,</i>	death.
	chievously.	<i>tout au long,</i>	at large.
<i>de propos,</i>	{ on set purpose.	<i>tout-à-fait,</i>	quite.
<i>délibéré,</i>		<i>à la bonne foi,</i>	{ sincerely.
<i>tout de bon,</i>	in good earnest.	<i>de bonne foi,</i>	
<i> sérieusement,</i>	seriously.	<i>de bon jeu,</i>	{ fairly.
<i>pour rire,</i>	in a joke.	<i>de bon guerre,</i>	
<i>pour badiner,</i>	in jest.	<i>de nécessité,</i>	necessarily.
<i>en riant,</i>		<i>à toute force,</i>	by all means.
<i>en badinant,</i>	for fun.	<i>de toutes les manières,</i>	all ways.
<i>de son chef,</i>	{ of his, her own	<i>à tous égards,</i>	{ to all intents
<i>de sa tête,</i>	head, mind, or		and purposes.
	accord.	<i>à l'improvise,</i>	unawares.

<i>au dépourvu,</i>	unthought on.	<i>certainement,</i>	certainly.
<i>sans y penser,</i>	} unexpectedly.	<i>en vérité,</i>	in truth.
<i>sans s'y attendre,</i>		<i>à la vérité,</i>	indeed.
<i>inopinément,</i>	napping.	<i>vraiment,</i>	verily.
<i>à l'amiable,</i>	amicably.	<i>véritablement,</i>	truly.
<i>en ami,</i>	friendly.	<i>sans doute,</i>	without doubt.
<i>à fleur d'eau,</i>	} between wind and water.	<i>volontiers,</i>	readily, willingly.
<i>à l'étuvée,</i>		<i>sans faute,</i>	without fail.
<i>en paix,</i>	stewed.	<i>immanquablement,</i>	} infallibly.
<i>paisiblement,</i>	in peace.	<i>infailliblement,</i>	
<i>en repos,</i>	peaceably.	<i>indubitablement,</i>	undoubtedly.
<i>à vide,</i>	quietly.		
<i>à sec,</i>	empty.		
<i>sans façon,</i>	dried up.		
<i>de travers,</i>	without ceremony.	<i>non, ne, ni,</i>	} no, not.
<i>de biais, bias,</i>	cross, acrois.	<i>point, pas, non pas,</i>	
<i>de ginguois,</i>	cross, slopingly.	<i>point du tout,</i>	not at all.
<i>de niveau,</i>	awry.	<i>nullement,</i>	by no means.
<i>avec soin,</i>	even with.	<i>en nulle ma-</i>	} in no wise, not in the least.
<i>exactement,</i>	carefully.	<i>nière,</i>	
<i>grossièrement,</i>	exactly, accurately.		
<i>d'une manière</i>	rudely.		
<i>grossière,</i>	} unmannerly.	<i>peut-être,</i>	perhaps.
<i>fort & ferme,</i>		<i>probablement,</i>	probably.
<i>en diligence,</i>	stoutly.	<i>vraisemblablement,</i>	very likely.
<i>à pied,</i>	in haste.		
<i>à cheval,</i>	on foot.	<i>ainsi,</i>	thus.
<i>à califourchon,</i>	on horseback.	<i>de même,</i>	so.
<i>en carrosse,</i>	astraddle.	<i>comme cela,</i>	like this, or that.
<i>en bateau,</i>	in a coach.	<i>de cette ma-</i>	} after, or in this or that manner.
<i>à la mode,</i>	in a boat.	<i>nière,</i>	
<i>à la Fran-</i>	after the fashion.	<i>en partie,</i>	partly.
<i>çoise,</i>	after the French way	<i>tout autant,</i>	as much, exactly so.
<i>à l'Angloise,</i>	or fashion.	<i>tout-à-la-fois,</i>	all together.
	after the English	<i>séparément,</i>	separately.
	fashion.	<i>à part,</i>	apart, by one's self.
		<i>à l'écart,</i>	out of the way.
		<i>à quartier,</i>	aside.
		<i>plus, moins,</i>	more, less.
		<i>pis, worse,</i>	miéux, better.
		<i>de pis en pis,</i>	worse and worse.
		<i>de mieux en mieux,</i>	} better and better.

Of Negation.

Of Doubt.

ADVERBS of Comparison, &c.

ADVERBS of Affirmation.

<i>oui,</i>	yes.
<i>oui-dà,</i>	ay, ay marry.
<i>oui vraiment,</i>	} yes indeed.
<i>oui en vérité,</i>	
<i>certes,</i>	sure, to be sure,
<i>assurément,</i>	assuredly.

<i>ne plus ni</i>	}	neither more nor	<i>principalement,</i>	chiefly.
<i>moins,</i>		less.	<i>sur-tout,</i>	above all.
<i>de part & d'autre,</i> on both sides.				
<i>à plus forte</i>	}	much more, or	<i>après tout,</i>	{ after all, upon the
<i>raison,</i>		much less.		{ whole.
			<i>au contraire,</i>	on the contrary.
<i>universellement,</i>	universally.			
<i>généralement,</i>	generally.			
<i>doucement,</i>	gently.			
<i>autrement,</i>	otherwise.			
<i>particulièrement,</i>	particularly.			
<i>en particulier,</i>	}	especially,	{	how often, how
		in private.		
		<i>comment,</i>		how.

Of Interrogation.

<i>quand,</i>	when.	<i>pourquoi,</i>	why.
<i>combien,</i>	how much,		how many.
<i>combien de</i>	{		{
<i>fois,</i>		how often, how	
<i>comment,</i>			many times.
			how,

C H A P. VII.

Of PREPOSITIONS.

A PREPOSITION is a part of speech indeclinable, which denotes the several relations of nouns, pronouns, verbs, adverbs, and even prepositions, and without which it has no complete sense: as,

Avec la permission du Roi, with the King's leave; *pour moi,* for me; *après avoir dîné,* after having dined; *jusqu'à présent,* till now; *jusqu'après minuit,* till past midnight.

Prepositions are either simple; as *devant,* before; *sur,* upon; *par,* by; &c. or compound; as *au-devant de,* *vis-à-vis,* over against; *par-dessus,* above; &c.

The following Prepositions are immediately followed by their regimen, or the noun which they govern.

<i>A</i>	Londres,	At London.
<i>De</i>	France,	From France.
<i>Dès</i>	ce temps-là,	From that time.
<i>Avant</i>	vous,	Before you.
<i>Devant</i>	lui,	Before him.
<i>Derrière</i>	elle,	Behind her.
<i>Avec</i>	moi,	With me.
<i>Attendu</i>	sa promesse,	Considering his promise.
<i>Vu</i>	son âge,	Seeing his age.
<i>Chez</i>	nous,	At, or to our house.
<i>Après</i>	les Fêtes,	After the Holydays.
<i>Depuis</i>	Noël,	Since Christmas.
<i>Dans</i>	la ville,	In the city.

<i>En</i>	été;	<i>In summer.</i>
<i>Durant</i>	l'hiver,	<i>During the winter.</i>
<i>Pendant</i>	la cérémonie,	<i>During the ceremony.</i>
<i>Entre</i>	vous & moi,	<i>Between you and me.</i>
<i>Parmi</i>	eux,	<i>Among them.</i>
<i>Environ</i>	dix hommes,	<i>About ten men.</i>
<i>Vers</i>	la nuit,	<i>Towards night.</i>
<i>Envers</i>	ses amis,	<i>To, or towards his friends.</i>
<i>Selon</i>	son avis,	<i>According to his advice.</i>
<i>Suivant</i>	ce qu'il fera;	<i>According to what he will do.</i>
<i>Comme</i>	sa mère,	<i>Like his, or her mother.</i>
<i>Contre</i>	la porte,	<i>By the door.</i>
<i>Touchant</i>	l'ouvrage,	<i>Concerning the work.</i>
<i>Concernant</i>	l'affaire,	<i>About the matter.</i>
<i>Sans</i>	raison,	<i>Without any reason.</i>
<i>Pour</i>	les frais,	<i>For the charges.</i>
<i>Moyennant</i>	} cela,	<i>Notwithstanding that.</i>
<i>Nonobstant</i>		
<i>Excepté</i>	} la science,	<i>Except } learning.</i>
<i>Hormis</i>		
<i>Hors</i>		<i>But</i>
<i>Malgré</i>	tout le monde,	<i>In spite of all the world.</i>
<i>Outre</i>	ce sujet,	<i>Besides that subject.</i>
<i>Par</i>	la fenêtre,	<i>By, or at the window.</i>
<i>Sur</i>	la table,	<i>Upon the table.</i>
<i>Sous</i>	la chaise,	<i>Under the chair.</i>
<i>De dessus</i>	son visage,	<i>From her face.</i>
<i>De dessous</i>	le lit,	<i>From under the bed.</i>
<i>Par dessus</i>	la tête,	<i>Above the head.</i>
<i>Par dessous</i>	le carrosse,	<i>Under the coach.</i>
<i>Par deçà</i>	les monts,	<i>On this side the Alps.</i>
<i>Par delà</i>	la rivière,	<i>On that side the river.</i>
<i>A travers</i>	le corps,	<i>Through the body.</i>
<i>Sauf</i>	son recours,	<i>But with a remedy.</i>

The following require the other Preposition de before the next noun, or are always attended by one of these particles de, du, des.

<i>Auprès</i>	de moi,	<i>By me.</i>
<i>Près</i>	du feu,	<i>Near the fire.</i>
<i>Proche</i>	du Palais,	<i>Near the Palace.</i>
<i>Faute</i>	de paiement,	<i>For want of payment.</i>
<i>Hors</i>	de la ville,	<i>Out of the city.</i>
<i>Loin</i>	du bois,	<i>At a distance from the wood.</i>
<i>Le long</i>	de la prairie,	<i>Along the meadow.</i>

Ensuite

<i>Ensuite</i>	<i>de cela,</i>	<i>After that.</i>
<i>A cause</i>	<i>d'elle,</i>	<i>On her account, because of her.</i>
<i>A l'égard</i>	<i>de la fille,</i>	<i>As to the girl. [father.</i>
<i>A l'insu</i>	<i>de son père,</i>	<i>Without the knowledge of his</i>
<i>A l'exception</i>	<i>de son mari,</i>	<i>Her husband excepted.</i>
<i>A moins</i>	<i>d'un écu,</i>	<i>Under a crown.</i>
<i>A la réserve</i>	<i>d'une pension,</i>	<i>Excepting a pension.</i>
<i>A couvert</i>	<i>de l'orage,</i>	<i>Sheltered from the storm.</i>
<i>A l'abri</i>	<i>des coups,</i>	<i>Secure from the blows.</i>
<i>Au deçà</i>	} <i>de la haie,</i>	<i>On the side of the hedge.</i>
<i>En deçà</i>		
<i>Au delà</i>	<i>du Rhin,</i>	<i>On the other side the Rhine.</i>
<i>Au dessus</i>	<i>d'elle,</i>	<i>Above her.</i>
<i>Au dessous</i>	<i>de lui,</i>	<i>Below him.</i>
<i>Au devant</i>	<i>de quelqu'un (aller)</i>	<i>To go and meet one.</i>
<i>Au derrière,</i>	<i>de la porte,</i>	<i>Behind the door.</i>
<i>Au tour</i>	} <i>du pot,</i>	<i>About the bush. (Prov.)</i>
<i>A l'entour</i>		
<i>Aux environs</i>	<i>de sa maison,</i>	<i>Round about his house.</i>
<i>A l'exclusion</i>	<i>de sa femme,</i>	<i>Excepting his wife.</i>
<i>A force</i>	<i>de bras,</i>	<i>By strength of arms.</i>
<i>A rebours</i>	<i>de poil,</i>	<i>Against the hair.</i>
<i>Au prix</i>	<i>de son honneur,</i>	<i>At the expence of his honour.</i>
<i>A raison</i>	<i>de cinq * pour cent.</i>	<i>At the rate of five per cent.</i>
<i>Vis-à-vis</i>	<i>de la Bourse,</i>	<i>Over-against the Exchange.</i>
<i>A l'opposite</i>	<i>de sa maison,</i>	<i>Opposite to his house.</i>
<i>Au travers</i>	<i>de la cuisse,</i>	<i>Trough his thigh.</i>
<i>Au lieu</i>	<i>de cela,</i>	<i>Instead of that.</i>
<i>Au moyen</i>	<i>de quoi,</i>	<i>In virtue whereof.</i>
<i>Au péril</i>	} <i>de sa vie,</i>	<i>At the peril of his life.</i>
<i>Au risque</i>		
<i>Au milieu</i>	<i>de la rue,</i>	<i>In the middle of the street.</i>
<i>A fleur</i>	<i>d'eau,</i>	<i>Near the edge of the water.</i>
<i>Au niveau</i>	<i>de la cour,</i>	<i>Even with the yard.</i>
<i>A rez de terre,</i>	<i>ou de chaussée,</i>	<i>Even, or level with the ground.</i>
<i>A côté</i>	<i>de sa femme,</i>	<i>By his wife.</i>
<i>A la faveur</i>	<i>de la nuit,</i>	<i>By means of the night.</i>
<i>Au dépens</i>	<i>de la compagnie,</i>	<i>At the expence of the society.</i>
<i>En dépit</i>	<i>de son mari,</i>	<i>In spite of her husband.</i>
<i>A la mode</i>	<i>de France,</i>	<i>After the manner of the French.</i>
<i>Pour l'amour</i>	<i>d'elle,</i>	<i>For the sake of her. [body.</i>
<i>Au grand regret de tout le monde,</i>		<i>To the great regret of every</i>

These four require the other Preposition à before their noun, or are always attended by one of these particles, à, au, aux.

<i>Jusqu'</i>	<i>aux Indes,</i>	As far as the Indies.
<i>Par rapport</i>	<i>à lui,</i>	With respect to him.
<i>Quant</i>	<i>à moi,</i>	As for my part.
<i>Sauf</i>	<i>à la partie à se</i>	But the plaintiff is at liberty to sue (a law phrase).
	<i>pourvoir,</i>	

CHAP. VIII.

OF CONJUNCTIONS.

A CONJUNCTION is a part of speech indeclinable, which serves to join the members and parts of speech together, shewing the dependency of relation, and coherency between the words and sentences.

Most of them are Adverbs or Prepositions, attended by *que* or *de*; and therefore it is to be observed here, that many and the same words are Adverbs, Prepositions, and Conjunctions, according to the divers respects with which they are used grammatically, that is, according to the divers relations which they have to the other parts of speech, which they are joined to.

Conjunctions are either simple or compound. They are divided into Comparative and Copulative, or of Collection; Disjunctive, Adversative, or of Opposition; Conditional, and Exceptive; Dubitative, Declarative, and Concessive; Causal, Concluding, or of Conclusion, and Transitive.

Conjunctions *Copulative* are those that join, and, as it were, couple two terms together; as two Adjectives with one and the same Noun or Verb; or two Prepositions with the same affirmation or negation. And the *Comparative* are those that denote besides a respect of Comparison between things. Such are

<i>et, &</i>	and.	<i>de même que,</i>	as, just as.
<i>comme,</i>	as, whereas.	<i>ainsi que,</i>	{ as, as also, as like-
<i>comme si,</i>	as if, as though.		wise.
<i>de sorte que,</i>	{ so that, in such	<i>tant que,</i>	{ as much as, as
<i>de manière que,</i>			
<i>tellement que,</i>	a manner	<i>non plus,</i>	neither.
<i>si bien que,</i>	that, inso-	<i>non plus que,</i>	no more than.
<i>aussi (followed by que),</i>	much that.	<i>en tant que,</i>	as, as much as.
<i>aussi bien que,</i>	as.	<i>non seulement,</i>	not only.
	as well as.		<i>mais</i>

<i>mais encore,</i>	{	but also, or but even.	<i>savoir,</i>	{	to wit, whereas, for as much as.
<i>mais même,</i>			<i>d'autant</i>		
<i>mais aussi,</i>			<i>que,</i>		
<i>de plus,</i>	{	moreover, besides, further.	<i>ni plus ni moins</i>	{	just as, even as.
<i>outre cela,</i>			<i>que,</i>		
<i>outre que,</i>	{	besides, besides that, add to that.	<i>and si,</i>	{	so, in the sense of <i>aussi</i> : as <i>si</i> <i>savant que</i> , so learned that, &c.
<i>joint que,</i>			<i>as si</i>		

The *Disjunctive* shew a respect of separation or division : as,

<i>ni,</i>	nor, neither.	<i>au lieu de,</i>	instead of.	
<i>soit,</i>		<i>whether.</i>	<i>au lieu que,</i>	whereas.
<i>soit que,</i>		or.	<i>ou, or ou bien,</i>	or else.

The *Adversative* denote restriction or contrariety :

<i>mais,</i>	but.	<i>nonobstant</i>	}	notwithstanding
<i>néanmoins,</i>	nevertheless.	<i>que</i>		that.
<i>pourtant,</i>	yet, however.	<i>bien loin de,</i>	}	far from, so
<i>toutefois,</i>	yet, for all that.	<i>tant s'en faut que,</i>		far from.
<i>cependant,</i>	{ yet, however, in the mean while.	<i>quoique,</i>	}	although, or
		<i>bien que,</i>		though, or
		<i>encore que,</i>		tho'.

The *Conditional*, which suppose a condition, serve to restrain and limit what has been just said : as,

<i>si,</i>	if, whether.	<i>en tout</i>	{	however, or whatever happens.
<i>sinon,</i>		<i>cas,</i>		
<i>comme si,</i>	as if, as though.	<i>à moins que,</i>	{	unless.
<i>pourvu que,</i>		<i>à moins de,</i>		
<i>à condition que,</i>	upon condition, or with	<i>sans, sans que,</i>	{	without.
<i>bien entendu que,</i>		<i>si ce n'est que,</i>		
<i>supposez que,</i>	a proviso, that, sup-	<i>excepté que,</i>	{	except that.
<i>posez le cas que,</i>		<i>quand,</i>		
<i>au cas que,</i>	pose, put the case, or in case that.	<i>quand même,</i>	{	tho', altho', followed in French by the conditional tense.
<i>en cas que,</i>		<i>quand bien</i>		
<i>en cas de,</i>		<i>même,</i>		

The *Dubitative* shew some doubt or suspension of the mind : as, *si*, whether ; *savoir si*, whether or no, the question is whether.

The *Declarative*, which serve to illustrate and explain a thing : as,

pour lors, then. *savoir*, to wit. *sur-tout*, especially. *c'est-à-dire*, that is to say. *comme par exemple*, as for instance, or example.

The

The *Concessive*, which shew the assent we give to a thing, are,
à la vérité, { indeed, to speak the truth. *d'accord*, done, agreed.
en effet, { in effect, really. *soit*, well and good.
non que, non pas que, ce n'est pas que, not but. *tête*, done, 'I consent to it.

The *Causal* shew the reason of something: as

car, for. *d'autant que*, } the more because.
parce que, because. *d'autant plus*, } so much the more
à cause que, because of. *que*, } as, that, because.
à cause de, on account of. *afin que*, that, to the end that.
vu que, considering that. *afin de*, in order to.
attendu que, { seeing, or seeing *puisque*, since.
that. *comme*, as, &c.

The *Concluding* denote a consequence drawn from what is before: as

c'est pourquoi, therefore. *c'est-à-dire que*, { that is to say
par conséquent, consequently. } that.
pour cet effet, to that end, or but. *il s'ensuit de là* { from thence it
donc, then, therefore. *que*, } follows that.
si bien que, } so that. *pour conclusion*, to conclude.
de sorte que, } *c'est pour* } 'tis therefore, or for
ainsi, } so and so, therefore. *cela que*, } that reason that.
aussi, } *cela étant*, } it being so, these
enfin, in fine, in short, at last. *cela étant* } things being
or est-il que, now, but. *ainsi*, } so.
d'autant que, for as much as.

The *Transitive*, which serve to pass from one sentence to another, and called also *Continuative*, because they denote continuation in the speech, are,

en effet, in effect, indeed. *puis*, then. *et puis*, and besides.
d'ailleurs, besides. *même*, even.
de plus, moreover. *de même*, likewise.
d'un autre côté, } on the other side, on the other hand. *sans doute*, without doubt.
autre cela, besides that. *sans mentir*, } truly, to speak the
après cela, after that. *à dire vrai*, } truth.
après tout, { after all, upon the whole, in the main. *là-dessus*, thereupon.
ensuite, then, afterwards. *sur quoi*, whereupon.
en un mot, in one word.
au reste, as for the rest.

<i>Il est vrai que,</i>	it is true that.	<i>quoiqu'il en soit,</i>	however, however
<i>J'en conviens,</i>	{ I allow it, I grant it, I grant that.		{ it be, or let it be as it will.
<i>sur ces entre-faites,</i>	{ in the mean while, while these things were doing.	<i>à propos,</i>	{ now I think on't, or now we are speaking of that.

To those Conjunctions add some others of Interrogation and Time: as

<i>pourquoi,</i>	why, wherefore?	<i>depuis que,</i>	since, or since that.
<i>par quelle raison,</i>	{ what for, for what reason?	<i>avant que,</i>	{ before.
<i>à quel propos,</i>	to what purpose?	<i>avant de,</i>	
<i>d'où vient que,</i>	{ how comes it to pass, how comes that about?	<i>après que,</i>	after.
<i>dès que,</i>	{ as soon as.	<i>quand,</i>	when.
<i>si tôt que,</i>		<i>lorsque,</i>	whilst.
<i>aussi-tôt que,</i>		<i>pendant que,</i>	yet, nevertheless,
<i>toutes les fois que,</i>	as often as.	<i>cependant,</i>	{ in the mean while.
<i>en attendant que,</i>	till, until.		{ hardly, scarce, scarcely, (followed by <i>que</i> in the second part of the sentence).
<i>jusqu'à ce que,</i>	till.	<i>à peine,</i>	
<i>en attendant,</i>	in the mean time.		
<i>depuis,</i>	since.		

CHAP. IX.

Of PARTICLES.

THE PARTICLE is a part of speech which serves less to represent a thought, than the state or situation of the mind in the exhibition of its thoughts. Particles are divided into *Discursive* and *Interjective*, making a particular species of words, which cannot be ranged in any of the other parts of speech, and have a specifical signification peculiar to them.

Discursive Particles.

ci,
là,
ça,

cet homme-ci,
cette femme-là,
or ça voyons,

this man.
that woman.
now, let's see.

oui,

oui dà, ay, ay.
eh bien, well,
adieu, farewell.
voici, here is, behold.
voilà, there is, or there are.

Besides the articles *le, la, les,*
 and those invented to imitate
 the sounds of dumb creatures,
 and the noise which is occa-
 sioned by the clashing of
 bodies against one another,
Bâ, Cric, Crac, Tic, Tac,
Pouf, Patatras.

Interjective Particles.

<i>ah!</i>	ha, ah! (for almost all the emotions of the mind, as <i>joy, fear, grief, &c.</i> but differently uttered according to the emotions which it expresses.)
<i>bélas!</i>	alas! (for grief.)
<i>ouf, ai, or aye,</i>	pho! (for pain.)
<i>bon!</i>	well, right, (for both assenting and dissenting to something, liking or disliking.)
<i>ouais,</i>	edod, pshaw, (for discontent.)
<i>fi,</i>	fye upon, (for dislike and aversion.)
<i>oh! oh! oh!</i>	(for derision.)
<i>que! quoi!</i>	how! what! (for exclamation.)
<i>eh!</i>	} lack-a-day, } blefs me, } Dear Sirs! } (for surprise.)
<i>bon Dieu!</i>	
<i>miséricorde!</i>	
<i>ô dame!</i>	} come on, } cheer up, } (for encouraging those we speak to.) } courage,
<i>allons,</i>	
<i>courage,</i>	
<i>alerte,</i>	encore, again, (for repeating.)
<i>bis, (sounded),</i>	hold, } (for repressing, checking, and stopping softly, } some emotion.)
<i>bolà,</i>	hish, hush, (for silencing.)
<i>tout beau,</i>	have a care, clear the way, (for making people go out of the way.)
<i>paix, chât, st,</i>	o, ho, soho, (for calling.)
<i>garre,</i>	} Huzza! (for shouting.)
<i>bolà, ho, bem,</i>	
<i>Vive le Roi,</i>	
<i>Vive la joie,</i>	fiddlestick, pshaw, (for derision and dislike.)
<i>Vivat,</i>	
<i>Zaf,</i>	

Of ORTHOGRAPHY.

Of the several Marks used in writing French.

THESE marks are of six sorts: the Elision, Hyphen, Cedilla, Dialisys or Diæresis, Accents, Capital Letters, and Stops.

ELISION is the cutting off a final vowel before a word beginning with a vowel, or *h* mute; and the vowel thus cut off is supplied by a comma, called *Apostrophe*, and set above the empty place, thus (').

These three vowels, *a, e, i*, suffer elision in French.

1. *a* and *e* are cut off in *la* and *le*, whether articles or pronouns,
2. In all monosyllables, as *je, me, se, te, de, ce, ne, que*; and the
3. conjunctions composed of *que*, as *jusque, parceque, puisque*, &c.
4. and *i* in the conjunction *si*, if, before *il* and *ils* only.

Thus we write

<i>l'âme,</i>	} instead of	<i>la âme,</i>	the soul;
<i>l'héroïne,</i>		<i>la héroïne,</i>	the heroine;
<i>l'homme,</i>		<i>le homme,</i>	the man;
<i>l'esprit,</i>		<i>le esprit,</i>	the mind;
<i>j'aime,</i>		<i>je aime,</i>	I love;
<i>je l'estime,</i>		<i>je le or la estime,</i>	I esteem her or him;
<i>m'entendez-vous,</i>		<i>me entendez-vous,</i>	do you understand me?
<i>s'en aller,</i>		<i>se en aller,</i>	to go away;
<i>c'est fait,</i>		<i>ce est fait,</i>	it is done or over;
<i>l'âge d'or,</i>		<i>le âge de or,</i>	the golden age;
<i>n'allez pas,</i>		<i>ne allez pas,</i>	do not go;
<i>qu'a-t-il dit,</i>		<i>que a-t-il dit,</i>	what did he say?
<i>jusqu'au soir,</i>		<i>jusque au soir,</i>	till night;
<i>quoiqu'il dise,</i>		<i>quoique il dise,</i>	although he says;
<i>puisqu'il sait,</i>		<i>puisque il sait,</i>	since he knows;
<i>lorsqu'il vit,</i>		<i>lorsque il vit,</i>	when he saw;
<i>s'il vient,</i>		<i>si il vient,</i>	if he comes;
<i>s'ils veulent,</i>		<i>si ils veulent,</i>	if they please.

5. But when *si* coming after *Et* (*Et si*) signifies yet, *i* is not contracted with the next vowel; as *il le sait, Et si il n'en dit rien*, he knows it, yet he says nothing of it.—We also write and say *m'amie* and *m'amour* (love), for *ma*, or rather *mon amie*,
6. *mon amour*, and *quelqu'un* for *quelque un*.

There are two cases wherein *le* and *la* and *ce* don't suffer elision:

1st, The articles *le* and *la* and the pronoun demonstrative *ce* before *onze* and *onzième*, and *oui* yes. Thus we spell and pronounce *le onze du mois*, the eleventh of the month; *il est le onzième*, *elle est la onzième*, he or she is the eleventh; *le oui qu'il prononça*, the yes which he spoke; *ce oui-là lui a coûté cher*, that yes has cost him dear: but it is only *le* and *la* and *ce* which suffer no elision before these two words; for all the other monosyllables do. Thus we spell and pronounce *je n'en ai qu'onze*, and not *que onze*, I have got but eleven; *je dis qu'oui*, and not *que oui*, I say yes.

Observe moreover, concerning *onze* and *oui*, that the final consonant of the particles coming before these two words is not articulated as it is before any other word beginning with a vowel. Therefore don't pronounce *le xonze mille vierges*, for *les onze mille vierges*; *un nqui*, *de xoui*, for *un oui*, *des oui*.

2^{dly}, *le* and *la*, being pronouns governed of an imperative, do not suffer elision, unless they are followed by either of these two other pronouns *en* and *y*; as *Portez-le au logis*, carry him or it home (though we pronounce *portél au logis*); *Mariez-la au plutôt*, marry her as soon as possible. But write and pronounce *Tirez l'en au plutôt*, get him, her, or it, from thence as fast as you can; *Laissez l'y aller*, let him or her go thither.

e suffers elision also at the end of the adnoun feminine *grande*, before these words beginning with a consonant; *grand' chambre*, great chamber; *grand' messe*, high mass; *grand' peur*, great fright; *grand' chose*, a great matter; *grand' chère*, great cheer; *grand' faim* & *grand' soif*, great hunger and great thirst; *grand' pitié*, ten thousand pities; *grand' peine*, great trouble; *la grand' chambre*, the high court of parliament at Paris; *ma* or *sa grand' mère*, my or his grandmother; *grand' salle*, a large room or hall; *grand' part*, a great share.

HYPHEN is a short line across, marked thus -, and used, 1st, to join pronouns expressing the subject with their verbs, especially in interrogations; as likewise the particles *en* and *y*, and other conjunctive pronouns, with an imperative: as *que dit-elle*, what does she say? *irons-nous*, shall we go? *vient-il*, does he come? *vas-y*, go thither; *prends-en*, take some; *sauvons-nous*, let us take to our heels; *allons-nous-en*, let us go away; *donnez-les-lui*, give them to him.

Note, that when the verb ends in *a* or *e*, *t* ought to be inserted between two Hyphens, between the verb and pronoun subjective or the particle *en*, in order to soften the pronunciation; as *parla-*

parla-t-elle, did she speak? *va-t-on*, do they go? *mange-t-il*, does he eat?

14. 2dly, To join the particles *ci*, *là*, *ça*, to the words which are attended by them, and from which they cannot be properly parted in speech; as likewise *ce* after *être*: as *celui-ci*, this; *celui-là*, that; *cet homme-ci*, this man; *cette femme-là*, that woman; *demeurez-là*, stay there; *là-haut*, above; *là-bas*, below; *venez-ça*, come hither; *est-ce-là le livre*, is that the book? *sont-ce-là vos gens*, are these your servants?

16. 3dly, To join together the parts of a compound word: as *porte-manteau*, port-manteau; *arc-en-ciel*, rainbow; *c'est-à-dire*, that is to say.

4thly, At the end of a line, to denote that a word is parted which could not be written entirely in the line, and that the remainder of it is at the beginning of the next line; as in the word *présentement*, presently. But note, that whenever a word is thus parted, the part which begins the next line must always begin with a consonant.

17. CEDILLA is a short curved line, or a comma, put under *c* before *a*, *o*, *u*, to divest it of the articulation of *k*, and give it the hissing articulation of *s*, which it always has before *e* and *i*: as in *menaça*, he threatened; *leçon*, lesson; *conçu*, conceived.

18. DIALYSIS } is two dots put over the last of the two vowels
DIÆRESIS } that meet together in a word, to part them into two several syllables: as *haï*, hated, makes two syllables: whereas *je hais*, I hate, makes but one. In *Saül*, the king of *Israel*, *a* and *ü* make two syllables, and so distinguish it from *Saul* (*Paul*) wherein *au* makes but an improper diphthong.

e, *i*, *u*, are the only vowels on which the two dots are marked, custom having not as yet prevailed to put them over *o* in *géomètre*, and other such words wherein *e* and *o* make two distinct vowels, very differently pronounced from the same in *geolier*. It is therefore sufficient to mark the preceding *e* with an accent, to make it keep its proper sound, and at the same time part it from *o*.

19. It is moreover usual to put the two dots over *e* final, not sounded, in *aiguë*, *ambiguë*, *ciguë*, &c. to denote that the hard articulation of *g* falls upon *u*, as it does in *aiguille*, a needle, and so distinguish it from that which *gu* has in *figue*, *guide*, *guérir*, *guenon*, &c. These cases excepted, never put the two dots over any vowel that makes but one and the same syllable with the foregoing vowel, as in *jouer*, to play; *avouer*, to own, &c. which

some

some writers very viciously spell *joier*, *avoier*, as if these words were to be pronounced *avô-u-er*, *jo-u-er*, and not *avou-er*, *jou-er*: whilst, on the contrary, others, in omitting the two dots over the second syllable of *aiguille*, induce the reader to pronounce it as in *anguille*, an eel.

ACCENT is a note put chiefly over our *e*'s, to denote their several pronunciations; as likewise over some words, to distinguish their nature and signification.

There are three sorts of accents; Acute ´, Grave ` , and Circumflex ^.

The accent *acute* is put over all *e*'s, which our Grammarians have been pleased to call *e* masculine; as in *prémédité*, premeditated.

The accent *grave* over those called *e* open; as in *très*, most; *près*, near; *dès*, from; and the last syllables of words ending in *ès*, as *excès*, excess; *après*, after, &c.

With what ground our Grammarians have distinguished our *e*'s by these several appellations of *e* masculine, *e* feminine, *e* open, *e* shut, *e* French, and *e* Latin, I am not able to apprehend, and therefore have chosen to call them by that accent which distinguishes them. When two syllables made of *e* follow one another, without having any accent over them, the first is always to be pronounced grave, and the last is not sounded.

The nature of these following particles is distinguished by the accent grave, being both articles and adverbs, verbs, or prepositions, or conjunctions.

<i>a</i> ,	has ;	<i>à</i> ,	at, or to ;
<i>la</i> ,	the ;	<i>là</i> ,	there ;
<i>de la</i> ,	of, or from the ;	<i>de là</i> ,	from thence ;
<i>des</i> ,	of, or from the ;	<i>dès</i> ,	from ;
<i>ça</i> ,	come on ;	<i>çà</i> ,	hither ;
<i>ou</i> ,	or ;	<i>où</i> ,	where.

It is also usual to mark over with the accent grave the pronoun *les*, after an imperative terminating a sentence: as *donnez-les*, give them; and these two particles, *holà*, hold; and *ouidà*, ay, ay.

The accent *circumflex* is used in words over a syllable, which has now-a-days lost a vowel or an *s* of its own spelling, and the circumflex makes that syllable long; as *âge*, age; *bête*, beast; *être*, to be; *le nôtre*, ours; *vu*, seen, &c. which were formerly spelt *aage*, *beste*, *estre*, *le nostre*, *veu*, &c.

The last syllable of the 3d perf. sing. of the preterite subj. 22.

is also marked over with a circumflex, to distinguish it from the same person of the pret. ind. *qu'il aimât, parlât, fût, crût, entendit, vît, &c.* of which *s* is cut off; but these syllables are not pronounced long.

23. Some other words take also the circumflex, to prevent one's mistaking their signification; as *dû*, from *devoir*, to owe, to distinguish it from *du*, of the; *crû*, from *croître*, to grow, to distinguish it from *cru*, believed; *sûr*, sure, to distinguish it from *sur*, upon: but this practice is not generally received.

The tone of words is not then the proper object of accents in our language. Their office is not to mark the raising or sinking of the voice on syllables: they were at first introduced only to ascertain the pronunciation of our *e*'s. Our forefathers, surprised to see different sounds represented by the same sign, bethought themselves of remedying that disorder, by adopting the accents which the Greeks and the Latins had instituted, though for a different purpose. This practice, had it been carefully observed, would have effectually supplied the want of other signs: but it was no sooner established, than it was again almost entirely laid aside, through the negligence of Printers and Authors.

To conclude; it is evident, from the aforesaid observations, that the accents shew the pronunciation of our vowels, and ought to be the most essential part of orthography. Their omission bewilders the reader: nay, I have strong reasons to believe that it is often owing to the ignorance of the writer. I myself have been sometimes at a loss how to read some words, which I never heard read or spoken, and have therefore applied to the French Academy, to be informed of their pronunciation. An accent over an *e* would have cleared the point.

Such is the use of our accents; from whence it appears, that accent in French is of a very different use from what it has in English, wherein it denotes that *the tone, or stress of the voice in pronouncing, is upon the syllable over which it is placed*, and therefore serves only to shew the quantity of syllables. The French language has indeed its quantity: the length and shortness of syllables must be so carefully observed in pronouncing, that the mistaking a long vowel for a short one is enough, in some words, to change their signification; as *aveuglement*, which is a noun signifying *blindness* when the penultima is short, or (as the English phrase it) when the accent is over the last syllable but one; and an adverb signifying *blindly*, when *e* is long with an accent acute over it, or (according to the English) when the accent is over the last syllable

syllable but one. M. Rollin observes, that the vowel *e* in these words; *sévère*, severe; *évêque*, bishop; *repêché*, got out of the water; and *revêtir*, to put on; has three different sounds, and three quantities, of which perhaps no instance can be found in the Greek and Latin tongues; and it is by their accent, so different from the true French accent, that the people of the divers provinces in France are known. But notwithstanding what I have said of that quantity which syllables have in words, and the great help which I have laboured to give the learner to attain the harmony of the pronunciation, it is altogether impossible to become master of it, otherwise than by hearing such speak and read who have the true French accent, and are perfect masters of their language.

A late writer, who, some years ago, read Lectures on the English Language, in the City, the design of which was, as far as I could apprehend, to convince his hearers and readers of this great and important point, namely, that the English, as well as other nations, spell otherwise than they pronounce; and who has been since, and is still, labouring very hard, to make the two Universities learn reading English; advances, in his Lectures on Elocution, that the French have no quantity, or, which is the same, that they make all their syllables long*. The contrary is so evident to any body who has the least tincture of French, that it is difficult to say which is most amazing, the ignorance or assurance of the author, who treats of matters to which he is quite a stranger: for in those very lectures, all notions of Grammar and Oratory are confounded and mistaken. The French language abounds in Dactils, Iambes, Troches, Anapests, and Choriambes. The Spondees are few in comparison of the other metres, the variety of which makes it a most harmonious language. And notwithstanding its nasal sounds, and guttural *e*, which, though a little grating to the ear, an able Poet and Musician can nevertheless use to advantage.

CAPITALS

* The best way of seeing clearly the difference between the genius of the French tongue and ours in this respect, will be to sound a number of words immediately borrowed from them, and see in what the diversity of pronunciation consists. Such as *abândon*, *âban'dôn*; *cômbâr*, *côm băt*; *côlêge*, collêge; *cômmûn*, *com'môn*; *cômpâgnon*, *compan'ion*; *Eûrôpe*, *Eûrôpe*; *ôbstâcle*, *ob'stăcle*; *sôlid*, *sôlid*; *Dôctêur*, *Doc'tor*; *fâveûr*, *favôur*; *hônneûr*, *hon'our*; &c. in most of which words the syllables are all long in the French, and short in the English, as the accents are placed on the vowels in the French, and on the consonants in the English. This it is which makes most of their words appear to an English ear to have as many accents as syllables, by obliging them to give an equal stress to them. *A Course of Lectures on Elocution, Lect. 2d, on Accent.*

CAPITALS or Great Letters are used,

1st, In the beginning of a sentence in prose, and every line or verse in poetry.

2^{dly}, All Christian and proper names of persons, places, ships, rivers, arts, sciences, dignities, titles of honour, and professions; as also adnouns derived from thence, begin with a great letter; as *George Roi*, *George Rex*; *un Mathématicien Anglois*, an English Mathematician; *un Tailleur François*, a French Taylor.

3^{dly}, Such nouns in a sentence as bear some considerable stress of the author's sense upon it, to make it the more remarkable and conspicuous.

STOPS are of six sorts, whose names and shapes are thus:

<i>un virgule</i>	,	a comma	,
<i>un point & un virgule</i>	;	a semicolon	;
<i>deux points</i>	:	a colon	:
<i>un point</i>	.	a period, or full stop	.
<i>un point d'interrogation</i>	?	a note of interrogation	?
<i>un point d'admiration</i>	!	a note of admiration	!

The use of these stops, which the French call *Punctuation*, seems pretty arbitrary, and to differ not only according to the genius of languages, but also according to the style of authors; yet as they are necessary to avoid obscurity, and prevent misconstructions, and therefore for the better understanding of what we write and read, here follows the use which the generality of the learned make of them; which use is itself grounded upon reason.

A *comma* is used to distinguish the several parts of a sentence, and give the reader a proper time for breathing; as likewise to distinguish, in enumeration, the things that are enumerated, whether they be of the same or of a different kind: as,

Si tant de gens se plaisent à lire des bagatelles, c'est peut-être que leur esprit ayant peu de force, ils aiment les choses aisées à comprendre.

Les huit parties du discours sont le nom, l'adjectif, le pronom, le verbe, l'adverbe, la préposition, la conjonction, & la particule.

On ne devient point savant, que l'on n'étudie constamment, méthodiquement, & avec application.

If so many people take a pleasure in reading trifles, it is perhaps because, being of a little genius, they like things easy to be understood.

The eight parts of speech are these; noun, adjective, pronoun, verb, adverb, preposition, conjunction, and particle.

One cannot get learning without studying steadily, methodically, and with application.

A semi-

A *semicolon* is used likewise to distinguish a part of a sentence of a pretty good length, but in such a manner, that the remaining part of the sentence is not necessary to make a complete sense, which is perfect at the semicolon: as,

Le siècle d'Auguste a tellement été celui des excellens Poëtes, qu'ils ont servi de modèles à tous les autres; cependant ce siècle n'a point produit de Poëtes tragiques.

The Augustan age has in such a manner been that of excellent Poets, that they have served as models to all others; yet that age has produced no tragic writers.


A *colon* marks a sense that seems to be complete, but so that something may still be added to it. The colon and semicolon may sometimes indeed be used promiscuously; but when the sentence is tolerably long, or the period composed of four or five sentences, one must observe to make the pauses in the order of the aforesaid stops; finishing by the full stop, when the sense of the sentence is quite out. More examples would be needless.

A note of *interrogation* is used when a question is asked; as *Quelle heure est-il?* What o'clock is it?

A note of *admiration* is used when we express our wonder or admiration at something; as, *O temps! O mœurs! O times! O manners!*

There are besides some other figures in writing: as,

PARENTHESIS, which is a distinct sentence interposed in the main sentence, within these two figures (), which being left out, the sense of the sentence is entire. If the occasional sentence is a short one, it is not necessary to use the two aforesaid figures, but only to inclose it in two commas. But the parenthesis is now-a-days of no use in French, because no long occasional sentence is suffered in the style.

INDEX , the fore-finger pointing, signifies that passage to be very remarkable againit which it is placed.

OBELISK † and ASTERISM * are used to refer the reader to some remark in the margin, or at the foot of the page. And several stars set together *** signify that there is something wanting, defective, or immodest, in that passage of the author. In dictionaries, *Obelisk* commonly denotes a word to be obsolete, or little used.

QUOTATION (") or a double comma turned, is put at the beginning and end of such lines as are quoted out of another author in his own words.

SECTION or Division § is used in subdividing of a chapter or book into lesser parts.

PARAGRAPH ¶ is the part of a section or chapter, comprehending several sentences under one head or subject.

CARET (A) is placed underneath a line between two words, or denote that some letter, syllable, or word, has, by inadvertence, been left out in writing or printing. Several points , or a dash ———, denotes a reticence, or a sense that is imperfect.

ABBREVIATIONS *sometimes used in writing and printing, especially in foreign Gazettes.*

S. M.	<i>Sa Majesté</i> , his or her Majesty.
L. M.	<i>Leurs Majestés</i> , their Majesties.
S. M. Imp.	<i>Sa Majesté Impériale</i> , his or her Imperial Majesty.
L. M. Imp.	<i>Leurs Majestés Impériales</i> , their Imperial Majesties.
S. M. T. C.	<i>Sa Majesté très-Chrétienne</i> , his most Christian Majesty.
S. M. Cath.	<i>Sa Majesté Catholique</i> , his Catholic Majesty.
S. M. Brit.	<i>Sa Majesté Britannique</i> , his or her Britannic Majesty.
S. M. Pruss.	<i>Sa Majesté Prussienne</i> , his Prussian Majesty.
S. M. Polon.	<i>Sa Majesté Polonoise</i> , his Polish Majesty.
S. A. R.	<i>Son Altesse Royale</i> , his or her Royal Highness.
S. A. E.	<i>Son Altesse Electorale</i> , his Electoral Highness.
S. A. S.	<i>Son Altesse Sérénissime</i> , his most Serene Highness.
L. N. & H. P.	<i>Leurs Nobles & Hautes Puissances</i> , their High Mightinesses.
S. E.	<i>Son Excellence</i> , his or her Excellence.
S. S.	<i>Sa Sainteté</i> , his Holiness.
S. Emin.	<i>Son Eminence</i> , his Eminence.
V. S.	<i>Vicux Stile</i> , Old Stile.
N. S.	<i>Nouveau Stile</i> , New Stile.
J. C.	<i>Jésus Christ</i> , Jesus Christ.
N. D.	<i>Notre Dame</i> , Our Lady.
C. P.	<i>Constantinople</i> .
Mr.	<i>Monseigneur</i> , Sir or Master.
M ^{de} . M ^c .	<i>Madame</i> , Madam or Mistress.
Mlle.	<i>Mademoiselle</i> , Miss or Madam.
Mess. or MM.	<i>Messieurs</i> , Gentlemen, Masters.
MS.	<i>Manuscript</i> , Manuscript.
Sept. or 7bre.	<i>Septembre</i> , September.
Oct. 8bre.	<i>Octobre</i> , October.
Nov. 9bre.	<i>Novembre</i> , November.
Déc. xbre.	<i>Décembre</i> , December.

A
S Y S T E M
O F
FRENCH SYNTAX.

C H A P. I.

O f N O U N S.

WHEN two substantives come together, and are connected in their signification, the latter is put in the genitive case; that is, the latter requires the preposition *de* before it. 1.

Un homme de mérite, a man of merit.

N O T E.

Adverbs, when used substantively, govern the following noun in the genitive. 2.

Elle avoit médiocrement d'esprit. SULLY.—She had a moderate understanding.

Where we observe that the substantive in the genitive case takes no article.

* The relation of possession or belonging to is often expressed, in English, by a case, or different ending of the substantive: viz. the substantive which is placed the second in French, with the preposition *de* before it, comes first, in English, with the addition of an *s* and an apostrophe. 3.

God's grace, *la grace de Dieu.*

S. N. B. *God's* limits the sense in which the substantive *grace* is taken. An article would have been useless in English; but the French, with propriety, use the article here, because they always affix it before substantives taken in a limited sense.

The Rules and Notes marked thus (S.) are added by the Editor (G. Serris), the Author of the Exercices adapted to this Grammar; and those marked thus * are only altered by him.

* The

4. * The article, adjective, participle, and pronouns, agree, in gender and number, with the substantive, either expressed or implied :

Un beau prince, a noble prince.

Une belle princesse, a beautiful princess.

La vertu est estimée de tout le monde,

Virtue is esteemed by every body.

L'expérience confirme nos opinions ; elle est la mère de la science.

Experience confirms our opinions ; it is the mother of knowledge.

Appliquons-nous à l'étude ; sinon, nous serons incapables de remplir les places auxquelles la providence nous destine.

Let us apply to study ; otherwise we shall be incapable of filling the places to which providence destines us.

5. When two or more substantives of different numbers and genders, or genders only, put in apposition, i. e. in the same case, and connected by a conjunction, have an adjective, &c. common to them, they agree in number and gender with the last.

Il avoit les yeux & la bouche ouverte, } his eyes and mouth

Il avoit la bouche & les yeux ouverts, } were open.

J'ai trouvé les étangs & les rivières glacées,

I found the ponds and the rivers frozen.

N. B. S. This takes place, only when the substantive is in the accusative or objective case.

6. But when there be one or many words between the last substantive and the adjective, &c. that adjective, &c. (common to the substantives) agrees with the noun masculine, though the last be feminine, and is put in the plural number.

L'étang & la rivière étoient glacés,

The pond and the river were frozen.

Les étangs & la rivière qu'il trouva glacés,

The ponds and the rivers which he found frozen.

7. * And when the adjective, common to three or more nouns, whether of the same or of different genders, is preceded and governed by the Verb *être*, it must have another noun plural (as *choses*, *biens*, *maux*, as the case may require) to agree with. The words *choses*, &c. implied in English, are taken, in both languages, in a partitive sense ; and that partitive sense is expressed in French by the preposition *de* and the article *le* contracted.

L'or, l'argent, la renommée, les honneurs, & les dignités, sont des choses incertaines & périssables ; or, des biens incertains & périssables.

Gold, silver, fame, honours, and dignities, are uncertain and perishable.

N. B. Gold, &c. require the article *le* in French.

Sometimes, when a noun in the plural number is used to imply two species of the same genus, and that to explain that implication more clearly, two qualities or adjectives are joined to it; one of which refers to the one species, and the other to the other; these qualities are put in the singular number, but agree in gender with the substantive.

Marie Thérèse avoit renoncé aux successions paternelle & maternelle: (GAILLARD, Histoire de la Rivalité de la France & de l'Angleterre.)

Maria Theresa had renounced her paternal and maternal inheritance.

S. N. B. The French construction, in the present case, requires the substantive first, and generally the adjective which has the greatest number of syllables, last.

NOTE.

Chose (a thing, which is properly feminine) being joined to *quelque* (*quelque chose*, something) is masculine, and therefore requires the next adjective or pronoun (which, with respect to the subject in question, is the same thing) relative, to agree with that gender.

Je suis assis sur quelque chose qui me paroit dur,
I am seated upon something which feels hard.

Quand j'ai perdu quelque chose, je le cherche,
When I have lost something, I look for it.

La partie, a part; *la plupart*, the most part; *foule*, crowd; *multitude*, multitude; *nombre*, number; *moitié*, half; *espèce*, kind; *sorte*, sort; governing a substantive masculine in the genitive case, and attended by an adjective, will not have the adjective to agree with them, but with the genitive substantive:

Il a une partie du bras cassée, not cassée;

A part of his arm is broken.

Il trouva une partie de ses hommes morts, not morte;

He found part of his people dead.

Quand il vit la plupart, or la moitié de ses gens étendus par terre, not étendue;

When he saw the most part, or half, of his people extended on the ground.

Une troupe de gens étourdis, not étourdie;

A crowd of giddy people.

Une espèce de bois qui est assez dur;

A kind of wood which is rather hard.

Une sorte de vin qui est bon; a good sort of wine.

The reason of this is evident; the arm was broken, not the part; the soldiers were killed, not the half; and so of the rest.

But the other collective nouns are not liable to this construction, and we say,

Les trois quarts du château furent brûlés, not, fut brûlé;

Three parts out of four of the castle were burnt;
because three parts out of four of the castle were actually burnt.

S. Almost

S. Almost all parts of speech are taken substantively, on certain occasions.

32.

Pronominal adjectives relative.

Le tien & le mien sont la source de toutes les querelles ;

Thine and mine are the source of all quarrels.

These pronouns, taken substantively, require the article in French.

33.

S. Adjectives.

Le sage n'envisage pas les richesses comme un bien ;

The wise do not consider riches as a blessing.

Adjectives, taken in this sense, are in general in the singular number in French; they are probably taken in a collective sense, like *peuple, nation, &c.* which, though they have a plural signification, require the verb, &c. in the singular number. The French seem to prefer the singular number to the plural, when they want to give more weight to a proposition of this kind.

34.

N. B. Those adjectives, taken substantively, are often expressed in English by a noun and an adjective :

Les fous inventent les modes, & les sages les suivent ;

Fools invent fashions, and wise people follow them.

35.

S. Adverbs.

Il veut savoir le pourquoi & le comment de toutes choses ;

He wants to know the *why* and the *how* of every thing, the reason of every thing.

36.

S. Infinitives present.

Manger & dormir sont les plus grandes nécessités de la vie ;

Eating and sleeping are the chief necessities of life.

N. B. The English, in general, use, in this case, the gerund.

37.

When the sense of these substantives is limited, the article is required in French.

Au lever du soleil, at sun-rising.

Ils ne manquent jamais de se trouver au lever du ministre ;

They never fail to wait on the minister at his levee.

38.

S. Participles. *

L'offensé est en droit de se plaindre ;

The *offended person* has a right to complain.

* I do not consider the participle as a separate part of speech, but as a part of the verb

Par-

Participles taken in that sense, are sometimes rendered in English, as in this instance, by a noun and a participle.

S. Prepositions.

19.

Bâtir sur le devant (a metaphorical expression), to grow bulky.

S. Abstract substantives, viz. those which express substantively the qualities of persons or things, are sometimes used instead of the names of persons or things: we say,

Protéger l'impiété, to protect impiety; viz. the impious.

Encenser la médiocrité, to overpraise mediocrity; viz. people of moderate understanding.

The Abbé Sabatier says of young Crébillon;

Il se fut garanti du blâme d'avoir préféré le coupable plaisir d'amuser le libertinage & la frivolité.

He would not have incurred the censure of having preferred the guilty gratification of amusing libertinism and frivolity; viz. libertines, and frivolous people.

N. B. Those substantives require the article in French.

Of the Use of the ARTICLE.

THE Article is prefixed to substantives expressing species, individuals, or parts of a species, though not considered as individuals of that species:

L'homme est né, or *les hommes sont nés pour la société*;

Man was born, or men were born, for society (that is, all men).

L'homme dont je parle n'est pas sociable;

The man of whom I speak is not sociable (i. e. the individual of whom I speak).

Du pain me suffit, bread suffices me; (some bread, implying a part of the species of food in the world called bread, and not any individual loaf):

where we observe the article blended with the preposition *de*, to imply this partitive sense.

In general, the article is used before all substantives used as denominatives, i. e. significant of their own substantial character; therefore nouns of substances, arts, sciences, metals, virtues and vices, nouns of countries, kingdoms, and provinces, mountains, rivers, and winds, and such like, having no article in English, require it before them in French. In general, those substantives

substantives which already have the article in English, require it in French.

L'or ne sauroit faire le bonheur de l'homme ;

Gold cannot make the happiness of man.

La vertu seule peut le rendre heureux ; & il n'y a que le vice qui puisse le rendre malheureux :

Virtue alone can render him happy ; and nothing but vice can make him miserable.

L'Italie est le plus beau pays de l'Europe ;

Italy is the finest country in Europe ; &c.

8. The function of the article is the same in French as in English ; that is to say, it limits the sense in which the substantive is taken. If the use of the article sometimes appears in French so contrary to its nature, it is because the substantive, which the article modifies, is implied.

When I say, *La Flandre est au nord de la France*, Flanders is to the north of France ; I mean that *the province of Flanders* is to the north of *the kingdom of France*.

Province and *royaume* are modified by the article, not *Flandre* and *France*.

It is easy to supply the word understood every time the use of the article appears unnecessary in French. I am perhaps mistaken in my observation ; but it is the only reason I can give, to account for the apparent irregularity of the use of the article in French.

NOTE.

2. From the names of *countries, kingdoms, provinces*, except those which take their names from their capital cities, besides some republics :

<i>Alger,</i>	Algiers	<i>Gènes,</i>	Genoa	<i>Naples,</i>	Naples
<i>Avignon,</i>	Avignon	<i>Genève,</i>	Geneva	<i>Orange,</i>	Orange
<i>Babylone,</i>	Babylon	<i>Florence,</i>	Florence	<i>Rome,</i>	Rome
<i>Candie,</i>	Candia	<i>Luques,</i>	Lucca	<i>Roannez,</i>	Roannez
<i>Cordoue,</i>	Cordua	<i>Léon,</i>	Leon	<i>Séville,</i>	Seville
<i>Corse,</i>	Corfica	<i>Malte,</i>	Malta	<i>Tolède,</i>	Toledo
<i>Comminges,</i>	Comminges	<i>Maroc,</i>	Morocco	<i>Tunis,</i>	Tunis
<i>Cornouailles,</i>	Cornwall	<i>Murcie,</i>	Murcia	<i>Tripoli,</i>	Tripoli
<i>Cypre,</i>	Cyprus	<i>Madagascar,</i>	Madagascar	<i>Valence,</i>	Valencia
<i>Cartage,</i>	Carthage	<i>Monaco,</i>	Monaco	<i>Venise,</i>	Venice
<i>Granade,</i>	Granada				

3. Except some few, these proper names are mostly used with one of these general nouns before them ; *république, principauté, état, pays, île :*

L'île de Corse, the island of Corsica ;

La principauté d'Orange, the principality of Orange.

La république de Gènes, the republic of Genoa.

4. But when the words attending the names of countries and kingdoms imply coming from or going out, then the names of those countries take the preposition *de*, without the article :

Venir

Venir de France, to come from France ;
Sortir d'Angleterre, to go out of England.

In the same manner, with words denoting *the country one lives in, and whither one is going to or coming from*, we use the preposition *en*, before the names of such countries, without the article :

Demeurer en France, to live in France ;
Aller en Italie, to go into Italy ;
Venir ou passer en Angleterre, to come or pass into England.

And when the name of a kingdom or province expresses the country of the noun preceding it, we use the preposition *de* without the article : as,

Roi, ou royaume d'Angleterre ; king, or kingdom of England ;
Gouverneur d'Irlande, lieutenant of Ireland ;
Vin de Bourgogne, Burgundy wine ;
L'Electeur de Bavière, the Elector of Bavaria ;
Une mode de France, a French fashion ; &c.

But the following names of countries always keep the article, viz.

<i>l'Inde,</i>	India	<i>l'Acadie,</i>	Acadia
<i>l'Indostan,</i>	Indostan	<i>la Cayenne,</i>	Cayenne
<i>le Malabar,</i>	Malabar	<i>la Caroline,</i>	Carolina
<i>les Indes,</i>	Indies	<i>la Barbade,</i>	Barbadoes
<i>la Chine,</i>	China	<i>la Jamaïque</i>	Jamaica
<i>la Nigritie,</i>	Nigritia	<i>le Maryland,</i>	Maryland
<i>la Guinée</i>	Guinea	<i>la Pensilvanie,</i>	Pensylvania
<i>la Malaguetta,</i>	Malaguetta	<i>la Virginie,</i>	Virginia
<i>le Congo,</i>	Congo	<i>la Martinique,</i>	Martinico
<i>la Cochinchine,</i>	Cochin-China	<i>la Guadeloupe,</i>	Guadeloupe
<i>le Pégu,</i>	Pegu	<i>la Havane,</i>	Havannah
<i>le Tonquin</i>	Tonquin	<i>le Pont Euxin,</i>	the Black Sea
<i>le Thibet</i>	Thibet	<i>le Péloponnèse,</i>	Peloponnesus
<i>le Japon,</i>	Japan	<i>les Philippines,</i>	the Philippine Islands
<i>l'Abyssinie,</i>	Abyssinia	<i>l'Isle Bourbon,</i>	the Isle of Bourbon
<i>le Mogol,</i>	the Mogal's C.	<i>les Isles Moluques,</i>	the Molucca Islands
<i>le Monomotapa,</i>	Monomotapa	<i>les Antilles,</i>	Antilles
<i>le Monoémugi,</i>	Monomugi	<i>le Caire,</i>	Cairo
<i>la Cafrérie,</i>	Coasts of the Capes	<i>le Levant,</i>	the Levant
<i>le Zanguebar,</i>	Zanguebar	<i>la Mecque,</i>	Mecca
<i>le Mexique,</i>	Mexico	<i>l'Abruzzze,</i>	Abbruzzo
<i>le Paraguay,</i>	Paraguay	<i>l'Appouille,</i>	Apulia
<i>le Chili,</i>	Chili	<i>le Mantouan,</i>	Mantuan Dutchy
<i>le Pérou,</i>	Peru	<i>le Milanois,</i>	the Milanese
<i>le Brésil,</i>	Brasil	<i>le Parmésan,</i>	the Parmesan
<i>le Canada,</i>	Canada	<i>le Spitzberg,</i>	Spitzberg
<i>la Louisiane,</i>	Louisiana	<i>le Groenland,</i>	Greenland
<i>le Mississipi,</i>	Mississipi		

As also these names of countries and cities :

<i>* l'Anjou,</i>	<i>le Castelet,</i>	<i>la Charité,</i>	<i>le Mans,</i>
<i>* l'Artois,</i>	<i>le Cateau Cambresis,</i>	<i>le Havre de Grace,</i>	<i>le Plessis, le Puy,</i>
<i>* le Maine,</i>	<i>le Corogne,</i>	<i>la Flèche,</i>	<i>le Quefnoy,</i>
<i>* la Marche,</i>	<i>la Fère,</i>	<i>la Guerche,</i>	<i>la Roebelle,</i>
<i>* le Perche,</i>	<i>la Ferté,</i>	<i>la Hogue,</i>	<i>la Haye, the Hague.</i>
<i>* la Capelle,</i>			

* These five are names of counties, and the others names of cities, in France ; except *la Haye* : therefore, instead of the prepositions *de* and *en*, which we use as a conjunction

tion with the names of other countries in the cases above-mentioned, when we speak of these, we use the preposition *de* or *à*, with the article :

Voyager aux Indes, to travel to the Indies ;

Aller au Japon, to go to Japan ;

Demeurer à la Chine, to live in China ;

Partir du Mexique, to set out from Mexico ;

Revenir de l'Anjou, to return from Anjou.

We also say, *Aller dans l'Anjou, dans le Perche*, to go into Anjou ;

Le Duc d'Anjou, the Duke of Anjou ;

Le Duc du Maine, the Duke of Maine ;

Empire & Empereur de la Chine, Emperor et Empire of China ;

Porcelaines de la Chine, China ware ;

Marchandises du Japon, Japan goods.

9. * When the name of a river is preceded by the word *rivière*, it takes the preposition *de*, if it be in the feminine gender ; and
10. the article besides, if it be in the masculine :

La rivière de Seine, de Loire, &c.

The river Seine, Loire, &c.

La rivière du Rhône, Po, &c.

The river Rhone, Po, &c.

NOTE.

It is to be observed, 1. That *some* rivers cannot be construed with *rivière* before them, whereas *all* take the article. We say, indiscriminately, *le Rbin, le Rhône, la Seine, la Tamise* ; but we cannot equally say, *la rivière du Rbin*, and *la rivière de la Tamise* ; because common use is against us, which, in living languages, has great weight :

—2. That the word *fleuve* (synonymous with *rivière*) can seldom be put before the name of a river :—3. That the French properly call *fleuve*, a river which carries its waters into the sea ; and *rivière*, a river which discharges itself into another ; and though *rivière* is sometimes used for *fleuve*, yet *fleuve* cannot be properly used for *rivière*.

11. When a mountain's or hill's name is preceded by the word *mont*, it has neither article nor preposition :

Le mont Vésuve, Vesuvius ;

Le mont Appennin, the Appenine ;

Les monts Pyrénées, the Pyrenean mountains.

S. Observe, in the last instance, the substantive comes first in French.

12. After the word *montagne*, the preposition *de* is used (which is contracted with the article, when the name of the hill has it) :

La montagne de Sion, mount Sion ;

La montagne de Potosi, mount Potosi ;

La montagne du Calvaire, the mount of Calvary ;

La montagne de Pic de Teyde, the Pico.

Otherwise they all take the article : *Le Vésuve, l'Appennin, les Pyrénées, le Calvaire, le Pic, &c.*

NOTES.

NOTES.

Some nouns of hills and mountains will always be preceded by *mont* or *montagne* :—*La montagne de Poissy, la montagne de Sion, ou le mont Sion*, and some others, can never be construed with these words : *les Alpes, les Cordellieres*. We neither say, *les montagnes des Alpes*, nor *les monts Alpes*, as we say *les monts Pyrénées* ; although we denote *les Alpes* by *les monts* absolutely in this phrase,—

Un bel esprit de delà les monts, or, *Un bel esprit ultramontain* ;

An ultramontane genius :

by which we are to understand that a Frenchman speaks in ridicule of the Italians, who, with respect to France, are *au-delà les monts*, or *les Alpes*.

The noun of the *measure, weight, and number* of the thing 13.
which is sold, requires the article :

Le blé se vend une écu le boisseau ;

Wheat is sold for a crown a bushel.

Le beurre vaut six sous la livre ;

Butter costs six pence a pound.

Les œufs se vendent quatre sous la douzaine,

Eggs cost a groat a dozen.

The twenty - one following prepositions will always have 14.
the article after them before the next noun :

<i>avant</i> ,	before	<i>envers</i> ,	towards	<i>selon</i> ,	according to
<i>après</i> ,	after	<i>excepté</i> ,	except	<i>sous</i> ,	under
<i>chez</i> ,	at, to	<i>hors</i> ,	out	<i>suivant</i> ,	according
<i>dans</i> ,	in	<i>hormis</i> ,	except	<i>to</i>	
<i>depuis</i> ,	since, from	<i>nonobstant</i> ,	notwith-	<i>sur</i> ,	upon
<i>devant</i> ,	before	<i>standing</i>		<i>touchant</i> ,	concerning
<i>derrière</i> ,	behind	<i>parmi</i> ,	among	<i>vers</i> ,	towards,
<i>durant</i> ,	during	<i>pendant</i> ,	for, during		

Chez le prince, at the prince's ; *dans la chambre*, in the room ;
sous la table, under the table ; &c.

En has seldom the article before the next noun ;

En ville, in town ; *en campagne*, in the country.

The use of the article after the ten following, depends on 16.
the character of the noun : when it implies a *denomination* or
appellation (i. e. has the true force of a substantive), it takes the
article ; but when, on the contrary, it implies a *modification* or 16.
qualification (i. e. forms, with the preposition, a kind of com-
pound quality, with respect to its meaning), it is then used
without an article.

<i>à,</i>	at, to	<i>entre,</i>	between	<i>malgré,</i>	in spite of
<i>de,</i>	of, from	<i>par,</i>	by	<i>outré,</i>	besides
<i>avec,</i>	with	<i>pour,</i>	for	<i>sans,</i>	without.
<i>contre,</i>	against				

Examples will explain the apparent difficulty of this rule :

Sans les passions, où seroient la vertu & le vice ?

Without the passions, where would virtue and vice be ?

Vivre sans passions, c'est vivre sans plaisirs ;

To live without passions, is to live without pleasure.

Passions, *vertu*, and *vice*, in the first sentence, are used as denominatives, or names of the things which are the subject of our speech ; they are the emphatical words of the sentence ; but *passions* and *plaisirs* are not used in the second as denominatives ; for they are not the things of which something is affirmed : *vivre*, to live, is the thing spoken of ; they are only used as modifying words, qualifying and specifying that *living*.

17. The article is used before all nouns of *dignities*, *qualities*,
18. *offices*, and *professions*, even before *terms of abuse*, provided they come after such names as *Monsieur*, *Monsieur*, *Madame*, *Mademoiselle* :

Monsieur le Dauphin, the Dauphin ;

Madame la Duchesse, the Duchess ;

M. le Docteur, Doctor ;

Monsieur l' Archevêque, my Lord Archbishop ;

Monsieur le Paresseux, Mr. Lazybones ;

Madame la Coureuse, Mrs. Gadabout ;

Mademoiselle la Libertine, Miss Romp, &c.

Except with nouns of trades and professions of the mechanical kind, which never take *Monsieur* or *Madame* before them. Thus we cannot say, *M. le Marchand*, *M. le Cordonnier*, *M. le Tailleur*, &c.

NOTE.

19. The article prefixed to nouns singular, sometimes expresses the vocative :
Ecoutez, la belle fille ! harkye, pretty girl ! Parlez, la femme ! speak, woman !
20. In the plural, however, the usage of good authors is to put the vocative noun without the article :
" *Ecoutez, Dieux du Ciel !*" VERTOT. Listen, Gods of Heaven !
" *Peuples ! chez qui les rois ordonnent aujourd'hui tout ce qu'ils veulent, relisez votre histoire.*" RAYNAL.
Nations ! with whom kings do now what they please, read your history.

We say also vocatively :

Ecourez, bon homme ! Harkye, my friend !

And with an adjective without a noun :

Etudiez, paresseux ! Study, you idle fellow !

21.

21.a

Though, in instances like the following, the article seems necessary on account of the regimen joined to the vocative noun :

Venez ici, la femme aux herbes ! Come hither, herb woman !

S. N. B. The substantive which is taken adjectively in English, comes last in French, preceded by the preposition *à*, and the article *le*, contracted into *aux*. The herb-woman is supposed to sell different sorts of herbs, and for that reason the French use the plural. The regimen, or the preposition *à*, and its complement *les herbes*, have the same qualifying force in French, as the substantive herb, taken adjectively, has in English.

The interjection *O !* is only used in exclamations :

O femme ! que ta vertu est grande ! O woman ! how great is thy virtue !

23.

S. When the English want to point out a single thing, without, however, particularising it, they make use of their indefinite article *a* ; and in that case the French use the article *le*.

Dans la prospérité on peut difficilement reconnoître l'amî,

It is difficult to know *a* friend in prosperity,

S. The same rule must be observed, when the substantive taken in that sense has an adjective.

L'air spirituel est dans les hommes, ce que la régularité des traits est dans les femmes.

A sprightly mien is in men, what regularity of features is in women.

The article is used in certain idiomatical sentences of exclamation and admiration, which begin with a noun and adjective, the particle *que* following, and the same noun repeated, without a verb :

L'illustre maison que la maison de Bourbon !

How illustrious the house of Bourbon is !

Literally, The illustrious house ; namely, the house of Bourbon,

S. There are here, first, an inversion ; secondly, a repetition ; and thirdly, an ellipsis. The common construction of this sentence would be thus :

Que la maison de Bourbon est illustre ! as we say,

Que Londres est grand ! How large London is !

First, the inversion of the attribute affirmed of the subject (*illustre*). This transposition, though contrary to the common construction of the French language, is very regular with

respect to the order of the ideas. That which (in this sentence) first strikes the mind, and is, of course, the emphatical word, is the quality illustrious; and it is very natural that we should be in haste to express the object which affects us most.

Secondly, The repetition of the principal part of the subject (*maison*). Were we only to say, *Pillustre*, we should not be understood. There is no elegance without clearness; then *maison* is not here a redundancy.

Thirdly, The ellipsis of the declarative term, *viz.* the verb (*est*). The ellipsis of this member of the sentence is so clear, that it enabled the French to adhere to their favourite construction, which is, never to terminate a sentence with such a harsh sounding monosyllable as *est*.

26. We have seen, that when the noun is used to denote only part of the substance (or thing expressed by the noun), that limited sense is signified by the particle *de* before the article, if the noun be feminine; or contracted with it, if it be masculine, or in the plural number: (*de la, de^l, du, des*). Nouns taken in that sense, imply the word *some* in English, either expressed or understood:

Donnez-moi *du pain, de la viande, de l'argent, des habits*;

Give me *some* bread, *some* meat, *some* money, *some* clothes.

Cette liqueur ressemble à du vin; that liquor is like wine.

J'ai affaire à des gens très-honnêtes;

I have to do with very honest people.

27. But when the noun is preceded by an adjective, it loses its article, retaining only *de*:

Donnez-moi de bon pain, de bonne viande, de bons habits;

Give me good bread, good meat, good clothes.

J'ai affaire à de très-honnêtes gens;

I have to do with very honest people.

S. Adjectives, by qualifying substantives, limit the sense in which they are taken; and it is probable that, when they come before, their limiting power is still greater: the use of the article does not then seem so necessary.

The adverb *très* is a confirmation of the above remark.

NOTE.

There is a material difference in the two following expressions:

On l'a dépouillé de belles charges qu'il possédait; and, *On l'a dépouillé des belles charges qu'il possédait*:—The first implies that he has been deprived of *certain* of the fine posts which he held; the second, that he has been deprived of *all* the fine posts which he held.

28. S. Could we not say, that in the last instance the adjective and the substantive form an undivided sense, as in the following example; in which the article is retained, though the adjective comes first?

Cet homme a de l'esprit, des belles-lettres, &c. viz. de la littérature;
That man has wit, literature, &c.

In some cases it may be indifferent to use either of the two particles *du* or *un*:

J'entends du bruit là-haut, or, un bruit là-haut;
I hear some, or a noise above.

Generally speaking, however, when the noun is used without an adjective, it requires *du*; but with an adjective, *un*: and when a relative sentence follows, I think *un* should be prefixed to the noun in preference to *du*.

Il y a du danger à aller sur mer;
There is danger in going to sea.

J'entends un bruit épouvantable, I hear a dreadful noise.

J'entends un bruit qui m'étourdit;
I hear a noise which stuns me.

The particle *un*, (which is, however no more an article than *quelque* or *tout*) is also used in speaking of things which comprehend the idea of unity; that is, which are not detached parts of a whole, but individuals of a species; and which can be told *one by one*, or *in opposition to two or more*:

J'ai un pain; I have a loaf of bread.

Je ne veux qu'une pomme; I will have only one apple.

* The Pronouns *moi, toi, soi, ce, celui, qui, quel* (in the sense of what), *mon, ton, son, &c.* take no article; but only the preposition *de, à, &c.*

De qui parlez-vous? Of whom are you speaking?

De quel homme parlez-vous? Of what man are you speaking?

De lui, of him; *d'elle,* of her; *d'eux,* of them.

* But the following pronouns take the article *mon, mine, tien, thine; sien, his; même, the same; quel, in the sense of which; nôtre, in the sense of ours; vôtre, in that of yours; leur, in that of theirs; l'un l'autre, one another; l'un & l'autre, both; l'un ou l'autre, either; ni l'un ni l'autre, neither; and l'autre, the other.*

No article is used with proper names of persons, places, and planets (except *la terre, le soleil, la lune*); and none before those titles of honour which use has prefixed to proper names.

Monsieur, Sir. Maître, Master.

Madame, Madam. Messire, } a particular title of some per-
Mademoiselle, Miss. Saint, } sons of distinction, and
Monsieur, my Lord. Sainte, } saints.

But

38. But when these nouns are used without the pronoun of which they are composed, they take the article; as, *le Sieur*,
38. *la Demoiselle*, *la Dame*, &c. although we say, *les Messieurs* qui
sont ici.

NOTE.

39. The rule of proper names has no force with respect to those names which are compounded of an article; and therefore are evidently out of the question; such as, *Du Pré*, *G. de Du Pré*, *D. à Du Pré*; *De Tourville*, *G. de De Tourville*, *D. à De Tourville*; *Le Maître*, *G. de Le Maître*, *D. à Le Maître*; *La Place*, *G. de La Place*, *D. à La Place*: where we see that the preposition and article are not blended as in common genitives; *de Le Maître*, not *du Maître*.

40. There are, besides, other names which custom has distinguished by the article, which are not subject to this rule: such as, *le Tasse*, *G. du Tasse*, *D. ou Tasse*; *l'Arioste*, *G. de l'Arioste*, *D. à l'Arioste*; *le Poussin*, *l'Arétin*, *le Bourdon*, *le Bruyle*, *le Carache*, *le Corrège*, *le Guide*, *le Guerchin*, *le Mutien*, *le Tintoret*, *l'Albane*, *le Bernadin*, *le Dominiquain*, *l'Espagnolet*, *le Pinturricchio*.

41. When we speak in a contemptuous manner of a woman, we use also the article, besides the particle of the proper name:

C'est un conte de la Le Mayre; It is a story of Mrs. *Le Mayre*.

Je ne veux plus voir la Du Pré; I will see Dupré's wife no more.

This additional article is useful in order to ascertain the sex of such females as we do not think worthy of the more honourable distinction of *Madame* or *Mademoiselle*; and, besides, as it is prefixed to women supposed to be universally known, such as *actresses*, *dancers*, &c. we may explain this use of it, by supposing the expression elliptical for—*La Du Pré que tout le monde connoît*, the Mrs. Dupré that every body knows; or something of the same nature.

42. The preposition *de* is sometimes left out before the word *Saint*, and before names of places, for abbreviation:

L'église Saint Paul, St. Paul's church.

Le cimetière Saint Jean, St. John's church-yard.

La foire Saint Laurent, St. Laurence's fair.

La porte Saint Dennis, St. Dennis's gate.

Le fauxbourg Saint Germain, the suburbs of St. Germain.

Le quai Pelletier, Pelletier's wharf.

Le Cours la Reine, and *le Bourg la Reine*, proper names of places.

43. When proper names are used in a determined emphatical sense; that is, when they are applied to objects, in order to mark them in a particular manner, or when they are qualified by an adjective, they take the article:

Le Dieu des Chrétiens, the God of the Christians.

Le bon Dieu ne sauroit être cruel;

The merciful God cannot be cruel.

L'Archimède de l'Angleterre, the Archimedes of England;

L'Amphitryon de Molière, the Amphitryon of Molière;

* *Les Cicérons & les Démosthènes*,

The Ciceros and the Demosthenes'.

NOTE.

NOTE.

* It is frequently the usage of excellent authors, in similar cases, to put the article in the plural, but to leave the name in the singular, as undeclinable :

" *Ce que nos pères ont admiré dans les Du Guesclin, les Bayard, & les Dunois.* (Oeuvres de M. THOMAS, T. ii. chap. 31).

That which our ancestors have admired in the Du Guesclins, the Bayards, and the Dunois.

When an adjective is used substantively, or its noun is understood, it requires the article ; as speaking of colours :

Le verd blesse moins la vue que le rouge ;

Green hurts the sight less than red.

Après qu'on eut bu tout le vin rouge, on donna sur le blanc ;

After they had drunk all the red wine, they began to drink the white.

When a noun has two adjectives joined together by a conjunction, if the adjectives are of cognate or synonymous signification, the article is put only before the first :

La belle & savante harangue qu'il a faite ;

The fine and learned speech which he made.

But if the adjectives are of various or contrary signification, the article must be repeated before them both :

Le savant & le pieux personnage ;

The learned and pious man.

Les belles & les laides femmes ont également envie de plaire ;

Both handsome and ugly women are equally desirous of pleasing.

Articles are repeated, in French, before as many nouns (requiring naturally the article) as there are in the sentence :

L'or, l'argent, la santé, les honneurs, & les plaisirs, ne sauroient rendre l'homme heureux, sans la sagesse & la vertu.

Gold, silver, health, honours, and pleasures, cannot make a man happy, without wisdom and virtue.

NOTE.

We may sometimes indifferently use the articles *le* or *du*, *les* or *des*, or no article at all, before nouns whose signification we do not wish to modify, define, or restrain, particularly ; but mean merely to express, generally, the ideas conveyed by them : thus we say,

or,	les gens d'esprit	} font toujours plaisir ;
or even,	des gens d'esprit	
	gens d'esprit	

Ingenious people are agreeable at all times :

because the subject only requires the idea of *ingenious people* to be simply implied.

Particular Instances where the GENITIVE CASE is used without the ARTICLE.

50. THE preposition *de* only, without the article, is used, 1st, before nouns following one of these, *sorte, espèce, genre*, and any other noun of which they express the kind, character, cause, matter, quality, nature, and country; which tribe of nouns is usually expressed in English by an adjective, or by the noun itself, used adjectively, and making, together with the other noun, as it were, but a compound word: as,

Un mal de tête, a head-ach;

Une sorte de fruit, a kind of fruit;

Une étoffe de soie, a silk stuff;

Une montre d'or, a gold watch;

De la laine d'Espagne, Spanish wool;

Une conduite de fou, a foolish conduct;

Un corps de nation, a national body;

Un corps d'armée, an army.

NOTE.

51. But where the French have an adjective which has the same force as the noun in the genitive, it may be used, like the English adjective, in the place of such genitive. Those adjectives in general come after the substantives in French:

Une conduite folle; instead of, *Une conduite de fou*: a foolish conduct.

52. They often, however, are defective in this particular, and then are obliged to use the noun, as above: thence we must render these (with other English adjectives which use will point out) by means of the cognate noun:

My devilish wife, *ma diablelle de femme*;

My good-for-nothing son and his worthless mother,

Mon vaurien de fils & sa coquine de mère;

The English phrase, *he is a devil of a man*, is, turned into French, *C'est un diable d'homme*. In the last instance the article indefinite *a* is not expressed in French, before *homme*.

53. 2dly. The preposition *de* only, without the article, is used before the word of the measure of magnitude or increase:

Il croit tous les jours d'un pouce;

He grows an inch every day; i. e. he increases every day by an inch.

NOTE.

D'un pouce has, in the above instance, rather the force of an ablative than a genitive.

54. 3dly. The preposition *de* is used in the same manner, after pronouns indeterminate, *Personne, quelqu'un*, and *quoi, ce qui*,
55. *ce que, tout ce qui, je ne sçais quoi*, and the impersonal *il y a*:

Il n'y a personne de blessé, there is no body wounded.

Il en avoit-il quelqu'un d'ivre? Was any of them drunk?

Il y a dans son style je ne fais quoi de dur,

There is something unaccountably harsh in his style.

Ce que je remarque de drôle, what I observe comical.

4thly. We also use the preposition *de* after nouns of number, 56.
followed by a participle :

Il y a trente vaisseaux d'achevés,

There are thirty vessels finished.

"C'étoit un grand pas de fait." RAYNAL, Hist. Phil. & Polit. This was *one* great point gained.

S. Observe to place this preposition immediately before the participle.

NOTE.

The preposition *de* may sometimes be omitted, when the noun is expressed before the participle, as in the above example, *trente vaisseaux achevés*; but it is more elegant to use it. When, however, the pronoun *en* is inserted as the substitute of the noun, 57. it can by no means be left out (and for this evident reason, that as *en* is genitive, its regimen should be so in like manner) :

Il y en a trente d'achevés, there are thirty of them finished.

Il y en eut cinquante de tués, & cent de blessés;

There were fifty of them killed, and a hundred wounded.

S. In observing the translation of *en*, you will more easily perceive the genitive form. The pronoun *en* is to be placed immediately before the verb.

5thly. The preposition *de*, without the article, is used after 58. these words of quantity :

abondance, *abondance de vivres*, plenty of victuals.

assez, *assez de provisions*, provisions enough.

beaucoup, *beaucoup d'esprit*, much wit.

combien, *combien de vaisseaux?* how many ships?

disette, *disette de savans*, scarcity of learned men.

guères, *guères d'argent*, very little money.

peu, *peu de gens croient*, few people think.

plus, *plus d'effets, &c.* } more deeds, and

moins, *moins de paroles,* } fewer words.

davantage, *Je n'en ai pas davantage,* I have no more of it.

quantité, *quantité de fruit*, a great deal of fruit.

grand nombre, *grand nombre de soldats*, a vast number of soldiers.

- tant, *tant d'écrivains le disent*, so many writers say so.
 autant *autant de femmes que d'hommes*, as many women
 as men.
 trop, *trop de peine*, too much trouble.
 59. As likewise after
 point, *point de sens commun*, no common sense.

NOTE.

60. * Chambaud mentions no other particle but *point*, which has this regimen;
 61. although instances frequently occur, in the best authors, of its being used with *pas*
 and *ne* :

Il n'y a pas d'homme, RAYNAL; there is not a man.

Il ne peut y avoir d'injustice plus grande que celle-là,

There cannot be a greater injustice than that.

Where *pouvoir* taking but one negative, the *ne* has equal force with *ne* and *pas* in other sentences, which admit of two negatives :

Compagnies où l'on n'adjudge de l'esprit qu'à ceux,

Companies in which none are allowed to have wit but those;

In which one negative is used, because of the following *que*. Observe to place the particle *ne* next to the nominative; and in those sentences where *pas* is required, place that second member of the negative between the compound and the participle if the tense be compounded, and immediately after the verb if the tense be simple.

62. The same regimen is used with *sans* (without), which (as will be hereafter particularly shown) has the force of a negative included in its signification :

Sans faire d'hostilité, without being hostile;

which amounts to the same as, *Et ne firent point d'hostilité*.

62. a * The preposition *sans* (without) governs the gerund in English, but in French it requires the verb in the present tense of the infinitive mood.

63. *Bien* is also used for *beaucoup*, but with this difference, that it requires the article after the preposition *de*.

<i>bien de la peine,</i>	} for {	<i>beaucoup de peine,</i>	much trouble.
<i>bien du temps,</i>		<i>beaucoup de temps,</i>	much time.
<i>bien de l'argent,</i>		<i>beaucoup d'argent,</i>	much money.

64. Observe, with respect to *assez*, that, in French, it is never put after the noun, as in English, but always before :

Assez de temps, time enough.

jamais, *il n'a jamais d'argent*, he never has any money.
que, *que de peines & de soins!* what care and trouble!
quoi, *quoi de plus juste!* what can be more just!
rien, *rien de remarquable*, nothing extraordinary.
quelque chose, *quelque chose de bon*, something good.

65. As also after certain adjectives governing a genitive :
Digne de louange, worthy of praise;

Indigne

Indigne d'estime, unworthy of esteem;
Plein de vin, full of wine.

NOTE.

Observe however, that if the regimen of these words, i. e. the noun following them, does not complete the sense, but is determined by what follows, it requires the article. Though we say, *Donnez-moi un peu de vin*, give me a little wine; we say, *Donnez-moi un peu du vin qui est dans cette bouteille*, Give me a little of the wine which is in that bottle: and so of the adjectives before mentioned.

Les ouvrages de Cicéron sont pleins des idées les plus saines;
 The works of Cicero are full of the soundest ideas.

Instances where NOUNS are used without ARTICLE, PREPOSITION, or the Particle UN, a.

1st. THE article, or the particle *un, a*, is omitted before nouns at the title of a work, and in the middle of a sentence, where it characterises, in a particular manner, the person or thing spoken of :

Discours sur, &c. a discourse upon;

Préface, the preface;

Table des matières, the contents;

Le Comte de Clermont, prince du sang, mourut, &c.

The Count of Clermont, a prince of the blood, died.

Le St. George, vaisseau de guerre de 90 pièces de canon;

The St. George, a ninety-gun ship.

2^{dly}. When the noun comes after a pronoun exclamative or interrogative, neither the article, nor the particle *un, a*, are used; as also in sentences of exclamation :

Quel génie ! What a genius !

Quelle beauté ! What a beauty !

Quelle dame avez-vous vue ? What lady did you see ?

Les plus belles fleurs sont de bien peu de durée : la moindre pluie les ternit, le vent les fane, le soleil les brûle ; sans parler d'une infinité d'insectes qui les gâtent & les incommode : naturelle & véritable image de la beauté des dames !

The most beautiful flowers are of the shortest duration : they are soiled by the rain, faded by the wind, and scorched by the sun; without mentioning innumerable insects which prey on them : a natural and just representation of female beauty !

3^{dly}.

71. 3dly. Nouns of number do not require the article, or the particle *un*, whether preceding or following the substantive (which nouns of number, when used as surnames to kings, &c. always come last, and are of the *cardinal*, not the *ordinal*, tribe, as in English; except the number specified be the first or second—George *premier*, George the first; Charles *second*, Charles the second).

Mille *cavaliers* contre cent *fantassins*, la partie n'est pas égale;

A thousand cavalry against a hundred infantry, the match is not equal.

Louis *quinze*, Lewis the *fifteenth*;

Henri *quatre*, Henry the *fourth*.

NOTE.

72. But if the substantive has a relation to something else besides the number, the article is necessary:

Les cent *fantassins* qui se sont défendus contre les mille *cavaliers* qu'on avoit envoyés contre eux, &c.

The hundred infantry who defended themselves against the thousand cavalry that were sent against them.

73. 4thly. After the verb *être*, to be, not having *ce* for its subject (*c'est*), as likewise after *devenir*, *être estimé*, *être pris pour*, *passer pour*; because the substantive following such verbs, serves then only to *qualify* something spoken of; and instead of being the *principal character* or *subject* of the sentence, is rather an *attribute affirmed of the substantive*, or the *predicate* of the sentence; and in general where substantives perform this office, the article, or the particle *un*, a, is not prefixed to them. *

Mes paroles sont esprit & vie, my words are spirit and life;

Les rois sont hommes, kings are men, i. e. human.

Elle est femme, she is a woman; (or *c'est une femme*, where *femme* is a substantive in its proper character, defining *ce*, which has merely the force of it).

Il passe pour matelot, he passes for a sailor;

Il deviendra docteur avec le temps,

He will become a doctor in time.

Joyeuse occupa aussi le public: après s'être fait capucin, de courtisan & de guerrier, & ensuite de capucin être redevenu guerrier & courtisan des plus répandus dans le monde, il reprit le froc; & cette fois il le garda jusqu'à la mort: le mariage de sa fille, unique héritière de la maison de Joyeuse, avec M. le Duc de Montpensier,

* Just as in Greek, the predicate of the sentence is distinguished from the subject, by not having the article—*ἡδονὴ ἡ εὐδαιμονία*; happiness in pleasure. See Harris's *Hesiod*, Book ii. ch. i. p. 230.

penſer, fut ſa dernière action, comme homme du monde.” (Mémoires de SULLY, Liv. x. ſur la fin.)

Joyeuſe alſo attracted the attention of the public: from being a courtier and a warrior, he became a capuchin; and, after having again been a warrior, and a courtier well known in the world, he again took the hood, and then kept it till his death. The marriage of his daughter, the only heir of the family of Joyeuſe, with the duke of Montpenſier, was his laſt tranſaction as a man of the world.

“*Ce fut le troiſième, de père en fils, qui fut élevé à cette dignité.*” (VERTOT, Rom. Rév.)

He was the third of his family who, in a lineal ſucceſſion, roſe to that dignity.

Where *de père en fils* ſeems a kind of compound quality, expreſſing the idea of a lineal ſucceſſion, without having any reference to father and ſon, otherwiſe than as explanatory of ſuch idea. Although it is to be remembered, that wherever *de* and *en* govern two nouns immediately connected, as *père* and *fils*, they never take the article: 74.

Il court *de rue en rue*, &c. He runs from ſtreet to ſtreet.

NOTE.

But where the ſubſtantive, coming after *être* or any of the verbs before mentioned, is attended by an adjective, or any other dependance, ſo as that its force is reſtrained and defined thereby, the particle *un* muſt precede it: 75.

Dieu eſt eſprit; God is a ſpirit.

Dieu eſt un eſprit infini; God is an infinite ſpirit.

Dieu eſt un être qui a toutes les perfections poſſibles;

God is a being who has all poſſible perfection.

6thly. The article and prepoſition are likewiſe omitted, where nouns are uſed in a general, vague, undetermined, unſpecified ſenſe; as alſo in ſentences pathetically expreſſed: 76.

Le ſage n'a ni amour ni haine;

A wiſe man has neither love nor hatred.

Intérêt, honneur, conſcience, ſont ſacrifiés!

Interest, honour, conſcience, are ſacrificed!

(Or, as ſometimes occurs in elegant authors),

Intérêt, honneur, conſcience, tout eſt ſacrifié;

Interest, honour, conſcience, every thing is ſacrificed.

6thly. And where too what is ſaid conveys the force of a maxim, or is proverbially ſpoken: 77.

“Désir de jouir, liberté de jouir, il n’y a que ces deux ressorts d’activité, que ces deux principes de sociabilité parmi les hommes.” (RAYNAL, Hist. Philosoph. & Politique.)

There are but two springs of activity, two principles of sociableness among men, which are, a desire of enjoyment, and a liberty to enjoy.

Maxime générale : *nourrir ses enfans, c’est une obligation du droit naturel : leur donner la succession, est une obligation du droit civil & politique.* (MONTESQUIEU, Esprit des Loix.)

A general maxim : to nourish one’s children is a natural duty ; to leave them an inheritance is a civil and political obligation.

Mieux vaut engin que force. (Prov.)

Policy goes beyond strength.

78. S. Observe, in French, to put the verbs which follow the substantives *désir* and *liberté*, in the present of the infinitive mood with the preposition *de*.

79. S. When the adjective or adjectives serve only to mark the quality of the substantive, the article always takes the lead, whether the substantive comes first or not :

L’homme sincère & vrai dédaigne les petits artifices de la dissimulation.

The sincere and upright man despises the little artifices of dissimulation.

Les grandes pensées viennent du cœur.

Great thoughts proceed from the heart.

80. S. But, if the adjective is only added to distinguish the substantive (which is always a proper name) from several persons bearing the same name, the article then follows the substantive, and consequently precedes the adjective :

Alexandre le conquérant me paroît inférieur à Diogène le philosophe.

Alexander the conqueror appears to me inferior to Diogenes the philosopher.

S. Here those verbs which are followed by nouns without the article or the particle *un*, ought to be mentioned.

The verb is followed by a noun, without an article,

81. 1st. When the noun is taken in an indefinite sense ; as,
Rendez-moi service ; Do me a favour.

I do not allude to any particular favour, otherwise I should say,
Rendez-moi ce service, le service de, &c.

Do me that favour, or the favour of, &c.

2dly. To abbreviate the phrases; as,

Parler raison, viz. selon la raison;

To speak according to reason.

3dly. Or, because the two words (the verb and the noun) form but one compound word, and consequently only one meaning; as,

Faire face, to face.

4thly. Or, in short, because they are proverbial and familiar expressions; as,

Faire bonne mine à mauvais jeu;

To put a good face on a bad matter.

C H A P. II.

OF ADJECTIVES.

IT might be observed in general of French adjectives, that their natural place is *after* their substantive; but, to avoid a long train of exceptions, we shall consider them after the manner of Chambaud, as coming some *before*, and some *after*, the substantive.

1st. The following are put *before* their substantive:

Pronominal Adjectives (or Pronouns possessive), mon, ton, leur, notre, &c. 1.

Mon père, my father; leur maison, their house; &c. 2.

Pronouns indefinite: Quel, autre, chaque, plusieurs, quelque, &c. 3.

EXCEPT quelconque, quel homme, chaque femme, &c. 3.

Toute juridiction quelconque; MONTESQUIEU.

Any jurisdiction whatever.

Numbers, both cardinal, ordinal, and proportional. 4.

Deux personnes, two people; le premier homme, the first man; un double profit, a double profit.

The following sixteen common adjectives come before the substantive. 5.

<i>beau,</i>	fine	<i>gros,</i>	big	<i>petit,</i>	little
<i>bon,</i>	good	<i>jeune,</i>	young	<i>saint,</i>	holy
<i>brave,</i>	brave	<i>mauvais,</i>	bad	<i>vieux,</i>	old
<i>cher,</i>	dear	<i>méchant,</i>	wicked	<i>vrai,</i>	true
<i>chétif,</i>	sorry	<i>meilleur,</i>	better		
<i>grand,</i>	great	<i>moindre,</i>	less		

Un beau garçon, a fine boy ; un gros arbre, a large tree ; un brave officier, a brave officer.

6. *Certain exceptions to rules of adjectives placed after their substantive.*

Un blanc manger, a sort of dainty dish ;

Un rouge bord, a bumper ;

Une rouge trogne, a red face ;

Un rouge-gorge, a robin red-breast ;

Un rouge-queue, a red-tail ;

Un vert galant, a brisk spark ;

Les blancs manteaux, the name of a friary ; and

Du vis-argent, quick-silver.

8. The adjective and the substantive in these instances seem to make but one idea, and consequently are but a compound word.

2dly. The following come after their substantives :

7. *Adjectives of number, when they stand for a surname.*

George second, George the second ;

Louis quinze, Lewis the fifteenth ; &c.

8. *Verbal adjectives.*

Un homme divertissant, an entertaining man ;

La mode régnante, the reigning fashion ;

Un pays habité, an inhabited country ;

Une femme estimée, a woman esteemed.

9. *Adjectives of names of nations.*

Un mathématicien Anglois, an English mathematician ;

Un tailleur François, a French tailor ;

La musique Italienne, Italian music.

10. *Adjectives of colour.*

Un habit noir, a black coat ;

Un manteau rouge, a red cloak ;

Except certain instances above specified.

11. *Adjectives of figure.*

Une table ronde, a round table ;

Une chambre carrée, &c. a square room.

Adjective

Adjectives expressing some physical or natural quality, and others 12.
respecting taste, hearing, feeling, &c.

Un tems froid ou chaud, cold or hot weather ;

Du vin pur, pure wine ;

Un arbre fruitier, a fruit-tree ;

Du fruit amer, bitter fruit ;

Des jambes crochues, crooked legs ;

De la chair vive, quick flesh ;

La religion naturelle, natural religion ;

Un mets ragoutant, a relishing dish ;

Un bruit sourd, a hollow noise ;

Des douleurs aiguës, acute pains.

Adjectives ending in esque, ile, ule,

13.

Une figure grotesque, an odd sort of figure ;

Un discours puéril, a childish discourse ;

Une femme crédule, a credulous woman.

Adjectives ending in ic, ique, and if ; though some may also 14.
come before the noun.

Le bien public, the public good ;

Un esprit pacifique, a pacific mind ;

Un enfant vis, a lively child, &c.

3dly. Some Adjectives are put either *before or after* nouns.

When a book, chapter, article, page, &c. is quoted, the number may come either *before or after* ; with this difference 15. however, that if it comes *before*, the article is joined to it ; 16. but if *after*, neither the substantive nor adjective takes it :

Le premier livre, the first book ; livre premier, book first.

Adjectives ending in able (in general derived from verbs) 17. sometimes precede, and sometimes follow the substantive ; although the safest method is to make them follow it :

Une aimable personne, or, Une personne aimable ;

An amiable person.

When the noun is attended by two adjectives, it is sometimes indifferent to put them *before or after* it :

Un homme méchant & ingénieux ; or, Un ingénieux & méchant homme ;

An ingenious and wicked man.

But here too they had best come *after*, as custom does not authorize our saying—*un méchant & ingénieux homme.* 18.

NOTE.

19. But if the noun has *three or more* adjectives dependant on it, they must positively come after it, with the conjunction *et* before the last; which likewise must always be observed, when there are only two adjectives.

L'homme d'affaires est un animal exact, intéressé, & inexorable;

The man of business is an exact, interested, and unfeeling animal.

Cromwell étoit un de ces esprits remuans & audacieux qui semblent être nés pour changer le monde;

Cromwell was one of those restless and audacious beings who seemed to be born to change the world.

20. We say, *Un homme juste*, an upright man; *une action juste*, a just action; and, *un juste prix*, a reasonable price; *une juste défense*, a just defense; *une action basse*, a mean action; and *à bas prix*, at a low price. We likewise say, *Le bas Languedoc*, the lower Languedoc; *la basse Normandie*, the lower Normandy, &c. but, on the contrary, say *les Pays bas*, the Low Countries.

NOTE.

23. Some adjectives which, in their proper sense, are put *after*, when used in a figurative sense, are placed *before* their substantive:

<i>un fruit mûr,</i>	a ripe fruit.
<i>une mûre délibération,</i>	a mature deliberation.
<i>un homme pauvre,</i>	a poor man.
<i>un pauvre homme,</i>	a sorry fellow.
<i>un homme honnête,</i>	a civil man.
<i>un honnête homme,</i>	an honest man.
<i>un homme gentil,</i>	a genteel man.
<i>un gentil homme,</i>	a man well descended.
<i>une femme sage,</i>	a discreet, sensible woman.
<i>une sage femme,</i>	a midwife.
<i>un brave homme,</i>	a brave man.
<i>un homme brave,</i>	one who wears fine clothes.
<i>une grosse femme,</i>	a big fat woman.
<i>une femme grosse,</i>	a woman with child.

NOTE.

24. *Gros* and *brave* are put before their substantive in their natural signification, differently from the rest, because they are two of the sixteen adjectives which come before their substantive regularly. See p. 132.

<i>un homme galant,</i>	a man fond of the fair sex.
<i>un galant homme,</i>	a genteel, well-bred man.
<i>un homme plaisant,</i>	an agreeable, facetious companion.
<i>un plaisant homme,</i>	a ridiculous, impertinent fellow.
<i>un animal furieux,</i>	a fierce animal,
<i>un furieux animal,</i>	a huge animal.
<i>une nouvelle certaine,</i>	news which may be depended on.
<i>une certaine nouvelle,</i>	a certain piece of news, i. e. <i>quelques nouvelles</i> , some news.
<i>d'une voix commune,</i>	with a voice which is common,
<i>d'une commune voix,</i>	unanimously, with one voice.
<i>une eau morte,</i>	stagnant water.
<i>la morte eau,</i>	dead-low tide.

{ <i>un habit nouveau,</i>	a dress of a new fashion.
{ <i>un nouvel habit,</i>	one different from that which we had been wearing.
{ <i>du vin nouveau,</i>	wine newly made.
{ <i>de nouveau vin,</i>	wine different from what we had been drinking.
{ <i>des gens honnêtes,</i>	polite, civil people.
{ <i>les honnêtes gens d'une ville,</i>	men of property, birth, and reputation.
{ <i>cette vie mortelle,</i>	this mortal life.
{ <i>un mortel ennemi,</i>	a sworn, declared enemy.
{ <i>il y a trois mortelles lieues d'ici là,</i>	it is three long, tedious leagues from here to that place.
{ <i>M. d'Olive,</i>	a man of truth.
{ <i>un homme vrai,</i>	a mere, a real quack.
{ <i>un vrai charlatan,</i>	what you say is a mere story.
{ <i>ce que vous dites est une vraie fable,</i>	I have seen Lucullus, who is rich.
{ <i>J'ai vu le riche Luculle,</i>	I have seen that Lucullus, who is distinguished from others of the same name by his riches.
{ <i>J'ai vu Luculle le riche,</i>	where lies your mistake?
{ <i>quelle est votre erreur ?</i>	is it possible that you have committed such an error?
{ <i>quelle erreur est la vôtre ?</i>	any dry tree.
{ <i>du bois mort,</i>	wood of no value, such as briars, thorns, &c.
{ <i>du mort bois,</i>	besides others which do not immediately occur, but which use will point out.

NOTE.

Chambaud has not given any other reason than custom, for the construction of the adjective : but custom should be founded on some reason, and the reason in this case is the offence it gives to the ear.

Were we to place those substantives first which commonly come last, they would be very disagreeable ; also the nouns which are placed first, would be grating to the ear if put last. *L'univers vaste*, the vast universe ; *la raison fière*, presumptuous reason ; *les moutons petits*, the little sheep, &c. have not the same harmony, as when in the contrary construction. If we say, *Un criminel soin*, a criminal care ; *un cruel loup*, a rapacious wolf ; *un violent feu*, a fierce fire, &c. the ear will be grated, as by discordant sounds. The reason why the construction of those substantives and adjectives is so disagreeable, is because they are preceded by longer and more harmonious words ; a harsh acute sound, in this case, follows a smooth and full one ; and because a pause is made in an improper place. Put the acute first, let the full and mellow sound follow, and make the pause ; every thing then will be right. If we want any other proof, let us observe when the tone of both are equally harmonious ; we shall then see them placed indifferently by the best authors. It is equally proper to say, *apparence trompeuse*, or *trompeuse apparence*, a fallacious appearance ; *plaisirs solides*, or *solides plaisirs*, solid pleasures.

S. We may, from the above observations, reduce almost all the various constructions of the adjectives to three principal rules.

1st. The adjective comes immediately before the substantive, when the tone of the substantive is more harmonious :

La gloire est l'éclat d'une bonne réputation ;
Glory is the splendour of a good reputation.

2^{dly}. The substantive holds the first rank, when its sound is not so sonorous as that of the adjective :

L'être suprême est le mot de ceux qui trouvent qu'il est trop bourgeois et trop chrétien de dire Dieu;

The supreme Being is the expression of those who think it too vulgar and christian-like to say God.

27. 3dly. The substantive and the adjective come indifferently before each other, when the sound is equally harmonious:

Dans l'aristocratie, la souveraine puissance, or, la puissance souveraine, est entre les mains d'un certain nombre de personnes;

In aristocratical government, the sovereign power is in the hands of a certain number of persons.

28. 4thly. The following adjectives require *de* before the next noun or verb:

digne,	digne de louange,	worthy of praise.
indigne,	indigne de vivre,	unworthy to live.
capable,	capable de servir sa patrie,	able to serve his country.
incapable,	incapable d'une action si lâche,	incapable of so cowardly an action.
aise,	je suis bien aise de vous voir,	I am very glad to see you.
ravi,	ravi de cette victoire,	over-joyed with that victory.
joyeux,	joyeux d'être mis en liberté,	glad to be set at liberty.
content,	content de sa condition,	pleased with his condition.
mécontent,	mécontent de sa femme,	dissatisfied with his wife.
comblé,	comblé d'honneurs,	overloaded with honours.
taxé,	taxé d'avarice,	accused of avarice.
chargé,	chargé de dettes,	loaded with debts.
accusé,	accusé de mensonge,	accused of lying.
fatigué,	fatigué de courir,	fatigued with running.
contrit,	contrit de ses forfaits,	grieved for his crimes.
enragé,	enragé d'être ainsi joué,	mad with being thus imposed upon.
avide,	avide de gloire,	greedy of glory.
las,	las de ces poursuites,	tired of those pursuits.
ennuyé,	ennuyé de vivre,	weary of life.
libre,	libre de soins,	free from care.
qualifié,	qualifié d'ivrogne, &c.	taxed with drunkenness.

where we must observe, that some are followed by nouns, and some by verbs, and some by either, at pleasure.

29. Adjectives signifying *fulness*, *emptiness*, *plenty*, or *want*, likewise require *de* before the next noun or verb:

Plein de gloire, full of glory;

Un discours vuide de sens, a discourse void of sense; &c.

30. These adjectives, significant of dimension, *haut*, high; *profond*, deep; *épais*, thick; *gras*, big; *large*, wide or broad; *long*, long; which come after the words of the measure of magnitude in English, come before them in French, and are attended by the preposition *de*:

Une colonne haute de soixante pieds ;
 A pillar sixty feet high ; literally, *high by sixty feet.*
Le fossé est profond de vingt pieds, & large de dix ;
 The ditch is twenty feet deep, and ten wide.

NOTE.

These sentences may be expressed differently, in a manner more common as well as more elegant, by turning the adjective into its noun in French, with the word of the measure before, as in English ; but so that both the word of the measure and that of the dimension may be preceded by the preposition *de* :

Un homme de six pieds de hauteur, a man sixty feet high.

Un fossé de vingt pieds de profondeur, a ditch twenty feet deep.

And if, instead of the verb *être* (which is understood with the relative *qui*, in the above sentences, before the noun of measure), *avoir* be used, the sentence may be thus turned :

Le fossé a vingt pieds de profondeur & dix de largeur ;

The ditch is twenty feet deep and ten broad.

It may not be improper here to subjoin the words of measure ; which are,

<i>une aune,</i>	an ell.	<i>un arpent,</i>	an acre.
<i>une verge,</i>	a yard.	<i>une perche,</i>	a rod.
<i>un pied,</i>	a foot.	<i>un pas,</i>	a pace.
<i>un pouce,</i>	an inch.	<i>une lieue,</i>	a league.
<i>une ligne,</i>	the twelfth part of an inch.	<i>un mille,</i>	a mile.
		<i>un stade,</i>	a stade or furlong.
<i>une coudée,</i>	a cubit.	<i>une brasse,</i>	a fathom.
<i>un empan,</i>	a span.	<i>une toise,</i>	another measure, containing six feet in length.

5thly. The following adjectives take *à* before the next noun or verb :

adroit,	<i>adroit à tous les exercices du corps,</i>	dexterous in all bodily exercises.
bon,	<i>il n'est bon à rien,</i>	he is fit for nothing.
beau,	<i>beau à voir,</i>	pleasant to be seen.
laid,	<i>laid à voir,</i>	disagreeable to be seen.
agréable,	<i>agréable aux yeux,</i>	pleasant to the sight.
ingénieux,	<i>ingénieux à se tirer d'affaire,</i>	skilful in extricating one's self.
contraire,	<i>contraire à la santé,</i>	hurtful to the health.
opposé,	<i>opposé à lui,</i>	against him.
conforme,	<i>conforme à la vérité,</i>	agreeable to truth.
semblable,	<i>semblable à un torrent,</i>	like a torrent.
pareil,	<i>pareil à l'autre,</i>	like the other.
porté,	<i>porté à la vertu,</i>	inclined to virtue.
enclin,	<i>enclin à faire du mal,</i>	inclined to mischief.
adonné,	<i>adonné à la débauche,</i>	addicted to debauchery.
sujet,	<i>sujet à la débauche,</i>	subject to debauchery.
propre,	<i>propre à tout,</i>	fit for any thing.
inexorable,	<i>inexorable à la prière,</i>	not to be moved by entreaty.
désagréable,	<i>désagréable à ses compagnons,</i>	disagreeable to his companions.
comparable,	<i>comparable à cela,</i>	to be compared with that.
agile,	<i>agile à la course,</i>	nimble in running.
alerte,	<i>alerte à tout,</i>	alert in every thing.

skilful

habile,	<i>habile à la négociation,</i>	skilful in negotiating.
ardent,	<i>ardent au combat,</i>	ardent in fighting.
âpre,	<i>âpre au jeu,</i>	eager at play.
occupé,	<i>occupé à la guerre,</i>	busy with war.
lent,	<i>lent au travail,</i>	slow at work.
nuisible,	<i>nuisible à la santé,</i>	hurtful to the health.
prompt,	<i>prompt aux affaires,</i>	expeditious in business.
prêt,	<i>prêt à partir,</i>	ready to set out.
sensible	<i>sensible, insensible aux</i>	sensible, or insensible
insensible	<i>affronts,</i>	of affronts.
souple,	<i>souple au marteau,</i>	malleable.
aisé, facile,	<i>aisé, facile à dire,</i>	easy to say.

34. In general, all adjectives signifying *inclination, aptness, fitness and unfitness, advantage, disadvantage, due, submission, resistance and difficulty, profit and disprofit, pleasure and displeasure*, require their regimen to be preceded by the preposition à :

Ces honneurs étoient dûs à ses rares mérites ;

These honours were due to his rare qualities.

Il est tout soumis à ses supérieurs ;

He is very submissive to his superiors, &c. &c.

35. 6thly. Some adjectives require no regimen at all, and of course no preposition to follow them :

Sage, wise ; vertueux, virtuous ; incurable, incurable ; intrépide, intrepid ; &c.

36. Others, Chambaud observes, may be construed with or without a regimen :

C'est une femme insensible,

She is a woman without sensibility.

Elle est insensible à l'amour, &c. She is insensible to love.

NOTE.

I am, however, rather of opinion, that their regimen is always understood, although not always expressed ; which is discoverable, if we consider the example just cited ; *c'est une femme insensible*, she is an insensible woman. The mind naturally inquires, *à quoi ?* to what ? If any particular passion suggests itself, we supply the answer by *bat* : *à la colère*, to anger ; *à l'amour*, to love ; *à la haine*, to hatred ; &c. but if not, we in general suppose—*qu'elle est insensible à tout*, that she is insensible to every thing.

38. 7thly. Adjectives are sometimes used without a substantive, in a kind of phrase where they refer to a sentence following them, so as to give such sentence the force of their substantive, of which they affirm something as its quality :

Je trouve commode—de faire quelque chose ;

I find it convenient—to do something.

Il parut plus court—de, &c. It appeared shorter—to, &c.

On crut possible, facile même—de, &c. (RAYNAL),

They thought it possible, even easy—to, &c.

Ils trouvèrent insupportable—de ne jamais changer de demeure.

They found it insupportable, never to change their habitations.

What was convenient—possible—easy—insupportable? De faire telle ou telle chose—de ne jamais changer de demeure :— which shows the relation between the sentence and adjective to be the same here as between the substantive and adjective in other cases. It is observable, that adjectives thus used are always singular and masculine; which gender has, in this acceptation, the force of the neuter of the Latin: and they are always followed by *de*, because *que* is understood as an expletive (in the sense of *namely*) between the adjective and sentence, which, in that signification, always requires *de*: *Ils trouvèrent insupportable [que] de ne jamais changer de demeure*; [*namely*] never to change their habitations.

8thly. Adjectives are sometimes used for substantives, i. e. 40. in the sense of substantives; and as such stand without any preceding or subsequent word of reference, and are accompanied by the article:

Rien n'est beau que le vrai; le vrai seul est aimable:

Nothing is so beautiful as truth; truth alone is pleasing.

Nous devons préférer l'utile à l'agréable;

We ought to prefer useful things to those that are agreeable.

Le comique, the comic; *le tragique* d'une fable, the tragic part of a fable; *un sensuel*, &c. a sensualist.

8. When two or more adjectives of quite opposite signification qualify the same substantive, which substantive the nature of the sentence requires in two different places, the English use their pronoun *one*, instead of repeating the substantive as they do in French. 41.

Si dans un gouvernement doux, le peuple est aussi soumis que dans un gouvernement sévère; le premier est préférable, puisqu'il est plus conforme à la raison, & que la sévérité est un motif étranger.

If in a mild government the people are as submissive as in a severe one; the former is preferable, because it is more conformable to reason, and that severity is a foreign motive.

COMPARISON

COMPARISON of ADJECTIVES.

42. ADJECTIVES in general are compared by prefixing to them
 43. *plus* or *moins* for the comparative, and *le plus* or *le moins* for the
 superlative; *beau, plus beau, le plus beau*: but four adjectives
 44. change the word in the comparative, and add *le* to the new word
 45. for the superlative: three of them, however, may be compared
 regularly.

Petit, little or small; *moindre* or *plus petit*, less or smaller; *le moindre*, or *le plus petit*,
 the least or smallest.

Mauvais, bad; *pire* or *plus mauvais*, worse; *le pire* or *le plus mau-*
vais, the worst.

Méchant, wicked; *pire* or *plus méchant*, more wicked; *le pire* or *le plus méchant*,
 the most wicked.

Bon, good; *meilleur*, better; *le meilleur*, the best.

46. S. That which raises an adjective to the comparative degree,
 47. as *plus*, more, &c. or to the superlative, as *le plus*, the most,
 &c. is never to be separated from the adjective, and must
 always precede it.

These rules are only explanatory of the 42d and 43d rules.

*Ceux qui ont dit qu'une aveugle fatalité a produit tous les effets
 que nous voyons dans le monde, ont dit une grande absurdité: car
 quelle plus grande absurdité, qu'une aveugle fatalité, qui auroit
 produit des êtres intelligens?*

Those who have said that a blind chance has produced all the
 effects which we see in the world, have said a great absurdity:
 for, what can be a greater absurdity, than to assert that a blind
 chance has produced intelligent beings?

La modestie est la plus belle parure d'une jeune personne;

Modesty is the finest ornament for a young person.

48. S. The same rule holds good, when the adjective or adjectives,
 are, by any of the preceding rules, to be placed after the
 substantive.

*Pompée avoit une ambition plus lente & plus douce que celle de
 César;*

Pompey's ambition was more slow and gentle than Cæsar's.

*Le spectacle de l'univers est un livre public, ouvert aux igno-
 rans comme aux savans, dans lequel l'existence de Dieu est écrite
 avec les caractères les plus éclatans;*

The spectacle of the universe is a public book, open to the ignorant as well as to the learned, in which the existence of God is written in the most brilliant characters.

We have seen that some adjectives come before, and some 49. after, the noun: whenever, therefore, the superlative adjective is one of those which follow the substantive, it requires the article before its prefix (*plus* or *moins*), although the noun has it already with the prepositions *de* or *à*; or, which is the same thing, although the noun be in the genitive or dative case:

C'est la coutume des peuples les plus barbares;

It is the custom of the most barbarous nations.

Il a obéi au commandement le plus injuste qu'on puisse faire;

He has obeyed the most unjust command that could be made.

But repeat both the preposition and the article in this and 50. similar instances:

C'est une des femmes des plus belles de Paris;

She is one of the most beautiful women in Paris:

which is the same as—*C'est une des plus belles femmes de Paris.*

S. When the adjective comes before the substantive, the 51. same article serves, in French as in English, both to limit the sense of the substantive, and to form, with the adverbs *plus*, &c. the superlative: but if the adjective follows the substan- 52. tive, the article is also to be prefixed to the substantive, in whatever case it may be: the 49th rule mentions only the genitive and dative.

Si la modestie est une vertu si nécessaire à ceux à qui le ciel a donné de grands talens, que peut-on dire de ces insectes qui osent faire paroître un orgueil qui déshonoreroit les plus grands hommes?

If modesty is a virtue so necessary to those on whom heaven has bestowed great talents, what can we say of those insects who dare exhibit a pride which would dishonour the greatest men?

La patience est le remède le plus sûr contre les calomnies; le tems, tôt ou tard, découvre la vérité;

Patience is the surest remedy against calumny; time, sooner or later, discovers the truth.

S. *Le*, before *plus*, *moins*, *mieux*, is indeclinable, when it 53. forms the superlative degree with those adverbs:

Le bon emploi du tems, est une des choses qui contribuent le plus à notre bonheur;

The

The proper employment of time is one of those things which contribute *most* to our happiness.

54. S. *Le plus, le moins, le mieux*, though followed by adjectives, are still considered as superlative adverbs, and are indeclinable when there is no comparison :

Nous ne pleurons pas toujours lorsque nous sommes le plus affligés ;
We do not always weep when we are most afflicted.

55. S. But, when there is a comparison, *le* is declinable before those adverbs :

La femme qui pleure moins que les autres, n'est pas toujours la moins affligée ;

The woman who weeps less than others, is not always the least afflicted.

56. The noun which follows the superlative adjective is always preceded by the preposition *de* :

Le plus savant homme du monde ;

The most learned man in the world.

La plus impertinente des femmes ;

The most impertinent of women.

N. B. S. The above rule appears to require further explanation. The regimen of the superlative is preceded by the preposition *de* ; or, in other words, the relation between the superlative and its complement is formed by the preposition *de*.

57. When the superlative is followed by a verb that is not in the future or conditional tense, that verb must be subjunctive, and preceded by *qui*, the relative pronoun :

L'homme le plus savant qui soit ;

The most learned man that is.

La plus belle personne que j'aie jamais vue ;

The most beautiful person that I ever saw, &c.

S. Observe, that in the last instance *que* is the accusative case of *qui*.

And if the superlative is of an adverb and not of an adjective (since adverbs are also compared by *plus* and *le plus*), then the verb must be preceded by the conjunction *que*, and besides requires some other word to stand as the nominative of the sentence :

Le plus soigneusement qu'il se puisse, or qu'en puisse ;

The most carefully that can be.

The

The comparative particle *que* answers to the English *than* : 58.

Il est plus habile que son frère ;
He is more ingenious than his brother.

* When *than* is followed by a verb, it must be rendered in 59.
French by the infinitive, with the particle *de* after *que*, if the pre-
ceding verb is in the present of the infinitive; or by the imper- 59a.
fect of the indicative (or its compound) with the conjunction
si after *que*, if the preceding verb is in the indicative.

Il aime mieux demeurer à rien faire que de travailler ;

He would rather remain idle than work.

Il est plus heureux que s'il régnoit ;

He is happier *than if he reigned*.

And if the verb which follows *than* in English, is not in, 60.
nor can be rendered by, the infinitive, it must take, in French,
the negative *ne* before it :

Il est plus habile que je ne croyois ;

He is more ingenious than I thought.

NOTE.

This use of the negative may easily be accounted for ; *il est plus habile que je ne croyois* : his ingenuity (or address) exceeding my opinion, proves a defect or negation of opinion, in that respect ; for, *Je ne le croyois pas si habile que je le trouvois*, I did not think he was so ingenious as I find him to be :—for this reason they introduce the negative, which is not rendered into English, from the different genius of the two languages, of which the one delights in leaving nothing to be understood, the other a great deal.

Chambaud observes, that if there comes before the verb a conjunction governing 61.
it, the negative is left out : *Je le trouvois à présent moins beau que quand je l'achetai*,
I now find it less beautiful than when I bought it. He is however mistaken : the sen-
tence is elliptical, and the negative is understood in that member which is left out.
The sentence at length is—*Je le trouvois à présent moins beau [qu'il ne l'étoit] quand je l'achetai* ; I now find it less beautiful (than it was) when I bought it. This is too
evident to require further illustration.

The simple comparatives *plus* and *moins*, meeting with a 62.
number, are attended by the preposition *de* :

Il a plus de vingt ans ;

He is *more than*, or *above*, twenty years.

In comparative sentences, where we mean to establish a stand- 63.
ard, by which to compute or define the comparison, the sub-
stantive, or member applied to this purpose, is preceded by *de* ;
which has the force of *by*, sometimes expressed and sometimes
understood in English :

Il est plus grand que moi, de toute la tête ;

He is taller than I am *by the whole head* ; or, as is familiarly
said in English, He is *a head taller*.

Nous

Nous sommes plus d'à moitié persuadés ;

We are more than half persuaded.

Il est de beaucoup plus grand ; he is much taller.

Si vous êtes plus gros que lui, c'est de peu ;

If you are bigger than he is, it is but a little.

NOTE.

64. In general, however, we find *beaucoup* used without *de* : *Il est beaucoup plus grand*, he is much taller : although *de*, in such cases, is necessarily understood.

65. The comparative particles *si* and *aussi*, which are always followed by *que* after the adjective, are Englished by *so* before the adjective, and *que* by *that* or *as* after it, or by *as* before and after :

Je ne le croyois pas si brave qu'il est ;

I did not think him so brave as he is.

Elle est aussi belle que sa sœur ;

She is as handsome as her sister.

66. *Tant* and *autant*, followed likewise by *que*, and signifying *as much as*, *so much as*, are construed with verbs and nouns, or

67. substitutes of nouns, as *si* and *aussi* with adjectives :

Elle n'a pas tant d'esprit que sa sœur, mais elle a autant de vivacité ;

She has not so much wit as her sister, but she has as much vivacity.

Je l'estime autant que j'estime votre frère ;

I esteem him as much as I do your brother.

L'un est aussi savant que l'autre ;

The one is as learned as the other.

68. *Si* is used in negative propositions, and in affirmative also,

69. where there is no comparison of equality made between two

70. things ; and *aussi* in affirmative propositions, with such comparison :

Il n'est rien de si doux que la liberté ;

There is nothing so sweet as liberty.

Elle aime si violemment qu'elle en perd la raison ;

She loves so violently that it disturbs her reason.

Le plaisir de l'étude est un plaisir aussi tranquille que celui des passions est agité ;

The pleasure of study is as calm as that of the passions is tumultuous.

71. The comparative particles, *si* and *aussi*, *plus* and *le plus*, must be repeated before each adjective or adverb governed, as like-

72. wise *tant* and *autant* before each noun and verb, when there are many in the sentence :

Il est si sage, si prudent, si éclairé, & si circonspéct, qu'on peut en sûreté lui confier un secret;

He is so wise, so prudent, so enlightened, and so circum-spect, that one may safely entrust him with a secret.

Un jeune homme aussi sage, & aussi capable [que lui, as he is, understood], & qui prend tant de peines, mérite qu'on le protège;

A young man so wise, so able as he is, and who takes so much pains, deserves to be protected.

Son amant est plus beau, plus jeune, & plus riche qu'elle;

Her lover is handsomer, younger, and richer than she is.*

* Observe, that in the last sentence, the verb substantive *to be*, which ordinarily follows *than*, and the comparative degree in English, is always left out in French; the French syntax requiring only the conjunction *que*, and the nominative to the verb implied.

As, repeated with an adverb between, is rendered into French *74.*
by aussi and *que*, or *le plus* and *que*, with the adverb between:

Come as often as you can;

Venez aussi souvent que vous pourrez, or, le plus souvent que vous pourrez.

These comparative expressions,—(a) *the more* an hydropic drinks, *the more* thirsty he is; (b) *the more* I see her, *the more* I hate her; (c) *the richer* men are, *the happier* they are; or, men are *so much the more* happy as they are *more rich*; (d) *the poorer* people are, *the less* care they have; &c. are rendered into French by *plus* or *moins* beginning each member of the sentence, and followed by the noun or pronoun, which is the subject to the verb;—then the verb;—then the adjective of the comparison, if there be any; or even the noun, if there be one governed by the verb:—(a) *Plus un hydropique boit, plus il a soif*; (b) *plus je la vois, plus je la hais*; (c) *plus on est riche, plus on est heureux*; or, *on est d'autant plus heureux qu'on est plus riche*; (d) *plus on est pauvre, moins on a d'embarras.*

NOTE.

Comparative sentences, like the above, are often, by good authors, joined by the conjunction *et*: 76.

Plus on est pauvre, & moins on a d'embarras;

The poorer we are, the less anxiety we have.

We have seen that substantives, in construction, perform the parts of qualities, when used as predicates of the sentence: in the following instances we see them compared like adjectives. 77.

Il n'y a pas de plus homme d'honneur que lui ;

There is not a man of more honour than he is.

Il est très homme d'honneur ;

He is a very honest man.

Le plus homme d'honneur que je connoisse ;

The most honourable man I know.

Qui de tous les Romains étoit le plus homme de bien. (ROLLIN

Belles Lettres, Vol. iv.)

Who was the most honest man of all the Romans.

Cinq hommes des plus gens de bien. (VERROT, Rev. Rom.

Liv. iv.)

Five of the most honest people.

§. *So Adjectives, taken adverbially, are indeclinable :*

Elle resta court ; She stopped short.

CHAPTER I.

OF PRONOUNS.

I. Of Pronouns Personal.

FRENCH pronouns personal (besides the usual division of personal pronouns of all languages, into those of the first, second, and third persons) are distinguished into *conjunctive* and *disjunctive*.

Conjunctives are such as are closely joined to, and connected with the verb, and generally preceding it, whether governing it as its subject or nominative case, or governed by it as its object or end, i. e. in the accusative or dative.

Disjunctives are such as are totally disjoined and detached from the verb, seldom preceding it, always independent of it, and frequently governed by prepositions.

1. The conjunctive pronouns are,

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Nom.	<i>Je,</i>	<i>I ;</i>	<i>tu,</i>	<i>thou ;</i>	<i>nous,</i>	<i>we ;</i>	<i>vous,</i>	<i>you.</i>
Dat.	<i>me,</i>	<i>to me ;</i>	<i>te,</i>	<i>to thee ;</i>	<i>nous,</i>	<i>to us ;</i>	<i>vous,</i>	<i>to you.</i>
Acc.	<i>me,</i>	<i>me ;</i>	<i>te,</i>	<i>thee ;</i>	<i>nous,</i>	<i>us ;</i>	<i>vous,</i>	<i>you.</i>

Non

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

1st.	<i>il</i> , he or it; <i>elle</i> , she or it;	<i>ils</i> , they;	<i>elles</i> , they.
2d.	<i>lui</i> , to him; <i>lui</i> , to her; to it;	<i>leur</i> , to them;	<i>leur</i> , to them.
3d.	<i>le</i> , him; <i>le</i> , her; it;	<i>les</i> , them;	<i>les</i> , them.
Gen.	<i>en</i> , of him; &c.	Nom. Sing. <i>on</i> ,	one's self.
Dat.	<i>y</i> , to him; &c.	<i>se</i> ,	to one's self.
Acc.	<i>le</i> , him; <i>le</i> ,	<i>se</i> ,	one's self.

2. The disjunctive pronouns are,

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

om.	<i>moi</i> ,	I;	<i>toi</i> ,	thou;	<i>nous</i> ,	we;	<i>vous</i> ,	you.
en.	<i>de moi</i> ,	of me;	<i>de toi</i> ,	of thee;	<i>de nous</i> ,	of us;	<i>de vous</i> ,	of you.
at.	<i>moi</i> ,	to me;	<i>toi</i> ,	to thee;	<i>nous</i> ,	to us;	<i>vous</i> ,	to you.
cc.	<i>moi</i> ,	me;	<i>toi</i> ,	thee;	<i>nous</i> ,	us;	<i>vous</i> ,	you.
om.	<i>lui</i> ,	he or it;	<i>elle</i> ,	she or it;	<i>eux</i> ,	they;	<i>elles</i> ,	they.
en.	<i>de lui</i> ,	of him, of it;	<i>d'elle</i> ,	of her, of it;	<i>d'eux</i> ,	of them;	<i>d'elles</i> ,	of them.
at.	<i>à lui</i> ,	to him, to it;	<i>à elle</i> ,	to her, to it;	<i>à eux</i> ,	to them;	<i>à elles</i> ,	to them.
cc.	<i>lui</i> ,	him, it;	<i>elle</i> ,	her, it;	<i>eux</i> ,	them;	<i>elles</i> ,	them.
	Nom.	<i>soi</i> ,	one's self;					
	Gen.	<i>de soi</i> ,	of one's self;					
	Dat.	<i>à soi</i> ,	to one's self;					
	Acc.	<i>soi</i> ,	one's self.					

The personal conjunctives *je*, *nous*, *tu*, *vous*, *il*, *elle*, *ils*, *elles*, come before the verb, as its subject or nominative case; either immediately, as *je dis*, I say; or with one or more pronouns, or the negative *ne*, between:—*Je vous dis*, I tell you; *Je ne vous dis pas*, I do not tell you. But they will not admit of any adverb or other word between them and the verb, as in English; therefore we do not say,—*Je toujours vois*, but, *Je vois toujours*, I always see; &c.

NOTE.

The word *sousigné*, underwritten, and the title and quality of the person that speaks, are only in certain forms put between the conjunctive and verb:

Je sousigné déclare; I the underwritten declare.

Je, Jean Smith, Docteur en Médecine, certifie;

I, John Smith, Doctor in Physic, certify.

EXCEPTIONS

to the Rule of the NOMINATIVE PRONOUN preceding the VERB.

The same personal conjunctives may come after their verbs in the following cases:

1st. After these six verbs: *dire*, to say; *répondre*, to answer; *répliquer*, to reply; *continuer*, to continue; *poursuivre*, to pursue; and *s'écrier*, to exclaim; used parenthetically, as is sometimes practised in English with the verb *to say*:

Vous étudiez, dites-vous. You study, say you.

Vous voyez, répondit-il, or, *s'écria-t-il*, *l'état où nous sommes réduits*.

You see, answered he, or exclaimed he, the condition we are reduced to; &c.

2dly. With the preterite subjunctive of *devoir*, and the present and preterite subjunctive of *pouvoir*:

Dussiez-vous me condamner; Though you should condemn me.

Pussiez-vous, and Pussiez-vous vivre heureux; May you live happy.

5^a. And in phrases like the following :

Lorsqu'il avoit reçu une chose, ne valoit-elle qu'un sou. (MONTESQUIEU.)

When he received any thing, were it worth but one penny.

6. 3^{dly}. After these conjunctions : *ainsi*, thus, and therefore ; *aussi*, also ; *peut-être*, perhaps ; *du moins*, at least ; *au moins*, at least ; *en vain*, in vain ; and *à peine*, hardly : as,

Ainsi mérite-t-il d'être avancé ; Therefore he deserves to be preferred.

Du moins deviez-vous m'en avertir ; You should at least have told me of it.

En vain cherche-t-il des excuses ; In vain he seeks for an excuse.

Peut-être s'imaginoit-il ; Perhaps he thinks.

À peine eut-il parlé que ; He had hardly spoken ; &c.

6^a. But observe, that in most of these cases, the transposition of the pronoun is only an elegance, and not a law of grammar : for we may also say—*Aussi il mérite d'être avancé ;* Therefore he deserves to be preferred : and, *Du moins vous deviez m'en avertir ;* You should at least have told me of it : &c.—And, *Dussiez-vous me condamner ;* is used for, *Quand vous devriez me condamner ;* Though you should condemn me, which is equally as proper : *Pussiez-vous être heureux ;* May you be happy ; for, *Je soubaite que vous soyez heureux ;* I wish you may be happy ; and, *Ne valoit-elle, &c.* for, *Quoiqu'elle ne valût, &c.* Though it were not worth ; &c.

7. * When a noun or nouns, and a pronoun or pronouns (the latter being disjunctive in French), meet together with the verb, as its *virtual* subject, the verb must besides have, for its *immediate grammatical* subject or nominative case, a conjunctive of the plural number ; comprehending in its signification the other pronouns, which are to be put in apposition (i. e. in the same case) with it. The disjunctive pronouns (as well as the nouns connected with them), may come either before or after the verb :

Lui & moi, nous apprenons le François ; or, *Nous apprenons le François, lui & moi ;*

He and I learn French.

Mon frère, ma sœur, ma cousine & moi, nous allâmes hier à la comédie ; *Nous allâmes hier à la comédie, mon frère, ma sœur, ma cousine, & moi ;*

My brother, my sister, my cousin, and I, went to the play last night.

Nous sommes contents, lui & moi ; *Lui & moi, nous sommes contents ;*

He and I are satisfied. Or,

Je suis content, & lui aussi ;

I am satisfied, and so is he.

8. The conjunctive pronouns must follow the order of the persons.

The first person is used in preference to the two others, and the second in preference to the third ; that is, if there is in a sentence a pronoun disjunctive of the second person, or a noun and

a pronoun disjunctive of the third person, and one of the second, the conjunctive pronoun must be of the first person.

Mr. Hill, *vous, & moi, nous dînerons ensemble;*
Mr. Hill, you, and I, will dine together.

Lui, vous, & moi, nous irons dans la même voiture;
He, you, and I, will go in the same carriage.

In like manner, if there are in a sentence several nouns, or a disjunctive pronoun of the third person, and one of the second, the conjunctive pronoun must be of the second person.

Mr. Wells, *elle, & vous, vous ferez la même partie;*
Mr. Wells, she, and you, will make the same party.

The disjunctives *moi, lui, eux*, as likewise *nous* and *vous* which are both conjunctive and disjunctive), are used together with a cognate conjunctive (if the verb be not in the infinitive or imperative mood) (a) when we wish to mark more strikingly the person spoken of; (b) and to lay particular stress or emphasis on what is said; especially with the infinitive, intimating a sort of approach to those we speak to, for attributing such and such things to the person in question. (c) They are also used with the imperative in familiar conversation.—(a) *Vous dites cela, & moi je l'ai vu;* You say that, and I for my part have seen it: *Lui, il soutient cela;* or, *Il soutient cela, lui;* Yes, 'tis he who maintains that; he does maintain it: *Lui, il soutient cela ?* or, *Il soutient cela, lui ?* Does he maintain that? (b) *Moi faire cela !* Should I, or could I, do that! *Me soupçonner de cela, moi !* Is it possible that I, of all people in the world, could be suspected of that! (c) *Faites-moi,* or, *faites-nous cela, comme faut ;* Do me that, make us that, &c. i. e. for me, for us.

8. If these pronouns are disjunctive, it is because they are governed by prepositions implied; and if we consider these sentences attentively, we shall find them for the most part elliptical, like the following.

Vous prétendez que le soleil tourne, & moi je soutiens que c'est la terre ; c. a. d. Par des raisons connues de moi, je soutiens, &c.
You maintain that the sun goes round the earth, and I that the earth goes round the sun; that is to say, For reasons known to me, I maintain, &c.

NOTE.

Though the disjunctives of the second and of the first person (*moi, toi*) can never be construed as the subject or nominative case to a verb, without another pronoun

- conjunctive; yet, (a) when the disjunctives are put before the verb, and the last of
 13. them is a pronoun of the third person (*lui* or *eux*), the conjunctive is sometimes
 14. left out, and (b) sometimes expressed, before the verb which follows; and (c) some-
 15. times it is indifferent to express it or not. As these contingencies cannot easily be
 defined by a positive rule, it may perhaps be sufficient to record the instances wherein
 they occur; taking care to observe, previously, that they are almost always confined
 to the free and familiar style of conversation.

It is not customary to say, — *Mon frère & lui, ils sont arrivés*; but, (a) *Mon frère & lui sont arrivés*; My brother and he are arrived: nor are we authorized to say, — *Je demeure, & lui part*; but, *Je demeure, & lui, il part*; I stay, and he goes. But it is indifferent to say, — (c) *Je demeurerai, & lui, s'en alla*; or, *Je demeure-ai, & lui, il s'en alla*; I staid, and he went away. [We must not, however, consider these differences as wholly capricious; the following reasons perhaps may, in some measure, account for them: As, in the first instance, the noun (*mon frère*) is of the third person, as well as *lui*; a conjunctive is not necessary to justify the use of a verb of the third person; but, in the second, where the former nominative (*je*) is of the first person, and governs a verb of the first person, a pronoun, qualified with every grammatical requisite, seems necessary to render the change of the second verb to the third person proper: which may, however, be dispensed with in the last instance, where the second verb, being reflected, is naturally accompanied with a pronoun of the third person.] It is however best, as the surest method, to express the conjunctive first, and subjoin the noun and disjunctive pronouns, whenever we are in doubt concerning the addition or omission of the conjunctive, if harmony, and the nature of the sentence, will admit of it:

Nous apprenons le François, lui & moi; He and I learn French.

Ils sont arrivés, mon frère & lui; My brother and he are arrived.

Under the following circumstances, the disjunctives *lui* and *eux* may, in a regular speech, be the subject of, and come before the verb, without any conjunctive.

17. 1st. When the disjunctive is attended by the adjective *seul*:
Plus je vis avec le Cacique & sa sœur, plus j'ai de peine à me persuader qu'ils soient de cette nation: eux seuls connaissent la vertu, & la respectent.
 The longer I live with the Cacique and his sister, the more difficult I find it to persuade myself they are of this nation: they alone know and respect virtue.

18. 2^{dly}. Or it must be separated from its verb by another incidental sentence, joined to it by means of a relative or gerund:

Lui, qui ne savoit pas qu'ils étoient reconciliés, fut fort surpris de les voir ensemble;

He, who did not know they were reconciled, was much surprised to see them together.

Eux, voyant que la pluralité des suffrages l'emporteroit, commencèrent par protester;
 They, seeing that the majority of votes would carry it, began by protesting.

19. 3^{dly}. Or the sentences (or members of the sentence) wherein they are used, must relate the particulars of some fact (declared in general in the former sentence or member) as distributed among the agents of it:

Les deux frères & le cousin ont commis le meurtre; eux ont lié l'homme, & lui l'a assassiné;

The two brothers and the cousin committed the murder; they tied the man, and he killed him.

The following are two short rules of Pere Buffier on the same subject:

On peut se dispenser d'ajouter le conjoint après les disjoints lui, eux, &c. si ces disjoints, 1^o, ne sont pas trop éloignés du verbe: Lui, qui plaisantoit, n'écouta pas. 2^o, s'ils se trouvent opposés à un autre nominatif: Nous entrâmes, & lui se retira. (Gram. Française, p. 194.)

It is as well not to add the conjunctive after the disjunctives *lui, eux, &c.* if these disjunctives, *ist*, are not too far from the verb; He, *who was joking, did not listen.* *zdy*, if the nominative of the verb that precedes is of another person; We *went in, and he retired.*

We see by the first of these rules, that Buffier does not think that any but a *short* sentence can be admitted between the verb and the disjunctive; and, with respect to the second, I think that, strictly speaking, it should be confined to those cases wherein the disjunctive is followed by a reflected verb, for the reason given in the beginning of this note, unless the first verb is in the third person also: 20.

Tandis que l'armée s'arrêta, eux prirent le devant;
Whilst the army stopped, they went forward. 21.

* The conjunctives of the third person of both genders (*il, elle, ils, elles*), besides being applied to rational creatures, are used with respect to irrational ones as well as to inanimate things: which pronouns are, in general, Englished by *it* in the singular, and by *they* for the plural. Thus, 22.

speaking { a tree, } *il porte beaucoup de fruit, it bears much fruit.*
 { an apple, } *elle n'est pas mûre, it is not ripe.*
of { a horse, } *il boite, he limps.*
 { a hen, } *elle ne pond plus, she has given over laying.*

* Verbs are very often used impersonally with the pronoun *il*, 23. which is generally rendered into French by *it* or *there*:—*Il arriva que*, it happened, &c. It is also sometimes used before neuter and reflected verbs, followed by another subject, to which the verb has a natural and unavoidable reference, in order to ascertain the subject of which its energy is affirmed: 24.

Il est arrivé un accident (i. e. un accident est arrivé);

An accident has happened.

Il s'y trouva des gens qui (i. e. des gens s'y trouverent qui);

There were people who.

Il viendra tantôt quelqu'un (i. e. quelqu'un viendra tantôt);

Somebody will come by and by.

S. Observe to place the noun or pronoun indeterminate next to the verb, and after the adverb, if there be any.

The same thing sometimes occurs when the sentence is made interrogative:—*Est-il arrivé quelque accident?* Did any accident happen? *Est-il venu quelqu'un?* Has any body been here? But, in this last case, the noun frequently comes first, as we shall see in the section upon questions.

NOTE.

Observe, that in these impersonal ways of speaking, the noun which follows the verb requires before it the particle *de* or *un*, or some pronoun or adjective indeterminate, such as *quelqu'un, divers, certain*, and never takes the article separated from 26.

the limiting particle *de*; for we never say impersonally, *Il est arrivé l'homme que vous attendez* (i. e. to imply, *there is arrived the man, &c.*), for such a sentence would signify *he is arrived*, (namely) the man, &c. where the verb is personal, and *il* refers to *l'homme*.

We shall have occasion to treat more fully of this pronoun by and by.

27. The genitive of pronouns personal cannot, strictly speaking, be used after a noun in the genitive case, to which it is joined by the conjunction *et*; but a pronominal adjective, of corresponding signification, must be used in its place: therefore, instead of saying, — *C'est le sentiment de mon frère & de moi*, it is better to say, — *C'est le sentiment de mon frère & le mien*: It is my brother's opinion and mine: or to take this turn, — *C'est mon sentiment & celui de mon frère*: It is my opinion and my brother's.
28. In the following expressions, however, the pronoun personal is very properly used in the genitive: *Pour l'amour de moi*, for my sake; *pour l'amour de lui, d'elle, d'eux, &c.* for his, her, their, sakes; *à cause de moi*, on my account; *en dépit de moi*, in spite of me; &c.
29. Or, when *même* is joined to the pronoun personal: — *Je ne veux pas être homicide de moi-même*; I will not destroy myself: *Il ne veut pas être homicide de lui-même*; He will not destroy himself: *L'amour de soi-même*; the natural love of one's self, or self-preservation; and not, *L'amour de soi*, for *l'amour-propre*, self-love, or self-interest.

S. N O T E.

We must not confound *l'amour de soi-même*, with *l'amour-propre*; they are two passions very different in their nature and effects.

L'amour de soi-même is a natural sentiment, which leads every animal to attend to its own preservation.

L'amour-propre is only a relative and factitious sentiment, which impels every individual to be more attentive to his own interest than to that of others, and which produces all the evils that men do to each other.

30. But we say, — *Pour mon plaisir*, for my pleasure; *pour son plaisir*, for his pleasure; and not, *pour le plaisir de moi, de lui*.

N O T E.

31. Buffier observes, that the reason why we say, *Pour l'amour de moi*, for my sake; and *pour ma satisfaction*, for my satisfaction; *pour mon plaisir*, for my pleasure; is because *pour mon amour* would admit of a double construction, implying either *the love I have for another*, or that *another has for me*. (So we say, — *Un portrait de moi, &c.* to signify a *portrait drawn by me*; and not *mon portrait*, which implies rather a *portrait drawn to represent my person*.) But, as the two other expressions are not equivocal, the possessive pronoun is used in preference to the personal pronoun.

34. When the verb governs a personal pronoun as its object, the pronoun

pronoun is in the accusative case, and must come between the subject and the verb; and consequently becomes a conjunctive pronoun:

Il me frappe; He strikes me.

Je l'ai récompensé; I have rewarded him.

* But when the verb governs a personal pronoun as its end, 35^a the pronoun is in the dative, and must likewise come between the subject and the verb; and becomes also a conjunctive pronoun:

Je lui parle; I speak to him.

Je lui ai écrit; I have written to him.

In this case the preposition is never expressed in French. 35^a.

S. The two preceding rules hold good, when the pronoun is 35^b governed by a verb in the present of the infinitive, preceded by a preposition; the only difference is, that the pronoun must come between the preposition and the verb:

Il est disposé à vous servir; He is inclined to serve you.

S. It is the same when the verb is in the gerund: 35^b.

Il ne le croira pas encore, en le voyant;

Were he even to see it, he would not believe it.

S. Two verbs coming together, the second being the object of 36^a the first, and in the present of the infinitive, without a preposition before it (in French), the pronoun or pronouns governed by it, either in the dative or accusative case, are in general placed between the two verbs:

Je veux le lui donner; I will give it him.

Il désire vous parler; He wishes to speak to you.

S. If the pronoun governed is sometimes seen before the first 37^a of the two verbs, it is, perhaps, because that pronoun is the emphatical word of the sentence:

Je te veux donner quelque chose; I will give thee something.

S. But, if *faire* is the first verb, the pronoun or pronouns 38^a always come immediately before it:

Je vous le ferai voir; I will let you see it.

S. *Voici* and *voilà*, accompanied by personal pronouns, govern 39^a them as the 34th rule requires. The reason is evident; those words are compounded of two parts of speech; namely, of the second person singular of the imperative mood of the verb *voir*, with

with the *s* left out; and of the particles or adverbs of place, *là* and *ici*, by abbreviation *ci*.

Voi, being a verb, governs pronouns as verbs do.

Then *voici* and *voilà* can hardly be called discursive particles, and are no more parts of speech than *du*, *des*, *au*, and *aux*, which are compounded words; the two first of the preposition *de*, and the article; and the two last of the preposition *à*, and the article.

The English expresses the meaning of *me voici*, *me voilà*, *je voici*, &c. by a turn peculiar to their language:—Here I am; here it is, &c.

Here, *ici*, abbreviated into *ci*, is an adverb of place; which, according to the French construction, is to be placed immediately after the verb.

I, which is the nominative in the English sentence, becomes the accusative in the French, and consequently a conjunctive pronoun.

Am is expressed in French by the verb *voi*; the nominative to which, *tu*, thou, is understood.

The French phraseology, literally translated into English, is thus; *Me see here*, viz. *See me here*.

40. The pronoun, annexed to the verb substantive objectively, is disjunctive: *C'est moi*; It is I: *C'est lui*; It is he.

En bien & *en mal*, *ils ont un caractère*; *ils sont eux*: (THOMAS, Essai sur les Éloges.)

They are distinguished from all by a peculiar character, both in their good and bad qualities; in every thing they are themselves.

41. * When the verb is in the imperative mood, without a negation, the pronoun or pronouns come last, and follow the same order as in English: *Ecoutez-le*, Hear him; *Portez-le lui*, Carry it to him.

- 41a. The preposition *to*, the sign of the dative in English, is not, in this case, expressed in French.

42. If the pronoun following the verb is of the first or second person, and in the dative case, the disjunctives *moi* and *toi* are used, instead of the conjunctives *me* and *te*: *Dites-moi*, Tell me; *Parlez-moi*, Speak to me.

S: It is very proper to use the disjunctives *moi* and *toi*, when the verb governs the dative; but it is against the rules of syntax,

tax, to use them with verbs governing the accusative; as in, *Suivez-moi*, Follow me; *Écoutez-moi*, Hear me. It is probably through a false imitation of *Dites-moi*, Tell me, or *Donnez-moi*, Give me; that *moi* is evidently used as the complement of the preposition *à* implied. When I say it is against the rules of syntax, it is because there are more than one reason to suppose, that *écoutez-me* and *suivez-me* were the first in use: 1st, though they say, *Dis-lui*, tell him; *dis leur*, tell them; *donnez-lui*, give him; *donnez-leur*, give them; they however say, *écoutez-le*, *suivez-la*, according to the rule. 2^{dly}, that the regular syntax is still used in many provincial dialects, and especially in that part of France which the French call, *Les Trois Evêchés* (those districts in which Metz, Toul, and Verdun, are the principal cities), and in Lorraine; where, in fact, they say, *écoutez-me*, *suivez-me*.

The provincial dialects are probably the ancient national language; as the difference there is among them proceeds from the causes which have brought on the various changes in the national language.

However, in this we must follow custom, although contrary 43. to syntax, and say, *Suivez-moi*, Follow me, instead of *Suivez-me*; and *Écoutez-moi*, Hear me, instead of *Écoutez-me*.

S. In *Donnez-m'en*, Give me some, it appears, by the analogy 44. of elision, that it is the vowel *e*, belonging to the conjunctive pronoun *me*, that is cut off: the disjunctive *moi* should be used. However, as the fault, if there be any, is in a manner covered by the elision, the deviation from the syntax does not appear so gross.

* When the verb is in the imperative mood, with a negation, 45. the pronoun or pronouns are placed immediately before the verb, and of course become conjunctive:

Ne me parlez pas; Do not speak to me.
Ne lui écrivez pas; Do not write to him.

S. Ne, in the above sentences, takes the lead; and its expressive *pas* or *point* is placed immediately after the verb.

S. The auxiliary verb *do*, when accompanied by the verb it 46. modifies, is never translated in French:

I do not love you; *Je ne vous aime pas*.
I do love you; *Je vous aime*.

NOTE

NOTE.

47. If two imperatives come together, with a conjunction copulative, the latter will have the pronoun come before it: *Voyez-la, & la consolez*; See her and comfort her; which is much better and more elegant than *voyez-la & consolez-la*.
48. With the verb *être* (in the sense of *appartenir*, to belong); *avoir*, to have; *penser*, to think; *songer*, to think; *viser*, to aim (respecting a person, and not a thing); *aller*, to go; *venir*, to come; *courir*, to run; *accourir*, to run to; *boire*, to drink; as
49. likewise with reciprocal verbs, the pronoun governed in the dative must be disjunctive, and must follow them, being in itself under the immediate government of the preposition *à*:
- | | |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| <i>Ce livre est à moi ;</i> | This book is mine, or belongs to me. |
| <i>Vous en avez un à lui (i. e. qui est à lui) ;</i> | You have one of his. |
| <i>Je songe, or Je pense à vous ;</i> | I am thinking of you. |
| <i>Il vise à eux ;</i> | He aims at them. |
| <i>Je vais à vous ;</i> | I am coming to you. |
| <i>Elle boit à vous ;</i> | He drinks to you. |
| <i>Nous nous fions à vous ;</i> | We trust to you. |
| <i>Cela s'adresse à moi ;</i> | That is addressed to me ; &c. |
50. In general, if there be more than one dative pronoun governed by the verb, the first pronoun only must be conjunctive; the others disjunctive, and must come after the verb :
- On me parle aussi bien qu'à vous & à eux ;*
They speak to me, as well as to you and to them.
51. But, when two dative pronouns personal are used, as in opposition or contradiction to each other, and also when they rather denote the order in which a thing must be done, they must both be disjunctive, and come after the verb :
- Je parle à lui, & non à vous ;* (or, *C'est à lui que je parle ; & non pas à vous ;*)
I speak to him, and not to you.
Donnez à lui d'abord, ensuite à elle, puis aux autres ;
Give to him first, then to her, afterward to the others.
- 51a. Disjunctive pronouns are always used in answer to questions,
- 51b. and after prepositions.
- Qui est-ce qui dit cela ?* Who says that?
Lui & eux (or, *C'est lui, ce sont eux*) ;
He and they ; or, It is he, It is they.
Pour moi, For me ; *Après lui*, After him ;
Devant elle, Before her ; &c.
52. S. In a familiar style, the French, without an apparent necessity, and as an expletive particle, sometimes use a personal pronoun conjunctive in the dative case; as in speaking of a young man :
- Vous me l'avez gâté ;* You have spoiled him.
- 52a. S. The conjunctive pronouns *me*, *te*, *se*, *nous*, and *vous*, are used with verbs which are reflected, both in French and in English ; and are placed before the verb, according to the 34th rule of Pronouns :

Je me blesse ; I hurt myself.

S. There

S. There are many verbs which are merely neuter; but which, in French, have the form of reflected verbs:

Je me repens; I repent.

S. The pronouns, when subjects to the verb, are not, in general, expressed in the second person singular, the first and the second persons plural of the imperative mood:

Parle, speak; *Lisons*, let us read; *Ecrivez*, write.

S. But the pronouns upon which the action of the verb falls, are expressed in French in the second person singular, the first and second persons plural; and are placed after the verbs, with reflected verbs, and those which have a reflected form:

Habillons-nous; Let us dress ourselves.

Levez-vous; Get up.

Vous and *nous* are here in the accusative case; and, as they are both conjunctive, they are properly made use of.

S. For the same reason, the conjunctive pronoun *te* should be used instead of the disjunctive *toi*, when the verb is in the second person singular of the imperative mood: but custom is against it:

Habille-toi; Dress thyself.

Peigne-toi; Comb thy head.

I cannot in this place (as well as in the 43d rule of pronouns) account for the deviation of grammar any otherwise than by supposing that the syntax has been given up for the harmony of expression; more especially as the true meaning is still retained, although the syntax is lost: and we may likewise observe, that the true syntax is still used in some of the provinces, where the harmony of sentences is naturally less attended to than in the capital.

It is evident that the diphthong *oi* in *moi*, has a fuller and more harmonious sound than the vowel *e* in *me*; which is so flat and dull, that it is frequently lost, in monosyllables placed in the middle of a sentence.

It occurs to me, that the reason why the syntax, with the accusative pronoun masculine in the third person singular, when placed after the imperative, has been preserved by the Parisians, is that they have, in a manner, rectified the dulness of the sound, by joining it with the verb, by dropping the *x*, giving rather a stronger sound to the *e* in *portez*, and making the *e* in *le* quite mute: for they do not pronounce *Portez-le*, Carry him, or it; and *Ecoutez-le*, Hear him; as the people in the provinces do; but as if it were written *portelle* and *écoutelle*.

This pronunciation only takes place, when the verb is in the second person plural of the imperative, and ending with a *x*; but as it is the person most used, and as the generality of French verbs end with a *x*, in that case the pronunciation above mentioned is in a manner the general rule, the deviations from it are its exceptions: then they pronounce *Portez-le*, when the pronoun is the emphatical word; and *Portons-le*, Let

Let us carry him or it; *Portez-le*, Carry him or it; whether the pronoun be the emphatical word or not.

Were those two persons as frequently used as the second person plural; the syntax would probably have been given up for the sake of harmony; that is, *lui* would have probably been used instead of *le*; as, from the nature of the preceding syllable, there is no possibility of rendering the sound of *le* more harmonious.

* *Ne*, *pas*, and *point*, are particles of negation answering to the English *not*. The French put *ne* before the verb, and *pas* or *point* after it, if the tense is simple; and between the auxiliary and participle, if it is compound. *Ne* must always come immediately after the word which expresses the subject, whether a noun or a pronoun:

The negatives are here considered only with respect to their position, which was necessary to be mentioned, in order to ascertain the arrangement of the sentence in general.

Un nombre infini de maîtres de langues, à Londres, enseignent ce qu'ils ne savent pas; & ce talent est bien considérable: car il ne faut pas beaucoup d'esprit pour montrer ce qu'on sait, mais il en faut infiniment pour enseigner ce qu'on ignore.

An infinite number of masters of languages, in London, teach what they do not know; and that is a very great talent indeed: for it does not require much wit to teach what we do understand, but a great deal to teach that which we do not.

L'homme n'est pas venu; The man is not come.

EXCEPTIONS.

56. Except. 1st. When the verb is at the second person, either singular or plural, of the imperative; in which case *ne*, which always comes before the verb, comes then even before the pronoun; which, if the verb is reciprocal, is joined to it: but *pas*, or *point*, comes in general after the verb:—

Ne faites pas cela; Do not do that. *Ne vous sachez point;* Do not be angry.

S. The subjects, that is to say the pronouns, are not expressed in the two above sentences: if they were, it would be by way of emphasis. Their right place would then be either in the beginning or at the end of the sentences. Consequently Chambaud's rule does not appear clear.

It is evident that the pronoun *vous*, in the second sentence, is the object and not the subject of the verb.

57. 2^{dly}. In sentences of interrogation:

Ne fais-je pas ce que vous me dites? Do not I do what you bid me?

Pas, or *point*, is here placed after the nominative.

58. 3^{dly}. On such occasions where the pronouns conjunctive, governing the verb, come after it. (See p. 143.)

Aussi ne prétend-il pas cela, &c. He does not pretend to that.

- 58a. S. The expletives *pas* and *point* are indifferently placed before or after the present or the infinitive:

Je crains de ne pas pouvoir; or, *De ne pouvoir pas le faire;*

I fear that I shall not be able to do it.

However the first construction is most in use.

Observe,

Observe, that the English render the preposition *de*, and the infinitive, by the conjunction *that*, and the future.

* When the verb is attended by two pronouns personal, viz. 59.
one in the accusative, and another in the dative, *the pronoun of
the dative must come before that of the accusative* :

D. A. D. A.
Je vous le dis ; I tell it to you : On me la donne ; They give it
to me : and both of them be placed before the verb.

EXCEPTIONS.

Except only, when the dative pronoun is of the third person (*lui* or *leur*); or 60, when the verb is in the imperative, for then the pronoun of the accusative comes before 61.

that of the dative: Vous le lui dites; You tell it him: Il la leur refuse; He refuses it.

A. D.
to them : *Donnez-le moi* ; Give it me : whereas, we say in the indicative,

D. A.
On me le donne; They give it to me.

S. However, we often say, in the imperative, *Donnez-moi*. 62.
le, Give it to me; but then we mean, Give it to me in preference.
Moi is here the emphatical word.

Y and *en* come after the other pronouns, and immediately before the verb :

Je vous les y enverrai ; I will send them to you there.

Je ne vous en parle pas ; I do not speak to you of it, or of them.

And where *en* and *y* meet together, *y* comes before *en* :

Je vous y en enverrai ; I will send you some there.

Je ne vous y en ferai pas tenir ;

I will remit you none [money] there.

The pronouns governed of the verb come after it (but in the 65. same order as when they come before it), when the verb is in the first, or second person plural of the imperative, without a negative:

Fions-nous-y ; Let us trust to it.

Donnez-lui-en ; Give him some.

Menez-les-y ; Take them there.

Menez-l'y ; Take him there.

Menez-nous-y ; Take us there.

Apportez-nous-y-en; Bring us some thither.

But, with a pronoun of the *first person singular*, there is a 65. deviation from the rule ; for,

Instead of saying

menez-moi-y,	we say,	menez-y-moi,	take me there.
envoyez-moi-y,	for the sake	envoyez-y-moi,	send me there.
portez-moi-y,	of harmony,	portez-y-moi,	carry me there.

S. Here

67. *S.* Here is another instance of the power of harmony over the construction, and even over the syntax of a language.

We do not say, according to the above rule,
Conduisez-y-moi; Conduct me there:

Still less, *Conduisez-moi-y*, or *Conduisez-m'y*: but we use the adverb of place, *là*, instead of *y*; and we say, *Conduisez-moi là*.

This is perhaps to avoid the meeting of the two hissing sounds of *sez* before *y*; *z* in French, before a vowel, has the sound of an *s*.

68. We say, in the *third person* of the imperative,

Qu'ils le fassent; Let them do it.

Qu'ils lui en parlent; Let them mention it to him.

68a. And in the other persons, *with a negative*,

Ne nous y fions pas; Let us not trust to it.

Ne lui en donnez pas; Do not give him any.

69. The following table will illustrate, by comparison, the difference in the position of the pronouns, with respect to the verb.

With the NEGATIVE.

69a.	<i>Ne nous y fions pas,</i>	let us not trust to it.
69b.	<i>ne lui en donnez pas,</i>	do not give him any.
69c.	<i>ne les y menez pas,</i>	do not take them there.
69d.	<i>ne l'y menez pas,</i>	do not take him there.
69e.	<i>ne nous y menez pas,</i>	do not take us there.
69f.	<i>ne m'y menez pas,</i>	do not take me there.
69g.	<i>ne m'y envoyez pas,</i>	do not send me there.
69h.	<i>ne m'y portez pas,</i>	do not carry me there.
69i.	<i>ne nous y en apportez pas,</i>	do not bring us any there.

Without the NEGATIVE.

69j.	<i>Fions-nous-y,</i>	let us trust to it.
69k.	<i>donnez-lui-en,</i>	give him some.
69l.	<i>prenez-les-y,</i>	take them there.
69m.	<i>prenez-l'y,</i>	take him there.
69n.	<i>prenez-nous-y,</i>	take us there.
69o.	<i>prenez-y-moi,</i>	take me there.
69p.	<i>envoyez-y-moi,</i>	send me there.
69q.	<i>portez-y-moi,</i>	carry me there.
69r.	<i>apportez-nous-y-en,</i>	bring us some there.

70. In sentences of interrogation, the nominative pronoun also comes after the verb:—*Suis-je*? am I? *Fais-je*? do I? which we shall see more particularly in treating of questions.

The pronouns conjunctive, whether governing, or governed of, the verb, i. e. whether used as subjects or objects to it, are sometimes repeated, and sometimes not.

The conjunctives *je, tu, nous, vous*, are repeated before each verb, when the verbs are in different tenses : as,

Je dis, & je dirai toujours ;

I say, and will always say.

Nous avons parlé, & nous parlerons encore pour lui ;

We have spoken for him, and will speak for him again.

But, when the tenses are alike, it is indifferent to repeat them or not :

Je pense, & dis que, or, Je pense, & je dis que, nous l'avons vu & touché ;

I think, and assert, that we have seen and felt it.

The pronouns of the third person, *il, elle, ils, elles*, need not be repeated in common conversation, though the tenses vary :

Il n'a jamais rien valu, & ne vaudra jamais rien ;

He never was, nor ever will be, good for any thing.

S. This pronoun is not repeated in enumeration (a rhetorical figure) :

Troublé, furieux, livré à son désespoir, il s'arrache les cheveux, se roule sur le sable, reproche aux Dieux leur rigueur, appelle en vain son secours la cruelle mort. TELEMAQUE.

Distracted, furious, abandoned to despair, he tears his hair, rolls himself on the sand, reproaches the Gods for their rigour, and calls cruel death in vain to his aid.

S. Neither is it expressed after the impersonal verb *il vient*, used for *il arrive*, preceded by the adverb *d'où*, and placed interrogatively, if it be followed by the conjunction *que* :

D'où vient que les hommes ne deviennent pas meilleurs, en devenant plus instruits ?

How comes it, that men do not always become better, as they improve in learning ?

All conjunctives are repeated, when in the same sentence there is a transition made from the affirmative to the negative, or from the negative to the affirmative ; as likewise when the second verb is preceded by one of these conjunctions, *mais, même, cependant, néanmoins, ainsi, aussi, ou*, or *que* standing for a conjunction :

Il l'aime, & il ne veut pas en convenir ;

He loves her, and will not own it.

Il le dit, mais il ne le pense pas ;

He says so, but he does not think so.

Elle *n'en* croit rien, & cependant elle *ne* veut pas l'épouser ;
 She believes nothing of it, and yet she will not marry him.
 Il *le* fait, & même il s'en vante ;
 He knows it, and even boasts of it.

Lorsque vous ferez votre devoir, & que vous vous comporterez bien ;

When you do your duty, and behave well.

Where *que* has the force of *lorsque*.

30. All conjunctives, governed, are repeated before their verbs :

Il me prie, & me conjure ; He desires and intreats me.
Je vous dis, & vous déclare ; I say and declare to you ; &c.

EXCEPTIONS.

31. Except when the verb is of the same signification with, or composed of the first, or only denotes a repetition of the action :

Il ne fait que vous dire & redire la même chose ;
 He does nothing but tell you over and over again the same thing.
Elle le fait, & défait, ou refait, quand bon lui semble ;
 She does it, and undoes, or does it again, whenever she pleases.

S. Sometimes one pronoun is used for another.

32. In a familiar style, *nous* is used instead of *il*, *elle*, *le*.

Madame de Sévigné, speaking of her son who had returned sick from the army without leave, says :

Il clopîne, *il* fait des remèdes ; & quoiqu'on *nous* (*le*) menace de toutes les sévérités de l'ancienne discipline, *nous* vivons (*il* vit) en paix dans l'espérance que *nous* (*il*) ne serons pas pendus ; — *nous* (*il*) causons, *nous* (*il*) lisons, &c.

He hobbles along, he takes medicines ; and though he is threatened with all the severity of ancient discipline, he lives however in tranquillity, and in hopes of not being hanged ; — he converses, he reads, &c.

This phraseology is much used by polite people, especially by ladies ; but it appears to require, that the person spoken of should be a near relation or an intimate friend, whose welfare is so closely connected with our own, that the use of the pronoun *nous* seems to be more the dictate of our feelings than of our thoughts.

When *nous* is used instead of *il*, which is the virtual subject in the preceding sentence, the verb must follow the number of its grammatical subject, or nominative ; that is to say, must be in the first person plural.

§ Concerning the several methods of asking QUESTIONS.

THERE are five different methods of asking questions in French.

1st. With the pronouns interrogative *qui* and *lequel* :

Qui croit cela ? Who believes that ?

Lequel des deux vous a plu davantage ?

Which of the two pleased you most ?

2^{dly}. With the pronominal adjective *quel*, and the noun of the subject of the question preceding the verb, as in the declarative form :

Quel homme seroit assez hardi pour — ?

What man would be so bold as to — ?

3^{dly}. With a pronoun personal, or the pronoun demonstrative *ce*, for the subject of the question ; coming after the verb, if the tense be simple ; and between the auxiliary and participle, if it be compound :

Est-ce votre livre ? Is it your book ?

L'avez-vous fait ? Have you done it ?

4^{thly}. With a noun or pronoun indeterminate ; in which case that (a) noun or pronoun begins the sentence, followed by the verb ; to which is annexed the conjunctive *il* or *elle*, *ils* or *elles*, agreeing in number and gender with the subject : and, (b) if the tense is compound, the participle follows the personal pronoun, as the auxiliary precedes it, in the place of the verb of the participle, when the tense is simple :

(a) *L'homme vient-il ?* Does the man come ?

(b) *La femme est-elle venue ?* Is the woman come ?

Quelqu'un fait-il ce que vous faites ?

Does any body do what you do ?

Personne ne fait-il cela ? Does not any body do that ?

5^{thly}. If the verb of the question is reciprocal, the sentence begins with the pronoun, which is the sign of the reciprocation, if the subject is expressed by a pronoun ; or, if by a noun, with that noun, the reciprocal pronoun following : and in both cases, a nominative pronoun is subjoined to the verb, under the regulations specified in the fourth method of asking questions :

Vous souvenez-vous de cela ? Do you remember that ?

Les matelots se font-ils enrichis dans cette expédition ?

Did the sailors enrich themselves in that expedition ?

9. If the verb ends with a vowel, and the pronoun begins with one, *-t-* is inserted, between two hyphens, to avoid the hiatus ; therefore write and pronounce,

Aime-t-il ? Does he like, or love ? &c.

10. S. And when the verb ends with a *d*, the *d* must be pronounced like *t* : as *Attend-il ?* Does he wait ? which is pronounced, *Attent-il ?*

11. The pronouns attending on the verb, keep the same order in the interrogative form, as in the declarative :

Le ferai-je ? Shall I do it ?

Le lui direz-vous ? Will you tell it him ?

Me le commandez-vous ? Do you order me to do it ?

Y en porterons-nous ? Shall we carry some thither ?

Ne leur y en a-t-il pas envoyé ?

Did he not send them some thither ?

NOTE.

12. It is usual in French, among polite, well-bred people, and in speaking to one in a higher station, or to whom we wish to shew particular respect, to use the third person of the pronoun instead of the second :

Comment se porte Monsieur ? (for, *Comment vous portez-vous ?*) How do you do ?

Sa Majesté l'ordonne-t-elle ? Does your Majesty order it ?

It has been before said, that when the question is asked with a pronoun personal of the first person, that pronoun comes after the verb :—*Suis-je ?* am I ? *Entends-je ?*

13. do I hear ?—in addition to which we must observe, 1. That in verbs of the first conjugation, wherein the first person ends in *e* not sounded, that *e* mute is changed into *é* acute, before the pronoun, which ends also in *e* not sounded : as, *Aimé-je ?* Do I love ? (for *Aime-je ?*) &c. 2. That a question cannot be asked in this manner with some verbs, especially with these five, *mentir*, to lie ; *perdre*, to lose ; *rampre*, to break ; *sentir*, to smell ; *dormir*, to sleep ; therefore, in the case of these verbs, the question must be stated in a different manner :—

Est-ce que je mens ? Do I lie ?

Croyez-vous que je mente ? Do you think I lie ?

Trouvez-vous que je rompe cela comme il faut ?

Do you think I break this as it should be ? &c.

The method of asking questions by *est-ce que* is of great use in French : but it serves less to seek, simply, information concerning any thing, than to assure others, that *we* do not require to be informed of it, or that the case is not as *they* think ; as also to intimate a surprise at an unexpected event, or a fear of any

15. future evil. When I say,—*Pleut-il ?* I only want to know

16. whether it rains or not ; but when I say,—*Est-ce qu'il pleut ?*

—*It does not rain, does it ?* I besides show my surprise at it. When I say,

I say, *A-t-il du jugement ?* Has he any judgment ? I merely 17:
inquire about the state of his judgment ; but when I say,—*Est-* 18:
ce qu'il a du jugement ? I intimate that I know he has no judg-
ment, or at least doubt of it, and wonder that he should be sup-
posed to have any. Again, when I say,—*Viendra-t-il ?* Will 19:
he come ? I only put a plain question ; but when I ask,—*Est-* 20:
ce qu'il viendra ? I show a surprise at, or fear of, his coming.
Sometimes this interrogative expression amounts to the same 21:
thing as an absolute negation :—*Est-ce que je joue ?* implies, *Je*
ne joue point ; and may be properly Englished, *Who games ?*
not I.

On the contrary, the same expression, with a negative (*n'est-* 22:
ce pas que), signifies always that we take that for certain which is
the subject of the question, and want only the concurrence of
other men's opinions, as a confirmation of our own. *N'est-ce* 23:
pas, it is to be observed, may equally as well begin or end the
sentence ; with this difference, that when it begins the sentence, 23a:
it is always followed by the conjunction *que*, connecting it with
the rest of the sentence :—*N'est-ce pas qu'il pleut ?* or, *Il pleut,*
n'est-ce pas ? The following comparative view of these distinc-
tions will illustrate them in the clearest manner.

Simple Interrogation, for the sake of information.	Interrogation, implying doubt, disbelief, & surprise.	Interrogation, implying conviction and belief.
<i>Pleut-il ?</i>	<i>Est-ce qu'il pleut ?</i>	<i>N'est-ce pas qu'il pleut ?</i> or, <i>Il pleut, n'est-ce pas ?</i>

§ Particular observations upon the construction of the PRONOUNS
PERSONAL of the THIRD PERSON.

THE pronouns personal of the third person, either govern- 24:
ing, or being governed of, a verb, are indifferently used, as
has been already observed, for all kinds of substances, rational
and irrational, animate and inanimate.

But, when a question is put respecting irrational and inani- 25:
mate objects, the pronoun which follows the verb *être*, which

may occur in the answer, must be the conjunctive, supplying the pronoun *le* (of which particularly hereafter) :

Est-ce-là la montagne dont vous parliez ? Oui, ce l'est ; (not, C'est elle).

Is that the hill you were speaking of ? Yes, it is.

Est-ce-là votre livre ? Oui, ce l'est ; (not, C'est lui).

Is that your book ? Yes, it is.

S. That pronoun is not, in general, expressed in English.

26. Whereas, if the question concern *rational* creatures, the pronoun personal is used :

Sont-ce-là vos gens ? Ce sont eux.

Are these your people ? Yes, they are.

Est-ce-là la dame dont vous m'avez parlé ? C'est elle.

Is this the lady you spoke to me of ? Yes, it is she.

NOTE.

27. And here I cannot help making mention of an instance in which, contrary to the last rule, the pronoun personal cannot be used, although the subject of the question is a rational creature. Seeing a man and a woman whom you suppose that you know, you accost them thus :—*Etes-vous Monsieur un tel ?* Are you Mr. such a one ? *Madame une telle ?* Mrs. such a one ? They must answer you, —*Je le suis ; Je la suis ;* Yes, I am : for, should they say, *Je suis lui, Je suis elle*, then the personal pronouns of the first and third person would be applied to the same person, at one and the same time, and by the same person ; which would be a grammatical solecism, and consequently improper.

28. *Il, elle, ils, elles*, are used throughout all their cases, when objects are personified.

L'amour-propre est captieux ; c'est lui qui nous séduit : de lui viennent la plupart de nos maux ; & c'est trop souvent à lui qu'il faut s'en prendre.

Self-love is deceitful ; it seduces us : from it most of our evils proceed ; and upon it only we must lay the blame of them.

La vertu est précieuse : d'elle seule nous devons attendre de véritables biens ; c'est à elle que nous devons notre vraie gloire ; & c'est pour elle qu'il faut sacrifier tout ce que ce monde a de plus agréable & de plus séduisant.

Virtue is precious : from it alone true blessings are to be expected ; to it we owe our true glory ; and for it we must sacrifice every thing agreeable and alluring in this world.

- It is upon the same principle that we must account for the following differences of expression with respect to the pronouns, although the subject of our discourse is the same. In speaking
- 30.

ing of a sword, I say,—*Je lui dois la vie* ; I owe my life to it :
 and again, speaking of the same sword, I say,—*J'y ferai mettre* 306.
la nouvelle garde ; I shall have a new hilt put to it. Mention-
 ing mineral waters, I say,—*Je leur suis redevable de ma santé* ;
 I am indebted to them for my health : and again, referring to
 them,—*On y a fait de beaux réservoirs* ; Fine reservoirs have
 been built for them. Whence this change of pronouns ? It
 is because, when I speak of the sword, as having saved my
 life, and of the waters, as having given me health, I attribute
 to them *energy* and *action*, and therefore virtually personify them ;
 whereas, in observing of the sword, that I shall have it new
 mounted, and of the waters, that they are inclosed in a fine
 reservoir, I reduce them to their passive, inanimate condition.
 In the first instance, therefore, the personal pronoun is used with
 propriety ; while on the contrary, in the second, the pronoun
 applicable to things without life can alone be inserted.

The conjunctives *lui* and *leur* are said of *animated* substances, 31,
 which are nevertheless *irrational* ; such as *horses*, *birds*, &c.

speaking	{	an horse,	}	we say	{	<i>Donnez-lui à manger</i> ; Give him
of						birds,
						wings.

But *lui* and *leur*, governed by a *preposition*, can never be said of 32,
 irrational and inanimate substances : from hence observe,

That in those cases where *lui*, *elle*, *leur*, &c. relating to
 irrational and inanimate substances, would be governed by a
 preposition, if they could be used with propriety ; to remove 33.
 the difficulty we must use an adverb, the signification of which
 comprehends, and answers to, that of the preposition and pro-
 noun, which are therefore omitted : thus, instead of saying,

- (a) *Prenez ce cheval, & montez sur lui* ;
- (b) *Ouvrez ce cabinet, & mettez-vous dans lui* ;
- (c) *On étoit autour de lui or d'elle* ; (speaking of a tree or mountain.)
- (d) *D'abord on plaça la poutre, & après elle une barre de fer,*

say,

- (a) ——— *& montez dessus* ; Take this horse, and ride him.
- (b) ——— *& mettez-vous dedans* ; Open this closet, and

get in.

- (c) *On étoit à l'entour* ; They were round it.

- (d) ——— *& ensuite une barre de fer* ; They first placed
 the beam, and then an iron bar.

NOTE.

The following words being both prepositions and adverbs, and being the one or the other, as they are or are not, followed by a noun or pronoun, when any of them meet with a pronoun which cannot properly refer to inanimate things, we have only to suppress such pronoun, and the word which was a preposition becomes an adverb; whereby the error is entirely avoided. It is just necessary to premise, that some of these words require, as prepositions, *de* to come between them and the pronoun, which, in their adverbial use, is omitted, together with the pronoun.

<i>à côté,</i>	afide;	<i>* dessus,</i>	underneath;
<i>à couvert,</i>	sheltered;	<i>au-dessous,</i>	below;
<i>à l'abri,</i>	under shelter;	<i>* par dessous,</i>	under;
<i>en dedans,</i>	on this side;	<i>loin,</i>	far;
<i>au-delà,</i>	on that side, beyond;	<i>proche, for près de,</i>	near;
<i>auprès,</i>	near, by;	<i>au travers, for à</i>	} across;
<i>* avec,</i>	with;	<i>travers de,</i>	
<i>* dessus,</i>	upon;	<i>* tout contre,</i>	hard by;
<i>au-dessus,</i>	above, over;	<i>tout auprès,</i>	just by;
<i>* par dessus,</i>	over and above;	<i>vis-à-vis,</i>	over against;
		<i>aux environs</i>	round about;

Therefore, as, speaking of a brute or a tree, we cannot say, Mettez-vous *vis-à-vis* de lui, Place yourself over against it; we drop the *de* and the pronoun, and say, Mettez-vous *vis-à-vis*, and fully express thereby the meaning intended.

* These words, when used as prepositions, do not require another preposition after them.

§ Of the use and construction of the general and indeterminate PRONOUN *On*.

THIS pronoun is called *general* and *indeterminate*, because it is always used in a vague, unspecified sense, when we mean to speak without alluding to any one particular person;—of men in general.

NOTE.

- The author of the *Grammaire Raisonnée* supposes *on* to be a corruption of *homme*; *on étudie, on joue, &c.* amounting nearly to the same as *homme étudie, homme joue*: and he founds his conjecture on the fact of *homme* [or *man*] being in some instances used in Italian, German, and English, in the sense of *on*; and on the circumstances of *on* taking sometimes the article *le*, with the apostrophe [*l'on*] as *homme* would: thus, he says we say, *l'on étudie, l'on joue, &c.* because people formerly said, *l'homme étudie, l'homme joue, &c.* P. 79.

1. *On* is rendered into English variously:—*On croiroit, one*
2. *would think; On dit, they, the world, people, men, say; On*
3. *apprend, we learn. But on* is more generally, and better rendered

dered, by converting the verb from the active voice into the passive :

On croit ; It is thought.

On tint hier un conseil à Whitehall ; on en doit tenir un, demain, au palais de St. James ;

Yesterday a council was held at Whitehall ; another will be held to-morrow at St. James's.

Where observe, that the case *after* the verb in *French*, is made the case *before* the verb in *English* ; as also, that the *active French* verb corresponds with the *passive English* one :

On tint un conseil ; A council was held.

L'on is sometimes used for *on*, for the sake of harmony, when two vowels would otherwise disagreeably clash, and produce an ungrateful sound, or confuse by any means the sense. The ear must, on such occasions, be consulted :

En cette extrémité l'on ne sauroit faire autre chose ;

In this case nothing else can be done.

Voilà ce que je crois, & l'on ne me persuadera jamais le contraire ;

This is what I think, and nobody shall ever persuade me to the contrary.

C'est un lieu où l'on vit à bon marché ;

It is a place very cheap to live in.

But in general *on* is better than *l'on* ; and when it once occurs in a sentence, must continue throughout it, as often as repeated, without the article *le* being prefixed :

On le loue, on le blâme, on le menace ; on emploie avec lui la douceur & la rigueur, & malgré tout cela on n'en sauroit venir à bout :

They command, they blame, and threaten him ; gentle and severe means are used ; and nevertheless, he cannot be reclaimed.

S. Though *on* always requires the verb in the singular ; nevertheless, when it refers to a plurality, the adjective or pronoun following must be in the plural :

On se battoit en désespérés ;

They fought like desperate men : that is to say,

Les deux partis se battoient comme des gens désespérés ;

Both parties fought like desperate men.

On se mésoit les uns des autres ;

They mistrusted each other : that is to say,

Les

Les deux partis se méfioient les uns des autres ;
Both parties mistrusted each other.

2. S. In the above case, the singular, with regard to the adjective and pronoun, would have been quite absurd. Why should not the adjective following *on*, referring to a woman, agree with its virtual subject in preference to its grammatical one? If we seek for any authority, we shall find a respectable one in Madame de Sévigné :

Un malheur continuel pique & offense ; on hait d'être houpillée
(alluding to herself) *par la fortune :*

Continual vexations nettle and hurt us ; we hate to be worried by fortune.

Ayez soin de me mander, si vous avez reçu mes lettres ; quand on est fort éloignée, (alluding to herself) on ne se moque plus des lettres qui commencent par, J'ai reçu la vôtre.

Pray take care to inform me if you have received my letters ; for when we are at a distance, we do not ridicule letters which begin by, I received yours.

On est libérale (alluding to herself) des jours ; on les jette à qui en veut ;

We are prodigal of time ; we throw it away on any body.

It is very common in France, among sensible women, to use the feminine in this case.

But every grammarian will start, and say, that when we speak in general, we must put the adjective in the masculine singular, though it may refer to a woman, or a noun in the plural.

One amongst others blamed the following concord in the *Princesse de Clèves* (a celebrated novel of the last century) :

Il étoit difficile de n'être pas surprise, (referring to a woman) quand on ne l'avoit jamais vu :

It was impossible not to be surprised at the first sight of an object we had never seen before.

According to him, it should be *surpris*.

I am on the ladies' side of the question, as I would always vote for a sensible woman against a mere grammarian.

Women, in general, have less learning than men ; and for that reason they have more common sense in those cases where the latter are fettered by their learning.

In this case the mistake lies on the grammarian's side, as well as in that of the relative pronoun *le* (noticed in its proper place), which they make indeclinable, though it refers to a woman.

Women never lose sight of the gender of the *real* subject of the sentence, let its metamorphosis be what it will; and, according to the rule of concord, make the following adjective or pronoun agree with it: but grammarians lose sight of it, and, by a mistaken nicety, make the adjective or pronoun agree with an imaginary being *when we speak in general*; or perhaps with *on*, whose grammatical power over the adjective is not so direct as over the verb, and should not hinder the adjective from showing, in a clear manner, whether the subject of the sentence is a man or a woman; because good grammar only consists in clearness of sense.

NOTE

French authors often use *on* or *nous*, when they mention themselves, as being more modest than *je*; *on* leaving it undetermined who is alluded to, and *nous* implying that they are not singular in their opinion, and therefore not self-sufficient.

S. It results from the above observation, that the real cause of the use of the indeterminate pronoun *on*, instead of the personal pronouns, in general, is to avoid the self-sufficiency, I had almost said, the rudeness of the latter. Madame de Sévigné, in the last rule but one, observed this propriety; but at the same time knowing that it hurt the clearness of the sense, in order to re-establish it, she made the participle or adjective following agree with the virtual subject of the sentence.

S. *On* is further used for *je* and *nous*: when we have not seen an intimate friend for a long while, we say, in a familiar andocular style, *Il y a long-tems qu'on ne vous a vu*; We have not seen you for this great while—for, *Il y a long-tems que je ne vous ai vu*, or *que nous ne vous avons vu*.

On has for its relations *soi*, *de soi*, *à soi*, *se*.

Soi is used in sentences the subject whereof is a noun, taken in an universal, indefinite sense, or a pronoun indeterminate. In such cases it is used (but rarely) as a *nominative*, put in apposition with the *subject* of the verb, and requiring *même* to be joined to it: it occurs however frequently as an *object*, and without the addition of *même*:

Chacun doit veiller soi-même à ses affaires;

Every one must mind his own business.

L'homme n'aime que soi; Man loves himself alone.

Chacun agit pour soi; Every one acts for himself.

Qui n'est bon que pour soi, n'est pas digne de vivre;

He who cares for nobody but himself, does not deserve to live.

Soi is especially applicable to *inanimate* substances; as the pronoun

pronoun *lui*, except in some few cases, is confined to *animate substances* :

Le vice est odieux de soi ; Vice is hateful of itself.

La terre est de soi fertile ; The earth is fruitful of itself.

4. Although, with *nouns feminine*, we may use *elle* with as much propriety as *soi* :

La terre renferme en soi, or *en elle toutes les semences* ;

The earth contains all sorts of seed in itself.

5. *Soi*, however, as we have just now seen, is applied to rational creatures, when they are spoken of *indefinitely* :

L'homme n'aime que soi ; Man loves himself alone.

6. But, if the noun be taken in a particular definite sense, *lui* is used instead of *soi* :

C'est un homme qui n'est bon que pour lui, & qui parle de lui sans cesse ;

He is a man who minds himself alone, and is constantly speaking of himself.

7. EXCEPT in some sentences like the following, where *soi* refers to something *external*, with respect to the person to whom it is applied :

Il ne porte jamais d'argent sur soi ;

He never has any money about him.

8. *Se*, the accusative of *on*, is chiefly used with verbs reflected, 9. and with verbs impersonal :

Se repentir ; To repent *one's self*.

Il s'agit ; The point is.

10. *Soi* may be used in the plural, with a preposition, in reference to *inanimate things* :

Ces choses sont bonnes de soi ;

Those things are good of themselves.

11. But, if the pronoun relates to *animate things*, *eux-mêmes*, *elles-mêmes*, are used in its place :

Vos filles devraient prendre plus de soin d'elles-mêmes ;

Your daughters should take more care of themselves.

Of MÊME.

1. * *MEME* is a kind of pronominal word, joined to pronouns personal, disjunctive, and demonstrative ; also to nouns communicating

communicating a particular force or emphasis to the word to which is added: *Moi-même*, myself; *nous-mêmes*, ourselves; *celà-même*, that very thing; *la vertu même*, virtue itself; &c.

S. When the pronoun to which *même* is added comes after the verb, that pronoun must also precede the verb.

Consequently the following sentence is not exact:

Vous êtes chargés de rendre justice aux peuples; commencez par rendre à vous-mêmes;

You are appointed to render justice to the people; begin by doing justice to yourselves.

It should be, *par vous la rendre à vous-mêmes*.

S. It is perhaps not out of place to mention here the difference between *soi-même* and *lui-même*; when the former is governed by a verb which requires no preposition before it:

Il se loue soi-même; He praises his own person.

Il se loue lui-même; He is his own trumpeter; (if I may be allowed this expression;) or, He sounds his own praise.

In the first sentence *soi-même* is the object of the verb; in the second, *lui-même* is an expletive of *il* in the same case by apposition, that is, in the nominative case.

Même, with the article, is besides an adjective signifying the same, and relating to some noun expressed or understood:

Les mêmes accidens; The same accidents.

Elisabeth, reine d'Angleterre, avoit choisi pour devise, Toujours la même;

Elisabeth, queen of England, chose for her motto, Always the same.

S. It appears by the following sentence, that it is not *même* that requires the article, but the limited sense in which the substantive is taken:

C'est l'homme même; It is the man himself.

S. When *même* is placed before *homme*, it has quite another signification:

C'est le même homme; It is the same man.

The first phraseology answers to the *homo ipse* of the Latins; and the second, to their *idem vir*.

S. As *même* has something of a relative signification, it does not admit of another adjective with its substantive; otherwise there would be a kind of pleonasm. Thus the following sentence,

tence, taken from a History of England lately published in France, is erroneous :

Le Lord Bonville eut la tête tranchée : Thomas Kyriel eut le même indigne sort ;

Lord Bonville was beheaded : Thomas Kyriel suffered the same undeserved punishment.

It should be *le même sort* ; *indigne* should have been mentioned before.

3. S. In the comparative sense, the objects compared must after *même*, be connected by the conjunction *que*, and not by the preposition *de* ; as St. Evrémont, in speaking of the Romans, says :

Les esclaves s'animoient du même esprit de leur maître ; (it should be *que*)

The slaves were animated by the same spirit as their masters.

9. S. *Au même* is employed, instead of *à la même chose*, with the verb *revenir* :

Cela reviendra au même (à la même chose) ;

That will come to the same thing at last.

10. S. Chambaud says, that the adverb *même*, even, is sometimes spelt with an *s* at the end of it, for the sake of rendering the sentence more harmonious ; but that liberty is only allowed to poets.

11. S. The adverb *de même*, alike, is always spelt without an *s* :

Elle est inconstante ; toutes sont de même ;

She is inconstant ; they are all alike.

12. S. When *de même* is an adverb of comparison, it requires the conjunction *que* after it :

Il fondit sur lui de même que l'oiseau de proie fait sur la perdrix :

He darted on him as a bird of prey does on a partridge.

13. S. If we begin the first member of a comparison by *de même que*, we commonly begin the second by *de même* :

De même que la cire molle reçoit aisément toutes sortes d'impressions & de figures, de même un jeune homme reçoit facilement toutes les impressions qu'on veut lui donner ;

As soft wax easily receives every form, so a young man is susceptible of every impression we wish to make upon him.

S. Tou

S. *Tout* is added to *de même* as an expletive, to give more force and energy to that adverb :

Il m'a offensé tout de même que vous ;

He offended me in the very same manner as he offended you.

S. There is a compound adverb *à même*, which the dictionary of the French Academy notes as a common, or rather a vulgar expression ; but which I insert here on account of its great and general use :

Buvez à même le pot ; Drink out of the mug.

It is needless after this translation to give any further explanation.

§ Of the use and construction of the CONJUNCTIVE SUPPLYING PRONOUN *le*.

THIS pronoun is called *conjunctive*, from its being always joined (like the pronouns personal conjunctive) to the verb. It not only supplies the place of nouns, (in which it performs an office common to all pronouns properly so called) but it stands for whole sentences, which accounts for its being also called the *supplying pronoun*.

Le, and its relations *en* and *y*, are used instead of the nouns *lui*, *elle*, *eux*, *de lui*, *d'elle*, *d'eux*, *d'elles*, *à lui*, *à elle*, *à eux*, *à elles*, (which, as has been already observed, cannot always be said of irrational and inanimate substances) and relate to the *person*, *thing*, or *place*, spoken of.

En has always, mediately or immediately, the force of the genitive or ablative case.

Y, of the dative.

En and *y* are both referrable to the singular as well as to the plural number, and to the masculine as well as to the feminine gender.

Vous êtes le maître de le faire, & moi je ne le suis pas ; (for, *je ne suis pas le maître, &c.*)

You are at liberty to do it, I am not.

Ils sont heureux, & nous ne le sommes pas ; (for, *nous ne sommes pas heureux.*)

They are happy, and we are not.

Newton vous plaît ; vous en parlez toujours ; (for, *de Newton.*)
 You like Newton ; you are always speaking of him.

Ce sont des orgueilleuses ; ne m'en parlez pas ; (for, *de ces orgueilleuses.*)

They are proud creatures ; do not speak to me of them.

N'ayant pu apparemment convenir de députés auprès de sa majesté, étoit notre agent lui-même qui étoit obligé de leur en servir ;
 (SULLY) (for, *d'agent.*)

It seems that not being able to agree about the choice of deputies to be placed near his majesty, our agent was obliged to fill that department himself.

Comme elle ne vouloit pas se taire, il prit un bâton, & lui en donna un coup ; (for, *du bâton, where en has an ablative force.*)

As she would not hold her tongue, he took a stick, and gave her a blow with it.

Je ne m'en faisois pas prier long-tems ; (for, *là-dessus, sur cet article ; about, concerning, on, that subject.*)

I did not require much entreaty.

Sans attendre d'en être requis ; (SULLY) (for, *d'être requis de le faire.*)

Without waiting till he was desired to do it.

Il s'en ouvrit à ; (VERTOT, Rev. Rom.) (for, *Il s'ouvrit de cet avis à.*)

He opened his mind to.

Venez-vous de Paris ? Oui, j'en viens ; (for *de Paris, which is an ablative.*)

Do you come from Paris ? Yes, I come from that place.

Monsieur — est sorti de famille de N —, qui a été toujours noble : vous en êtes sorti vous-même ; (for, *de la famille de N —, which is also ablative.*)

Mr. — is descended from the family of N —, which has always been a noble family ; you yourself are descended from that family.

Quand un homme est mort, on n'y pense plus ; (for, *à cet homme.*)
 When a man is dead, he is no more thought of.

Ce sont des folies ; ne vous y fiez pas ; (for, *à ces folies.*)

They are foolish things ; do not trust to them.

Je dois être à Paris dans six mois : y devez-vous être alors ? (for, *à Paris.*)

I shall be at Paris in six months time ; shall you be there ?

Il l'a fait, mais il n'y gagnera rien ; (for, à cela, or à cette action.)

He did it, but he will not get any thing by it.

Il s'est engagé dans une étrange affaire : il n'y réussira pas, (for, à cette affaire.)

He is engaged in a strange business : he will not succeed in it.

Vous n'y êtes pas ; (for, au but.)

You have not hit the mark.

Vous vous y prenez mal ; (for, à cette affaire.)

You do not go the right way about it.

Il est en repos ; que n'y êtes-vous aussi ? (SE'VIGNE') (for, en repos, parvenu à ce point.)

He is quiet ; why are not you so too ?

In the following instances *le*, *en*, and *y*, stand in the place of sentences :

On ne me trompe point ; je ne puis le croire, or, je n'en puis rien croire ; (for, qu'on veuille me tromper, or qu'on me trompe.)

They do not deceive me ; I cannot believe they would.

Je n'ignore pas sur quoi ni pour quoi il dit cela ; mais je ne lui en fais pas semblant ; (SULLY) (for, de n'ignorer pas sur quoi il dit cela.)

I am not ignorant why he says so ; but I feign to know nothing about it.

On dit qu'il doit commander l'armée ; mais je ne puis y ajouter foi ; (for, à ce qu'il doit commander l'armée.)

They say he is to command the army ; but I cannot believe it.

CRITICAL OBSERVATIONS concerning *en* and *y*.

Chambaud seems to think *en* in the following instance not to be a genitive ; he is, however mistaken, as we shall easily discover :

[*Peut-être que la compassion est une des plus aimables vertus ;] du moins c'en est une grande.*

Compassion is perhaps one of the most amiable virtues ; it is at least one of the principal of them.

Where *en* stands for *des vertus*, and the sentence is elliptical, for—*c'est une grande vertu des vertus*. This is what grammarians call a *partitive sentence* ; like *dexter oculorum*, which is the same as *dexter oculus oculorum*. See the subject explained, Gram. Lat. Port Royal, p. 411 and 416.

6. So, in the following instance, *en* is genitive, notwithstanding what the same grammarian would insinuate :

Si vous voulez voir de beaux tableaux, il en a ;

If you wish to see fine pictures, he has some.

En is there the representative of *de beaux tableaux*, which is a partitive phrase, implying some fine pictures. Now these partitive expressions are genitive ; for, as Buffier very justly observes, they are elliptical for *une partie des beaux tableaux qui se trouvent au monde* ; and in this view, *en*, referring to a genitive, and representing it, must of course be genitive itself ; i. e. must retain its natural force.

7. The following use of *en* is curious ; but yet, I think, may be accounted for :

Il en est de la poésie comme de la peinture ; il faut qu'on soit né poète & peintre ; autrement on ne fera que de méchans vaudevilles, & on ne peindra que des dessus-de-porte. Here *en* has an anticipated connection with the sentence which follows,—*Il faut qu'on soit né poète & peintre* ; in the same manner as if the order of the sentence had been,—*Il faut qu'on soit né poète & peintre, il en est de la poésie comme de la peinture* ; Nature must form the poet and the painter. It is in that particular that they are alike ; that is their common point of resemblance. It only marks the dependance of the member in

8. which it occurs on some other : the great difficulty is to justify its dependance on a following, and not a preceding member ; but this is not singular in French.

Ils s'indignoient de ce qu'on les tenoit dans une servitude humiliante ;

They were filled with indignation, because they were kept in a humiliating slavery.

Ils se retranchèrent à ce qu'on les traitât d'égaux ;

They only required to be treated as equals.

Nous ne différons qu'en ce que l'un fait ce changement par deux procédés, & l'autre par le moyen d'un seul ; (RAYNAL).

We differ only in this, that the one makes this alteration by two proceedings, and the other by means of one only.

In which sentences *ce* is a pronoun, referring to the sentence which performs the parts of its substantiye.

9. In like manner in this expression,—*J'en étois ici de ma lettre*, *en* stands for *de ma lettre*, which is still idiomatically added, for—*J'en étois ici*, I was at that part of it ;
10. of what?—of my letter ;—*J'en étois ici de ma lettre*. Just as we also say in French—*C'est un vice que l'avarice*, for *l'avarice est un vice* ; Avarice is a vice. I would just observe, that *ici* is probably a corruption of *à ci*, amounting to *à cet endroit*, which accounts for *de ma lettre* being in the genitive.

Les plus malheureux en étoient à ces faveurs qui assurent que la dernière viendra à la première occasion ; J. B. ROUSSEAU.

The most wretched had received those favours, which foretel that the last will be obtained on the first occasion.

Where *en* serves to show that those favours were granted by a person before mentioned, and that this sentence is therefore dependent on a preceding one.

Ma mère a conçu des soupçons, mon père n'en est pas là ; J. J. ROUSSEAU, Nouvelle Héloïse. *En* refers to the *soupçons* formed by the mother ; and *là* is used because the mother's suspicions, having outstripped the father's, occupy a place beyond them : the father's are therefore not *là* or *so far*. The sentence implies then, *Ma mère a conçu des soupçons ; mon père n'est pas là (où ma mère est) de soupçons*—à ce point, à ce degré de soupçons.

10. S. When the sentence begins with the relative pronoun *quoi* (what), in the genitive or dative case, the nominative, if it be a noun, comes after the verb, both in simple and compound tenses :

A quoi *pense* cet homme ? What is that man thinking of ?
 A quoi *a pense* cet homme ? What did that man think of ?
 A quoi *s'occupe* votre frère ? What is your brother doing ?
 De quoi *se mêle* votre ami ? What has your friend to do with it ?

We also say, De quoi *votre ami se mêle-t-il* ? A quoi *votre frère s'occupe-t-il* ? But as there are no synonymous phrases any more than synonymous words, these two constructions must have different meanings. In the first construction, *à quoi s'occupe votre frère*, we only want to know what your brother is doing : but in the second we further intimate that we doubt whether he is doing what he should do, or has been desired to do, or something similar to that. In general, this second construction is used by a superior to his inferior.

In this, as well as in other observations, I only humbly offer my opinion.

In the following phrase—*Je n'en puis plus*, *en* implies whatever the speaker had before been doing, which he can no longer do. Thus, if after running, you felt yourself fatigued, and stopping short, cried out, *Je n'en puis plus*, the meaning of your exclamation would be, *Je ne puis plus courir*. It is generally rendered into English by—I am quite spent.

S. *En* in general stands for the regimen of a noun, verb, participle, or adjective ; that is, for the preposition *de* and its complement. We say,

Je ne veux pas le faire ; mais j'en suis tenté.

I will not do it ; but I am much inclined to do it.

S. But there are some circumstances in which custom requires the real regimen to be expressed. We do not say,

Si je veux faire cela, j'en suis libre ; but *je suis libre de le faire.*

If I have a mind to do it, I am at liberty to do it.

S. Correctness and elegance of style require that *en* should rather be the supplement of a noun than that of a verb ; especially if there is in the language a noun which expresses the same meaning as the verb.

We say, *Je m'en suis dégoûté*, in speaking of *l'étude* ; I was disgusted at it : but never, *J'avois commencé d'étudier, je m'en suis dégoûté.*

It is with reason that the following sentence of Mr. d'Alembert, taken from his *Éloge de La Motte*, has been criticised in *L'Année Littéraire* (a French Review).

Après ses humanités, il (La Motte) étudia, comme beaucoup d'autres hommes célèbres, pour être avocat, & s'en dégoûta bientôt comme eux.

He should have said :

Après ses humanités, il s'appliqua, comme beaucoup d'autres hommes célèbres, à l'étude des lois, & s'en dégoûta bientôt comme eux : that is, *il se dégoûta bientôt de l'étude des lois.*

After the study of the classics, he (*La Motte*), like other celebrated men, applied to that of the law, and, like them, was soon disgusted with it,

S. Though the preposition *de*, and its complement, and the pronoun *en* supplying them, should not meet in the same sentence, since *en* stands for *de* and its complement ; yet that kind of pleonasm has sometimes a good effect, by presenting an inversion which favours of elegance.

J'estime, dit St. Evremond, le précepteur de Néron, l'ambitieux qui prétendait à l'empire ; du philosophe & de l'écrivain, *je n'en fais pas grand cas ;*

I esteem, said St. Evremond, Nero's ambitious preceptor, who aimed at the empire ; but I have a very indifferent opinion of the philosopher and the writer.

St. Evremond could have said, *Je ne fais pas grand cas de l'écrivain & du philosophe ;* but the irregular construction is more harmonious and energetic : and in this construction the author uses diversification of style, which is so important a talent, that

whoever is not possessed of it cannot be an elegant writer, be his other qualifications ever so great.

16. *Y*, says Pere Buffier, is seldom said of persons; though *le* and *en* commonly refer to them. We say of a man very properly, — *Je n'en fais point de cas*, I have no esteem for him; but by no means, *C'est un bonnête homme, attachez-vous-y*; but, *attachez-vous à lui*; He is an honest man, court him. Although we say, *Je connois cette homme, je ne m'y fie pas*; I know that man, I do not trust him: (where, says Buffier, "*Je ne m'y fie pas à l'air d'une expression proverbiale.*") We say too, *Quand un homme est mort, on n'y pense plus*; When a man is dead, he is no more thought of: because an homme is no more determinate than *quelqu'un*; or perhaps because *un homme mort* is rather to be considered as an inanimate substance, than as the remains of a rational creature. But in general it is much better to use *à lui* than *y*, in speaking of persons, except in answering a question; — *Pensez-vous à votre ami? Oui, j'y pense*: Are you thinking of your friend? Yes, I am: which, says the grammarian, is better than *Je pense à lui*.
23. *En* and *y* are indeclinable: *le* is generally so, except when it relates to a substantive; —

Est-ce là votre pensée? Pouvez-vous douter que ce ne la soit?
(where *la* stands for *ma pensée*.)

Is that your thought? Can you doubt it?

Etes-vous Mademoiselle Caroline Scellier? Oui, je la suis;
Are you Miss, &c.? Yes, I am.

Sont-ce là vos chevaux, vos outils? Ce les sont; (for, *vos chevaux, vos outils*.)

Are these your horses, your tools? Yes, they are.

NOTE.

25. Chambaud says, that *le* is also declinable in the singular number, when a woman is speaking of herself, in sentences like the following:

Je suis malade, & je la serois long-tems, sans vos soins;

I am ill, and should remain so a long time, were it not for your care:

But Restaut, in his *Grammaire Raisonnée*, says that the authority of the most sensible women, and of the generality of good authors, is against it. His reason for its being declinable when referring to a substantive, and indeclinable when to an adjective, I think a very good one. I give it in his own words: "*Ayant rapport à un nom substantif, il doit en prendre le genre & le nombre, comme un adjectif; ce qui n'arrive pas, quand il n'a rapport précisément qu'à un nom adjectif, qui n'a par lui-même ni genre ni nombre, mais seulement par le substantif auquel il est joint, & sur lequel le ne tombe point dans le cas dont il s'agit ici.*" p. 92.

- 25a. S. Let us add to this authority that of an able modern grammarian, Mr. Descartier, the editor of the last edition of Chambaud's Grammar:

"The French Academy, and the best grammarians, do not admit of that nice distinction for women when they speak of themselves; and say that in any case *le* is indeclinable when it relates to an adjective, and declinable only when to a noun."

S. Notwithstanding these respectable authorities, I am of opinion that Chambaud, Madame De Sévigné, and all those who make *le* declinable in the above cases, are undoubtedly in the right. In this they strictly follow the rules of concord; which, in a language like the French, have great weight. Let us suppose a woman, in speaking of herself, saying,

Je suis malheureuse, & je la serai toujours ;
I am unhappy, and I shall always be so.

In this, both the rule of the French grammar, and good sense, coincide.

What is the gender of the *virtual* subject of the sentence ?—*feminine*. What is the inflexion of the adjective ?—*feminine*. Why then should not the *representative* be clad in the same livery, especially as this pronoun has a peculiar inflexion for the feminine gender ?

The relative *la*, agreeably to the general construction of the personal pronouns in the French language, is placed immediately before the verb.

S. Grammarians, as far as I know, have never given any reason for this deviation from general grammar ; they all of them indeed have said, that when the accusative or the dative of the verb is a personal pronoun, it is almost always placed before the verb : but this answer perhaps is not sufficient to satisfy an inquisitive mind.

Pronouns, for brevity sake, are in all languages expressed in short words ; which, by their nature, are not so harmonious as long ones. The French attend, more than is supposed, to the mechanical harmony of sentences : they in general delight in ending their phrases with long harmonious words ; and consequently place their pronouns as far as they can from the latter part of the sentence.

S. The relative pronoun *le* is elegantly used, even in conversation, when the noun or nouns, or object it refers to, is expressed in the same sentence, and enables us to use an inversion of the accusative of the verb, which figure is always pleasing, when the sense remains unaltered.

Les remontrances les plus justes & les plus respectueuses, l'adulation les travestit en une témérité punissable. MASSILLON.

Adulation transforms the most just and respectful remonstrances, into a punishable rashness.

Ce qu'elle me disoit, je crus l'apprendre encore en l'entendant raconter par elle-même. MARIVAUX.

In hearing her relate what she had said to me, I thought I learned it afresh.

S. This relative pronoun is also used in common conversation, instead of the participle, in sentences like the following :

Il ne faut pas condamner après leur mort, ceux qui ne l'ont pas été pendant leur vie ;

28. We must not condemn after death, those who have not been condemned during their lives.

It has been already observed, that when the pronouns *en* and *y* come together, *y* precedes *en*; but when *en* is a preposition, it takes the lead of *y*:—*En y allant*, In going there; *y* being then joined to the verb, agreeably to its quality of a pronoun conjunctive.*

29. * When *en* happens to meet with a gerund or participle in *ant*, it comes *after*, and not *before* it, as it should if the energy of the verb was expressed in any other form of the verb; in order to prevent its being taken for the preposition *en*:

Il le pria d'instruire son fils, voulant en faire un savant; or, *comme il en vouloit faire un savant*;

He begged him to instruct his son, wishing to make him a learned man.

§ Of the Use and Construction of the PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

OF these there are two kinds:

I. The *pronominal possessive adjectives* (called *possessive*, as always implying possession; and *pronominal adjectives*, as having all the properties of adjectives, at the same time that they are

			S. P. M. F. M.&F.					
derived from Pronouns)			mon, ma, mes, my;					
S. P.	}	S. P.	}	S. P.	}			
M. F. M.&F.		M. F. M.&F.		M. F. M.&F.				
ton, ta, tes, thy;	}	son, sa, ses, his, her, or its;	}	notre, nos, our;	}			
S. P.		S. P.		S. P.				
votre, vos, your;	}	leur, leurs, their;	}					

1. S. For the sake of improving this Grammar, I cannot help making some observations on the declinability of the article *le*, and of the pronominal possessive adjectives *mon*, *ton*, *son*, &c. in the French language, and their indeclinability in the English. The only function of these words is to limit the sense in which the substantive is taken.

In a language like the English, where the gender of every substantive is known by its intrinsical signification, peculiar inflexions for the gender of the article and the pronominal possessive adjectives would be useless: the plural is always known, either

either by an inflexion different from the singular, as, singular, *woman*—plural, *women*; or by the difference of an *s* founded in pronunciation.

But this is not the case with the French: inanimate beings, and abstracted ones, being in that language either masculine or feminine, and their last syllable not being sufficient to determine their gender, the French have been obliged to give their article, &c. other inflexions for the feminine.

In French *s* is in general the sign of the plural, when at the end of a word; but as the last letter of a word, when a consonant, is seldom pronounced, the French were obliged to give a different termination to their article, &c. for the plural, and even to pronounce the *e* in those words as if there were a grave accent over it.

II. The possessive *relative* pronominals (distinguished by the appellation of *relative*, because they are not joined with their substantive, but imply that it is previously expressed, referring to it as an antecedent); which are,

S.		P.			
M.	F.	M.	F.		
le mien,	la mienne,	les miens,	les miennes,	mine;	
S.		P.			
M.	F.	M.	F.		
le tien,	la tienne,	les tiens,	les tiennes,	thine;	le sien, la sienne,
P.				S.	P.
M.	F.			M.&F.	M.&F.
les siens,	les siennes,	his,	hers;	le nôtre, la nôtre,	les nôtres, ours;
S.		P.			
M.&F.	M.&F.			S.	P.
le vôtre, la vôtre,	les vôtres,	yours;	le leur, la leur,	les leurs,	theirs;

Pronominal possessive adjectives do not agree, in French, with the noun of the possessor, as in English, but with that of the thing possessed: as,

La mère aime son fils, & le père sa fille;

The mother loves *her* son, and the father *his* daughter.

When a noun feminine (which should naturally take before it the feminine *ma, ta, sa*) begins with a vowel, or *h* mute, it takes the masculine possessive, in order to avoid the hiatus:

Mon ame, my soul; son histoire, his or her story; son élévation,

tion, his or her rise or elevation; son honneur, his or her honour.

3. The pronominal adjectives are prefixed to nouns of relations and friends, when we address ourselves to them:

Venez ça, ma fille ! or, mon enfant !

Come hither, daughter ! or child !

Tout-à-l'heure, ma mère ! mon père !

Presently, mother ! father !

Oui, ma tante ! Yes, aunt !

Est-ce vous, mon ami ? Is it you, my friend ?

4. When the correspondent English possessive comes after a verb, with a noun governing them, they are resolved, in French, into their primitive pronouns personal, which are put in the dative case:

He has cut off *his* head ; *Il lui a coupé la tête.*

You are cutting *my* finger ; *Vous me coupez le doigt.*

Twist *his* neck ; *Tordez-lui le cou.*

5. They are wholly left out before substantives, when a pronoun personal precedes, which sufficiently marks whose is the thing of which we speak ; and the noun is attended by the article, as in the above examples : *Je lui dois la vie* (which is englished, I owe *my* life to him) ; *Il grince les dents*, he gnashes *his* teeth ; where the pronouns *je* and *il* specify whose teeth and life are meant, and therefore make the possessives unnecessary.

For the same reason we do not say,

J'ai mal à ma tête, à mon ventre, à mes dents ; but à la tête, au ventre, aux dents ;

I have the head-ach, the belly-ach, the tooth-ach :

for no one can have a pain in any head, belly, or teeth, but his own ; and of course an explanatory word is superfluous, if not, strictly speaking, ridiculous.

6. But we say,

Je vois que ma jambe s'enfle ; I see that my leg swells :

for, as I can see another person's leg swell, as well as my own,

7. it is necessary to define whose leg I mean. Nevertheless, if the pain is become as it were habitual, we may say (in speaking of it to somebody aware of the circumstance),

Ma tête, or ma jambe, me fait mal ;

My head, or my leg, pains me.

Ma migraine m'a fort tourmenté aujourd'hui ;

My megrim has tormented me much to-day.

Wherefore

Wherefore the addition of the possessive denotes there the inveteracy of the disorder.

It is for the same, or at least a similar reason, that we say, 2.

Il ne se tient pas ferme sur ses pieds ;

He does not stand firm upon his feet :

Tenez-vous ferme sur vos pieds ;

Stand firm upon your feet :

because this *ought to be* natural and habitual : and perhaps too this use of the possessive contains an oblique reproach for not doing, or being obliged to be told to do, what is dictated by nature herself.

NOTE.

We also say, in a proverbial manner, *Il se trouvera sur ses pieds*, to imply that a man will not suffer from undertaking any particular thing ; *Il retombera toujours sur ses pieds*, to express that a man has always the dexterity of getting off clear, whatever he attempts. [And here it will not be amiss to observe, that *ses*, in such a sentence as this—*Se trouver sur ses pieds*, is not rendered *his*, but, in conformity to the indeterminate pronoun *se*, which begins the sentence, and is rendered *one's self* ; the *ses* must be englished *one's* ; thus,—to be upon *one's* feet ; or, still more literally, to find *one's self* on *one's* feet.] 9.

The pronouns possessive are besides used with great propriety in some few sentences like the following ; and, as will be proved, from absolute necessity : 10.

Il lui donna sa main à baiser ; He gave him his hand to kiss :

where it would be impossible to express the same meaning without the possessive ; as you could not say, *Il lui lui donna la main à baiser*, nor *Il lui se donna la main*, &c.

Elle a donné bardiment son bras au chirurgien ;

She boldly gave her arm to the surgeon :

where you could not say, *Elle lui a donné le bras au chirurgien* ; for it would appear that the verb had two datives in government, and the sentence would be obscure ; which would be also the case, if *se* was used in the place of *lui*.

Il perd tout son sang ; he loses all his blood :

where, if you should say, *Il lui perd tout le sang*, the most obvious sense would be, that he was losing all his blood for another person, implied in *lui* ; and even with that perverted meaning, the sentence would be awkward and unnatural.

It is indifferent to say, *Elever la voix*, or *Elever sa voix*, To raise one's voice ; 11. as no obscurity occurs in the first phrase, and no tautology in the second.

As the personal pronouns of the third person cannot be used 12. in some particular cases, when we speak of irrational and inanimate things, so in similar cases their correspondent possessives cannot be always employed with propriety ; instead whereof we use *en* upon such occasions : as,

Cette maladie est fort cachée ; cependant j'en connois l'origine & les effets (and not, *son origine, & ses effets*) ;

This

This illness is much hid; nevertheless I know its origin and effects. But we say,

Je connois cette maladie, son origine, ses symptômes, & ses effets;
I know this illness, its origin, symptoms, and effects.

14. And so in one instance,

Voyez-vous cette maison? la situation en est belle (not, sa situation); les pavillons en sont grands (not, ses pavillons);

Do you see that house? it is pleasantly situated; its pavilions are large.

15. And in another,

Cette maison a ses commodités & ses inconvénients (and not, en a les commodités, &c.);

That house has its conveniencies and inconveniencies.

The reason of these differences is, that *en* always refers to something in a different member of the sentence from that wherein it is itself placed; (whence it is evident, that—*en a les commodités, &c.* would, in the above sentence, not convey the same

16. meaning as—*a ses commodités, &c.*) Wherefore the following phrases are right:

Remettez ce livre en sa place;

Put this book into its place again.

Mettez-le en sa place; Put it in its place.

(Not to say that the concurrence of the preposition *en*, and the pronoun *en*, would be barbarous beyond measure.)

17. The pronominal possessive adjectives must (in French) be always repeated before every noun in the sentence with which they are connected in construction:

Son père & sa mère (englished, His father and mother).

Nos amis & nos ennemis; Our friends and enemies.

Elle lui fit voir ses plus beaux & ses plus vilains habits;

She showed him her best and worst clothes.

S. Except when the two adjectives have almost the same signification:

Elle lui fit voir ses plus beaux & plus magnifiques habits;

She showed him her finest and most magnificent garments.

NOTE.

18. The pronominal adjective is sometimes made plural, when referring to two singular nouns, instead of preceding each singularly:

“Jamais

"Jamais fille n'a eu pour ses père & mère des attentions plus soutenues, ni des empressements plus tendres." (MARMONTEL, Contes Moraux, Bergères des Alpes.)
Never did a daughter pay more constant respect, more tender regard to her parents.

S. Mon, ton, and son, are besides used, by extension, for any thing that interests us much, though there is no possession in the case :

Astarbé vous défend de découvrir au roi, quel est votre étranger.

Astarbé forbids you to discover to the king, who your foreigner is; that is to say, the foreigner for whom you take so much concern.

The use of pronominal possessive adjectives, in that case, often implies, that we do not suppose the same merit or worth as the person prepossessed does; and even farther intimates that we are of a contrary opinion :

Il est toujours à parler de son Necker;
He is always speaking of his Necker.

Vous m'étourdissez avec vos états-généraux;

You stun me with your states-general.

The possessive relative pronominals *le mien, le nôtre, &c.* are of the same use, and have the same construction, as in English, being never put before a noun, but always relating to a foregoing one :

Est-ce là votre livre ? Oui, c'est le mien (or, Ce l'est).

Is that your book ? Yes, it is mine (or, Yes, it is).

Il n'y avoit point de citoyen qui ne tremblât à l'aspect du tribunal des censeurs ; le sénateur, le chevalier, & le simple citoyen par la peur d'être rayé de sa classe, & réduit dans la dernière, ou du moins dans une des centuries moins honorables que la sienne. VERTOT, Rév. Rom. L. vi. (where la sienne has the force of sa centurie.—)

There was not a citizen that would not tremble at the sight of the tribunal of censors ; the senator, the knight, the plebeian, through fear of being torn from his rank, and reduced to the lowest, at least to a station less honourable than his own.

But when one of this tribe of adjectives, referring to an antecedent expressed in the same member, comes in English after the verb *to be*, in the sense of *to belong*, it must be resolved in French, into its primitive pronoun personal [disjunctive], which must be put in the dative case, governed by the preposition *à* :

This book is mine ; Ce livre est à moi.

Cette maison est à lui ; That house is his.

NOTE.

NOTE.

3. Where a noun follows *être*, in the dative, instead of a pronoun, the correspondent English noun is frequently genitive:

Ce chapeau est à monsieur; This hat is the gentleman's.

4. Such English phrases as these, wherein occur these last sorts of pronominals,—a friend of *mine*, a book of *his*, must be rendered into French with the first kind of possessives regularly preceding their substantive:—*Un de mes amis*; *un de ses livres*.

5. S. The possessive relative pronominals cannot refer to a noun taken indefinitely. We do not say,

Il n'est point d'humeur à faire plaisir, & la mienne est bien-faisante.

Dans les premiers âges du monde, chaque père de famille gouvernoit la sienne avec un pouvoir absolu.

We must use the following phraseology, or something similar:

Il n'est point d'humeur à faire plaisir, & moi je suis d'une humeur bienfaisante; or, *& moi j'aime à rendre service.*

He is not of an obliging disposition, but I am, or, I like to oblige every body.

Dans les premiers âges du monde, chaque père de famille gouvernoit ses enfans avec un pouvoir absolu;

In the first ages of the world, every father of a family governed his children with an absolute power.

Were we to refer those pronouns to nouns taken in an indefinite signification, it would be descending from the general to the particular sense, which is against good logic.

§ Of the Use and Construction of the PRONOUNS RELATIVE qui, lequel, &c.

1. THESE are particularly called *relative*, as always referring to some precedent noun or pronoun (stiled, with respect to them, the *antecedent*), and “serve to recall the ideas of those persons and things previously signified by such noun or pronoun.” (RESTAUT.)

Dieu, qui aime les hommes; God, who loves men.

La doctrine qui met le souverain bien dans la volupté du corps, est indigne d'un philosophe;

The doctrine that places sovereign good in the pleasures of the body, is unworthy of a philosopher.

Sometimes

Sometimes the antecedent is understood :

Qui ne fait pas garder un secret, est incapable de gouverner ; i. e. celui qui, &c.

He who cannot keep a secret, is unfit to govern.

S. When the antecedent is understood, it is commonly one of the following words : *ce, celui, celle, ceux, celles, &c.*

Qui ne peut garder un secret, n'a pas droit d'exiger que ceux à qui il le confie soient plus discrets que lui ;

He who cannot keep a secret, has no right to expect that those whom he intrusts with one, should be more discreet than he is himself.

S. The subject, or nominative to a sentence, expressed either with a single word or many, is commonly placed first : but when *qui* absolute is the first word of the subject, that which is declared of the subject, in familiar style, begins the sentence :

Travailloit qui pouvoit ;—personne ne s'entendoit ;—personne ne commandoit. VOLTAIRE.

They worked, that could ;—they heeded not one another ;—no one commanded.

Joua qui voulut, & qui voulut aussi prêta l'oreille à un joli concert ; (M. DE COULANGES.)

They that chose, played at cards ; and those who preferred it, listened to a delightful concert.

This beautiful inversion takes place, when an author wants to express a real or fancied confusion ; which he in some manner elegantly represents by introducing it into the construction of his sentence.

The relative *qui* always comes next to the antecedent :

Ces gens qui demouroient chez moi sont partis ;

Those people who lodged at my house are gone.

Ceux qui méprisent la science, n'en connoissent pas le prix ;

They who despise learning, know not the value of it.

EXCEPTIONS.

Except when by the addition of *là* to the pronouns *celui, celle, ceux*, they may be separated from the relative (as will be more particularly seen hereafter) :

Ceux-là ne connoissent pas le prix de la science, qui, &c.

They know not the value of learning, who, &c.

And when the antecedent is a pronoun personal, coming before its verb ; as,

Il la trouva qui pleuroit à chaudes larmes, He found her weeping bitterly.

S. *Qui*

8. *S. Qui* is either explanative or determinate.
Qui is explanative, when we explain and unfold that which we have already supposed to be in the substantive it refers to; and then it may be supplied by *parce que*;
Dieu, qui est infiniment bon, ne permet pas que nous soyons tentés au-delà de nos forces;
 God, who is infinitely good, does not suffer us to be tempted above what we can bear: that is, *Dieu, parce qu'il est infiniment bon, &c.*
9. *S. Qui* determinative restrains and determines the signification of its antecedent:
On ne sauroit assez estimer les juges qui sont intègres;
 We cannot enough esteem those judges who are upright.
10. In order to avoid the equivocal sense that would otherwise happen, we must place *ceux* or *celles*, &c. before the antecedent of *qui*:
Il récompensa ceux de ses serviteurs qui l'avoient bien servi;
 He rewarded those of his servants who had served him faithfully.
 Were we to say, *Il récompensa ses serviteurs, qui l'avoient bien servi*; that would imply that he rewarded them all, because he had been faithfully served by them: whereas, in the first, it signifies that he had rewarded only those who had been attentive to their duty.
11. The relative *qui* is used in the nominative and accusative cases for both genders and numbers, and with respect to all sorts
12. of objects: but in the genitive or dative, or after any preposi-
13. tion, it is said of personal objects only, or such as are considered in the light of personal objects.
14. When we speak of irrational and inanimate objects in such a manner as to require a relative in the genitive or dative, we use the other relative pronouns, *lequel* and *quoi*:
L'homme ou la femme qui vous a parlé, or, *que vous voyez*;
 The man or woman who spoke to you, or that you see.
Les choses qui lui plaisent le plus;
 The things that please him most.
Le cheval que vous montez;
 The horse that you ride upon.
Les malheurs que vous appréhendez;
 The misfortunes that you fear,

Le prince (or la princesse) de qui il a reçu tant de faveurs ;
The prince (or princess) from whom he has received so many favours.

Le maître (ou la maîtresse) à qui il appartient ;
The master (or mistress) whom he belongs to.

Le cheval dont, or duquel, je me sers ;
The horse that I use to ride.

L'opinion à laquelle, or à quoi, je m'attache
The opinion which I adhere to.

La chose sur laquelle je fais fond ;
The thing which I rely upon.

We say, *La fortune, de qui j'attends tout ;* Fortune, from whom I expect all—*Le ciel, de qui doit venir mon secours ;* Heaven, from whom I hope : &c. because *fortune* and *ciel* are there personified.

Dont is used for both genders and numbers, instead of the genitive of the three pronouns relative, *qui, lequel, quoi* ; or rather, it is a genitive common to the three : when used, it always precedes the conjunctives, *je, nous, tu, vous, il, ils, elle, elles* ; and it is said both of persons and things :

C'est l'homme dont je parle ;
He is the man whom I am speaking of.

C'est une charge dont il ne se soucie pas ;
It is a place which he does not care for.

Vous voyez les femmes dont il parloit ;
You see the women whom he spoke of.

But in asking a question with a relative, we must not begin with *dont* ; we must say in such cases, of persons and things,

De qui, or de quoi, parlez-vous ?

Of whom, or of what, are you talking ?

S. Dont, derived from *de unde*, a compound word made use of by the Latin writers of the latter ages, and almost corresponding to the Italian *donde*, which probably had the same origin, is used instead of *de qui, duquel, &c.* for shortness sake. It has an obscure signification, cleared up by the antecedent it must follow closely, and cannot consequently begin an interrogative sentence ; which, of all forms of sentences, must be the most explicit.

There is this further distinction to be made in the application of *de qui* and *dont* to persons (where they may both be used without

out contradicting any express rule); that *de qui* expresses, very aptly, the *ablative* of the Latins, and then takes *from* as its sign in English:

L'homme de qui j'ai reçu une lettre;
The man *from whom* I received a letter.

6. Whereas *dont* is particularly correspondent to the genitive:

La personne dont la réputation vous étonne;

The person *whose* reputation (or the reputation *of whom*) astonishes you.

7. *Dont* must have immediately before it the term which it refers to, and be followed by a subject or nominative case (either noun or pronoun) to a verb immediately following; or by a verb impersonal followed by another verb, and the object or accusative case coming last:

Le ciel, dont le secours est nécessaire;

Heaven, whose aid is necessary.

Le ciel, dont il faut implorer le secours;

Heaven, whose aid must be implored.

8. You therefore cannot say, *Le ciel, dont sans le secours*, or, *sans dont le secours, nous ne pouvons réussir*; because in the first instance *dont* is not immediately followed by a noun or verb, and in the second it does not immediately follow its grammatical antecedent.

But upon such occasions the pronouns *de qui* and *duquel* must be used:

Le ciel, sans le secours duquel, &c.

Heaven, without whose aid, &c.

1. *Où* is used for the dative of the pronouns relative, and also
2. for them when they are governed by any of these prepositions, *at*,
3. *in*, *into*, *with*, in English: it answers to both genders and numbers, denoting *time*, *place*, *condition*, *disposition*, *design*, *end*,
4. and *aim*; but relates only to things, and never to persons,

Voilà le but où il tend (for auquel);

That is the end which he aims at.

Le siècle où nous vivons (for dans lequel);

The age wherein we live.

Une affaire où je ne veux pas entrer (for dans laquelle);

A thing in which I will not be concerned.

Les malheurs où il est plongé (for dans lesquels);

The misfortunes into which he is plunged.

From *où* are formed *d'où* (from whence), and *par où* (through where, through which place).

Que is used both for *de qui* and *à qui* (besides its being the accusative of *qui*) in both genders and numbers, whenever there comes immediately before it the genitive and dative of a pronoun personal, which serves to mark the substitution :

C'est de vous qu'on parle (for *dont on parle*) ;

It is you they are speaking of.

C'est à vous qu'on s'adresse (for *à qui, &c.*) ;

It is you they make application to.

Qui, besides its being relative, is also interrogative and declarative, signifying *quelle personne* ; and then it takes *qui*, and not *que*, for its accusative :

Qui a fait cela ? or, *Qui est-ce qui a fait cela ?*

Who has done that ? (where it is nominative.)

Je sais qui vous voulez dire ; qui vous verrez tantôt ; (where it is accusative).

I know whom you mean ; whom you are to see by and by.

Qui, interrogative, signifies also *quelle chose* :

Qui fait l'oiseau, si non le plumage ?

What makes the bird, but the feathers ?

S. Chambaud remarks, that when *qui* comes between two verbs, it is governed of the first at the same time that it governs the second :

Il le dit à qui veut l'entendre ;

He tells it to any body who is willing to hear it.

This is very right, when *qui*, governed by the first verb, is at the same time the nominative of the second ; or when the verbs, which the relative *qui* refers to, require the same regimen.

Vous voulez que je m'attache à qui je n'ai jamais su plaire ;

You wish me to pay my addresses to the person whom I never was able to please :

because both *s'attacher* and *plaire* require the preposition *à*.

But the antecedent to *qui* must be expressed, when the verb to which *qui* relates governs different cases, or when their regimen is preceded by different prepositions : then we should not say,

Voulez-vous que je m'éloigne de qui j'ai toujours su plaire ? still less, *Voulez-vous que je m'éloigne à qui j'ai toujours su plaire ?*

O

because

because *s'éloigner* requires the preposition *de* after it, and *plaire* the preposition *à*. But we must rectify the elliptical construction, as follows :

Voulez-vous que je m'éloigne de la personne à qui j'ai toujours su plaire ?

Do you want me to break off correspondence with the person whom I have always been able to please ?

The use of the ellipsis is an elegance, but only when the sense remains clear, and the rules of grammar are not violated ; because then it favours that brevity of diction which delights the mind by its approximation to unity with our ideas.

6. The dative of the pronoun relative *qui* is idiomatically used in sentences like the following :

Il faut voir à qui l'attrappera ; c'étoit à qui des deux seroit le plus enfant (ROUSSEAU'S *Héloïse*, L. vi. lett. 2.) ; *à qui mieux mieux*. It is extremely difficult to analyse this use of the dative ; and, accordingly, grammarians in general consider it as a peculiarity of the language which is more frequently used, than easy to be accounted for.

NOTE,

A conjecture presenting itself to my mind on the subject, I shall venture to offer it, as no better analysis has been made by any grammarian whose works have fallen into my hands. One may suppose the phrase to have originated on some such occasion as this : in establishing a prize to be contended for, the distributor or donor said, — *C'est à qui* (for *à celui qui*) *fera telle ou telle chose* ; and thence the turn of expression was adopted in every case where there was any degree of contest, although the prize or reward which gave rise to it was out of the question. Upon these principles we may supply the above phrases thus : — *Il faut voir [le résultat de cette petite contestation où l'on a mis en dépôt une récompense qui doit appartenir] à [celui] qui l'attrappera* : which corresponds in meaning to the shorter translation of the phrase in English, — *Let us see who will catch him*. In the same manner we may discover the force of the phrase quoted from Rousseau :

[*On avoit donné un mise ;*] *c'étoit à [celui] qui seroit le plus enfant*.

A prize had been given ; it was for him who could best act the child.

Whence the meaning of the passage is, *A les voir faire ainsi les enfans, on jurerait qu'ils se disputoient une récompense proposée pour celui qui seroit le plus enfant*. The same idea of emulation must also account for the last phrase, *à qui mieux mieux*, commonly so rendered into English, in emulation of one another. We will suppose the sentence wherein it occurred to be, — *Ils le font à qui mieux mieux* : this would mean in all probability, — *Ils le font comme si l'on avoit dit : à [celui] qui mieux [fera] mieux [fera] ; i. e. ils le font à l'envi l'un de l'autre*. I shall make no apology for presenting these conjectures of my own, submitting them to be received or rejected at the will of the reader, and to be corrected by any one better informed on the subject.

7. When in a relative member of a sentence (i. e. a member of a sentence beginning with *qui* relative) there intervenes a verb

as spoken by the author, or an impersonal verb, a *que* (pronoun) is introduced preceding that verb, and *qui* comes in afterwards, besides, before the verb to which it stands as subject. An example will explain my meaning :

I write him letters *which*, *I think*, are admirable ;
which must be rendered,

Je lui écris des lettres que je crois qui sont admirables. (SEWIGNE.)

Pourquoi nous charger d'une querelle qu'il faudra aussi bien, qui finisse à Pâques ? lb.

Why should we be troubled with a quarrel which must end at Easter ?

To account for this peculiarity we are to observe, that as the interpolated verb governs an accusative, and the regular verb of the sentence requires a nominative, both of which characters are to be supported by the pronoun relative, it is more consistent with the genius of the French language to admit this redundancy, than to leave the regimen of the two verbs imperfect.

The relatives *qui* and *lequel* can never agree with a noun that has no article before it : therefore these English sentences—

He did that *through avarice*, *which* is capable of any thing ;

I know that *by experience*, *which* is a great master ;
cannot be rendered into French,—

Il a fait cela par avarice, qui (or laquelle) est capable de tout ;

Je fais cela par expérience, qui (or laquelle) est un grand maître.

But they must be expressed without the relative, making two distinct members, one of which ends with the substantive, and the other begins with *et* or *mais*, and the noun repeated instead of the relative connection :

Il a fait cela par avarice, mais l'avarice est capable de tout ;

Je fais cela par expérience, & l'expérience est un grand maître :

or turn it thus,—& vous savez, or l'on sait bien, que l'expérience est un grand maître.

The reason of this is, because the relative, in French, can refer only to a substantive used in its genuine substantial capacity, or to a pronoun which is the substitute of it in such capacity. Now, in the above instances of *par avarice* and *par expérience*, the substantive is more an attribute denoting and quali-

fyng the deed and the knowledge spoken of by the verb than any thing else; as is confirmed by its not being attended by the article: wherefore it is necessary to introduce a second time the same substantive, supporting its proper character, and consequently entitled to appear at the head of the member in which it is placed.

S. *Qui* and *lequel*, besides being relative, have a limiting quality; it would then be absurd to relate them to nouns taken in the most unrestrained sense.

9. Yet the absence of the article by no means determines, in every case, the character of the substantive; for the relative may have for its antecedent all those substantives which, by their nature, or from any grammatical accident, take no article; for then the substantive is not less substantial than if it was actually preceded by the article.

J'ai lu Cicéron, qui est aussi bon philosophe qu'orateur;

I have read Cicero, who is as great a philosopher as he is an orator:

- 9a. where *Cicéron*, as a proper name, takes no article.

Hommes! qui vivez en brutes!

O ye men! who live like brutes!

Avarice! qui causes tant de maux!

O Covetousness! that causest so many evils!

- 9b. where *hommes* and *avarice*, as vocatives, take no article.

Il est coupable de crimes qui méritent la mort;

He is guilty of crimes that deserve death.

Il n'y a point d'homme qui n'ait son foible;

There is no man but has his weak side.

Une sorte de liqueur qui est bonne à boire;

A sort of liquor that is good to drink:

- 9c. in which three instances the nouns *crimes*, *homme*, and *liqueur* take no article, because their governing words, *coupable*, *point*, and *sorte*, admit no article before their regimen:

Il parle en philosophe qui sait la raison des choses;

He speaks like a philosopher who knows the reason of things

- 9d. because *en*, in the sense of *like as*, takes no article before the noun it governs.

10. In like manner such substantives as are preceded by any numeral, as *un*, *deux*, *trois*, *vingt*, &c. or any of these pronouns, *ce*, *quelque*, *plusieurs*, *tout*, *nul*, *aucun*, may be used as antecedents.

antecedents to *qui*, because that they, in that respect, answer the end of the article, which is never joined to a noun together with any of these words, except *tout* : 11,

Il vint un homme qui ; There came a man who.

Tout homme est mortel ; All men are mortal.

Tout le monde le sait ; Every body knows it.

NOTE.

And here I would by the way take notice of an essential difference that occurs in 12. translating *which*, as it refers to a whole sentence or a single word ; the following examples and observations will explain it fully :—They say that he is whimsical, ignorant, foolish, and passionate, *which* is not credible. This sentence must be translated thus : *On dit qu'il est bizarre, ignorant, sot, & colère, ce qui n'est pas croyable*. The news *which* I tell you, I have from good authority ; which must be rendered thus, — *Je tiens de bon lieu, les nouvelles que je vous rapporte*. We have seen before, that *qui* admits of no substantive to be its antecedent but one which supports its true, substantial character, or a pronoun which is its substitute as such ; so here it can by no means admit of so vague a reference as that of a sentence immediately as its antecedent, but requires the intervention of the pronoun *ce* to act as the collective representative of the sentence, and as its own immediate antecedent : which constitutes and accounts for the difference in rendering *which* in the two sentences cited above.

The pronoun *lequel*, *laquelle*, is used for the sake of avoiding 1. the too frequent repetition of *qui*, and of removing the ambi- 2. guities which may arise from that pronoun (which is of both genders and numbers, and said both of persons and things, in the nominative case) ; as in these sentences—

Alexandre, fils de Philippe, qui régna le premier en Asie ;

Alexander, Philip's son, who reigned first in Asia—

one cannot tell whether it was Alexander or Philip who reigned : whereas *lequel* being put instead of *qui*, will denote that it was Alexander ; because that *when two nouns of the same gender come together, the relative lequel refers to the former*, and therefore removes the ambiguity occasioned by *qui* :

C'est la cause de cet effet dont je vais traiter, or *que je vais traiter* ;

It is the cause of that deed which I am going to treat of.

You cannot see whether *l'effet* or *la cause* is the subject of the treatise ; but the use of *de laquelle*, in the place of *dont* and *que*, decides that *la cause* is the subject in question.

8. *Lequel* is also preferred to *qui*, in order to avoid the hiatus 3. which otherwise would take place in sentences like the following :

C'est un ami avec qui il est venu. Then we must say,

C'est un ami avec lequel il est venu ;

The person he came with was a friend.

4. However it is much better to repeat *qui*, though ever so often, when it does not occasion any ambiguity or cacophony, than to use *lequel*, which is quite appropriated to the style of proclamations, edicts, treaties, contracts, and such like things, where perspicuity, more than elegance, is requisite.

5. *Qui* must be repeated before every verb of which it is the nominative case :

C'est un homme qui est savant, qui danse bien, qui joue de plusieurs instrumens, & qui se fait aimer de tout le monde ;

He is a learned man, he dances well, plays upon several instruments, and makes himself beloved by every body.

6. In sentences where *qui* and *lequel* occur, implying a comparison between two persons or things, the substantives expressing those persons and things compared are put in the genitive case, and that genitive case is rendered into English by the nominative :

Les Dieux & les Déeses de l'Olympe avoient les yeux attachés sur l'isle de Calypso, pour voir qui seroit victorieux, ou de Minerve ou de l'Amour ; (Télémaque, L. i.)

The Gods and Goddesses of mount Olympus had their eyes fixed on the island of Calypso, to see *who* should be victorious, *Minerva* or *Love*.

On ne sait lequel est le plus désagréablement affecté, de l'œil ou de l'oreille ; (ROUSSEAU, Nouvelle Héloïse.)

We know not *which* is the most disagreeably affected, *the eye* or *the ear*.

To account for this use of the genitive, we must understand *des deux* after *qui* and *lequel*, (*qui, lequel, [des deux] which [of the two]*) ; and thence, as the two nouns of the persons or things compared refer, *separately*, to what *des deux* (for *des deux personnes* or *choses*) relates, *collectively*, they are put in apposition, i. e. in the same case with it :—*Qui des deux, (que) de Minerve ou de l'Amour, seroit victorieux* (which of the two, [*namely*] *Minerva* or *Love*, should be victorious) ; &c.

7. The pronoun *quoi* is used for both genders and numbers ; but is said of things only, and never of persons, and is used instead of *lequel* :

Le plus grand vice à quoi (for auquel) il est sujet ;

The greatest vice to which he is subject.

Ce sont des choses à quoi (for auxquelles) il faut penser ;
These are things which must be considered.

S. Though we use *à quoi* for *auquel*, &c. yet it is not quite a matter of indifference. 2.

Quoi has something more harmonious in its sound than those relatives ; and that alone is a sufficient reason for its being preferred.

S. *A quoi*, in general, following its antecedent, cannot bring any obscurity into the sentence ; and by not being so explicit as *auquel*, &c. the use of it is an elegance : because, when the construction of words and the strength of the sense leave no doubt concerning the meaning of the sentence, clear relatives, instead of being of any help, are flat and wearisome.

This may also account for the use of this expression :—*Que dites-vous ?* What do you say ? instead of, *Quelle chose dites-vous ?* or, *Quoi dites-vous ?* 2a.

S. Though *à quoi* is used for *auquel*, &c. there are cases wherein *auquel*, &c. cannot be employed instead of *à quoi*. For instance, when the antecedent is *ce* or *rien* ; as

C'est à quoi je vous exhorte ; That is what I exhort you to.

Il n'y a rien à quoi je ne sois disposé ;

There is not any thing that I am not disposed for.

This is very plain ; *ce* and *rien* having an indeterminate signification, their relatives also should be indeterminate.

S. We have already mentioned, page 124, rule 54, that *quoi*, with indeterminate pronouns, requires the preposition *de* before the next adjective or participle ; but without entering into any particulars : it may not perhaps be out of place to do it here.

Indeterminate pronouns, and words mentioned in the 54th rule, page 124, do not, at first sight, appear so clearly to possess the property of being qualified, as the words they stand for do : the more averse they appear, the stronger the connexion should be. It may consequently be supposed, that the preposition *de* is used for the purpose of connecting *quoi*, &c. with the adjective or participle in a more indissoluble manner ; as, when the French have not an adjective in their language to qualify a substantive, they use the preposition *de* with the cognate noun, to shew the close relation there is between the substantive and this word, which acts as an adjective ; as, *une étoffe de soie*, a silken stuff.

If often the adjective or participle does not immediately follow

the pronoun, instead of militating against my observation, it is a confirmation of it; because an inversion does not become common, unless the regular construction is perfectly known.

4. S. *Que*, in the beginning of an interrogative sentence standing for *quelle chose*, has the same regimen as those pronouns, mentioned page 124, rule the 54th, because it partakes with them of the same indeterminate signification :

Que craignez-vous de plus fâcheux que votre état actuel ?

What are you more afraid of than of your present condition ?

We have already given the reason why *de* is used with those words ; and it only now remains to observe in what circumstance it is to be used.

5. S. When we take the qualification in an indeterminate sense, the preposition *de* immediately precedes the adjective or participle :

A quoi pouvez-vous vous résoudre de plus avantageux que le parti qu'on vous propose ?

What can you resolve upon more advantageous than the expedient proposed to you ?

Je ne sais ce que vous espérez de meilleur ;

I do not know what better you can expect.

6. S. But if we want to restrain the meaning of the qualification, the relative *qui*, with the substantive verb, must be used :

A quoi pouvez-vous vous résoudre qui soit plus avantageux que le parti qu'on vous propose ?

What can you resolve upon that can be more advantageous than the expedient proposed to you ?

Que craignez-vous qui soit plus fâcheux que voire état actuel ?

What do you fear that can be more distressing to you than your present condition ?

Je ne sais ce que vous espérez qui puisse être meilleur ;

I do not know what you expect that can be better.

7. S. If we mean, in the above cases, to refer the pronoun to a person, and not to a thing, we must use *qui*, according to the observation made in the third rule, page 193, instead of *que*, *quoi*, and *ce que* ; and *qui soit* instead of *de*, before the next adjective : because, as we refer to a person, the sense of the adjective is more limited ; the connective word consequently must be of a limiting signification.

Qui trouvera-t-on qui soit plus aimable que Mademoiselle Spol ?

Who will you find that is more lovely than Miss Spol ?

A qui

A qui vous adresserez-vous qui soit plus ingénu ?
Whom will you apply to that is more candid ?

Je ne sais qui vous trouverez qui soit plus raisonnable ;
I do not know whom you will find that is more reasonable.

S. We must not confound the interrogative particle *quoi* with 8.
the pronoun *quoi* :

Quoi ! vous ignorez de quoi l'on vous accuse ?
What ! do you not know what you are accused of ?

The first *quoi* is the interrogative particle, and the second the pronoun.

NOTE.

It is a mistake to suppose the following application of the genitive and dative of *quoi* absolute :

Je n'ai pas de quoi vivre ; I have not wherewith to live upon.

En effet, à quoi dépenser de l'argent dans un tel pays ?

And indeed, on what can one spend money in such a country ?

For those sentences are elliptical ; the first for, *Je n'ai pas de l'argent de quoi vivre* or something of the like kind ; where *quoi* is genitive, because *vivre* governs a genitive, — *Vivre de légumes, de lait, &c.* : and in the dative use of *quoi* above, *quelque chose* understood, is the antecedent of *quoi*, — *Y a-t-il quelque chose à quoi, &c.*

As *qui* signifies sometimes *quelle personne*, so *quoi* sometimes 11.
signifies *quelle chose* ; then it takes *que* in its oblique relations 12.
(although *à quoi* may be used), and is then chiefly interrogative :

Qu'est-ce que c'est ? (literally, *What is that which it is ?*)

Que dites-vous ? What do you say ?

Que, or De quoi sert d'avoir du bien, si l'on n'en fait pas jouir ?

What avail riches, if one knows not how to enjoy them ?
(where *sert* either has for its nominative case the sentence *d'avoir du bien*, or *il* understood.)

“ *De quoi me sert l'abstinence éternelle de tout ce qu'il y a de plus doux au monde, si celle qui l'exige ne m'en fait aucun gré ?*” (ROUSSEAU, *Nouv. Héloïse*.)

What does eternal abstinence from every thing that is agreeable in the world avail me, if she who exacts it thinks she is under no obligation to me for it ?

Besides this pronoun, *qui* and *quel* are also used to ask 1.
questions :

Qui est cet homme-là ? Who is that man ? or

Quel est cet homme-là ? What is that man ?

De qui ne médit-on pas ? Who is not traduced ?

A qui se fier ? Who can one trust to ?

(which is elliptical for *à qui peut-on se fier ?*)

Que

Que répondre à ces systèmes ?

What can we answer to those systems ?

(for, *Que faut-il répondre à ces systèmes ?*)

Quelle est cette femme-là ? What is that woman ?

Duquel, de laquelle, desquels, desquelles, *parlez-vous ?*

Which, or whom, are you speaking of ?

2. *Qui* is particularly said of *persons*, and *quel* of *things* : therefore to this observation—*Voilà des gens* [or *des femmes*] *qui vous demandent* ; There are people, or women, who ask for you—we
 20. reply—*Qui sont-ils ?* or, *Qui sont-elles ?* Who are they ? But to the following,—*Il court d'étranges bruits* ; Strange reports are spread—we say, *Quels sont-ils ?* What are they ? *J'ai appris de grandes nouvelles* ; I have heard great news : *Quelles sont-elles*, or, *ces nouvelles ?* What are they ?

3. *S.* It is necessary to say something further on the intrinsic signification of *qui* and *quel*. When I say, *Qui êtes-vous ?* I only
 30. want to know who the person is ; but when I say, *Quel homme êtes-vous ?* I want to know the particular qualities of the person.

4. The pronoun interrogative *quel* (without the article) answers
 50. to *what* in English ; and *lequel* to *which*, it being followed by the genitive case when it comes before a noun :

Quel homme voulez-vous dire ? What man do you mean ?

Lequel choisissez-vous ? Which do you choose ?

Lequel des deux souhaitez-vous ?

Which of the two do you wish for ?

6. It may not be amiss to take notice of the following remarkable pleonasm, most commonly, and sometimes very necessarily, used in asking questions with *qui* and *quoi*. The most natural and obvious French for these and similar questions—

Who is there ?

Qui est là ?

Qu'est-ce qui est là ?

Who has done that ?

Qui a fait cela ?

But they

Qui est ce qui a fait cela ?

What do you say ?

Que dites-vous ?

are idiomatically

Qu'est-ce que vous dites ?

What do you ask ?

Que demandez-vous ?

rendered

Qu'est-ce que vous demandez ?

7. Nay, we often say,—

Qu'est-ce que c'est que vous dites ? What do you say ?

Qu'est-ce que c'est que vous demandez ?

What do you ask ?

And to this intimation,—

J'ai quelque chose à vous dire; I have something to tell you; the most common answer is,—

Qu'est-ce que c'est? What is it? and not, *Qu'est-ce?* or, *Quoi est-ce?* nor, *Quoi?*

which last would rather imply that we had not clearly heard what was said to us.

S. I cannot omit observing that it is an elegance, when well applied, to change the relative *qui* into the conjunction *que*, in sentences similar to the following:

C'est à vous que je veux parler;

It is you that I want to speak to:

for, *C'est vous à qui je veux parler*.

The plain construction of this sentence is thus:

Celui à qui je veux parler, est vous, or rather *c'est vous*; which signifies, *Vous êtes la personne à qui je veux parler*.

Celui appearing to me of very little use for the perspicuity of the sense, I imply it, and by an inversion peculiar to the French language say,—*C'est vous à qui je veux parler*.

But finding this construction still too long and tedious, and being in haste to express *vous* in a forcible manner, making it the emphatical word; I transpose the preposition *à*, and place it before *vous*. The *qui* relative becoming useless, I use instead of it the conjunction *que*, to show, that though *vous* is the expletive of *ce*, it is at the same time the regimen of *parler*; whereas, before this alteration, *à qui* was its regimen.

Que cannot here be a relative pronoun, as Restaut, in his grammar, page 115, wants to insinuate; because the verb *parler*, in this instance, governs the dative, and in that case *que* is not the inflexion of this pronoun: besides, the preposition *à* being placed before *vous*, makes this word the immediate regimen of *parler*:—and still further, a verb cannot, at one and the same time, govern two regimens in the same case. Consequently, *Bouhours* and *Boileau* transgressed the above rule in the following phrases:

C'est à vous, mon esprit, à qui je veux parler. (BOILEAU).

It is you, my mind, that I want to speak to.

C'est à vous à qui il appartient de régler ces sortes d'affaires. (BOUHOURS).

It is you that it belongs to, to manage those kind of affairs.

They should have used *que* instead of *à qui*.

This paragraph is a further explanation of the first and second rules, page 193.

§ Of the use and construction of the PRONOUNS DEMONSTRATIVE
ce, celui, ceci, cela, &c.

1. THE demonstratives *ce, cet, cette, ces*, are mere pronominal
2. adjectives: *celui-ci, celle-ci, celui-là, celle-là, ceux-ci, ceux-là, celles-ci, celles-là*, are used absolutely, i. e. without being made
3. to attend immediately upon a substantive; and *celui, celle, ceux, celles*, always require after them a noun in the genitive case, or the relative *qui*.

Ce tableau, this or that picture; *cet ouvrage*, this work; *cet homme*, that man; *cette femme*, that woman; *ces gens*, those people; *ces filles*, those girls.

Celui-ci est meilleur que celui-là; This is better than that.

Celles-là ne sont si belles que celles-ci;

Those are not so good as these.

Votre cheval est aussi beau que celui du maquignon;

Your horse is as fine as the jockey's.

Celui qui aime la vertu; He who loves virtue:

Il en a tous les droits, toutes les prérogatives, même celui ou celle de nommer aux emplois;

He has all the rights of it, all the prerogatives, even that or this of nominating to places.

4. S. *Celui* or *celle*, in the last sentence, governs the infinitive with the preposition *de*, because those pronouns require the same regimen as the words they stand for: *droit* and *prérogatives* requiring the preposition *de* before the next noun or infinitive.

5. S. *Celui, celle, &c.* must not be too far from the word they represent:

Le courage, cette qualité spéciale des armées Françaises, devoit presque toujours inutile, & souvent funeste, parce que la discrétion n'étoit pas celle de nos conseils. LINGUET.

Courage, that peculiar quality of the French armies, was almost always useless, and often fatal, because prudence did not direct our councils.

It is rather difficult to find out that *celle* refers to *qualité*; because there are between them several substantives to which one may suppose *celle* could refer. In order to avoid the ambiguity, Mr. Linguet should have repeated the substantive *qualité*.

6. S. *Celui, &c.* like other relative pronouns, should never refer to a noun taken in an unlimited sense. Therefore the following sentence is erroneous:

Il faut que vous ayez soin de travailler avec la grace, & que vous remettiez à Dieu celui de vous visiter.

It should be,—

Il faut que vous ayez un grand soin de travailler avec la grace, & que vous remettiez à Dieu celui de vous visiter ;

You must make a good use of God's providence, and rely upon his visiting you.

S. Though *celui*, &c. do the function of substantives, they 7. do not however enjoy all their rights ; they cannot, for instance, be modified by adjectives and participles :

Quoique les troubles d'Angleterre encourageassent la France à entrer dans quelques expéditions contre son ancienne ennemie, ceux plus considérables encore qui l'agitoient, &c. Hist. d'Angleterre.

Although the disturbances in England encouraged France to undertake some expeditions against her ancient enemy, those more considerable still which agitated France, &c.

Je ne puis mieux finir cette lettre qu'en vous faisant part de celle écrite par M. de Buffon à cette dame respectable (Madame de Genlis). L'Année Littéraire.

I cannot better conclude this letter, than by informing you of one written by Mr. de Buffon to that respectable lady (Madame de Genlis).

Plin dit que Cares inventa les augures tirés des oiseaux, & qu'Orphée inventa ceux tirés des autres animaux. LE GENDRE.

Pliny says that Cares invented auguring by birds, and Orpheus by other animals.

Le goût de la philosophie n'étoit point alors celui dominant ;

The taste for philosophy did not then prevail.

The substantives in the above cases should be repeated.

S. *Ce*, besides being a demonstrative pronoun, has sometimes a 8. relative signification, and must not in that case be too far separated from the noun it relates to, especially if there are many nouns between it and its antecedent ; and this to avoid the ambiguity that would thence arise.

Mr. Racine junior, in his remarks on *Britannicus* (a tragedy written by his father), criticises a tragedy called *Néron* ; in doing which he employs a whole page, and then says,

Il (Néron) devient dans cette pièce meurtrier de son frère, mais conduit par l'artifice de son flatteur, &c.

One

One would suppose that Mr. Racine junior continues to criticise the tragedy of *Néron*: no, it is the tragedy of *Britannicus* that he has in view. He should have said,

Il (Néron) devient, dans la tragédie de Britannicus, le meurtrier de son frère, mais conduit par l'artifice, &c.

He (Nero) becomes, in the tragedy of *Britannicus*, the murderer of his brother, but led by the artifice of his flatterer, &c.

9. We must still less use *ce* for objects which have not been mentioned.

M. de Marville, in his epistle to *Voltaire*, alluding to the *Henriade*, says,—

Ce roi qui fut combattre & conquérir la paix,

Nous paraîtra plus grand, sous tes pinceaux plus vrais ;

Et tu réuniras, dans ce sublime ouvrage,

Les tableaux du poëte, & les leçons du sage :

Mais ce rang où le Tasse, avant toi, fut monter,

Ce rang est-il le terme où tu dois t'arrêter ?

That king who fought for peace, will under thy pencil appear much greater and more like himself; and thou, in *that sublime work*, wilt join the pictures of the poet to the lessons of the wise: but *that rank* which Tasso ascended to, is it the goal where thou oughtest to stop?

What is *that king*, *that sublime work*, and *that rank*? Neither Henry the fourth, nor the *Henriade*, nor rank, had before been mentioned. *L'Année Littéraire* (a French Review).

S. The reviewer's observation is just; but it is to be observed, that the subject he criticises is in poetry, and that many things are overlooked in poetry which could by no means be suffered in prose.

9. S. *Ce*, *cet*, *cette*, and *ces*, are sometimes preceded by one of these relatives, *le*, *la*, and *les*; there are then two objectives or accusatives governed by the same verb:

Enfans, chéris du Dieu sauveur, associés à sa gloire, vous les voyez sous vos pieds, dégradés, confondus, ces vils acteurs des scènes d'illusion & de prestiges qu'ils jouèrent sur le théâtre du monde, que le néant vient d'engloutir.

Children, beloved of a saving God, and partakers of his glory, you see *them* under your feet, degraded, confounded, *those* vile actors who performed their scenes of illusion and fascination upon the stage of the world, which annihilation has just swallowed up.

This

This elegant repetition of the accusative is much used by our best authors, when they want to show that it is the emphatical word of the sentence.

S. The demonstrative pronoun sometimes comes first, and the relative one follows :

Tout ce que le monde aveugle & passionné n'apperçoit point il faut que Jésus Christ le montre au monde. (FATHER DE NEUVILLE.)

For, *Il faut que Jésus Christ montre au monde tout ce que le monde aveugle & passionné n'apperçoit point ;*

Jesus Christ must show the world those things which the blind and passionate world does not of itself perceive.

S. *Ce*, in an interrogative sentence, signifies *cette chose*, this or that thing :

Qu'est-ce que je vois ? What do I see ? that is,

Quelle chose vois-je ? What thing do I see ?

S. In answering a question, it signifies *cette personne*, that or this person ; or *cette chose*, that or this thing :

Qui est là ? C'est Pierre.

Who is there ? It is Peter.

That is, *Cette personne qui est là est Pierre ;*

The person who is there is Peter.

Que vois-je là ? C'est un homme.

What do I see there ? It is a man.

That is, *Cette chose que je vois là est un homme ;*

That thing that I see there, is a man.

S. *Ce* is sometimes used instead of *il*, *elle*, *ils*, and *elles* :

Je lis volontiers Racine & Boileau ; ce sont de grands poètes.

I willingly read Racine and Boileau ; they are great poets.

Ce not only signifies that I think they are, but that they are universally acknowledged to be, great poets.

S. *Ce*, immediately followed by *qui* or *que*, signifies *the thing which*, &c.

Ce qui est vrai est toujours beau ;

What is true is always pleasing.

That is, *Les choses qui sont, &c.*

S. *Ce qui* has for its genitive *ce dont* :

Ce dont je vous ai parlé ; That which I spoke to you of.

S. For

16. S. For its dative *ce à quoi* :
Ce à quoi vous êtes destiné ; That which you are destined to.
17. S. For its accusative *ce que* :
Ce que Dieu exige de nous, &c.
That which God requires of us.
18. S. *Ce*, before *est*, is of late used instead of *il*, *elle*, and *cela* :
La chasse pour laquelle Louis Quinze conçut tant de goût, que c'est (elle est) devenu une passion, une fureur, &c.
Lewis the fifteenth conceived so great a liking for hunting, that it became a passion, a madness, &c.
Ab ! que c'est (cela est) plaisant ! M. le Marquis.
How comical it is ! Mr. Marquis.
Elle aime à rire, comme les autres ; c'est (cela est) de son âge.
She is fond of merriment, like others ; it belongs to her age.
This diction is now very fashionable ; and, on account of its elegance, will soon become an idiom in the language.
19. S. The common people even add *cela* to *ce*, already used instead of *cela* :
C'est vrai cela ; That or this is true. (MADAME DE GENLIS, Théat. d'Education.)
This tautology seems pleasing, the emphasis being on *cela*.

NOTE.

20. Observe here with respect to the particles *ci* and *là*, which are added to *celui*, &c.
21. that *ci* denotes an object near, or present to, the speaker, and *là* a distant or absent one : they are also joined to *ce*, *cet*, &c. in like manner and with the same force as
22. to *celui* ; and when *ce* is attendant on a noun, they are joined to such noun, with precisely the same effect : — *Ceci est pour moi, &c. cela est pour vous ;* This is for me, and that is for you : *Cet homme-ci vaut bien cette femme-là ;* This man is well
23. worthy that woman. These particles of place are frequently of great use in clearly defining the sense of the noun to which they are annexed : thus, if being in London I write a letter, and after mentioning Paris or Vienna, I add something that has happened there, I must necessarily say, — *en cette ville-là ;* *là* being added to *ville*, to denote the distant city which I have been mentioning : for, should I say, *en cette ville*, these words would imply that it was at London where the thing I was speaking of
24. happened. So if, being myself in the same situation as before supposed, I have occasion to speak of Paris and Vienna together, I should think it necessary to say any thing particularly of *Vienna* (the last city mentioned), I conceive it would be requisite to add *ci* to the substantive representing it, in order to shew that I had that, and not the former city, *Paris*, in view.
- 25.
26. The pronouns *celui*, *celle*, *ceux*, which relate both to *persons* and *things*, being followed by the relative *qui*, are referable only

to persons, and are englished by *he who, she who, they who*; and the pronoun demonstrative is the nominative of one verb, and the pronoun relative of another:

Celui qui aime la vertu est heureux;

He who loves virtue is happy.

Celle qui refuse un mari, n'est pas toujours sure d'en retrouver un autre;

She who refuses a husband, is not always sure of getting another.

Ceux qui méprisent la science, n'en connoissent pas le prix;

They who despise learning, know not the value of it.

Observe therefore, to render *he who, she who, they who*, by *celui qui, celle qui, ceux qui*, and not by *il qui, elle qui, ils or eux qui*.

Observe also, that though these two words may be separated in English, and come before their respective verbs, yet they must always come together in French before the first verb, *unless* *là* is added to the demonstrative:

Ceux-là ne connoissent pas le prix de la science qui la méprisent;

They know not the value of learning *who* despise it.

Or the sentence may be turned in a very elegant idiomatical form by *c'est*, an infinitive following it without any preposition, and a second infinitive preceded by *que de*:

C'est ne pas connoître le prix de la science, que de la mépriser;

It is not to know the value of science, namely, to despise it.

C'est être heureux que d'aimer la vertu;

To love virtue, is to be happy.

His, her, their, in English, governed by a substantive, followed by the pronoun relative *who*, before a verb, are made into French by the genitive of *celui, celle, ceux*, followed by *qui*, as in the above example:

All men blame his manners who, &c.

Tout le monde blâme les mœurs de celui qui—&c.

where we may remark, that *his, her, their*, in English, are synonymous to the genitives of their primitive pronouns.

Where *such as, or such that*, is used in English, with the same meaning as *he who, they who*, it is also rendered by *celui qui, ceux qui*:

*Such as do not love virtue, do not know it ;
Ceux qui n'aiment pas la vertu, ne la connoissent pas.*

32. These two expressions, *the former, the latter*, referring to substantives in the following sentence, are rendered by *l'un* and *l'autre*, or by *celui-ci* and *celui-là*, agreeing in gender with the noun ; and *celui-ci* relates to the noun last mentioned (as being *nearest* to the speaker ; see the note on *ci* and *là*) ; and *celui-là* to that first mentioned (as being *most distant* from the speaker ; see also the note on *ci* and *là*) : but *l'un* and *l'autre* may relate to either, which is frequently determined by its gender, and that of the substantive referred to.

Virtue is nothing else but an entire conformity to the eternal rule of things ; vice is the infringement of that rule : *the former* causes the happiness of men, *the latter* makes them miserable ; therefore let us love *the former*, and detest *the latter*.

La vertu n'est autre chose qu'une entière conformité à la règle éternelle des choses ; le vice est l'infraction de cette règle : celui-ci fait le malheur des hommes, celle-là les rend heureux ; aimons donc l'une, & ayons l'autre en horreur.

33. S. In the indefinite sense *celui-là* should be used, and not *celui-ci*. The following sentence of J. J. Rousseau is defective :

Celui-ci doit avoir plus de voix qui peut se passer de crier ;
It should be *celui-là*, &c.

He certainly has a stronger voice who can avoid crying.

34. S. *Celui-là* for *cela* belongs to the familiar style :

Espèrent-ils de mieux plaire aux femmes en s'efforçant de leur ressembler ? Pour celui-là ils auroient tort. J. J. ROUSSEAU.

Do they hope to please women better by endeavouring to resemble them ? If they do, they are mistaken.

Des réflexions ! toi ! Je n'aurois pas deviné celui-là ! Idem.
Thou reflect ! I should not have imagined it.

Moi accomplie ! oh ! celui-là est trop fort. (Théâtre de l'Éducation, by Madame de GENLIS.)

I accomplished ! oh ! this is too much.

N. B. Whenever an expression different from the usual is preferred, it is done to give a greater energy to the sentence.

The primitive *ce*, coming before *qui* or *que*, is englished by *that which*, or *what*, in most cases; these two words making a sort of pronoun, which marks and relates to something either spoken of before, or to be mentioned after :

Il dit ce qu'il sait; He says *what* he knows.

C'est ce qui ne sera jamais; It is *what* will never be.

When *ce qui* or *ce que*, in the beginning of a sentence of two parts or members, is jointly with the verb, the nominative case coming before the verb *est* in the second part or member of the sentence, *ce* must be repeated before the verb *est*, and *est* be followed by *de*, if it is followed by an *infinitive*, and by *que*, if by another mood :

Ce que je crains, c'est d'être surpris;

What I am afraid of, is of being surprised.

Ce qui l'afflige, c'est qu'on le croit coupable;

What concerns him, is that he is thought guilty.

But *ce* must not be repeated before *est*, when the next word is an *adjective* :

Ce que vous dites est vrai; What you say is truth.

S. The preceding rule holds good with a participle :

Ce qui réussit est rarement condamné;

That which succeeds is seldom condemned.

When a *noun* comes next to *est*, it is indifferent to repeat *ce* or not :

Ce que je dis est la vérité, or, C'est la vérité;

What I say is the truth.

EXCEPT when the verb *substantive* is plural, for then *ce* must be repeated :

Ce que je ne puis souffrir, ce sont les insolences & les trahisons;

What I cannot bear is insolence and treachery.

S. And when a personal pronoun comes next to *est*, *ce* must be repeated :

Ce qui le retient, c'est vous;

It is you that restrain him.

S. There is a construction peculiar to the French language, in which *ce* is the grammatical subject of the sentence, and *que*

is placed immediately before the real subject, which in this construction is put last:

C'est une passion dangereuse que l'amour ;
Love is a dangerous passion.

We could say in French as they say in English,

L'amour est une dangereuse passion ;

but the first is more expressive.

It strikes me that this sentence is rather exclamative, and could be properly translated thus:

What a dangerous passion love is!

The above sentence has much affinity with the following, noticed page 119, rule 25:

L'illustre maison que la maison de Bourbon !

46. S. When the real subject of the sentence begins with a verb *que* is followed by *de*:

C'est une sorte de honte que d'être malheureux ;
It is a kind of shame to be unfortunate.

(Other particulars concerning *ce* preceding *est*, will hereafter be mentioned, under the heads of *c'EST personal*, and *c'EST impersonal*.)

§ Of PRONOUNS Indeterminate, *quelqu'un*, *chacun*, *quiconque*, *personne*, *nul*, &c.

1. *Quelqu'un* and *chacun* (which are compounded of *quelque* and *chaque un*) are said both of persons and things, but *chacun* has no plural; they require the preposition *de* after each of them when a noun or pronoun follows:
- Chacun *de vous*; Each of you.
- Quelques-unes *d'entre elles*; Some of them.
4. *Quelqu'un* is sometimes used absolutely:
- Si je vois quelqu'un*; If I see somebody.

But generally with reference to a noun which comes after with
le, or one which has preceded, and is represented by *en* : 5. 6.

J'apperçois quelques-uns de vos nouveaux livres ;

I perceive some of your new books.

*Vous avez de beaux livres ; prêtez-m'en quelqu'un, or quel-
 ques-uns :*

You have fine books ; lend me some of them.

Chacun de ces tableaux est d'un grand prix ;

Each of those pictures cost a great price.

Ces choses-là ont chacune leur mérite ;

Each of those things has its worth.

Prenez ces livres, & les mettez chacun à sa place ;

Take these books away, and put each of them in its place.

S. It is worth observing, that *quelqu'un*, taken in an absolute
 sense, cannot be used in the feminine singular, nor in the plural
 of either gender, when object to a verb ; that is, in the accu-
 sative case. We do not say,

Je connois quelqu'une fort aimable ;

Je connois quelques-uns qui vous aiment ;

But use another expression ; as,

Je connois une personne fort aimable ;

I know a person who is very lovely.

Je connois quelques personnes qui vous aiment ;

I know several people who love you.

S. Whereas we say in the nominative case,—

Quelqu'une qui vous a vu me l'a dit ;

Somebody who saw you told it me.

We cannot give any other reason but custom for this devia-
 tion from analogy ; unless we suppose that the feminine gender,
 the plural number, and the accusative case, *all united*, would
 so much limit the sense of this pronoun, the nature of which is
 to be indeterminate.

S. *Chacun* has an individual and distributive signification : 9.

Donnez-en à chacun ; Give some to every one.

S. If *chacun* relates to a collective noun which refers to men, 10.
 must be in the *masculine*, though the collective be in the *femi-
 ne* ; because we attend more to the meaning of the word than
 to its grammatical properties :

Les communes se retirèrent, tout irritées, chacun chez soi ;
 The commons, quite enraged, retired, each to his respective home.

11. S. We however say—

Les provinces y envoyèrent chacune leur député ;
 The provinces sent thither each its deputy.

As a reason for this difference, the Abbé Regnier says, that the collective noun *provinces* may be told one by one ; whereas the collective noun *communes* cannot.

Would it not be better to suppose that, as the commons are composed of men only, *chacun* must be in the masculine ; but as it is not so with a province, it is not absolutely necessary to put *chacun* in the masculine ; and consequently we are left at liberty to observe the grammatical concord.

12. S. *Chacun*, referring to a thing, cannot begin a sentence.

In shewing knives, we must not say,

Chacun coûte un écu ;

but use a personal pronoun with all its grammatical properties, and make *chacun* the last word of the sentence ;

Ils coûtent un écu chacun ; They cost half a crown each.

S. It appears doubtful at first sight, whether *son*, *sa*, *ses*, for *leur* and *leurs*, should be used after *chacun*. I hope the following rules will clear up the difficulty.

13. When there is not in the sentence a nominative plural to which *chacun* is the distributive, *son*, &c. should be preferred :

Il faut donner à chacun sa part ; not, *leur part ;*
 Every one must get his share.

If there is a noun in the plural to which *chacun* refers, we must consider whether the sense of the sentence is complete before *chacun* or not.

14. If the sense is complete, *son*, &c. is to be used :

Tous les hommes devoient s'aimer mutuellement, chacun pour son propre intérêt ;

All men should love one another mutually, each for his own interest.

Son has a direct reference to *chacun*, which is the nominative to a verb understood, viz. *devoit le faire*.

15. But when the words before *chacun* do not complete the sense of the sentence, we must undoubtedly use *leur* :

Tous les hommes devoient avoir, chacun pour leur propre intérêt, de l'amour les uns pour les autres ;

All men ought, for their own interest, to love one another.

Wailly says, that when the verb has no accusative, it is indifferent to use *son* or *leur*.

Then it is equally proper to say,

Tous les juges ont opiné chacun selon leurs lumières, or selon ses lumières ;

Every judge voted according to his judgement.

S. But, as I have already observed that there are no synonymous phrases any more than synonymous words, there must be some difference between the two sentences ; yet this difference is of such tenuity, that it escapes my perception. I therefore leave it to succeeding grammarians.

Quiconque signifies, and is said of, *any body whatsoever* ; is only of the singular number, and commonly of the masculine gender.

Quiconque méprise les belles lettres, se rend lui-même méprisable ;
Whoever despises polite learning, makes himself despicable.

Quiconque de vous sera assez hardi pour médire de moi, je l'en ferai repentir ;

If any of you is so bold as to slander me, I will make him repent it.

S. But in speaking of women or to women, *quiconque* is of the feminine gender :

Quiconque d'elles ou de vous sera assez hardie pour, &c.

Which of them or of you will be bold enough to, &c.

Sometimes *quiconque* is the object of one verb at the same time that it is the subject of another :

Il a ordre d'arrêter quiconque passera par là ;

He has orders to arrest any body that shall go by (that way).

Sometimes it serves as the subject of two verbs :

Quiconque a médité les ouvrages de Cicéron, doit savoir en quoi consiste la véritable éloquence ;

Whoever has studied the works of Cicero, ought to know in what true eloquence consists.

Sometimes it is governed in the genitive, and yet acts as the subject to a verb following :

En dépit de quiconque y trouvera à redire ;
In spite of any body that shall find it amiss.

5. Sometimes in the dative, and yet subject to a verb :
Ce reproche est adressé à quiconque se croit coupable ;
This reproach is addressed to any body who thinks he deserves it.

6. *Qui*, as the substitute of *quiconque*, performs these double offices :

Qui répond paie ; He who bails must pay.
C'est l'excuse ordinaire de qui n'en a point de bonne ;
It is the common excuse of those who have not a good one.
Il le dit à qui veut l'entendre ;
He says it to any body who is willing to hear it.

NOTE.

The reason of this is, according to Restaut, that *quiconque*, having the force of *toute personne qui*, contains in itself the relative with its antecedent ; and is thence, without any inconsistency, in virtue of these two capacities, made to perform two offices at once, as specified in the rules.

7. We cannot say,—*En dépit de quiconque*, to signify, *In spite of any one whatsoever* ; it being essential to that pronoun to govern and be governed at the same time : therefore in that case we should rather say—*En dépit de tout le monde, or de qui que ce soit.*

1. *Personne* (nobody) is directly opposite to *quiconque*, and is seldom used but with verbs attended by a negative, or in exclusive prepositions which infer a negation in their nature :

Ne faire tort à personne ; To wrong nobody.

Vivre sans faire tort à personne ;

To live without wronging any body.

EXCEPTIONS.

3. *Personne* is used without a negative in sentences of interrogation, admiration, and doubt, and where the adverb *trop* is used :

Y a-t-il personne au monde qui vous estime plus que moi ?

Is there any body in the world that esteems you more than I do ?

Personne a-t-il jamais pu trouver la pierre philosophale ?

Could ever any body find the philosopher's stone ?

Je doute que personne ait jamais mieux connu les hommes que La Bruyère.

I doubt if ever any body knew men better than La Bruyère.

Il est trop bardi pour craindre personne ; He is too bold to be afraid of any body.

In the above sentences, we not only enquire after the thing under consideration, but

also show our doubt and wonder at it ; whereas in the following we simply make the enquiry :

Personne n'a-t-il jamais pu trouver la pierre philosophale ?

Could never any body find the philosopher's stone ?

Though *personne* is said of both genders, yet it requires the adjective or pronoun which refers to it, in the masculine, even in speaking of a woman :

Personne n'est si malheureux qu'elle ;

Nobody is so wretched as she is.

EXCEPTIONS.

Nevertheless, if the pronoun *personne* be applied to a woman, or to women, in such a manner as to cease to be indefinite, and then becomes specified, it requires in such cases the adjective in the feminine :

Ah, mesdames ! il n'y a personne de vous assez hardie pour ;

Ah, ladies ! there is none among you bold enough to.

where *de vous* specifies the sex, as evidently referring to *mesdames* ; wherefore *hardie* is put in the feminine.

Nul, pas un, aucun, are also pronouns negative, requiring another negative before the verb, except in sentences of interrogation and doubt.

S. Because sentences of interrogation and doubt imply a kind of negation, and supply for *ne*, which in other sentences is the complement of the full negative.

Nul n'ose en approcher ; No one dares come near him.

Pas un ne le croit ; No one believes it.

T'a-t-il aucun de vous qui le souffrit ?

Would any of you bear it ?

S. Aucun is said of persons only in the nominative case :

Aucun n'est innocent devant Dieu ;

No one is innocent before God.

S. But it is said of things as well as persons in the accusative and oblique cases :

Lire plusieurs livres, sans s'attacher à aucun ;

To read several books, without being attached to any one.

Passer dans plusieurs villes, sans s'arrêter dans aucune ;

To pass through several towns, without stopping in any one.

Avoir de grandes terres, sans pouvoir disposer d'aucune ;

To have large estates, without being able to dispose of any of them.

Il a beaucoup de livres ; & il n'en lit aucun ;

He has many books, and reads none of them.

Nul,

5. *S. Nul, pas un, and aucun*, representing nouns, perform the same office; that is, require the preposition *de* before the next noun or pronoun:

Nul de vous n'a droit de se plaindre autant que moi;

No one of you has so great reason as I have to complain.

Il n'y a pas un de ces livres que je ne lise tous les ans;

There is not one of these books that I do not read every year.

Il ne connoît aucun de nos amis;

He does not know any of our friends.

NOTE.

6. *Any body* is rendered by *tout le monde*, and never *aucune personne*, which (if it was good French at all) would require a negative, and imply quite the contrary, viz. *nobody*; therefore do not say, as the French refugees do,

Demandez à la Bourse où il demeure, aucune personne vous le dira; but, *tout le monde vous le dira;* or, *il n'y a personne qui ne vous le dise;*

Ask upon 'Change where he lives; any body will tell you.

1. *Ni l'un ni l'autre* will have the verb in the singular, if it comes before the verb, and in the plural, if it comes after it; because in such case the verb has for its nominative a plural pronoun, which comprehends in its signification the two expressed by *ni l'un ni l'autre*:

Ni l'un ni l'autre n'est venu; or, *Ils ne sont venus ni l'un ni l'autre;*

Neither of them is come.

3. *L'un & l'autre*, when subject to the sentence, always requires the verb in the plural:

L'un & l'autre ont raison; or, *Ils ont raison l'un & l'autre;*

Both are in the right.

4. The verb construed with *l'un l'autre* must be a reciprocal one, except it is the verb *être*:

Ils se font des grimaces l'un à l'autre;

They make faces at one another.

Ils sont ennemis l'un de l'autre;

They are enemies to each other.

5. It is necessary to observe with regard to *l'un & l'autre*, that when there is a preposition before *l'un*, the same must be repeated before *l'autre*:

Il est ami de l'un & de l'autre; He is a friend to both.

S. We may remark, that in oblique cases the prepositions 5
are placed between *l'un* and *l'autre*, and not before, as with
other words; because the second part of this pronoun is the
term of the action of the other.

Les femmes médisent volontiers les unes des autres;
Women willingly slander each other.

S. *L'un l'autre*, are sometimes separated. It is to put in op- 6
position many objects which are compared together, and to
point out what belongs to each object; but then each of them
may be preceded by a preposition.

Les passions s'entendent les unes avec les autres : si l'on se laisse
aller aux unes, on attire les autres.

There is a sort of concord between the passions; if we give
way to one, we subject ourselves to the others.

NOTE.

It is very common to add the preposition *entre* to the reciprocal verb, which other- 7
wise would be attended by *l'un l'autre*, but which then does not require it; the same
meaning being implied by the reciprocal verb with the preposition *entre*, as by the
reciprocal verb and *l'un l'autre*;

Ils s'entre-tuent; They kill one another.
Ils s'entre-frappent; They strike each other.

Some, repeated in English in a sentence, is expressed in French 8
by *les uns*, in the first part of the sentence, and *les autres* in the
other:

Les uns aiment une chose, & les autres une autre;
Some like one thing, and some another.

Plusieurs is of both genders, but only of the plural number: 1.
Il y en a plusieurs à rejeter;
There are several of them to be rejected.

The English expression, *many a man*, is rendered into French 2.
by, *plusieurs hommes*, or *plus d'un homme*.

Tout is variously construed: 1st, It is an adjective, signifying 24
all, and *the whole of*, and always coming before the article of
its noun, besides the prepositions *de* and *à*, which it requires in
the genitive and dative cases before itself:

Tout le monde; The whole world.
De tout le monde; Of the whole world.
A tout le monde; To the whole world.

Phrases like the following—*a whole city*—are rendered, *toute* 25
une ville, &c.

3. 2dly, It signifies *any, or every, or each*, and its noun has no article :

Toute vérité n'est pas toujours bonne à dire ;
All truth, i. e. any truth, is not to be told at all times.

Toute homme est mortel ; Every, each man is mortal.

4. S. Observe, that in that sense *tout* will always have the next noun in the singular, and must be in the singular itself. *Bosquet* said,

Ils demandoient d'être exempts de tous impôts ; it should be, *tout impôt ;*

They asked to be freed from every tax.

- 4a. *Tous impôts* is used in the law style only.

5. S. We say then, *de tout genre*, of every gender ; *de toute sorte*, of every sort ; *de toute espèce*, of every kind ; or, *de tous les genres*, of all the genders ; *de toutes les sortes*, of all the sorts ; *de toutes les espèces*, &c. of all the kinds, &c.

- 6a. *Boileau*, who is a correct writer, says,
Répandant l'idolâtre & folle illusion sur la terre, en tout lieu disposé à les suivre (en tous lieux would be incorrect.)

Spreading idolatry and foolish illusion over the earth, in every place disposed to receive them.

- 6b. It is true that we say,

Courir à toutes jambes, To run as fast as possible ;

Prendre à toutes mains, To catch every way ;

but these are idiomatical expressions.

7. S. *Tout*, with the article, and without it, has sometimes a very different meaning : *Tout homme*, is every man ; *Tout l'homme*, is man in every thing that constitutes his being.

Tout homme est sujet à la mort ;—vérité utile ; tout l'homme est sujet à la mort ;—erreur pernicieuse.

Every man is subject to death ;—an useful truth : the whole man is subject to death ;—a dangerous error.

8. S. *Tout* is used to express things which are many in number, and not those of which there are only two. The French Academy, through all their dictionary, say *adjectif de tout genre* ; it should be, *des deux genres*, because there are but two genders in the French language.

NOTE.

9. It is to be observed, that when this adjective (*tout*) is construed with the proper name of a city or town of the feminine, it does not agree with its gender ; and, besides, causes the other adjective (if there is any) to be masculine :

Tout

Tout Rome *le sait* (not *toute Rome*, although *Rome* is feminine);
All Rome knows it.

Tout la Haye *en est alarmé*; All the Hague is frightened at it.

This is by the figure *Syllepsis* (or *conception*), in which our *conceptions* attend more to the meaning of the word, than to the grammatical properties: thus, *Tout Rome le sait*, implies that *all the inhabitants of Rome* know it; for which reason we use the masculine gender of the adjective, with reference to the meaning of the proper name, and not the feminine, according to the stricter rules of grammatical concord.

3dly, *Tout*, construed with some verbs, especially with *être*, 10.
is used without a substantive, being itself taken substantively,
and, as such, sometimes preceded by the article: 12

Tout est vanité en ce monde; All is vanity in this world.

Le tout est plus grand que sa partie;

The whole is greater than a part of it.

S. Tout, taken substantively in the accusative, is placed 12.
after the verb in simple tenses.

But between the compound and the participle, in compound 13.
tenses:

Il dit tout; He tells all.

Il a tout dit; He has told all.

In oblique cases *tout* is placed after the verb in both compound 13.
and simple tenses:

Il se charge de tout; He takes all upon himself.

Il s'est chargé de tout; He took all upon himself.

Il pense à tout; He thinks of every thing.

Il a pensé à tout; He has thought of every thing.

S. Tout follows the above rule with the infinitive: 14

Il veut tout faire; He wants to do every thing.

Il a promis de se charger de tout;

He has promised to take charge of every thing.

Tout, however, is sometimes found after the verb, either in 15
the infinitive, or in simple or compound tenses; but then it is
the emphatical word of the sentence.

Il faut leur pardonner tout,—*ils ne pardonnent rien*; (NEU-
VILLE)

They must be forgiven all,—they forgive nothing.

Which has a greater force than, *Il faut leur tout pardonner*. 16

S. Tout is sometimes preceded by substantives without an
article, which are, in a manner, adjectives to it: or rather a
collective

collective representative, and is the immediate nominative to the verb.

Peuples, grands, riches, pauvres, rois, sujets, tous *seront cités au tribunal du souverain juge.*

Nations, the great, the rich, the poor, kings, subjects, all will be called to the tribunal of the sovereign judge.

17. S. The feminine *toutes* is not used substantively. We do not say,

Toutes sont venues ;

Il méprise les lois, il se met au-dessus de toutes.

We must use a personal pronoun, and sometimes alter the sentence :

Elles sont toutes venues ; They are all come.

Il se met au-dessus des lois, & les méprise toutes ;

He puts himself above all law, and despises it.

- 17a. S. *Tout* is elegantly taken for persons :

Tout se plaint ; that is, *Tout le monde, &c.*

Every body complains.

NOTE.

18. *Tout* signifies every in all the following expressions : *tous les jours*, every day ; *toutes les semaines*, every week ; *tous les mois*, every month ; *tous les ans*, every year :

19. and the noun is rendered into English singularly :—*à toute heure*, every hour ; *à tout*

- 19a. *moment*, every moment. But use will have us say—*à chaque instant*, every instant ; *à chaque minute*, every minute ;—instead of, *à tout instant*, *à toute minute*.

20. 4thly. *Tout* is used before an adjective followed by *que*, and is rendered by *although* or *however*, or by *as*, repeated with an adjective between, or only coming after an adjective. In this
21. signification it is indeclinable, except (which is worth observing) when the adjective feminine before which it comes, begins with a consonant, for then it admits of a feminine termination ;
22. and if the adjective is plural, it may then be plural also ; but
23. when the adjective, though feminine and plural, begins with a vowel, *tout* remains undeclinable :

Tout philosophe qu'il est, il juge souvent de travers ;

Though he is a philosopher, he often judges wrong.

Tout ignorant qu'il est, il a beaucoup de jugement ;

Ignorant as he is, he has much judgement.

Toutes laides qu'elles sont, elles sont bien fières ;

Ugly as they are, they are very proud creatures.

Toute petite qu'est son armée, il leur donnera bataille ;

Small as his army is, he will give them battle.

Tout

Tout étonnantes que sont des aventures, on les a vu arriver ;
 However surprising these adventures are, they have been seen to happen.

5thly. *Tout* is also used before an adjective in the sense of *quite*, *entirely*, without being followed by *que* ; subject to the same rules and restrictions with regard to its number and gender, as those specified under the *fourth* use of it :

Il est tout autre ; He is quite another man.

Elle est tout abattue ; She is quite cast down.

Ils sont tout transportés de joie ;

They are quite transported with joy.

Elles sont toutes transportées de joie ;

They are quite transported with joy.

Elles sont tout éperdues ; They are quite affrighted.

Ce sont des nouvelles toutes fraîches ;

These news are quite fresh.

But if the adjective has *aussi* intervening between *tout* and itself, *tout* is indeclinable :

Elles sont tout aussi fraîches que si on ne fesoit que de les cueillir ;

They are quite as fresh as if they had been just now picked.

S. My humble opinion is, that *tout*, in the above cases, is a declined adverb ; and in this I am not governed by the spelling, but by the pronunciation of it.

It may not be improper here to make a few observations upon the written and spoken French language. Those who learn French are never suffered, by experienced masters, to pronounce a French word from books, except when they themselves read first.

The spelling of the French women is, in general, found defective. However their writings, badly spelt as they are said to be, in general represent the sounds of the language more exactly than those of a member of the French Academy do.

Every candid person will confess, that the little system of orthography which a sensible French court lady instantaneously forms, is more adapted to the language than that which is followed by those who rudely, unphilosophically, and erroneously, laugh at her spelling. These are conclusive arguments for the following assertion, that the French written language is a very imperfect representation of the spoken ; and consequently that *tout*, modifying, and coming immediately before an adjective beginning

beginning with a vowel, as also when *aussi* is between them, is not spelt as it is pronounced, viz. *toute*.

The pronunciation of that adverb, before an adjective in the feminine gender, beginning with a consonant, proves that the French make it declinable in that case. We have nothing to do with the propriety of it: grammarians are not to give law with regard to languages, but to relate things as they are. For my part, I do not know why adverbs, when they modify adjectives feminine, should not have an inflexion for the feminine gender.

26. S. Racine junior, influenced by the notions of common grammarians, throws on the printer the blame of the following concord, in a verse wrote by his father :

Maître absolu de tous tout que nous sommes ;

Absolute master of all whatever we are.

- 26a. Since we say—*toutes tant qu'elles sont*, why should not Racine senior say—*tous tant que nous sommes*? In this he follows analogy, which, were it more frequently attended to, would throw aside a number of exceptions,—the torment of both master and scholar.

S. One of our best grammarians objected to the declinability of *tout*, in the following sentence :

Madame de Nevers trouva Madame la Marquise de Grignan toute des plus jolies. (MADAME DE COULANGE.)

Madame de Nevers found the Marchioness de Grignan every way one of the prettiest.

I think he is in the right, because though *tout* is here an adverb of manner as well as in the 24th rule, it is not however immediately followed by the adjective, were even the ellipsis supplied.

It just strikes me, that the reason of this deviation from one of the fundamental rules of the French language, that is, the indeclinability of the adverb and the conjunction (*tout* having in the 20th, 21st, 22d, and 23d rules, something of the connective signification, and being entirely an adverb in the 24th rule), is that the French, being accustomed to see *toute* before a substantive feminine, are naturally bent to say *toute* before an adjective with a feminine inflexion.

Aussi, in the 25th rule, instead of being an objection to the above remark, is a confirmation of it.

S. *Tout*

S. Tout, adverb, is often expletive, in order to render the expression more forcible and energetic: 28

Il lui dit tout en riant; He told him with a laugh.

Tout comme vous voudrez; Just as you please.

6thly, *Tout* is likewise used in the sense of *quite*, before the adverbs *bas* and *doucement*: 29

Parlez tout bas; Speak quite low.

Marchez tout doucement; Walk quite softly.

S. Boubours has a long while ago remarked, that *tout*, followed by an adjective and a conjunction, governs the indicative and not the subjunctive: 30

Tout affligé qu'il étoit; Quite afflicted as he was.

Mais il me reste un fils; & *je sens que je l'aime, tout rebelle qu'il est*;

But there still remains a son to me; and I perceive that I love him, rebel as he is.

* *Autrui* is a pronoun which has neither gender nor number. It is used with the preposition *de*, *à*, or *chez* before it; but more frequently with the first, and very seldom with the last: 31

Désirer ou convoiter le bien d'autrui;

To covet another man's property.

Faire à autrui comme nous voudrions qu'on nous fit;

To do by others as we would be done by.

Etre logé chez autrui;

To live with and at the expence of others.

* *Quelconque* is a pronominal adjective which always follows its noun, and cannot be separated from it. It is mostly confined to law phrases: 32

Nonobstant opposition ou appellation quelconque;

Notwithstanding any opposition or appeal whatever.

* It is also used in the familiar style: 33

Je n'ai affaire quelconque; I have no business whatever: and then requires *ne* before the verb.

* In any other style *aucun* is preferred, and also requires *ne* before the verb: 34

Je n'ai aucune affaire; I have not any business.

The French Academy admits it in the didactic style, and without a negation: 35

Une ligne quelconque étant donnée ; Any line being given.

5. * *Quelque* is an adjective, or perhaps a kind of article, used for both genders, which, in the singular, designs an object, and in the plural a number indeterminate :

Cela seroit bon à quelque dupe ;
That would be good for some dupe.

Quelques années de plus en feront un grand homme ;
Some years more will make him a great man.

6. * *Quelque* is mostly followed by the relative *qui*, placed between the substantive and the verb, which is always in the subjunctive :

Quelque femme que l'on prenne, il faut toujours s'attendre à des peines ;

What wife soever we take, we must expect trouble.

7. * *Quelque* also indicates an indeterminate quality or quantity :

Quelque mérite qu'on ait, on ne réussit guère sans protecteur ;

Whatever merit a man has, he can hardly succeed without a patron.

Quelque mérite qu'on ait, may be as well translated by, *Though a man has so much merit, or ever so much merit.*

Quelques richesses qu'il possède ;
Whatever riches he is possessed of.

Quelques belles actions qu'il ait faites ;
Whatever great actions he has done.

- 7^a. *S. Quelque* is declinable in the last sentence, though immediately followed by the adjective *belles* ; because its qualifying or modifying property does not fall upon *belles* alone, but upon *belles actions*, which may be considered as a compound word, which is of course a substantive, and here *quelque* is an adjective.

8. * But when the substantive does not come with the adjective immediately before or after, *quelque* becomes an adverb modifying the adjective alone :

Quelque belles que soient ses actions :
However great his actions may be.

S. Observe, that we could say, *Quelque belles que ses actions soient* ; but the former is preferred on account of its harmony, *soient* being only a monosyllable, whereas *actions* is a dissyllable. I have already observed, that the French avoid ending a sentence with a monosyllable as much as they can.

S. This

S. This accounts for their never, in this case, placing the nominative after the verb, when it is a pronoun :

Quelque riches qu'ils soient ; However rich they be : because the sound of *soient* is a more full and sonorous than that of *ils*.

S. *Quelque*, adjective, besides designing an indeterminate quality or quantity, is further used to soften the meaning of the substantive :

Il a quelque sujet de se plaindre de vous ;

He has some reason to complain of you.

For, *Il a un peu de sujet de se plaindre de vous*.

S. It sometimes modifies *peu*, and renders the quantity expressed by *peu* still more indeterminate :

Il a quelque peu d'amitié pour elle ;

He has some little friendship for her.

Quelque here is an adverb modifying another adverb.

S. In a familiar style *quelque*, adverb, is used for *environ*, à-peu-près :

Il y a quelque soixante ans ; It is some sixty years.

As, in English, *whatsoever* is a pronoun compound, which is sometimes divided into two words by another intervening word, as, In *what condition soever* I be ; so is *quelque* likewise divided into two words, viz. *quel* and *que* ; but without any word, as in English, between : and *quel que* must be immediately followed by a verb, or pronoun personal, in the nominative case. *Quel*, in such case, must agree in gender and number with the following pronoun, which comes before the verb, or with the noun (if a noun be the subject of the verb) which comes after the verb, but is its nominative case ; and the verb requires no other case of *qui* before it, although it is still governed in the subjunctive by *que* :

Quels que puissent être vos desseins ;

Whatever your designs may be :

which amounts to the same as, *Quelques desseins que vous puissiez avoir*.

Quel que je sois ;

Whatever I am.

Quels que nous soyons ;

Whatever we are.

Quelles qu'elles puissent être ; Whatever they may be.

14. S. *Quelque*, followed by *que*, as we have just seen, signifies nearly the same thing as *quel*, or *quelle que*.

Quelque raison qu'il ait de faire cela,
Whatever reason he has for doing that,

- 14a. has nearly the same signification as,

Quel que soit le motif, or *Quelle que soit la raison qu'il a ;*
Whatever may be his motive :

and not *qu'il ait*, as is often met with.

If *ait*, in the first sentence, is in the subjunctive mood, it is on account of the uncertain signification of *quelque*, and not on account of the *que* immediately before it, which is nothing else but a relative pronoun ; consequently, the second verb in the second sentence must be in the indicative ; and if the first verb in the same sentence is in the subjunctive mood, it is for the same reason as given for the first.

- Whatever* and *whatsoever* are not always rendered by *quelque* ; 15. we have seen that they sometimes express *quelconque*. They are moreover rendered by *tout ce que*, *quoi que* :

Tout ce que vous voudrez ; *Whatsoever* you will.

Quoi que ce soit ; *Whatever* it may be.

Quoi qu'il arrive ; *Whatever* may happen.

Quoi que vous fassiez, vous n'en viendrez pas à bout ;

Do what you will, you will not bring it about.

- 15a. * But observe, that this pronoun *quoi que* is by no means the same as *quoique* the conjunction ; a mistake very commonly made, from their both governing the subjunctive. Besides by the meaning, there is another way of distinguishing the pronoun *quoi que* from the conjunction *quoique* : in the former, *que* is always separated from *quoi*, in the latter it is always joined to it.

- S. I have often, in different grammars, met with the following observation :

Tout...que, used for *quelque...que*, does not govern the subjunctive as *quelque....* does. We must then say,

Tout savant qu'il est ; Learned as he is : and

Quelque savant qu'il soit ; However learned he may be.

I cannot help remarking that the above observation is useless, if

if not absurd ; since the first sentence is positive, and the second has something of a conditional signification.

From *qui* and *quoi* are formed these two other pronouns ^{17a} indeterminate :

1. *qui que ce soit,* *qui que ce fût.*

2. *quoi que ce soit,* *quoi que ce fût.*

The first is said of persons, and the second of things.

Qui que ce soit answers to any body, whatsoever ; and when its ^{17a} verb is attended by a negative, it signifies *no man in the world, 17b. no man living, nobody at all :*

Qui que ce soit qui vous parle, pensez à ce qu'on vous dit ;
Whoever speaks to you, mind what he says.

Where we see that it takes the relative *qui* between it and the verb, in conformity to its original signification ;—*whoever it be who speaks to you, &c.*

Qui que ce soit ne m'en a parlé ;

No man in the world has spoken to me about it.

Je n'ai vu qui que ce soit ;

I have not seen any body at all ; i. e. I have seen nobody, &c.

Qui que ce fût is the same pronoun, used with the other tense of the subjunctive, accordingly as the tense of the other verb in ^{18a} the same member requires it :

Qui que ce fût qui lui parla, il ne répondoit rien ;

Whosoever spoke to him, he made no answer.

Il ne se défioit de qui que ce fût ;

He mistrusted nobody.

These two pronouns, used without a negative, seem to form a ^{19a} kind of *nominative absolute*, which must be followed by the pronoun personal *il* ; and when the sentence has two members, *qui que ce soit, qui que ce fût*, must be immediately followed by the relative *qui* before the verb of the first member, and *il* must come besides before that of the second :

Qui que ce soit qui me trompe, il sera puni ;

Whoever deceives me, shall be punished,

Qui que ce soit, il s'en repentira ;

Whoever he be, he shall repent it,

N O T E.

Perhaps the real state of the case is, that *il* is the antecedent to the *qui*, subjoined to the *qui que ce soit*, which is put in *apposition* with the *il*; as will appear if we throw the sentence into the following explanatory form :

Il s'en repentira, qui que ce soit, qui me trompe;
He will repent it, whoever he be, that deceives me.

20. *Quoi que ce soit, quoi que ce fût*, without a negative, signifies
21. *any thing whatsoever*; and with a negative, *nothing at all, &c.*

Quoi que ce soit qui arrive, faites-le moi savoir;
Whatever happens, let me know it.

Quoi que ce fût qui arrivât, il s'y soumettoit sans murmurer;
Whatever happened, he submitted to it without murmuring.

Quoi que ce soit n'est arrivé; Nothing has happened.

22. *Qui que ce soit, qui que ce fût*, and *quoi que ce soit, quoi que ce fût*, are also used in the genitive and dative cases.

23. S. Observe, that when *qui que ce soit* and *quoi que ce soit* are not the nominative to the sentence, *que* of course must be used after them instead of *qui* :

A qui que ce soit que vous vous adressiez, &c.
Whoever you apply to, &c.

A quoi que ce soit que vous vous appliquiez, &c.
To whatsoever you apply yourself.

Observe also to put the verb in the subjunctive mood after *que*.

24. S. *Quoi qu'il en soit* seems to belong to this tribe.

Quoi que c'en soit was formerly used. *Vaugelas* thought it as good as *quoi qu'il en soit* :

Quoi que c'en soit, c'étoit dans des rencontres de cette nature que ses inquiétudes rassuroient ses soldats;

However it was, it was in rencounters of that nature that his anxiety removed that of his soldiers.

We would now say, *Quoi qu'il en soit, c'étoit, &c.*

25. S. When *quoi qu'il en soit* is used without a regimen, as in the above sentence, it serves as a transitive conjunction, to join what has been said before with what follows.

26. S. And when *quoi qu'il en soit* requires a regimen, it is always with the preposition *de* :

Quoi qu'il en soit de ce que je viens de dire;
However, from what I have just said.

Bossuet, supposing *en* to refer to what follows, and to be instead of the preposition *de* and its complement, suppressed it in the following sentence :

Quoi qu'il soit *de l'imputation*, &c.

He should have said,

Quoi qu'il *en* soit *de l'imputation*; &c.

However it be with respect to the imputation, &c.

because *en* refers to something understood, as, *Quoi qu'il soit de ce qu'on a pu dire, ou de ce qu'il peut arriver de fâcheux au sujet de l'imputation*; or something similar.

Tel (such), and *rien* (nothing), may also pass for pronouns indeterminate, or pronominal words at least, in sentences like these :

Tel sème qui ne recueille pas; Such sow as do not reap.

"*Il y a tel Indien qui se croiroit déshonoré, s'il mangeoit avec son roi*;" (MONTESQUIEU, *Esprit des Loix*)

There is a kind of Indians that would imagine themselves dishonoured should they eat with their king.

Il ne dit rien; He says nothing.

Otherwise *tel* is rather an adjective signifying *such*, and the *que* following it, as :

Il est tel qu'on le dit; He is *such* as they say.

But what must be particularly observed of *tel* the adjective, and which may as well be mentioned here, is that *tel*, or rather its noun, takes no article or particle when construed with a verb in the imperative mood, although it takes a particle with one in any other mood :

Imposez-moi telle peine qu'il vous plaira;

Inflict what punishment you please upon me.

But we say,

Je ne puis souffrir une telle peine, un tel affront;

I cannot bear such a punishment, such an affront.

Further Observations upon TEL,

S. Tel is a mere adjective when it marks a resemblance between the noun it refers to, and the noun that follows, without specifying the particularities of that resemblance; and then it is immediately followed by *que* :

Un héros tel qu'Alexandre est plus à craindre qu'à désirer ;

A hero like Alexander is more to be dreaded than wished for.

6. S. *Tel* is also an adjective when it signifies *si grand* :

Ses vertus sont telles, que la haine & la jalousie se taisent devant lui ;

His virtues are such, that hatred and jealousy are silent before him.

For, *Ses vertus sont si grandes, &c.*

7. S. But when *tel* is in the place of a substantive understood, it is then a real pronoun, and is only applicable to persons :

C'est un tel qui me l'a dit ; Such a one told it me.

Il le savoit d'une telle ; He knew it from Mrs. such a one.

8. S. When *tel*, whether an indeterminate pronoun or an adjective, takes the lead of a phrase, it is always in one of a sententious meaning :

Tel fait des libéralités, qui ne paye pas ses dettes ;

Certain people do deeds of liberality, yet do not pay their debts.

Telle est l'indocilité de l'esprit humain, telle la force de son penchant à l'indépendance, que la soumission à l'autorité la plus légitime devient pour lui un état de gêne & de contrainte.

Such is the indocility of the human mind, such its forcible propensity to independance, that submission to the most lawful authority becomes to it uneasiness and constraint.

9. S. *Tel* is sometimes modified by the adverb *tout* :

Mademoiselle Du Pleffis est toute telle que vous la représentez ;
(MADAME DE SEVIGNE)

Miss Du Pleffis is quite what you represent her.

S. Remarks on the indeterminate pronoun RIEN.

Rien, in the accusative, does not always follow the same construction as *nothing* or *any thing* does in English. Observe at the same time, that *rien* requires *ne* immediately before the verb

10. When the tense is simple, *rien* is placed after the verb :

Ne savez-vous rien ? Do you not know any thing ?

Il ne dit rien ; He says nothing.

But

But, when the tense is compound, *rien* is placed between the auxiliary and the participle :

Il n'a rien dit ; He did not say any thing.

If *rien* is governed by a verb in the infinitive mood, it is placed immediately before it :

Je ne saurois vous rien donner ; I cannot give you any thing.

In oblique cases *rien* is always placed after the verb :

Il ne pense à rien ; He does not think of any thing.

Il n'a servi de rien ; It has been of no use.

Il est heureux de ne se soucier de rien ;

He is happy not to care for any thing.

Rien requires the preposition *de* before the next adjective ; probably for the same reason as mentioned page 199, rule 3a :

Il n'a rien de grand que la naissance ;

There is nothing great in him but his birth.

Vaugelas says that *de* may be dispensed with when the next adjective governs the preposition *de*, and that in order to avoid the cacophony which the meeting of the two *des* would occasion :

Il ne fait rien digne de sa réputation ;

Instead of, *Il ne fait rien de digne de sa réputation*.

The rules of grammar must certainly give way to harmony, but only when there is no possibility of doing otherwise.

However, this is not the case here : *de* may be construed into *qui soit* ; as,

Il ne fait rien qui soit digne de sa réputation ;

He does not do any thing worthy his character :

then both harmony and syntax are preserved.

Rien, in the plural, is a real substantive, signifying trifles, or things of no importance :

Toutes ces difficultés, toutes ces objections, sont des riens ;

All these difficulties, all these objections, are nothings.

Chaque implies a person or thing as considered separately from every other, and is Englished by *each* ; it is of both genders, but has no plural :

Chaque science a ses principes ;

Every science has its principles.

On prenoit à Rome le suffrage de chaque citoyen ;
At Rome they took the vote of every citizen.

18. *Certain, certaine*, considered as a pronoun, signifies an indeterminate person or thing, having generally the force of *quelque*: it has both genders and numbers; is sometimes preceded by *un*,
18a. *une*, and sometimes not; and always comes before the substantive with which it is connected:

Il y a dans chaque plante une certaine qualité qui la rend salubre ou nuisible ;

There is in every plant a certain quality which renders it either wholesome or unwholesome.

Certain philosophe a dit, que toutes nos connoissances venoient par les sens ;

A certain philosopher said, that all our knowledge came through the senses.

29. *Certain* is sometimes purely an adjective, implying the assurance or confirmation of the thing spoken of, and then follows its substantive:

Un état certain ; A certain estate.

Une nouvelle certaine ; Certain news. RESTAUR.

S. Une nouvelle certaine, and *une certaine nouvelle*, are two different things.

In the first phrase, *certaine* is an adjective; and in the second, a pronoun, or perhaps an article. I am of opinion that there are more articles than *le* in the French language.

Une nouvelle certaine signifies, News which may be depended on; and *Une certaine nouvelle* implies, A certain piece of news; i. e. *quelques nouvelles*, some news.

30. *S. Certain* is sometimes taken substantively:

Il ne faut quitter le certain pour l'incertain ;

We must not quit the certain for the uncertain,

C H A P. IV.

Upon NOUNS of NUMBER.

1. **C**ARDINAL numbers are indeclinable, except *cent*, hundred; and *million*, million; which take an *s* in the plural; as
also

also *vingt*, but only when it comes after *quatre*, four, and *six*, 3.
six, before a noun :

<i>Deux cents guignées ;</i>	Two hundred guineas.
<i>Trois millions ;</i>	Three millions.
<i>Quatre-vingts livres ;</i>	Eighty livres.
<i>Six-vingts hommes ;</i>	A hundred and twenty men.

But we say (with the *vingt* indeclinable),

<i>Quatre-vingt-dix ;</i>	Ninety.
<i>Quatre-vingt-un ;</i>	Ninety-one.

S. So is *cent* indeclinable, when followed by another number : 5.

Il me doit dix-neuf cent quatre-vingt-dix livres ;
 He owes me one thousand nine hundred and ninety livres.

S. We use *cent*, like *mille*, to signify an indeterminate number. 6.

On lui a donné cent coups ; They gave him a hundred blows :
 that is to say, a great number of blows.

S. We also say, by way of exaggeration,

Qu'il y à gagner cent pour cent dans cette affaire ;
 That a hundred per cent may be got by that job. 7.

This expression is used when the benefit or the loss is likely to
 be great.

CARDINAL NUMBERS.

This species of numerals always comes immediately before the
 thing numbered, and cannot be preceded by any noun or adject- 8.
 tive, except the possessive pronominals *mon*, *son*, *leur*, &c. 9.

<i>Ses deux amis ;</i>	His two friends.
<i>Mes trois frères ;</i>	My three brothers.
<i>Leurs six chevaux ;</i>	Their six horses.

Un is the only one liable to a change of gender : it makes *une* 10.
 in the feminine.

The conjunction *et* (and) is put before the unity only : 11.

<i>Vingt & un ;</i>	One and twenty.
<i>Trente & un ;</i>	One and thirty.
<i>Quarante & un ;</i>	One and forty.
<i>And le vingt & unième ;</i>	The twenty-first.
<i>Le cinquante & unième ;</i>	The fifty-first : &c.

But it is not put before the other combined numbers, except 12.
 after *soixante* : *Vingt-deux*, *vingt-trois*, *trente-quatre*, *quarante-cinq*, 13.
cinquante-six, &c. *soixante & un*, *soixante & deux*, *soixante &*
dix,

14. *dix*, *soixante* & *quinze*, up to *quatre-vingt*. But after *quatre-vingt* there is no *et* put, even before the unit:—*Quatre-vingt-un*, *quatre-vingt-deux*, *quatre-vingt-dix*, *cent-un*, *cent-deux*, *cent-unième*, *cent deuxième*, &c.

15. However, some good writers and speakers never use the conjunction copulative in any of the aforesaid cases; but say only,—*Vingt-un*, *trente-un*, *soixante-un*, *soixante-deux*, *soixante-dix*, &c.

16. We say, *six-vingts*, for *one hundred and twenty*; but *cent-vingt*

17. & *un*, for *one hundred and twenty one*. We do not say, *sept-vingts*, *huit-vingts*, &c. as the English say *seven score*, *eight score*,

18. &c. but, *cent quarante*, *cent soixante*.

19. *S. Six vingts* begins to be obsolete; we commonly say *cent vingt*.

20. We say *mille*, and never *dix cents*, nor *vingt cents*; but we

21. say, *onze cents*, *douze cents*, and so on to *deux mille*, *deux mille*

22. *cent*, *deux mille deux cents*, &c. *un million*, and never *dix cents mille*.

23. *S. Mille* sometimes signifies many, in an indeterminate manner:

Mille l'ont fait, mille pourroient le faire;

Thousands have done it, thousands could do it,

J'ai été mille fois chez vous;

I have been at your house a thousand times.

Il y a aux environs de mille ans que je n'ai reçu de vos lettres;
(MADAME DE SEVIGNE')

It is about a thousand years since I received a letter from you.

24. We do not say *septante* for *soixante* & *dix* (seventy), *huitante* for

25. *quatre-vingt* (eighty), nor *nonante* for *quatre-vingt-dix* (ninety),

as the Gascons, and some other southern provincials of France,

26. do: EXCEPT in geometry, where *nonante* is preserved. We

27. understand by *les Septante*, the *Septuagint*, translators of the Old Testament.

28. *S. Septante* is besides used in the following case:

Les septante semaines de Daniel; Daniel's seventy weeks.

Except these two cases *septante* is never used.

29. *Septante* never takes the inflexion of the plural.

30. In speaking of the divisions of time, we say, *huit jours*, for a

31. week (and not *une semaine*); *quinze jours*, for a fortnight (and

not quatorze nuits, or deux semaines); trois semaines; quatre 32
cinq semaines; un mois; six semaines; deux mois, deux mois & 33
demi (and not neuf, or dix semaines); trois mois, six mois (and 34
never un quartier, un demi-an); sept, huit, neuf, mois (and not 35
trois quarts d'an, nor trois quartiers); un an, un an & demi, 36
deux ans; but we do not say, un an & un mois, un an & deux mois, 37
&c. but, treize mois, quatorze mois, &c. 38.

When we speak of an indeterminate number of which we are 39
not sure, we say, un ou deux, deux ou trois, down to sept ou huit; 40
then we say, dix ou douze, douze ou quinze; quinze ou vingt, 41
vingt ou trente, trente ou quarante, as far as sixty; then soixante ou 42
quatre-vingt, quatre-vingt ou cent: but we say, environ six-vingt, 43
environ cent trente, &c. and not cent ou six-vingt, cent trente, ou 44
cent quarante. When we know the number very nearly, we say, 45
dix ou douze, onze ou douze, douze ou treize, &c. 46.

We say, trente & un jour (thirty-one days), vingt & un an 46
(twenty-one years), vingt & un écu (twenty-one crowns), &c.;
but custom will have us say, vingt & un chevaux (twenty-one 47
horses), (and not vingt & un cheval): and when the noun sin- 48
gular, coming after the unit, is attended by an adjective, that
adjective must be plural:

Il a vingt & un an accomplis;
He is full one and twenty years old.

Il y a quarante & un jour passés;
It is above one and forty days.

Trente & un écu bien comptés;
One and thirty crowns well told.

NOTE.

The reason why the noun, in the above examples, is singular, is because it agrees with un immediately preceding it, which noun is previously understood to follow the plural numeral in the plural number; vingt & un an being put for vingt [ans] & un an. Wherefore the adjective referring to the plural noun as well as to the singular, is, with propriety, made plural;—Vingt [ans] & un an accomplis. The exception of vingt & un chevaux, is a licence of custom, not easily to be accounted for.

S. Unless we suppose, as this expression seems to belong to farmers, horse-dealers, &c. that those gentry, not being over nice about grammatical distinctions, seeing a plurality of number, thought it better to say vingt & un chevaux, than vingt & un cheval; and from them the whole nation adopted that same expression.

The cardinal numbers very seldom take the article; the other 49
numerals always do. 50.

The

51. The *collective* are commonly preceded by *un* or *une*, and must besides be followed by the preposition *de* before the next noun (i. e. the next noun must be in the genitive case):

J'ai douze noix, or, *une douzaine de noix*;

I have twelve walnuts, or a dozen of walnuts.

Prenez-en une douzaine; Take a dozen.

52. S. We see, that with regard to provisions it is almost indifferent to use the cardinal or the collective number:

Un cent, or *une centaine de pommes*; A hundred apples.

53. S. But we do not say, *un cent de lettres*, and *un cent d'hommes*. We must say,

Une centaine d'hommes, or *de lettres*;

A hundred men, or letters.

54. S. *Douzaine* is used, in an adverbial expression, to signify a man or a thing of very little worth:

Un avocat à la douzaine; A counsellor of very little merit.

55. From the cardinal numbers the *ordinal* are formed, by adding *ième* to the last consonant of the cardinal, and cutting off, therefore, the final *e* from those which have it; as, from

56. *deux*, *deux-ième*; *dix*, *dix-ième*; *quatre*, *quatr-ième*. Ex-

- 56a. *CEPT premier* and *second*. In *neuf* the *f* is changed into *v*, in *neuvième*.

57. S. The ordinal numbers are taken substantively in the following case:

J'ai fait ma sixième au collège d'Harcourt, ma cinquième, quatrième, troisième, seconde & rhétorique, au collège Mazarin à Paris.

I have passed my sixth class in Harcourt college, my fifth, fourth, third, second and rhetoric, at Mazarin college, in Paris.

58. Though we say, *le premier & le second*, yet we do not say, *le vingt & premier*, *le vingt & second*, but *le vingt & unième*, *le*
59. *vingt & deuxième*.

60. To the ordinal numbers belong these three: *le dernier* (the last); *le pénultième*, or *l'avant-dernier* (the last but one); and *l'antépénultième* (the last but two).

61. The French, to express the retinue of a person of superior rank and consequence to those composing it, or the companions of a person whose names do not require to be particularised with his,

his, use the ordinal, importing the number formed by him and them, agreeing with the disjunctive pronoun :

Il alla lui cinquième ; He went with four others.

Il s'enfuit heureusement lui troisième ; (SULLY)

He fled happily with four others.

Il est parti lui douzième, tout le reste suivra ; (SEVIGNE')

He has set out with a dozen, all the rest will follow.

(The Messieurs de Port Royal mark, in this instance, a similarity between the Greek and French languages, in their very excellent Greek grammar :—Ξενοκλείδης πέμπτος αὐτός ; *Xenoclides lui cinquième.*)

Ordinal numbers form also each an adverb, with the addition of *ment* or *ement* :—*Premier-ement, second-ement ; or, deuxième-ement, troisième-ement ;* and so on to *twenty*. In the place of these adverbs we may use, *en premier lieu, en second lieu, en troisième lieu, &c.* in the first place, &c.

We use the cardinal and not the ordinal number, in dating and speaking of the years of the world, and then write *mil* and *cent*, and not *mille* or *cents* :

L'an mil sept cent quatre-vingt-dix de l'ère chrétienne ;

The year one thousand seven hundred and ninety of the Christian æra.

But we say,

La seconde, la quatrième année de la cent-dixième Olympiade ;

The second, the fourth year of the hundred and tenth Olympiad.

We also use the cardinal numbers when we name the days of the month :—*Le deux, le trois, le six, le onze, le quinze, le vingt, le vingt & un, &c.* but we do not say, *l'un du mois*, but *le premier du mois*, the first day of the month, &c.

Observe, that we put no particle before *cent* and *mille*, as in English, except it is to denote *unity in opposition to many* :

Un cent de plumes ; One hundred pens, and not more.

J'en ai cent, j'en ai mille ; I have an hundred, a thousand.

We say in common, *le onze, du onze, au onze* ; although, to speak correctly, we should say, *l'onze, de l'onze, à l'onze*.

When two ordinals come together in English, the first is rendered into French by a cardinal :

Le

Le dix ou douzième ; The tenth or twelfth.

Le sept ou huitième ; The seventh or eighth.

72. In denoting particular kings and sovereigns, we use the cardinal number without the article:—*Henri trois*, Henry the third; *Henri quatre*, Henry the fourth; *Alexandre sept*, Alexander the seventh; *Charles neuf*, Charles the ninth; *Benoit treize*, Benedict the thirteenth; *Louis quinze*, Lewis the fifteenth; &c.
73. But we say, *Henri premier*, Henry the first; *François second*, Francis the second; and never, *Henry un*, *François deux*, &c.
74. We say, *Charles quint* (Charles the fifth, emperor of Germany), to distinguish him from the kings of the same name and number.
75. we also say, *Sixte quint* (Pope Sixtus the fifth).
1. *Huitaine* and *neuvaine* are said of the space of eight and nine days; *octave* is said both of the interval of eight days during which a church-festival is kept, and of eight musical notes together;
2. *tercet*, *quatrain*, *sixain*, *huitain*, and *dixain*, are terms of poetry, said of staves of three, four, six, eight, and ten verses.
3. S. We also say, *Un sixain de cartes*; Six packs of cards.
4. *Quinzain* and *trentain* are tennis-terms, signifying fifteen or thirty all, i. e. that the players have each fifteen or thirty of the game;
5. *quinte*, *tierce*, and *quatre*, are card-terms, denoting a sequence of five, three, and four cards; *tierce* and *quatre* are also said of a periodical fit of an ague, returning every third or fourth day,—*la*
6. *fièvre tierce ou quatre*, the tertian or quartan ague: *tricon* is another card-term, signifying a prial or pair royal.
7. S. *Quarantaine* is to express the time a ship suspected of infection is obliged to forbear intercourse or commerce.
8. *La quarantaine* does not always imply forty days, as the word seems to indicate. It is of less or longer duration, according to circumstances:
- Il n'a fait que dix jours de quarantaine ;*
He has performed only ten days quarantine.
9. Besides the distributive number *la moitié*, *le tiers*, *le quart*,
10. we also say, *la troisième & la quatrième partie*; then we say, *un*
11. *cinquième*, *un ou deux sixièmes*, *une dixme*. *La dixme* is said
12. only of the ecclesiastical tenth or tithe.
13. S. *La moitié* loses its article in the following expressions:
Moitié seigle, *moitié froment*; Half rye, half wheat.
For, *la moitié en or de seigle*, *l'autre moitié en or de froment*.

De moitié, à moitié, are adverbial expressions :

16.

a été trop long de moitié dans son discours ;

He has been too long by half in his discourse.

Il est à moitié ivre ; He is half drunk.

Demi (half) is a sort of adjective, indeclinable when it comes 17.

before its noun, making together a compound word :—*Une*

à-heure (half an hour), *demi-dieux* (demi-gods). But 18.

when the noun comes first, it agrees with it in gender, and joined to it by the conjunction *et* :

Un muid & demi ; A hogthead and a half.

Une heure & demie ; An hour and a half.

Demi is said of things sold by the hundred :

19.

Un demi-cent de plumes ; Half a hundred of quills:

Mi, another distributive word, used only with the following 20.

nouns, with which it makes a kind of compound word, sig-

nifies also *moitié* (half), or rather *miliieu* (the middle); but (which

worth observing) it requires the article feminine, although

noun before which it comes is masculine; and it is never

strued without the feminine article, except in some pro- 21.

positional expressions used without the article :

La mi-Août, la mi-Mai ; The middle of August and May.

La mi-Carême ; The middle of Lent.

La mi-jambe ; In the middle of the leg.

La mi-chemin ; In the middle of the way.

Quartier (the fourth part of a thing) is said of those things 22.

which are divided into parts, and *quarteron* of those which are 23.

by the hundred or pound :

Un quartier d'orange ; The fourth part of an orange.

Un quarteron de thé ; A quarter of a pound of tea.

Trois quarterons d'huîtres ;

Three quarters of a hundred of oysters.

We say also, *un quartier, deux ou trois quartiers de loyer*, instead of *trois mois, six* 24.

mois de loyer, (one, two, or three quarters rent) ; and besides use *quartier* with 25.

être en quartier, to signify three, and *six mois d'attente* on a prince :

être en quartier ; To be in waiting.

aller de semestre ; To go, or be out of waiting.

Quartier also signifies a certain part of a city. 26.

Paris est divisé en 24 quartiers ; Paris is divided into 24 wards.

It is by extension used for neighbourhood. 27.

Faire les visites du quartier ; To visit in the neighbourhood.

R

In

In this sense *quartier* signifies the *voisinage* in a great city. In any other sense *voisinage* is the word.

28. *Quintal* is a hundred weight :

Un quintal, deux quintaux de poudre ;
One, or two hundred weight of powder.

29. *Millier* is said of things sold by the hundred :

Un millier d'épingles ; Ten hundred pins.

30. *S. Milliasse* is said to express a great number of contemptible things or noisome little animals.

Dans cette maison il y a une milliasse de rats & de fourmis ;
There is a myriad of rats and ants in that house.

We say *couple* and *paire* for two, but not promiscuously.

31. *Couple* is said of two natural things of the same kind which may be divided :

Une couple d'œufs, A couple of eggs ;
Une couple de poulets, A couple of chickens.

32. *Une couple de guinées* is not an improper expression, being authorized by custom ; which will not however permit us to say, *une couple de gens, une couple de personnes.*

33. When *couple* refers to two persons, as in the following phrase, it is in the masculine gender :

Voilà un beau couple d'amans ;
There is a fine couple of lovers.

34. *Paire* is said of two artificial things, which always go together, and are, in that respect, inseparable :

Une paire de gans, de bas, de souliers ;
A pair of gloves, of stockings, of shoes.
Une paire de ciseaux ; A pair of scissors.
Une paire de manches ; A pair of sleeves, &c.

35. We do not however say in French, *une paire de culottes*, as they say in English, *a pair of breeches*, but only *une culotte*.

36. *S. Une paire* and *une couple* may be said of animals. *La couple*
37. indicates the number, and *la paire*, besides, adds the idea of a necessary association.

38. A butcher may say, that he will buy *une couple de bœufs*, because he wants two ; but a husbandman must say, *une paire de bœufs*, because he intends to yoke them both to the same plough.

Les vingt-quatre is said of the twenty-four violins belonging to the chapel of the King of France; *les quarante*, of the forty members of the French Academy; *les Septante*, of the Septuagint translators of the Bible; and *les quinze-vingts*, of the three hundred blind persons belonging to the hospital of that name in Paris, founded by St. Lewis.

Moreover, we say, *centenaire*, *millénaire*, and *millésime*; as also, *sexagénaire*, *septuagénaire*, *octogénaire*, and *nonagénaire*. *Centenaire* is always an adjective, joined with its noun:

Le nombre centenaire; The centenary number.

Prescription centenaire, ou de cent ans;

A hundred years' prescription.

S. There are, however, cases wherein *centenaire* is taken substantively, as in the following:

Du vivant du Cardinal de Fleuri, les gazettes ne parloient que de centenaires.

In the time of Cardinal Fleuri, the newspapers spoke of nothing but people a hundred years old.

S. *Septénaire* is a substantive signifying a space of seven years, to be counted from the instant of one's birth.

On dit que les hommes changent de tempérament à chaque septénaire.

It is said that a man's constitution changes once every seven years.

S. It further signifies any one that has professed seven consecutive years in an university:

Les septénaires avoient des prérogatives sur les simples gradués, quant à la réquisition des bénéfices qui vaquoient en mois de rigueur;

The septenaries had prerogatives over the simple graduates, as to the request of benefices that became vacant in months of rigour.

Millénaire is sometimes an adjective joined with its noun:

Le nombre millénaire, The millenary number—

and sometimes an adjective used absolutely:

Le premier, le second millénaire;

The ten first centuries, or the ten next.

Millésime is said only of the dates set on medals, and is always an absolute adjective, if not a real noun:

Le millésime de la médaille est effacé;

The date of the medal (the year in which it was coined) is erased.

53. *Sexagénnaire, septuagénnaire, octogénnaire, and nonagénnaire*, are adjectives, sometimes joined to their nouns, and sometimes absolute:

Un homme plus que sexagénnaire; (VERTOT)

A man past sixty.

Un bon vieillard septuagénnaire; A good old man of seventy.

On voit peu d'octogénaires; les nonagénaires sont encore plus rares:

We see few people of eighty years old; those of ninety are still more uncommon.

54. S. There are besides nouns of number, which, in a single word, express how many times the same number or quantity has been repeated; such as, *le double*, the double; *le triple*, triple, or threefold; *le quadruple*, quadruple, or fourfold; *le quintuple*, quintuple, or fivefold; *le sextuple*, sextuple; or sixfold; *le décuple*, decuple, or tenfold; and *le centuple*, centuple, or a hundred fold:

Il a gagné dans cette affaire le décuple de ce qu'il avoit avancé;

He has got in that affair ten times as much as he laid out.

Douze est sextuple de deux; Twelve is sextuple of two.

55. S. The following expressions peculiar to bookbinders may here find their place:

In-folio is said of a sheet of paper folded in two;

In-quarto, of one folded in four;

In-octavo, in eight;

In-douze, in twelve;

In-seize, in sixteen;

In-vingt-quatre, &c. in four and twenty; &c.

I cannot account for these words not taking the mark of the plural, any otherwise than by saying, that wherever they are found the sentence is elliptical.

When I say, *Ce sont des in-douze*, I mean to say,

Ce sont des livres dont la feuille est pliée en douze parties ou feuillets.

If we find *in* instead of *en*, it is because the bookbinders have retained the etymological spelling of *en*.

C H A P. V.

Of VERBS.

§ Of the VERB considered in its relation to its SUBJECT or NOMINATIVE CASE.

THE verb has commonly a noun or pronoun (generally preceding it) for its subject, with which it agrees in number and person: 1.

Le maître enseigne, & l'écolier apprend;

The master teaches, and the scholar learns.

Je vois, I see; vous allez, you go; il croit, he believes; ils disent, they say.

And when the subject is a relative, it is of the same person with the pronoun personal or noun which it refers to, and consequently the verb must be in the same person with the antecedent of the relative: 2.

C'est moi qui ai fait cela; It is I who have done that.

C'est nous qui ne le croyons pas;

It is we who do not believe it.

C'est lui qui a fait cela; It is he who has done that.

Je vois un homme qui boit; I see a man who is drinking.

Many nouns singular have the verb in the plural: 3.

Son esprit, sa douceur, & sa patience, l'abandonnèrent;

His understanding, good-nature, and patience, forsook him.

Ni la douceur ni la force ne l'y feront consentir;

Neither gentle nor forcible means will make him consent to it.

EXCEPT when the two nouns singular are separated by the disjunctive conjunction *ou*; for then the verb of the first noun is understood, and that which is expressed is governed by the second: 4.

Ou la force ou la douceur le fera;

Either forcible or gentle means will do it.

That is,—*Ou la force [le fera] ou la douceur le fera.*

If one of the nouns be in the plural, the verb must agree with it: 5.

Le prince, *autant que* ses sujets, *le* souhaitent ;
The prince, as well as the people, wish it.

6. But, if the last noun be preceded by *mais*, the verb must agree with it, although it be singular, and there be many plurals before :

Non-seulement ses honneurs & ses richesses, *mais* sa vertu *même* s'évanouit ;

Not only his honours and riches, but even his virtue vanished,

NOTE.

7. It is the opinion of some, that when the last noun is preceded by *tout*, the verb must agree with it :

Ses biens, ses avantages, & tout son repos, fut sacrifié ;

His wealth, advantages, and all his quiet, were sacrificed.

But the ear must then be consulted, it being as properly said,—

Les bonheurs, les richesses, & toute sa vertu, s'évanouirent, as s'évanouit ; (CHAMPAUD)

His honour, riches, and all his virtue, vanished.

8. *Tout*, used absolutely, often follows a number of nouns as their collective substitute, 'comprising them in one general idea, and then the verb agrees with it in the singular :

Dignités, richesses, amis, tout enfin l'abandonna :

Dignities, riches, friends, all at last forsook him.

9. Sometimes too, in sentences similar to that just mentioned, *tout* comes first, and the plural nouns intervene between that and the verb, as explanatory of its force :

Il voulut que tout ce qui servoit à la guerre, les épées, les haches, les piques, fût déifié ; (RAYNAL, Vol. II. Histoire Phil. & Politique)

He wanted that every thing useful in war, swords, hatchets, spades, should be deified.

10. In like manner *rien*, as an universal negative, is used in negative sentences, as *tout*, an universal affirmative, in affirmative ones :

Ni livres, ni les promenades, ni ma belle maison, rien de tout cela ne m'occupe ; (SE'VIGNE')

Neither books, nor walking, nor my handsome house, none of all these engage my attention.

11. When the verb has many pronouns of different persons for its subject, it must agree with the first person rather than the second, and with the second rather than the third :

Vous & moi nous sommes d'accord; You and I agree.

Vous vous ferez des affaires vous & lui;

You and he will bring yourselves into trouble.

Observe, that in French the person who speaks, always names himself last :

Vous & moi nous sommes d'accord; You and I agree.

These three nouns, *une infinité*, *un grand nombre*, or *un nombre infini*, and *la plupart*, coming before another noun plural which they govern in the genitive, require their verb in the plural :

Une infinité de gens pensent;

An infinite number of people think.

Un grand nombre de savans soutiennent cette opinion;

A great number of learned men maintain that opinion.

La plupart de ses amis l'abandonnèrent;

Most of his friends forsook him.

It is the same when these nouns singular come immediately before a verb, without being followed by another noun in the plural number; because it is always understood :

Une infinité s'imaginèrent; *An infinite number imagined.*

La plupart coururent aux armes; *Most part ran to arms.*

But, when they come before a noun singular, the verb is put, as usual, in the singular :

Une infinité de monde y accourut de toutes parts;

A vast number of people resorted thither from all parts.

La plupart du monde fait cela; *Most people do that.*

Which shows, that it is not the noun of multitude that determines the number of the verb, but the second noun, which is in the genitive case; and this proceeds from this evident reason, that it is that of which the energy of the verb is in reality affirmed. Whence we may consider the genitive case, joined to the noun of multitude, as forming a kind of compound word, or noun, whose grammatical number is decided by the latter of its component words.

But this rule does not extend to other nouns, significant of a collected, aggregate quantity; for they follow the general rule of having the verb to agree with them in number as well as in person :

La moitié des ennemis déserta; *Half of the enemies deserted.*

Le tiers des vignes fut brûlé ;

The third part of the vines was burnt.

In which instance we see that the first noun expresses the real, positive quantity of the enemy and vines deserting and burnt; viz. *the half* and *the third*; and that these nouns, *moitié* and *tiers*, though they express more than *one man* and *one vine*, yet they are to be considered as *the half* and *third* of *one* collective quantity, or *whole*, and therefore are, in that sense, singular.

15. We have said, that the subject generally precedes the verb;

16. but it is made to come after it (or between the auxiliary and participle, if the subject is a pronoun, and the verb in a compound tense) in a short sentence used by parenthesis, and as an accessory member to the chief sentence :

Tous les hommes sont fous, dit Boileau ;

All men are mad, says Boileau.

Enfin, disoit ce bon roi, je ne me croirai heureux qu'autant que je ferai le bonheur de mes peuples ;

In short, said that good king, I will think myself happy only as much as I shall make the happiness of my people.

17. The subject is likewise better put after the verb in the narrative discourse, when the verb has no object (or accusative case),

18. or when the object is represented by one of these pronouns,

19. *se, que, le, où* ; or when the adjective *tel* comes before the verb :

Sur cela parut le prince ; Thereupon the prince appeared.

L'argent que m'envoya mon père ;

The money which my father sent me.

A notre arrivée, se presenta un écuyer pour nous conduire ;

On our arrival, a gentleman usher came to us to be our guide.

La prison où furent mis les malfaiteurs.

The prison in which the malefactors were put.

Tel parut à ses yeux l'éclat de sa beauté ;

Such the brightness of her beauty appeared in his eyes.

§ Of the use of the TENSES of the INDICATIVE.

THE *present* tense of the indicative is used to denote that the ^{1.} subject in question exists, or is in transaction, at that moment of time wherein we speak:—*Je vois*; *je pense*; i. e. at this present time of speaking, I am seeing or thinking.

The *imperfect* (or **extended*) tense, so called because it *extends*, *imperfectly*, to the present as well as the past, without giving a complete idea of either; implying *continuus* time, passing but not past; is used to denote,

1^o, That the thing of which we speak was present at a time ^{2.} past, which is specified:

J'écrivois quand il arriva;

I was writing when he arrived:

that is, at the very time when he arrived, which is a time specifically past, my act of writing was present, although, with respect to the time in which I myself speak, it is past.

2^o, To imply a thing which *was*, without any particular ^{3.} relation to time; and therefore it is used to denote, in narration, the inclinations and qualities of the man we are considering:

Titus étoit les délices du genre humain;

Titus was the delight of mankind.

Mon père étoit bel homme; My father was a handsome man:

But if we speak of people who are still living (for the last ^{4.} instances given are said of persons supposed to be dead), we use the compound of the present:

Mon père a été bel homme;

My father has been a handsome man.

Or, if we use the imperfect tense to the same effect, a particular ^{5.} time must be mentioned either before or after, which includes it:

Ma sœur étoit belle dans sa jeunesse; or, avant d'avoir eu la petite-vérole;

My sister was handsome in her youth; or, before she had the small-pox.

• Παρα τωρινός, as the Greek grammarians call it.

6. 3^o, The imperfect is used to express a thing as uncertain, and which even, with respect to us, has something of a contingent future, at the same time that the action contained in it is necessarily implied to be past, in regard to the verb in the succeeding member :

S'il l'aimoit, il l'épouserait ;

If he loved her, or should he love her, he would marry her.

S'il venoit, vous lui diriez que j'ai été obligé de sortir pour affaire ;

If he should happen to come, you will tell him that I have been obliged to go out on account of business.

8. The *preterite* is used to denote a thing past, in such a manner that nothing remains of the time wherein it was done ; and therefore it is a tense particularly adapted to historical relations :

J'allai l'année passée en France ; I went to France last year.

Les Espagnols conquièrent l'Amérique dans le seizième siècle ;

The Spaniards conquered America in the sixteenth century.

9. The *future* denotes a thing which is to be, at a time not yet come.

Nous aurons la paix ;

We shall have peace : we have not peace yet, but it is to come.

10. The *conditional* (or *uncertain*) tense is used to imply a thing that *would, should, could, or might be*, in an unspecified and confined time, as depending upon another uncertain contingency : it denotes the time to come, but *conditionally* :

S'il demandoit cette place, on la lui donneroit ;

If he asked for that place, they would give it him.

The action of *giving* would take place, if at all, in an uncertain time, because it depended upon his *asking*, which is also uncertain, as being merely suppository.

11. The conditional is also used in a sense partaking of the present, especially in sentences of wishing :

Je voudrois, or je souhaiterois qu'il fût beau Dimanche ;

I wish it would be fair weather on Sunday.

Pourriez-vous me prêter vingt guinées ?

Could you (or, can you) lend me twenty guineas ?

Which conditional method of making a request seems to carry with it a greater appearance of modesty and respect than a present tense in a similar case ; for it implies, that the petitioner was rather wishful to know the reception that his demand would meet with, than that he was actually making it ; and if so, the sentence

sentence may be regarded as elliptical for—*Pourriez-vous me prêter vingt guinées, (si je vous priois de le faire) ?—*

The compound of the present is particularly proper, when an idea of the present time is combined with that of the past; for this reason, when the thing spoken of is represented as happening in the day, week, month, year, or age, wherein we live, this tense must be employed :

J'ai appris aujourd'hui de grandes nouvelles ;

I have heard great news to-day.

J'ai vu le Roi cette semaine ; I have seen the king this week.

J'ai été à la comédie ce mois-ci ;

I have been to the play this month.

Les Allemands ont battu les alliés cette année ;

The Germans have beaten the allies this year.

Notre siècle a produit de grands hommes ;

Our age has produced great men.

Or in conversation, when we mention a thing which has been done and is past, but without adding any circumstance, whereby a precise time is especially denoted, or which may be supposed to have lately happened :

Avez-vous vu l'opéra de Cadmus ? Oui, je l'ai vu.

Have you seen the opéra of Cadmus ? Yes, I have seen it.

But we say,

15.

Je le vis l'année passée ; I saw it last year :

because *l'année passée* at once characterizes the time of the sentence to be one perfectly past.

In like manner, when a circumstance past is related without any particular reference to time, it may be even indifferent to use either the *perfect*, *imperfect*, or *compound of the present* :

Alexandre fut, étoit, or, a été grand capitaine ;

Alexander was, or has been, a great captain :

because there the attention is fixed on the man and his character, without regarding at all the time in which he lived and bore it.

But the compound of the present is essentially necessary to be used as the tense of the verb of the past time, when the present time is specifically expressed, in any subjoined member, with which it has a manifest connection in point of time :

J'ai fait cela, il n'y a qu'un moment ;

I did that but a moment ago.

Il y a plus de quinze jours que je ne suis sorti ;

It is above a fortnight since I was out.

The

17. The compound of the imperfect imports, that in a certain specified time past, the thing spoken of was also past, and answers to the Latin *præter-plus perfect* tense :

J'avois écrit ma lettre quand il entra.

I had written my letter when he came in.

My action of writing is here denoted not only as past in itself, but as also past with respect to another thing (his entering) which is itself past.

18. The compound of the perfect is used in the same sense as the preterite; that is to say, it denotes a thing past, in a time of which no part remains to slide away: but it besides expresses, most commonly, a thing past before another; and is almost always construed with these conjunctions, *quand, lorsque, dès que, aussitôt que, &c.*

Quand j'eus fini ma lettre, or, après que j'eus fini ma lettre, elle me pria de lui en écrire une;

When I had finished my letter, or, after I had finished my letter, she desired me to write one for her.

Dès que Aristide eut dit que la proposition de Thémistocle étoit injuste, tout le peuple s'écria qu'il n'y falloit plus penser.

As soon as Aristides had said that the proposition of Themistocles was unjust, all the people cried out, that it must be no more thought of.

20. (But it would seem, that if the action represented as past before another, appears to have been done in any portion of time which is as yet incomplete, and in which the speaker still is, as it were, at the time of his speaking, then the compounds of the present must be used :

Elle est venue me voir aujourd'hui;

She came to see me to-day.

J'étois à écrire quand elle est entrée;

I was writing when she came in.

Quand j'ai eu fini ma lettre, elle m'a prié de lui en écrire une;

When I had finished my letter, she desired me to write one for her.

Some mention will shortly be made of the double compound tenses, of which an instance has just occurred in *j'ai eu fini.*)

21. The compound of the future is used to denote a thing which is yet to be, with regard to itself, but which will be past, with respect to another future thing, which is consequently to follow it in point of time :

J'aurai

J'aurai soupé *quand il viendra*; or, *quand j'aurai soupé il viendra*;

I shall have supped when he will come; or, when I have supped he will come in.

The compound of the conditional suggests the idea of a thing ²² which might, could, would, or should have happened in an uncertain time, provided some other contingency had taken place:

Le ministre lui auroit donné cette place, s'il l'avoit demandée;

The minister would have given him that place, had he asked for it.

Moreover, the indicative has three other tenses doubly compound: ²³

Il a eu bientôt fait; He soon had done.

J'ai eu diné en un instant; I have dined in an instant.

Quand j'eus eu fini ce que je faisois;

When I had finished what I was doing.

Elle n'auroit pas eu si tôt fait sans lui;

She would not have had done so soon without him.

J'aurois eu diné plutôt, si j'eusse su qu'il devoit venir à cette heure-là;

I would have dined sooner, if I had known that he was to come at that time.

These double compounds are liable to the same rules, respecting their application, as the single compounds. They perhaps add some emphasis to the force of the simple compounds, but are very seldom used; and I cannot, for my own part, see either their beauty or propriety; except in a sentence where particular compound ²⁴ tenses are to be used, that there is occasion to signify a time still more past than the simple compounds of the same tense, which appear therefore in contradistinction with the double compounds:

Quand j'ai eu fini ma lettre, elle m'a prié de, &c.

When I had finished my letter, she desired me to, &c.

CRITICAL REMARKS on the past TENSES of the simple FORM.

One of the great difficulties in the French language, is the due discrimination of the use and application of the *simple preterite* and *imperfect* tenses of the indicative: I shall endeavour, therefore, to lessen, if not entirely to remove them; dissident, however, of my own qualifications to undertake so arduous a task, and open to the conviction of any errors which their acknowledged deficiency may occasion me to commit. It has been found necessary, in order to illustrate the subject, to interweave the consideration of the compound of the imperfect, although not of the same importance as that of the two simple tenses before mentioned.

When

When we survey a narration with attention, and, after considering it in its aggregate, collective state, proceed to analyse its *parts*, separated from *the whole*, which they form in their union, we discover that there are some which, connected with each other in regular progression like the links of a chain, are yet wholly independent one of another, holding an equal rank in the relation, and existing in the sentence in such a manner that the energy of no one of them can be regarded as derived from, or comprehended in, any other. Besides those parts, we find others which interrupt the series of those we have just described, by carrying us back to something more remote than that order of events, which are the particular and immediate objects of our attention; and others which divert or check our progress, by fixing our thoughts and inquiries upon some individual part, which they subdivide, qualify, and modify, until having sufficiently answered their purpose of explanation by this minute resolution and dissection, they cease to present themselves, and give us an opportunity of continuing that journey from which we were made to digress, or in which we were at least stopped for a time. These parts, of different natures and properties, are the distinctions of time; to discover which, constitutes the difficulty before hinted at.

Some standard of time is necessary to be fixed, to which must be conformed each event which the writer or speaker means to present successively to his reader or hearer with equal claim to his attention. The most *natural* standard of narrative time is the *simple preterite*, for reasons which its nature, *perfect* and *unmodified*, and thence correspondent with its subject, which is supposed to be *wholly* and *absolutely past*, easily suggests. In this tense are to be put all those great events which constitute fundamentally, and trace out the principles of, the history we record. In the course of it, we may sometimes find it necessary to *recur* to events which took place *before* that or those event or events which it is the immediate business of the writer or speaker to commemorate. These must be by no means described by verbs in the narrative tense, but in the *compound of the imperfect*, (answering to the Latin *preterpluperfect*) which implies time by one degree more *past* than the preterite. Moreover, as some of the great events of the narrative (recorded in the preterite) may farther require illustration, by the mention of certain particulars existing, in accompanying, and distinguishing them;—if, for instance, a personage is introduced, whose character it is necessary to draw; if the energy of a narrative verb extends itself to a variety of effects, and includes a number of component incidents; if one circumstance is represented as transacting during the continuance of another; in all such cases as the writer or speaker virtually digresses from or pauses in his relation, the tense is changed into one [*viz.* the *simple imperfect*] which being less *past* than that which carries on the thread of the history, shows that the subject matter of it is comprehended in, subordinate to, and dependant on, that part of the narration to which it is annexed: and so perfectly is this tense adapted for the office just assigned to it, that we find it joined to other tenses besides the perfect, and the present used for it, as may be seen hereafter in the course of the examples subjoined.

Cæsar, in his memorable letter to the senate, *Veni, vidi, vici*, confined himself only to a simple narration of general facts; his verbs are, therefore, all *perfect*: but had he designed to enlarge on his subject, and had observed, that he *came* on an enemy who *had heard* of his great achievements and successes, and who *were waiting* only for his approach, that they might abandon themselves to flight; that accordingly he *saw* before him a body of men, whom his very name *had intimidated*, and *were avoiding* his very shadow, and that of course he *conquered* them, without making any exertion worthy of himself, since more *were taken* and *killed* in the pursuit, than *were slain* in the battle;—it is evident that he must have used the *preterpluperfect* and *imperfect* tenses, to have expressed these particulars with propriety.

* I say the *most natural*, and *not the only one*, because, by a kind of poetic licence, which frequently occurs, the *present* is made the standard of narrative time.

I will

I will just add two or three examples from authors of established merit; by analysing the time of which, the subject may be rendered somewhat clearer.

Perf. Ainsi le Duc de Bragance, à la faveur de son nouvel emploi, parcourut librement tout le Portugal; & ce fut dans ce voyage qu'il jeta les fondemens de son élévation.

Thus the Duke de Bragance, by means of his new employment, freely made the tour of Portugal; and it was in this tour that he laid the foundation of his grandeur.

Imperf. Il avoit un équipage qui lui attiroit les yeux du peuple dans tous les lieux où il passoit. Il écoutoit tout le monde avec beaucoup de douceur & de bonté: il réprimoit l'insolence du soldat, & en même temps combloit de louange ses officiers; il les gaignoit par toutes les récompenses dont il étoit maître. Son bonneté charmoit la noblesse; il la recevoit avec des distinctions obligeantes, & selon le mérite de chacun; enfin il répandoit des biens par-tout où il passoit; de sorte que ceux qui le voyoient, croyoient ne souhaiter que leur bonheur, en faisant des vœux pour son élévation.

VERTOT, Rév. de Portugal.

He had an equipage which attracted the eyes of the people wherever he went. He listened to every body with great sweetness and kindness: he checked the insolence of the soldier, and at the same time loaded his officers with praises; he won them over by every means of which he was master. His civility delighted the nobles; he received them with obliging tokens of distinction, every one according to his merit: in short, he diffused blessings wherever he went; so that all who saw him thought that their own happiness was so much connected with his, that in wishing for his exaltation it was wishing for their own happiness.

Parcourut, fut, jetta, mark the progress of the narration:—from *il avoit* to the end of the sentence, merely the means by which he laid the foundations of his grandeur and elevation, and the circumstances contemporary with those means, are related. Now, as these are evidently mere parts of a whole, or otherwise particulars of one great circumstance, (and therefore answering to the idea of *parts*, as the great circumstance to that of a *whole*) which great circumstance is, *qu'il jeta les fondemens de son élévation dans ce voyage*, it follows, that they should be expressed in a tense less, and imperfectly, past, as comprehended in the perfect-past-time *jetta*, &c. the less in the greater: for it is evident, that in the relation of those particulars you are not advancing in the narration, but stopping, as at some interesting point of view, to look about you, and examine into the manner in which he laid that foundation.

Perf. Parmi les gens de qualité qui formèrent cette assemblée, Don Michel d'Almeida s'y fit distinguer.—

Among the people of quality who formed that assembly, Don Michael d'Almeida distinguished himself there.—

Imperf. C'étoit un vénérable vieillard qui —

He was a venerable old man who —

Perf. avoit acquis une considération extraordinaire par son mérite.—

had acquired an extraordinary reputation through his merit.—

Imperf.

Imperf. Il étoit indigné de le voir comme réduit en servitude par des usurpateurs —

He was filled with indignation on seeing his country, as it were, reduced to a state of servitude by usurpers. —

Presens. Il s'étoit soutenu toute sa vie dans ces sentimens avec beaucoup de courage & de fermeté, sans que les prières de sa famille & les conseils de ses amis l'eussent pu obliger d'aller au palais, & de faire sa cour aux ministres d'Espagne. — C'étoit par cette fermeté qu'il leur étoit devenu fort suspect. —

He had maintained these sentiments all his life-time with great courage and firmness, the prayers of his family and the advice of his friends having never been able to prevail upon him to go to the palace, and pay his court to the Spanish ministers. — It was this firmness that rendered him suspected by them.

Presens. Ce fut sur lui que Pinto jetta les yeux, pour se déclarer un peu plus ouvertement; sachant bien —

It was him that Pinto cast his eyes upon, to declare himself a little more openly; knowing well —

Imperf. qu'il ne couroit aucun risque avec un homme de son caractère, qui étoit d'ailleurs d'un grands poids pour attirer la noblesse dans son parti. VERT. ib.

that he ran no risk with a man of his character, who had besides great power to draw the nobility over to his party.

Don Almeida distinguished himself in the assembly: — this is a circumstance in the narration. You then pause, in order to be introduced to his character. This delay is marked by the imperfect tense, implying continuous time; because that he was possessing those qualities at the time that he distinguished himself, and that in effect they obtained him that distinction. In the course of his character, the author finds it necessary to go back to the particulars which happened previously to the time of his distinction, to the principles of his *past* life. This is expressed in a tense more past than the perfect, which is particularly reserved for these events of the narration which are more immediately brought under the observation of the reader. The narration is resumed by Pinto's fixing on him, for a more open declaration of his designs; where we evidently see the chain kept up in the narration. "He distinguished himself in the assembly (for his eminent merit, consequence, and independence of spirit); to him the conspirator chooses to unbosom himself first:" where then the perfect tense is of course used again; as the imperfect is afterwards, when we are told Pinto's motives which actuated him at the moment of casting his eyes on Michael d'Almeida.

Presens. Celicour, dès l'âge de quinze ans, avoit été dans le monde ce qu'on appelle un petit prodige. —

Celicour, from the age of fifteen, had been in the world what they call a little prodigy.

Imperfect. Il faisoit des vers les plus galans du monde : il n'y avoit pas dans le voisinage une jolie femme qu'il n'eût célébrée, & qui ne trouvât que ses yeux avoient encore plus d'esprit que ses vers. C'étoit dommage de laisser tant de talens enfouis dans une petite ville : Paris devoit en être le théâtre ; &c.

He composed the prettiest verses in the world. There was not a handsome woman in the neighbourhood that he had not celebrated, and that had not found his eyes possessed of still more life than his verses. It was a pity to have such talents buried in a small town : Paris ought to be the theatre for them ; and—

Perfect. L'on fit si bien, que son père se résolut à l'y envoyer.—

Imperfect. they contrived matters so well, that his father resolved to send him thither.—
Ce père étoit un honnête homme, qui aimoit l'esprit sans en avoir, & qui admiroit, sans savoir pourquoi, tout ce qui venoit de la capitale. Il y avoit même des relations littéraires ; & du nombre de ces correspondans étoit un connoisseur, appelé M. de Fintac.

This father was an honest man, who was fond of wit, without possessing any, and who admired, without knowing why, every thing that came from the capital. He even had literary correspondents there ; among the number of which was a connoisseur named Fintac.

Perfect. Ce fut particulièrement à lui que Celicour fut recommandé. MARMONTEL, Connoisseur.—

It was to him particularly that Celicour was recommended.

Previously to opening the narration, which begins with Celicour's father's sending him to Paris, some circumstances concerning his character and abilities are necessary to be mentioned ; which, as antecedent to the narrative, are expressed in the preterpluperfect tense, implying time more past than the perfect, the standard, as we have already said, of narrative time. From fifteen *he had been* a little prodigy. In what instances ? In that of *making verses* of the most gallant kind, and in that of *possessing personal charms* of the most attractive nature : which particulars are recorded in the *imperfect tense*, made in that instance the dependent of the preterpluperfect, as it is in others of the perfect, and present when used as its substitute. While in the enjoyment of these accomplishments of wit and beauty, it was suggested, that *it was a pity to bury talents like his in a small town*, and that *Paris ought to be the theatre on which they should be displayed*. As these ideas are evidently contemporary with those of his wit and beauty, it is therefore reasonable that they should be in the same tense, viz. *the imperfect*, which is accordingly the case. The narrative is then assumed, with *his father's sending him to Paris* ; but is suspended until the character of him is given, and his connections in that city are mentioned, and particularly with M. de Fintac. All which incidents, agreeably to the rules before laid down, are in imperfect tenses. It is then again taken up, with the declaration of *his being recommended to M. de Fintac* ; which is made in a perfect tense, as well as the mention of his being sent to town, the recommendation and sending being clearly “connected with each other in regular progression,” but yet “wholly independent one of another,” and “holding an equal rank in the sentence,” as two distinct and successive events of the relation.

Such appear to be the differences between the perfect and imperfect tenses ; and we shall perhaps feel more sensibly the beauty and propriety of their respective application, by considering a piece of history lying before us, interspersed with these variously-past tenses, as an highly finished portrait, wherein all the parts of the narration, expressed in the perfect, appear like the bold outlines which trace out the picture. The characters of individuals, the particulars of circumstances first generally touched on in the relation, with all incidental and parenthetical members, always expressed

pressed in the imperfect, represent the gratefulness of attitude, the ornaments of diction, the embellishments of colour, and all those finishing strokes, which, though they do not add any new limb or feature to the figure, yet communicate energy and animation to those first marked out by the contour.

§. Of the use of the TENSES of the SUBJUNCTIVE.

1. The present and simple perfect of the subjunctive often imply a future :

Je ne crois pas qu'il vienne demain ;

I do not think he will come to-morrow.

Je ne savois pas qu'il revînt si tôt ;

I did not think he would return so soon.

The first instance requires no comment, as its meaning is evidently future at the first view : in the latter, we see, that though the verb *revînt* is past with respect to us, yet with respect to *savois* it implies something future.

2. When the first verb is in the present or future, the subjunctive verb is in the present tense, if we mean to imply the present or future time :

Il faut, or, il faudra qu'ils soient plus attentifs ;

They must be more attentive.

3. And in the compound of the present, if we mean to imply the past :

Il suffit qu'un habile homme n'ait rien oublié dans ses entreprises ; les bons ou les mauvais succès ne doivent ni augmenter ni diminuer les louanges qu'il mérite.

It is enough that a skilful man has not forgot any thing in his undertakings : good or bad success ought neither to augment nor diminish the praise he deserves.

(But when a conditional member is subjoined, the time of the subjunctive verb is determined by that of the verb of the conditional member.

4. 1. If the conditional verb is present, the subjunctive verb is present also :

Je ne doute pas qu'il ne vienne, si on l'en prie ;

I do not doubt he will come, if he is asked.

2. If the *conditional* verb is in the *simple imperfect*, the *sub- 5.*
junctive verb is in the *simple perfect* :

Je ne doute pas qu'il ne vint si l'en prioit ;
I do not doubt he would come if he were asked.

3. If the *conditional* verb is in the *compound of the imperfect*, 6.
the *subjunctive* verb is in the *compound of the perfect* :

Je doute que j'eusse réussi si vous ne m'aviez secouru ;
I doubt if I should have succeeded, had you not helped me.)

When the *first* verb is in the *compound of the present*, the 7.
second is generally put in the *simple perfect* of the *subjunctive*
(where the *subjunctive* mood is proper to be used) when we
mean to express the *present with respect to the first verb* :

On s'est servi d'écorces d'arbres ou de peaux pour écrire, avant que 8.
le papier fût en usage ;

They used the bark of trees, or skins, to write upon, before
paper was invented.

Where we may easily see that *fût* expresses a present with
respect to *on s'est servi*, by turning the sentence thus :—*Le 9.*
papier n'est pas en usage ; c'est pourquoi on se sert d'écorces d'arbres,
ou de peaux, pour écrire :—which amounts to the same meaning as
the former sentence.

When we mean to express the *past with respect to the first 8.*
verb, the *subjunctive verb* is in the same tense with the first verb,
i. e. the *compound of the present* :

Il a fallu qu'il ait sollicité ses juges, & qu'il se soit informé de 9.
plusieurs autres affaires ;

He ought to have solicited his judges, and informed him-
self, &c.)

where *ait sollicité*, and *se soit informé*, plainly denote time past
with respect to *il a fallu*.

When the *second* verb expresses an action which may be done at 9.
all times, it may be put in the *present of the subjunctive*, although
the *first* verb be in the *compound of the present* :

Dieu a entouré les yeux de tuniques fort minces, transparentes 10.
au devant, afin que l'on puisse voir à travers ; (M. de OLIVET)

God has surrounded the eyes with pellicles, very thin and
transparent in front, that we may be able to see through them :

because the possibility of seeing extends, there, generally, to
time past, present, and to come, without being specifically

confined to either; and the present, in that and similar cases, is to all intents and purposes an *aorist* of the present.

10. When the *first* verb is in the *imperfect* preterite, compound of the imperfect, or in either of the conditionals, the subjunctive verb is in the *simple* preterite, if we mean to express a thing *not past*:

Il vaudroit mieux pour un homme de qualité qu'il perdît la vie, que de perdre l'honneur pour quelque action honteuse & criminelle;

It would be better for a man of quality to lose his life, than to lose his honour for some shameful and criminal action.

Lycurgue par une de ses loix avoit défendu qu'on éclairât ceux qui sortoient le soir d'un festin, afin que la crainte de ne pouvoir se rendre chez eux les empêchât de s'enivrer.

Lycurgus, by one of his laws, forbade to light those who went out in the evening from a festival, that the fear of not finding their way home might prevent them from getting drunk.

11. And in the *compound of the perfect*, if we mean to mark a *past event*:

Tout gouvernement étoit vicieux, avant que la suite des siècles, & en particulier le Christianisme, eussent adouci & perfectionné l'esprit humain; (M. l'Abbé TERRASSON)

Every government was vicious before that a series of ages, and particularly Christianity, had softened and improved the human mind.

12. The *present, simple, perfect, and compound perfect* of the subjunctive, are employed in certain elliptical phrases; that is to say, in which some words seem to be understood:

Puissiez-vous vivre autant que Mathusalem;

May you live as long as Methuselah.

For, *Je souhaite que vous puissiez vivre, &c.*

Heureux, dit très-bien Platon, l'homme qui peut, ne fût-ce que dans la vieillesse, parvenir à être sage & à penser sainement;

Plato rightly said, happy is the man who, be it only in his old age, arrives at wisdom and a rational way of thinking.

Ce pauvre enfant avoit été tant à la gêne, que, n'eût-il commis que la moindre faute, on l'auroit fouetté que rien n'y auroit manqué;

This poor child was kept under such constraint, that had he committed but the smallest fault, they would have whipt him to the utmost degree.

For, *S'il n'avoit commis que, &c.*

✂ I have been indebted for the substance of this Section to Wailly's French Grammar abridged.

§ Of the use of the INDICATIVE MOOD.

The *Indicative* with *que* is used after verbs denoting belief 1. or certainty; after all verbs signifying to tell, foretell, say, see, foresee, conjecture, presage, declare, certify, notify, signify, intimate, set forth, suppose, presume, be sensible, perceive, hear, apprehend (in the sense of conceiving, for in that of fearing it governs the 1a. subjunctive); know, understand, hope, reckon, agree, confess, own, repute, publish, remember, forget, promise, conclude, fancy, imagine, judge; and in short, after every verb expressive of the faculties of the understanding; and moreover, used in such a 1b. manner as to imply belief and certainty of the thing spoken of.

Je dis qu'il est ainsi; I say it is so.

Je presume que c'est vrai; I presume it is true.

J'avoue que vous avez raison; I confess you are right.

Je sais que vous faites quelquefois des erreurs, &c.

I know that you sometimes commit faults.

Wherefore, although we shall find that many of the verbs, 2. expressive of some of the above significations, take a subjunctive after them with *que*, when they are used with a negative, interrogatively, or so as to imply doubt and ignorance; yet 2a. when the negative and interrogation do not appear joined with doubt and uncertainty on the part of the speaker, the indicative may be used: thus, when knowing positively that the peace is made, I wish merely, in asking those about me concerning it, to know whether they are equally well acquainted with it, I would say,

Savez-vous que la paix est faite?

Do you know that peace is made?

In conformity with the rules just laid down, the following 3. verbs impersonal also govern the indicative with *que*:

* *Il semble*, it seems.

Il paroît, it appears.

Il y a apparence, it is likely.

On dit, they say, it is said.

On croit, it is thought.

On croiroit, one would think.

Il est, with these Adjectives.

avéré, averred, affirmed.

clair, clear.

Il est { *certain*, certain.

évident, evident.

constant, allowed to be true.

(*constat*, Lat.)

* Observe, with respect to *il semble*, that it must govern a noun or pronoun, in 4. order to admit of an indicative with *que* after it; for otherwise it governs the 5. subjunctive:—

Il me semble (or, à Monsieur) *que vous avez peur*;

It seems to me (or to this gentleman) that you are afraid.

Il semble que vous ayez peur; It seems you are afraid.

Il est { *indubitable, unquestionable.*
manifeste, manifest.
notoire, notorious.
palpable, palpable.

Il est { *sensible, plain, obvious to*
fore. [the senses]
visible, visible, obvious.

54. As likewise after all impersonal verbs denoting a positive certainty.

6. The indicative is likewise used after *qui*, between two verbs, when it does not denote any wish, wish, necessity :

Je plains une femme qui a un méchant mari ;
 I pity a wife who has a bad husband.

7. As also the comparative of adjectives :

Il est plus habile que je ne croyois ;
 He is more clever than I thought he was.

8. And after these conjunctions :

ainsi que, as.
tout ainsi que, just as.
de même que, even as.
si, if.
si bien que } so that.
de sorte que }
de manière que, } in such a man-
de façon que, } ner that.
tellement que, so that.
comme, } as.
en tant que, }
à ce que, according as, (or) to.
comme si, as if, as though.
lorsque, } when
quand, }
pendant que, } whilst.
tandis que, }
à cause que, } because.
parce que, }
à peine, scarce, hardly.

sitôt que, } as soon as.
aussitôt que, }
de que, }
pourquoi ? why ?
d'où vient que ? how comes it
 to pass that ?
après que, after that, when.
depuis que, (of time) } since
puisque, (casual) }
vu que, seeing that.
attendu que, considering that.
au lieu que, whereas.
à mesure que, in proportion as.
tant que, as long as.
autant que, as much as.
outre que, besides that.
joint que, add to that.
selon que, } as, according as.
suivant que, }
peut-être que, perhaps.
d'autant que, whereas, foras-
 [much as.
or est-il que, now it is that.
aussi long-tems que, as long as.
à la charge que, upon condition
 [that.

9. N.B. *À peine* is followed by *que* in the second part of the sentence ; and that *que* is rendered into English by *than* or *but*.

And

And others which do not immediately present themselves, but which may be learnt by the example of good authors.

The indicative is used *lorsque* when put for *quand*, *lorsque*, 10.
pourquoi, *comme*, *peut-être*, *parce que* :

La raison pourquoi il ne pouvait venir alors, & que les autres ne se soucioient guère d'attendre, &c.

The reason why he could not then come, and why the others scarcely cared to wait, &c.

Peut-être qu'il ne veut pas l'avouer ;

Perhaps he does not, but will not own it.

César n'étoit encore qu'édile, ou il fit faire secrètement la statue de Marius (VERLOT). [for lorsque] ;

Caesar was only edile when he caused the statue of Marius to be made secretly.

§. Of the use of the SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

The Subjunctive mood is used in a few sentences of *wishing* :

Puissiez-vous vivre heureux ! May you live happy !

Fasse le Ciel que cela arrive !

Would to God that this may happen !

Dieu m'en préserve ! God forbid !

Also in one or two sentences expressive of *reluctancy*, *astonishment*, and *imprecation* :

Que j'aie le voir après cet affront !

Can I think of seeing him after this affront !

Que je meure si cela n'est pas vrai !

Let me die if that is not true !

The subjunctive, with *que*, is used after verbs of *willing*, *wishing*, *commanding*, *permitting*, *prohibiting* and *hindering*, *asking*, *desiring*, *beseeching* and *entreating*, *fearing*, *doubting*, *suspecting*, *admiring*, *wondering*, *being glad* and *rejoicing*, *being sorry* and *grudging*, *denying* ; after all verbs expressive of some *intention*, *desire*, *affection*, *passion*, *sentiment*, or *motion* of the mind ; and generally after all verbs used with *negation* or *interrogation* :

Je souhaite qu'il réussisse ; I wish he may succeed.

Je veux que vous étudiez ; I will have you study.

Je permets que vous alliez ; I give you leave to go.

Je défends absolument que vous le fassiez ;

I absolutely forbid you to do it.

Je crains que cela n'arrive ; I am afraid that will happen.

Je doute qu'il le fasse ; I question whether he will do it.

Je ne doute pas qu'il ne le fasse ;

I do not doubt he will do it.

Je soupçonne que les choses n'aillent pas comme il faut ;

I suspect that things do not go right.

J'admire que vous vous y preniez de la sorte ;

I am surprised that you act in this manner.

Je suis bien aise que vous soyez venu ;

I am very glad you are come.

Je suis très-mortifié que vous éprouviez de tels inconvénients ;

I am very sorry you experience such inconveniences.

Il nie qu'il l'ait pris ; He denies that he took it.

Il ne nioit pas qu'il ne l'eût souvent averti que les desseins de César alloient à la tyrannie ; (VERTOT)

He did not deny that he had often warned him that Cæsar's designs aimed at tyranny.

Je défie qu'on puisse me convaincre de l'avoir fait ;

I defy any one to convict me of having done it.

Je suis surpris que vous osiez le faire ;

I wonder that you dared do it.

Plut à Dieu que cela fût ! Would to God that it were so !

Il entendoit qu'il prît une partie considérable dans le butin qu'il avoit fait sur les ennemis ; (VERTOT)

He meant that he should take a large share of the booty he had captured from the enemies.

Il n'est guères arrivé qu'une armée Péruvienne ait attaqué la première, & il est arrivé souvent qu'elle mettoit fin aux hostilités ; (RAYNAL, Hist. Philosoph. & Politique)

It has very seldom happened that a Peruvian army made the first attack, and it has often happened that it put an end to hostilities.

Agissez de manière, or, en sorte que vous réussissiez ; or, faites en sorte que vous réussissiez ;

Act in such a manner that you may succeed, or do your endeavours to succeed.

6. In this last instance, *agissez* and *faire* imply an inclination
7. and *desire* that I have that you may succeed ; but when no such inclination or desire is implied by the verb, we use the indicative ;

Vous

Vous sçavez de manière que vous réussissez ;
 You *sç* in such a manner that you succeed.

Vous faites en sorte que vous réussissez ;
 You manage matters so well that you succeed.

Where I merely observe it.

NOTE.

Observe, that when any of the above verbs are attended by a noun or pronoun, 8.
 then they require the next verb in the infinitive, with *de* :

Je vous ordonne de faire cela ; I order you to do that.

Il vous demande seulement d'y aller ; He only asks you to go there.

Le ministre se repent d'avoir proposé ce bill ;

The minister repents having moved for that bill.

We also say

Je veux apprendre le François ; I am desirous to learn French : 9.

for the verb *vouloir* cannot be construed with the subjunctive, when the same pronoun refers to that and the following verb. Indeed, it is evident that, *Je veux que j'apprenne le François* can never be right, from the unnecessary circumlocution of the sentence.

Many of the verbs (particularly those of *saying, telling, declaring, and affirming*) governing the indicative in general, are sometimes made to govern the subjunctive. When they merely 10.
 express their natural import, they require to be followed by their proper indicative regimen ; but when *interrogation, negation, or* 11.
an implication of doubt or ignorance, is added, it is much better, as being more correct, to use the subjunctive ; if however the next verb (in English) be in the present, preterite, *future, or their compounds ; for in any other tense it must be left, in 12.
 French, in the indicative :

Croyez-vous que le roi fasse la campagne ?

Do you think that the king *will* make the campaign ?

Je n'apprends pas qu'il soit guéri ;

I do not hear that he *is* cured.

Si j'entends dire qu'il soit arrivé ;

If I hear that he *is* arrived.

With *impersonal* verbs, naturally governing the indica- 13.
 tive, but under the influence of these grammatical accidents, there is an *absolute necessity* for the second verb to be subjunctive. *Dire, écrire, prétendre, entendre*, and perhaps some other verbs 14.
 whose most common signification is that of *saying, writing, declaring, hearing*, are also used sometimes with the additional force of *advising, commanding, willing, intending* ; and then they govern the subjunctive :

* The future English verb in such cases *must* be put in the present of the subjunc- 14a.
 tive in French.

Dites qu'on vienne de bonne heure; Bid them come in good time;
 J'écris qu'on m'envoie de l'argent; I write to them [to desire them] to send me money;
 Je prétends qu'on m'obéisse; I will be obeyed;
 J'entends que vous lui fassiez des complimens de ma part; I mean that you should present my compliments to him.

15. Il semble, when it is not attended by a noun or pronoun, requires the subjunctive after it:

Il semble que vous ayez peur; It seems that you are afraid.

16. The subjunctive is used after *quelque*, *quel que*, and *quoi que*, taken in the sense of *whatever* and *whatsoever*.

Quelques amis que j'aie; Whatever friends I have.
 Quels que soient les hommes; Whatever men may be.
 Quoi que je fasse; Whatever I do.

17. The subjunctive is used after *que*, when put for *si*, *à moins que*, *avant que*, *sans que*, *afin que*, *jusqu'à ce que*, and *de peur que*:

S'il le souhaite & qu'il m'en avertisse;
 If he wish it and warn me of it.

Je ne serai point content que je ne le sache;
 I shall not be pleased unless I know it.

Je n'y irai point qu'elle ne soit venue;
 I will not go there unless she is come.

Approchez, que je vous brosse;
 Come near, that I may brush your coat.

Je vous prie de venir ici, que je vous dise quelque chose;
 I beg you will come hither, that I may tell you something.

Attendez qu'il vienne; Stay till he come.

N'approchez-pas du chien, qu'il ne vous morde;
 Do not come near the dog, for fear he should bite you.

Dépêchons-nous que quelqu'un ne vienne;
 Let us make haste, for fear somebody should come.

- 17a. After *que*, the conjunction following the comparative *si*:

Il n'est pas si fou qu'il ne sache bien ce qu'il fait;
 He is not so foolish, but he knows what he is about.

18. After the relative *qui*, following a superlative or negative, and generally after any case of that relative, between two verbs, provided some wish, want, or necessity, be denoted:

Le meilleur ouvrage qui soit; The best work that is.

Je ne sçavoirs personne qui fasse plus de cas des habiles gens ;
 I do not know any body that esteems ingenious people more
 than he does.

Il n'y a rien dont j'aie plus d'envie ;

There is not any thing I have a greater desire for.

Choisissez une femme que vous aimez, & qui soit prudente ;

Choose a wife that you love, and who is prudent.

The subjunctive is also used after *qui*, when its verb implies the *possibility* or reason of the former member ; in the same manner with an infinitive would :

Tout le monde convint qu'il étoit juste d'envoyer dans les Gaules un sénateur qui en prit le gouvernement, & le commandement des armées ; (VERTOT)

Every body agreed that it was proper to send a senator to Gaul, in order to take the government of it, and the command of the army.

(In order to take ; or, who might take ; which might be expressed, *pour en prendre, &c.*)

It is also used after *qui* and its relations, when referring to a noun or pronoun, joined with *seul*, *premier*, and *peu* ; or after an interrogation :

Il n'y a le seul qui ait trouvé l'art de saisir les âmes & les cœurs des hommes par leur foible ;

He is the only one who can discover and take advantage of people's foibles.

Je suis le premier homme nouveau que vous ayez fait consul de notre tems ;

I am the first man of little note that you have made a consul in our time.

Il y avoit peu de personnes qui ne courussent pour ainsi dire au devant des présages ; (VERTOT)

There were few people who, as one may say, did not outrun prediction.

Quel est l'insensé qui tiennent pour sûr, fût-il à la fleur de l'âge, qu'il vivra jusqu'au soir ?

Who is the fool that holds for certain, were he in the flower of his age, that he will live till night.

The subjunctive is used after *si*, when the former member of the sentence has its verb in the conditional tense :

Ce qu'il n'auroit jamais proposé, s'il eût été convenu qu'on en fût convenu ; (VERTOT)

What he would never have proposed, if he had thought that they would grant it.

J'aurois couru risque d'être fort mal élevé, si je n'eusse pas eu un oncle chanoine ; (GIL BLAS)

I should have run the risk of being indifferently brought up, if I had not had a canon for my uncle.

24. In like manner, when a member, whose verb is *conditional*, is followed by a member in which a condition is expressed (although without *si*) in such a manner as that the second member is evidently and necessarily referable in its sense to the first, the verb of the second member is *subjunctive* :

Il auroit encore bien voulu m'enseigner la langue latine ; c'eût été autant d'argent d'épargné pour lui : (GIL BLAS)

He would still have been glad to teach me Latin ; it would have been so much money saved for him.

25. As also when the second member expresses a conditional inference drawn from the first, whose verb is in a *past* tense :

J'avois dessein de le faire : c'eût été fort mal fait.

I had a mind to do it : it would have been very badly done.

26. The first person of the present tense of the subjunctive is elegantly used, when it is attended by a negative, instead of the indicative, although without being governed by any thing before :

Je ne sache rien de plus fâcheux que ;

I know nothing more grievous than.

Non pas que je sache ; Not that I know of.

27. The subjunctive preterite is used, without any preceding government, in the place of a conditional tense, coming after *quand même* :

Fût-elle riche à millions, je n'en voudrois point ; for, Quand même elle seroit, &c.

Were she worth millions, I would not have her.

28. The following verbs impersonal govern the subjunctive with *que* :

Il faut, it must, it is necessary.

il convient, it becomes.

il importe, it concerns.

il est important,

il est de conséquence,

} it is of moment, it is of consequence.

il n'y a pas moyen, there is no way or possibility.

il y a de l'honneur, } there is honour or credit,

il y a du déshonneur, } dishonour or discredit.

il y a de la gloire, } there is glory,

il y a de la honte, } or shame.

il est à propos, it is fit.

il est de la bien-séance, or } it is becoming.

il est bien-séant, } it is seemly.

il est de la décence, } it is decor-
cent, or, *il est décent*, } cent.

Il est, with all these other Adjectives.

agréable, agreeable.

aisé, easy.

affligeant, afflicting.

beau, fine.

Il est chagrinant, vexatious.

cruel, cruel.

dangereux, dangerous.

difficile, difficult.

divertissant, diverting.

doux, sweet.

douloureux, grievous.

dur, hard.

disgracieux, unpleasant.

ennuyant, tedious.

étonnant, astonishing.

facile, easy.

fâcheux, sorrowful.

glorieux, glorious.

gracieux, graceful, agreeable

heureux, happy.

Il est honteux, shameful.

impossible, impossible.

indifférent, indifferent.

malheureux, unlucky.

mal-aisé, difficult.

mortifiant, mortifying.

possible, possible.

plaisant, odd, droll.

surprenant, surprising.

triste, sad.

vilain, ugly.

juste, just.

injuste, unjust.

And with all adjectives expressive of some passion or affection, or desire of the mind, after the manner of the verbs governing the subjunctive.

NOTE.

Observe, 1st, That *il est*, with these adjectives, may be turned thus:

C'est une chose fâcheuse que cela soit ainsi; for, Il est fâcheux que, &c.

It is a hard case that it is so.

2dly, That the same verbs impersonal (except *il y a*) govern the infinitive with *de*, when they do not the subjunctive with *que*; which usually happens when they are attended by a pronoun:

Il est indifférent qu'il soit en Angleterre ou en Irlande;

It is indifferent whether he is in England or in Ireland.

Il lui est indifférent d'être en Angleterre ou en Irlande;

It is indifferent to him to be in England or in Ireland.

The following conjunctions govern the subjunctive:

afin que, } that, to the end

pour que, } that.

avant que, before.

sans que, without that.

bien

bien que,
quoique,
encore que,

} although.

soit que, whether, (and) or.

supposez que, suppose that.

supposons que, let us suppose that.

posez le cas que, put the case that.

à la bonne heure que, I grant that.

au cas que } in case that, (or)

en cas que } if.

non que, not that.

non pas que, not but.

ce n'est pas que, it is not but that.

pourvu que, } so, if, provided

moyennant que, } that.

à moins que, } unless.

si ce n'est que, } unless.

pour peu que, } if, never so little

si peu que, } else, in the least.

bien entendu que, with a proviso that.

* *à condition que,* upon condition that.

excepté que, except that.

hormis que, } save that.

sinon que, but that.

de peur que, } for fear that,

de crainte que, } lest.

loin que, far from.

bien loin que, very far from.

tant s'en fait bien que, it is so

far from.

il s'en fait bien que, it is far

from.

malgré que, for all that, in spite of.

nonobstant que, notwithstanding that.

Dieu veuille que, God grant.

plaise, or puisse à Dieu que, would to God.

à Dieu ne plaise que, God forbid.

comme que, as, according as.

jusqu'à ce que, until.

34. * *Bien entendu que,* and *à condition que,* are also construed with the future and conditional tenses of the indicative.

† *Comme qu'on s'y prenne* (ROUSSEAU); *As people act.*

§. Of the Government of VERBS.

1. Verbs active are always attended by a noun or pronoun, and
2. sometimes by two: when they are attended by two, the one is the object of the verb (or the accusative case), the other is its
3. end (or dative case). The word expressive of the end is always
- 3a. preceded by the preposition *à*, except the dative of conjunctive pronouns.

Object.

Je vous aime; I love you.

Donnez

Object. End.
Donnez quelque chose à quelqu'un ;
 Give something to somebody.

End. Object.
Je vous donne quelque chose ; I give you something.

Verbs passive require the prepositions *de* and *par* before the next noun, used on the same occasions as *by*, *of*, *from*, in English :

La vertu est estimée de tous ;
 Virtue is esteemed by every body.

Il a été tué par ses gens ; He has been killed by his people.

But *de* and *par* are not used indiscriminately after passive verbs.

When the passive verb expresses a mere operation of the mind, 5.
 it is followed by *de* :

Vous êtes souhaité de tous vos amis ;
 You are wished for by all your friends.

But when it expresses a material action, or one which partakes of the sentiments of the soul, as well as of the movements of the body, it is then followed by *par* : 6.

Rome fut bâtie par Romulus ; Rome was built by Romulus.

Votre discours a été loué par les plus habiles gens, &c.
 (RESTAUR)

Your discourse has been praised by the most learned.

NOTE.

But when the noun following the passive verb expresses the instrument or manner of the action, and not the agent, neither *de* nor *par* must govern it, although the nature of the verb be a material action ; but *à* must be used ; and that *à* is Englished by *with* :

Il a été tué [par ses gens] à coups de sabre ;
 He was killed [by his people] with a broad-sword.

☞ The principal circumstance to be attended to in this Section, is the accidents of the infinitive, with regard to its being governed by a preposition or not ; and by what preposition, when it does take one before it. And as this is a point determined as well by nouns and adjectives, as by verbs, they will naturally be included in this Section ; although the Chapter to which it belongs, treats generally of verbs only. In order to render it still more complete, we shall also subjoin the conjunctions governing the infinitive.

The INFINITIVE with de.

3. The following verbs active require the preposition *de* before
 3a. the next infinitive. Certain of them are distinguished by
 asterisks, to denote that they take a subjunctive with *que* after
 them, agreeably to the rules laid down on that head.

<i>achever</i> , to make an end of,	<i>dégouter</i> , to disgust, put out of
<i>affecter</i> , to affect. [finish.	conceit of.
<i>affliger</i> , to afflict.	<i>différer</i> , to defer, delay, put off.
<i>chagriner</i> , to vex.	<i>forcer</i> , to force.
<i>désoler</i> , to vex, make one mad.	<i>dire</i> , to say.
<i>approuver</i> , to approve of.	<i>divertir</i> , to divert, turn from.
<i>arrêter</i> , to stop, decree.	<i>réjouir</i> , to make glad.
<i>retenir</i> , to keep from, restrain.	<i>écrire</i> , to write.
* <i>empêcher</i> , to hinder.	<i>mander</i> , to write word.
<i>détourner</i> , to deter from.	<i>édifier</i> , to edify, give good ex-
* <i>appréhender</i> , to apprehend.	amples.
* <i>craindre</i> , to fear.	<i>effrayer</i> , to affright, alarm.
<i>attendrir</i> , to soften, move to pity.	<i>épouvanter</i> , to terrify.
<i>blâmer</i> , to blame.	<i>exempter</i> , to exempt.
<i>reprandre</i> , to rebuke, reprove.	<i>dispenser</i> , to dispense, excuse.
<i>réprimander</i> , to reprimand.	<i>embarrasser</i> , to puzzle, embar-
<i>censurer</i> , to censure.	rafs.
<i>gronder</i> , to scold, chide.	<i>excuser</i> , to excuse.
<i>cesser</i> , to cease, forbear.	<i>entreprendre</i> , to undertake.
<i>charger</i> , to charge.	<i>essayer</i> , to try.
<i>enjoindre</i> , to enjoin.	* <i>exiger</i> , to require.
* <i>commander</i> , to command.	<i>feindre</i> , to feign, dissemble.
* <i>ordonner</i> , to order.	<i>finir</i> , to finish.
* <i>défendre</i> , to prohibit, forbid.	<i>gêner</i> , to make uneasy by re-
<i>choisir</i> , to choose.	straint,
<i>avertir</i> , to warn, to tell.	<i>contraindre</i> , to constrain.
<i>conseiller</i> , to advise.	<i>hair</i> , to hate.
<i>convaincre</i> , to convince.	<i>inspirer</i> , to inspire.
<i>décourager</i> , to discourage.	<i>susciter</i> , to put in mind of.
<i>décharger</i> , to discharge.	<i>jurer</i> , to swear, take an oath.
<i>délibérer</i> , to deliberate.	<i>justifier</i> , to justify, vindicate.
<i>déterminer</i> , to determine, pur-	<i>louer</i> , to praise, commend.
pose.	<i>méditer</i> , to meditate, think of.
<i>résoudre</i> , to resolve upon.	<i>notifier</i> , to notify, to let one
<i>conclure</i> , to conclude.	know.
<i>désespérer</i> , to despair.	<i>négliger</i> , to neglect.

omettre,

omettre, to omit.
offrir, to offer.
oublier, to forget.
pardonner, to pardon.
**permettre*, to permit.
persuader, to persuade.
plaindre, to pity.
 || **prier*, to pray, desire, beg.
**conjurer*, to conjure, entreat.
**supplier*, to beg, beseech.
presser, to press, urge.
**demander en grace*, to ask as a
 favour.
prescrire, to prescribe.
présumer, to presume.
promettre, to promise.

professer, to profess.
recommander, to recommend.
redouter, to dread.
refuser, to refuse.
remercier, to thank.
reprocher, to reproach, upbraid.
proposer, to propose, move for.
sommer, to summon.
soupçonner, to suspect.
scandaliser, to scandalize, give
 offence to.
suffire, to suffice.
suggérer, to suggest.
surprendre, to surprize.
tromper, to deceive.

NOTE.

|| *Prier*, we have just seen, requires *de* before the next infinitive : 9.
Prier quelqu'un de faire quelque chose ; To desire or beg somebody to do something.
 EXCEPT before these four verbs, *manger, déjeuner, diner, and souper*, with which 10.
 it requires *à*, under these restrictions :

^a *Prier quelqu'un à diner*, implies that you give the person in question a *set, formal* 11.
invitation. ^b *Prier quelqu'un de diner*, To invite one to dinner, implies a *sudden,* 12.
accidental invitation :

^a *Il a envoyé me prier à diner* ; He sent to invite me to dinner.

^b *Je me suis trouvé chez lui, comme il alloit se mettre à table, & il m'a prié de dîner avec lui* ;

I happened to be at his house as he was sitting down to dinner, and he invited me to dine with him.

The following verbs (for the most part neuter or reflected) 1.
 require the preposition *de* before the next noun or infinitive :

<i>User,</i>	<i>d'une chose</i> , to use or	<i>profiter</i> , to improve.
<i>se servir,</i>	<i>make use of a thing.</i>	<i>hésiter</i> , to hesitate.
<i>abuser,</i>	to abuse.	<i>tâcher</i> and <i>s'efforcer</i> , to endeavour.
<i>convenir,</i>	to agree to.	<i>se contenter</i> , to content one's self.
<i>disconvenir,</i>	to disagree.	to be satisfied.
<i>jouir,</i>	to enjoy.	<i>s'abstenir de</i> , to abstain from.
<i>juger à propos,</i>	to think proper.	<i>s'appercevoir</i> , to perceive, think.
<i>parler,</i>	to speak.	<i>s'aviser</i> , to think, bethink one's
<i>médire,</i>	to traduce, slander.	self.
<i>menacer de,</i>	to threaten with.	<i>se démettre d'une place</i> , to resign
<i>manquer de quelque chose,</i>	to	a place.
	want any thing.	

<i>s'informer de</i> , to enquire about or after.	<i>se déshabituer</i> ,	} to leave off doing a thing.
<i>se garder de</i> , to take care or heed of.	<i>se désaccoutumer</i> ,	
<i>se mêler de</i> , to meddle with.	<i>se méfier</i> } de	} to mis- trust or distrust one.
<i>se moquer de</i> , to mock, laugh at.	<i>se défier</i> } quelqu'un,	
<i>se rire</i> and <i>rire</i> , to laugh at.		
<i>se repentir de</i> , to repent of.	<i>s'emparer de</i> , to take possession of.	
<i>se ressouvenir</i> , to remember.	<i>se saisir de</i> , to seize upon.	
<i>se soucier de</i> , to care for.	<i>se lasser</i> , to grow tired.	
<i>s'embarrasser de</i> , to puzzle, plague, distress one's self about any thing.	<i>s'ennuyer</i> , to grow weary.	
<i>se vanter</i> , to boast.	<i>s'impatienter</i> , to lose one's pa- tience.	
<i>s'empêcher</i> , to forbear.	<i>s'enorgueillir</i> , to grow proud, be puffed up.	
<i>se retenir de</i> , to keep one's self from.	<i>s'étonner</i> ,	} to wonder, be amazed, or sur- prised.
<i>se hâter</i> , to hasten, hurry one's self.	<i>être surpris</i>	
<i>se dépêcher</i> , to hasten, make haste.	<i>s'ingérer</i> , to take upon one's self.	
<i>s'empresse</i> , to hasten.	<i>se flatter</i> , to flatter one's self.	
<i>se précipiter</i> , to overhasten one's self.	<i>s'indigner</i> , to be provoked, in- censed, exasperated.	
<i>s'approcher d'un endroit</i> , to come to, draw near a place.	<i>s'enrager</i> , <i>pester</i> , to be mad at.	
<i>s'acquitter de son devoir</i> , to dis- charge one's duty.	<i>avoir pitié de</i> , to have pity on.	
<i>s'accommoder de quelque chose</i> , to make shift or bold with any thing.	<i>se rebuter</i> , to despond, be dis- couraged or disheartened.	
<i>s'emmouracher d'une fille</i> , to fall in love with a girl.	<i>se plaindre</i> , to complain.	
<i>s'affliger</i> , to grieve, vex one's self.	<i>se désister</i> , to desist.	
<i>s'attrister</i> , to be sorrowful.	<i>se charger de</i> , to charge one's self with, undertake, the care of.	
<i>s'inquiéter</i> , to be disquieted, make one's self uneasy.	<i>se rétracter</i> , to retract, recant.	
<i>se chagriner</i> , to grieve one's self.	<i>se piquer d'une</i> } to pretend	} to, set up for, a thing.
<i>être consterné</i> , to be dismayed.	<i>chose, or</i>	
<i>se consoler</i> , to comfort one's self.	<i>se piquer de faire</i> } quelque chose,	
	<i>s'émanciper</i> , to take too much liberty.	
	<i>se scandaliser</i> } to take offence, de quelque } be scandalised at chose, } any thing.	

Observe,

Observe, that most of these verbs (if not all) which require ^{2.} the preposition *de* before them, are commonly, and can always be, rendered into English by a participle in *ing*, either absolutely, or with any of these prepositions, *of*, *from*, *with*, &c.

Il m'empêche de le faire; He hinders me from doing it.

J'ai du moins le plaisir de la voir;

I have at least the pleasure *of seeing* her, &c. &c.

These impersonals, *il appartient*, *il convient*, *il sied bien*, *il dépend*, *il plaît*, require an infinitive with *de* : ^{3.}

Il vous appartient de décider; It belongs to you to decide.

Il vous convient présentement de déclarer qui vous êtes.

It belongs to you, now, to tell who you are.

Vraiment, il vous sied bien de vous conduire ainsi;

Truly, it becomes you well to behave thus.

Il dépend de vous de le nommer général ou non;

It depends on you to appoint him general or not.

Il me plaît de faire cela; I choose to do that.

The following adjectives, commonly construed with *être*, govern the infinitive with *de* : ^{4.}

<i>être</i>	<i>capable,</i>	capable,	} <i>de faire quelque chose.</i>
	<i>incapable,</i>	incapable,	
	<i>content,</i>	contented,	
	<i>mécontent,</i>	discontented,	
	<i>curieux,</i>	curious, inquisitive,	
	<i>digne,</i>	worthy,	
	<i>indigne,</i>	unworthy.	
	<i>satisfait,</i>	satisfied.	
	<i>sûr, certain,</i>	certain,	
	<i>incertain,</i>	uncertain,	
	<i>avide,</i>	greedy, covetous,	
	<i>joyeux,</i>	joyful,	
	<i>ravi,</i>	overjoyed,	
	<i>aise, bien aise,</i>	glad, very glad,	
	<i>fâché,</i>	sorry,	
	<i>las,</i>	tired,	
	<i>fatigué,</i>	fatigued,	
	<i>ennuyé,</i>	tired, weary,	
	<i>*sensible,</i>	prudent, wise, -	

* *Est-il sensé de laisser détruire un ouvrage si utile?* (SULLY).

Is it prudent, to let such a useful work be destroyed?

As also these nouns :

<i>être</i>	<i>en état,</i>	in a condition,	} <i>de faire quelque chose.</i>
	<i>sur le point,</i>	upon the point,	
	<i>à la veille,</i>	on the eve, upon the brink,	

5. The following nouns, chiefly construed with *avoir* without the article, require the preposition *de* before the next infinitive :

avoir	<i>congé,</i>	leave,	} <i>de faire quelque chose.</i>
	<i>permission,</i>	permission,	
	<i>envie,</i>	inclination,	
	<i>coutume, (or</i>	} to use, or	
	<i>être accoutumé)</i>	} to be accustomed,	
	<i>besoin,</i>	occasion for, be in need of,	
	<i>dessein</i>	a design, to intend,	
	<i>sujet,</i>	occasion, subject,	
	<i>lieu,</i>	reason, room,	
	<i>raison,</i>	reason, to be in the right,	
	<i>soin,</i>	care, to take care,	
	<i>droit,</i>	a right,	
	<i>tort,</i>	to be in the wrong,	
	<i>affaire,</i>	} to stand in need of,	
	<i>occasion,</i>		
<i>occasion,</i>	an opportunity,		

6. As likewise all nouns construed with other verbs, either with
7. or without an article, provided they do not signify or imply
inclination, difficulty, reluctance, aptness, fitness, or unfitness :

Il m'a donné la peine de le faire ;

He gave me the trouble of doing it.

J'ai eu beaucoup de peine à le faire ;

I have had much trouble, difficulty, in doing it.

In the last instance, as *peine* implies *difficulty*, and consequently *reluctancy*, it therefore governs *à*,

NOTE.

8. The following list of nouns, requiring *de* before the next infinitive, will not be
useless. They are alphabetically divided, for greater ease in referring to them.

A.

A.

Ambition, ambition.
art, art.
avantage, advantage.
attention, attention.
audace, boldness, audaciousness.
avis, advice.
ardeur, warmth, eagerness.
avidité, avidity, greediness.
amitié, friendship.
amour, love.
attente, expectation.
arrogance, arrogance..
artifice, artifice.
adresse, skill.
action, action.
autorité, authority.
assurance, assurance.

B.

Bonté, goodness.
bonheur, good fortune.

C.

Conseil, counsel.
choix, choice.
cœur, heart.
courage, courage.
commodité, convenience.
contrainte, constraint.
confusion, confusion.
constance, constancy.
curiosité, curiosity.
chagrin, grief, chagrin.

D.

Désespoir, despair.
dépit, despite.
désir, desire.
danger, danger.
déplaisir, displeasure.

**don*, a gift.

* *le don de féconder les langues*;
 (THOMAS.)

durété, ill-nature.

E.

Effronterie, impudence.
espoir, hope.
espérance, hope, expectation.
esprit, wit, genius.
embarras, trouble.
envie, inclination.

F.

Facilité, facility.
faveur, favour.
front, face, assurance.
fermeté, firmness.
force, strength.
fierté, haughtiness.
façon, way, manner.
fureur, fury, madness.

G.

Grace, grace, favour.
gloire, glory.

H.

Hardiesse, boldness.
hasard, chance.
habitude, custom.
habileté, dexterity.
honte, shame.
bonnêteté, kindness.

I. J.

Impudence, impudence.
imprudence, imprudence.
insolence, insolence.
incommodité, inconvenience.
impuissance, disability.
intention, intention.
inquiétude, inquietude:
jote, joy.

jugement, judgment.
justice, justice.

L.

Liberté, liberty.
loisir, leisure.

M.

Motif, motive.
moyen, means.
malice, malice.
malheur, misfortune.
mal adresse, awkwardness.
mortification, grief, mortification.
maître, master.
manière, manner, way, kind.
manie, fury, madness.

N.

Nature, nature.
nécessité, necessity.

O.

Orgueil, pride.
obligation, obligation.
ordre, order.

P.

Pouvoir, power, ability,
puissance, might.
présomption, presumption.
peine, pains, concern.
précaution, precaution.
patience, patience.
passion, passion.
plaisir, pleasure.

R.

Rage, rage.
ruse, cunning, craft.
risque, risk.

S.

Sagesse, wisdom.
satisfaction, satisfaction.
sens, sense.
scandal, scandal.
souci, care.

T.

Témérité, rashness.

V.

Vanité, vanity.
volonté, will.

9. And here it will not be improper to observe, that any noun or adjective, derived from a verb, requires the same preposition before the next infinitive or noun, as its primitive verb.
- 9a. Thus *étonné* (amazed), *résolu* (resolved), govern, the former the
- 9b. the genitive of nouns, and the latter the dative, and both the
- 9c. preposition *de* before the infinitive, because that the same
- 9d. regimens belong to their verbs, *étonner* or *s'étonner* and *résoudre*. It is the same case with *forcer*, *obligation*, *présomption*, derived from *forcer*, *obliger*, *présumer*; and so of the rest.
10. *Il est*, followed by an adjective, and *c'est* by a noun, require the preposition *de* before the infinitive:
- Il est dangereux dans Londres de se retirer la nuit;*
 It is dangerous to go home at night in London.
- C'est le propre de la vertu de nous charmer;*
 It is the property of virtue to please us.

When

When *c'est* comes before a noun followed by an infinitive, 11.
it requires *que* before *de*, which precedes the infinitive :

C'est sagesse que d'avouer sa faute ;
It is wisdom to own one's fault.

(But observe, that when *c'est* comes before an infinitive fol- 12.
lowed by a noun, after which comes a second infinitive, it will
have no preposition before the first infinitive, and *que de* before
the second :

C'est être fou que de croire ce qui n'est pas concevable ;
It is foolish to believe what is inconceivable.)

De (preceded by *que*) before the next infinitive, is used after 13.
the following terms of comparison :

<i>plus,</i>	<i>more.</i>	<i>mieux,</i>	<i>better.</i>	<i>si peu,</i>	<i>so little.</i>
<i>moins,</i>	<i>less.</i>	<i>plutôt,</i>	<i>rather.</i>	<i>tant,</i>	<i>so much.</i>
<i>à moins,</i>	<i>unless.</i>	<i>si,</i>	<i>so.</i>	<i>tel,</i>	<i>such, like,</i>
					<i>&c.</i>

Etudiez, plutôt que de perdre votre tems ;
Study, rather than lose your time.

Rien ne lui plaît tant que de soulager les malheureux ;
Nothing pleases him so much as to relieve the unfortunate.

The INFINITIVE with à.

The following verbs require the preposition *à* before the next 14
infinitive :

<i>avoir,</i> to have.	<i>autoriser,</i> to authorize.
<i>être,</i> to be.	<i>chercher à,</i> to seek, to want to—
<i>aimer,</i> to love, to like.	<i>condamner,</i> to condemn.
<i>admettre quelqu'un</i> } to suffer	<i>contribuer,</i> to contribute.
<i>à se justifier,</i> } one to	<i>convier,</i> } to invite.
	<i>inviter,</i> }
	<i>dépenser à,</i> to spend in.
[to give him a fair hearing.	<i>demeurer à</i> } to stay, tarry,
<i>enhardir,</i> to embolden.	<i>tarder à,</i> } delay to—
<i>apprendre à,</i> to learn to—	<i>destiner à,</i> to design for.
<i>consister à,</i> to consist in.	<i>donner,</i> to give.
<i>enseigner,</i> to teach.	<i>disposer,</i> to dispose.
<i>apprêter à rire,</i> to afford matter	<i>dresser,</i> to train up.
for laughter.	<i>éclairer,</i> to enlighten.
<i>assigner à comparoitre,</i> to sum-	<i>employer quelqu'un à,</i> to employ
mon, cite to appear.	one about, set him to—

encourager, to encourage.
engager, to engage, induce.
exciter, to excite.
inciter, to incite.
exercer, to exercise.
exhorter, to exhort.
habituer, to use, accustom.
incliner, to incline.

perdre, to lose.

porter } *quelqu'un* { to induce,
pousser } *à agir*, { excite,
 to do—

présenter, to present.

accoutumer, to accustom,

**renfermer*, to confine.

* *Votre lettre me renferme à comprendre que* ; (SEVIGNE')
 Your letter gives me to understand that.

2. The following verbs, for the most part neuter, require the preposition *à* before the next noun or infinitive :

aboutir, to come to, touch, tend to.

adhérer, to adhere, cleave to.

applaudir à quelqu'un, to applaud any one.

aider, to help.

compatir, to compassionate.

condescendre, to condescend to, comply with.

contrevenir } to act contrary to
aux ordres, } orders.

nuire à autrui, to hurt any one.

plaire à quelqu'un, to please one.

- 2a. N. B. *Plaire* takes *de* before an infinitive.

se plaire, or *prendre plaisir à faire quelque chose*, to be pleased, or take pleasure in doing a thing.

déplaire, to displease.

obvier à des inconvénients, to obviate difficulties.

pardonner à quelqu'un, to forgive, pardon somebody.

- 2b. N. B. *Pardonner* takes *de* before the next infinitive.

parvenir, to attain to, arrive at, obtain.

persister à faire quelque chose, } to persist in
 doing any
 thing.

pourvoir au salut de l'état, } to provide
 for, &c.

procéder à élire, } to proceed
 or, *à l'élection*, } to, &c.

prétendre à une chose, to aim at, lay claim to, a thing.

tendre } *à un but*, { to aim at,
viser } an end.

jouer à tout perdre, to venture at losing every thing, stake all at once.

se mettre à faire quelque chose, to go, set about doing a thing.

penser } *à faire quelque* } to
songer } *chose*, { think
 of doing any thing.]

renoncer, to renounce.

ressembler, to resemble, to be like.

rester à rien faire, to stand idle.

subvenir aux nécessiteux, to relieve the needy.

insulter aux misérables, to insult the unfortunate.

survivre à quelqu'un, to survive, outlive one.

s'abandonner, to indulge, abandon one's self.

s'occuper

<i>s'occuper</i> à <i>passer son tems</i> , to spend one's time in, employ one's self about.	<i>s'engager</i> , to take on one's self.
<i>s'attacher</i> à <i>une</i> { to give up,	<i>se fier</i> à <i>quelqu'un</i> , to trust to one.
<i>se livrer</i> à <i>chose</i> , { apply, ad- [dict one's self to—	<i>se déterminer</i> { à, { to resolve upon.
<i>s'adonner</i> , to give one's self up.	<i>se résoudre</i> { à, { to resolve upon.
<i>suffire</i> à <i>quelque chose</i> , to suffice, be enough for.	<i>s'opposer</i> , to oppose.
N. B. <i>Suffire</i> governs the infinitive with <i>de</i> .	<i>résister</i> , to withstand, resist.
<i>s'accoutumer</i> { to use, accustom	<i>s'exposer</i> , to expose one's self:
<i>s'habituer</i> à, { one's self.	<i>s'appréter</i> { à <i>faire</i> { to prepare
<i>s'endurcir</i> à <i>la fatigue</i> , to inure one's self to fatigue.	<i>se préparer</i> { <i>quelque</i> { one's self
<i>s'arrêter</i> { à <i>des baga-</i> { to stop	<i>se disposer</i> { <i>chose</i> , { to do any [thing. 2c.
<i>s'amuser</i> { <i>telles</i> , { at, amuse	<i>s'opiniâtrer</i> { à <i>faire</i> { to be
[one's self with trifles.]	<i>s'obstiner</i> { <i>quelque</i> { obsti-
	<i>se retrancher</i> { to confine one's
	à <i>faire des</i> { self to make
	<i>demandes</i> , { demands.

Observe, that most of those verbs which require the preposition *à* before them, are commonly, and can-always be, rendered into English by a participle ending in *ing*, with the preposition *in* or *for*:

Aidez-moi à faire cela; Assist me in doing, &c.

Appréter à rire; To afford matter for laughing.

The following adjectives, commonly construed with *être*, 4s require the preposition *à* before the next infinitive; as likewise 4a. all nouns and adjectives signifying *inclination*, *fitness*, and *unfitness*; all which will have *à* (or *au* and *aux*) before a noun:

être	adroit,	dexterous, skilful,	} à faire quelque chose.
	agréable;	agreeable;	
	agile,	agile, nimble,	
	admirable,	admirable,	
	ardent,	eager,	
	beau,	fine, handsome,	
	bon,	good,	
	diligent,	diligent,	
	doux,	sweet,	
	aisé,	} easy,	
	facile,		
	enclin,	inclined, bent,	

	<i>exact,</i>	exact,	
	<i>porté,</i>	apt, addicted,	
	<i>penché,</i>	prone,	
	<i>sujet,</i>	subject, liable,	
	<i>propre,</i>	fit, qualified for,	
	<i>prêt,</i>	ready,	
	<i>prompt,</i>	quick,	
	<i>habile,</i>	able, skilful,	
	<i>lent,</i>	slow,	
	<i>charmant,</i>	charming,	
	<i>assidu,</i>	assiduous,	
	<i>affreux,</i>	frightful,	
<i>être</i>	<i>effroyable,</i>	terrible,	} <i>à faire quelque chose.</i>
	<i>horrible,</i>	horrible,	
	<i>terrible,</i>	dreadful,	
	<i>hideux,</i>	hideous,	
	<i>hardi,</i>	bold,	
	<i>honnête,</i>	honest, polite,	
	<i>malhonnête,</i>	dishonest, unpolite,	
	<i>civil,</i>	civil,	
	<i>incivil,</i>	uncivil,	
	<i>le premier,</i>	the first,	
	<i>le second,</i>	the second,	
	<i>le dernier,</i>	the last,	
	<i>seul,</i>	the only one,	

* Si j'étais seul à tenir ce langage; (SEVIGNE)
If I were the only one who spoke thus.

3 The impersonals *il y a* and *c'est à* require the preposition *à* before the next infinitive :

Il y a du plaisir à chasser, or à la chasse ;
There is pleasure in hunting.

C'est à vous à lui en parler ;
It belongs to you to speak to him of it.

NOTE.

Nevertheless, instances occur in authors of acknowledged merit, of *de* being used after *c'est à* :

C'est à vous de régler nos destins ; ROUSSEAU'S *Héloïse*, liv. xii. l. 1.

It belongs to you to decide our fate.

C'est à la renommée d'exercer son empire sur votre nom ; Oeuvres de THOMAS.

It belongs to fame to exercise her empire on your name.

However, I conceive this rather a relaxation of the rules of grammar, which we should not be too fond of imitating.

VERBS

VERBS sometimes taking *à*, and sometimes *de*, before the next INFINITIVE; and, in some particular acceptations, omitting them both.

These eight verbs take, indifferently, *de* or *à* before the next infinitive:

<i>commencer</i> , to begin.	<i>essayer</i> , to try, attempt.
* <i>contraindre</i> , constrain.	<i>forcer</i> , to force, compel.
<i>continuer</i> , to continue.	<i>coûter</i> , to cost.
<i>discontinuer</i> , to discontinue.	<i>manquer</i> , to fail.

**Contraindre*, when used *actively*, takes indifferently *de* or *à* before the next infinitive; but when it is used in the *passive*, it always requires *de*:

Contraignez-le à faire cela; Oblige him to do that.

Je l'ai contraint de garder la maison;

I have obliged him to stay at home.

Il fut contraint de se retirer; He was obliged to withdraw.

Obliger, in the *active* voice, when signifying *to force*, requires *à* before the next infinitive; and when it signifies *to do a kindness*, it requires *de*: but in the *passive* it always requires *de*:

Vous m'obligerez à vous abandonner;

You will force me to abandon you.

Vous m'obligerez de vouloir bien m'excuser auprès d'elle;

You will do me a favour by being so kind as to excuse me to her.

Je suis obligé de vous abandonner;

I am forced to abandon you.

Prier sometimes takes *de*, and sometimes *à*, as we have already seen, p. 273.

Manquer, signifying *to fail*, requires *de* before the next infinitive; but in the sense of *forgetting* it requires *à*:

Les malheureux ne manquent jamais de se plaindre;

The unfortunate never fail to complain.

J'ai manqué à faire ce que je vous avois promis;

I have neglected to do what I promised you.

Dire, *désirer*, and *souhaiter*, which we shall presently see mentioned as generally taking no preposition before the next infinitive, take sometimes *de* before it:

Allez lui dire de venir; Go and tell him to come.

Je désire de vous voir entièrement converti ;

I wish to see you entirely converted.

Je souhaiterois de pouvoir vous obliger en toute occasion ;

I could wish to be able to oblige you upon every occasion.

11. *Venir*, which in its usual signification as a verb of motion takes no preposition before the next infinitive, sometimes takes
 12. *à*, in the sense of *to happen* or *to begin* ; and sometimes *de*, when
 12a. it implies the action of the infinitive to be *just finished* :

Venez boire ; Come and drink (or, to drink).

Quand il vint à ouvrir la bouche ;

When he chanced to open his mouth.

Quand il vient à pleuvoir ; When it begins or happens to rain.

In which two last instances *venir à* seems to correspond, in some measure, to the Greek verb *τυγχάνω*.)

Je viens de recevoir des nouvelles bien fâcheuses ;

I have just heard very disagreeable news ; literally, I come from hearing, &c.

13. *Penser* (to think), we know, takes *à* after it ; but in the sense
 14. of *to be like to do a thing*, (*i. e.* to be *very near* it) it takes no preposition before the next infinitive :

Il a pensé mourir ; He has been very near dying.

The INFINITIVE without any PREPOSITION.

15. These following verbs will have no preposition before the next infinitive :

Aimer mieux, to have rather, *soutenir*, to maintain.
to chuse rather.

aller, to go.

venir, to come.

envoyer, to send.

déclarer, to declare.

dire, to say.

assurer, to assure.

publier, to publish.

rapporter, to report.

affirmer, to affirm.

avouer, to confess.

confesser, to own, confess.

déposer, to depose, say, tell.

nier, to deny.

croire, to think, believe.

compter, to expect, rely, depend on.

espérer, to hope.

désirer, to desire.

écouter,

entendre,

ouïr

apercevoir, to perceive.

observer, to observe.

considérer, to consider, behold.

épier, to spy.

reconnoître,

reconnoître, to acknowledge.

paraître, to appear.

sembler, to seem.

voir, to see.

regarder, to look at, behold.

s'imaginer, to fancy, imagine.

faire, to make, cause.

laisser, to leave, let, permit.

daigner, to deign, to be pleased.

penser, to be like, or near.

prétendre, to pretend.

oser, to dare.

devoir, to owe, to be to—

pouvoir, to be able.

savoir, to know.

souhaiter, to wish.

† *valoir mieux*, to be better.

vouloir, to be willing.

il faut, &c. it must, it is necessary.

insinuer, (SULLY) to insinuate, hint.

se trouver, (id.) to be found.

témoigner, (id.) to testify.

mener, (FENELON) to carry, conduct.

retourner, to return.

*† *Aimer mieux* and *valoir mieux* will have no preposition ¹⁶ before the infinitive immediately following them; but when a ¹⁷ member of comparison is subjoined with *que*, the infinitive of such member has *de* before it (for this reason; that *que*, in the comparative sense of *than*, never comes before a verb of the infinitive mood, without the intervention of *de*):—

J'aimerois mieux travailler que de rester à rien faire;

I would rather work than be idle.

Il vaut mieux mourir que de parvenir à une vieillesse honteuse;

It is better to die than to come to a shameful old age.

Pour before the INFINITIVE.

Besides *de* and *à*, which we have observed to be construed ¹⁸ with the infinitive, *pour* is also prefixed to it, implying particularly the *design*, *end*, or *reason* of doing a thing: wherefore, whenever the English preposition *to*, coming before an infinitive, can be explained by *for to*, *in order to*, *with a design to*, with the infinitive, or by *to the end that*, or only *that*, with the indicative or subjunctive, or *for* with the gerund, it must be rendered into French by *pour* (or sometimes by *afin de* with the infinitive, ¹⁹ or *afin que* with the subjunctive, when a *future design*, *end*, or ²⁰ *reason*, is implied):—

Il l'a fait pour me faire de la peine;

He has done it (*in order*) to make me uneasy.

Il a été pendu pour avoir volé sur le grand chemin;

He was hanged *for robbing* (or *having robbed*) on the highway.

Je l'irai voir demain, afin de le convaincre de son erreur ;
I shall go to-morrow, in order to convince him, &c.

21. The verb coming after *trop*, *assez*, *suffisant*, and *suffire*, always requires the preposition *pour* before it :

Il est trop sensé pour faire cela ;

He has too much sense to do that.

Elle n'est pas assez riche pour épouser un duc ;

She is not rich enough to marry a duke.

Le mérite ne suffit guères pour réussir ;

Merit is hardly enough to succeed.

NOTE.

One would, at first sight, suppose that *de* was used with *trop* in the following sentence from Montesquieu's *Esprit des loix* :—" Charles Martel ayant distribué les biens de l'église à ses soldats, & les ayant donnés partie en fiefs, partie en alleu, il se fit une espèce de révolution dans les loix féodales. Il est vraisemblable que les nobles qui avoient déjà des fiefs trouvoient plus avantageux de recevoir les nouveaux dons en alleu, & que les hommes libres se trouvoient encore trop heureux de les recevoir en fiefs."

Charles Martel, having distributed the possessions of the church among his soldiers, and having given some in fiefs and others in freeholds, there happened a kind of revolution in the feudal laws. It is probable, that the nobles who already had fiefs found it more advantageous to receive the new gifts as freeholds, and that the freemen thought themselves well off to receive them as fiefs.

But upon examining the sense of the passage we find it defective, and that the sentence is elliptical for—*se trouvoient encore trop heureux de les recevoir en fiefs pour les refuser comme tels* : for otherwise the passage would imply that they were too happy, as they were to receive them as fiefs ; which was not, by any means, the case.

- ¶ PARTICULARS with respect to the use of the French prepositions *de*, *à*, and *pour*, as compared with the English correspondent prepositions ;—with respect to the infinitive, beginning a sentence with *de*, *à*, and *pour*, and without any preposition at all ;—and with respect to the due discrimination of the regimens of verbs.

The relations which the English prepositions *of*, *from*, *with*, *in*, *by*, *for*, and *to*, bear to the French prepositions *de*, *à*, and *pour*, deserve well to be attended to by the English learner.

21. The English participle in *-ing*, with the prepositions *of*, *from*, *with*, (or the infinitive, when it may be resolved by any of these prepositions and the participle) is rendered into French by the infinitive with *de*.

The

The English participle, with the prepositions *in* and *to*, (or the infinitive, which can be resolved after that manner) is rendered by the French infinitive with *à*.

And the English preposition *for*, with the participle, (or the infinitive so resolved) is rendered by the infinitive with *pour*.

(The English participle, with the prepositions *in* and *by*, is sometimes rendered into French by the gerund, with the preposition *en*:—*By*, or *in* doing that; *en faisant* cela.)

Moreover observe, that *pour* is never used in French with a gerund, as in English with a participle, but always with the infinitive:

That the English participles, construed with *for*, are rendered into French by the compound of the present of the infinitive, or by a noun—

Il a été pendu pour avoir volé, or pour vol;

He has been hanged *for robbing*—

The noun denoting simply the action itself, and the verb in the compound tense superadding, besides, the *time* of the action which is past:

That these three prepositions, *de*, *à*, and *pour*, are not always put so immediately before their verbs, as their correspondents in English, but some word or words may intervene, as pronouns and some adverbs, which must come immediately before the verb:

Pour vous pleinement convaincre; To convict you fully, &c.

These prepositions are also sometimes used before the infinitive, without any previous noun or verb to determine them; viz. at the beginning of a sentence:

De vous dire comment cela est arrivé, c'est ce que je ne puis;

To tell you how that has happened, is what I cannot.

Which sentence might be turned thus:

Ce que je ne puis faire, c'est de vous dire comment cela est arrivé.

A comes, in like manner, at the beginning of a sentence, and is even then construed with verbs generally requiring *de*; but then *à* falls under some of the relations of disposition or inclination, which (as will be seen when we treat particularly of prepositions) are denoted by it: and *à*, thus used, can be resolved into English by *by* or *with* and a gerund, or *if* and the indicative:

A en juger par les apparences;

If we may judge of it by appearances.

A vivre comme il fait, il n'ira pas loin ;
By living as he does, he won't last long.

On diroit à l'entendre, que— ;

To hear him, (or, if one was to hear him) one would say, &c.

20. As for *pour*, before an infinitive in the beginning of a sentence, it always supports its character of denoting the *design*, *end*, or *cause* of doing a thing :

Pour avoir pris tant de peines, il n'en est pas mieux récompensé ;
For taking so much pains, he is not the better rewarded.

21. The infinitive can also begin the sentence without any preposition at all before it, which is the case when we speak sententiously, or lay down general maxims :

Pouvoir vivre avec soi-même, & savoir vivre avec les autres, est la grande science de la vie ;

To be able to live with one's self, and to know how to live with others, is the great art of living.

22. And here we may also take occasion to observe a particular very necessary to be known, in order to write French correctly : Whenever in a sentence two verbs come together, joined by the enclitic *&*, great care must be taken (especially if they govern different cases of nouns or pronouns) to give to each of them its proper case ; placing a noun after the first verb, and joining to the second a pronoun in the case it governs ; or repeating the pronoun before each verb, agreeably to the regimen they require : therefore, we do not say in French, *Cela plut & charma le prince*, as in English, *That pleased and charmed the prince* ; because *plaire* governs the dative, and *charmer* the accusative : but we must say,—*Cela plut au prince & le charma ; or, cela lui plut & le charma.*

Again, these constructions are false—

Je veux & promets d'accomplir ma promesse ;
I will and bind myself to fulfil my promise.

Il fit des caresses, & donna sa bénédiction à son fils ;
He made much of his son, and gave him his blessing.

Je suis plus belle que mon frère (a girl speaks) ;
I am handsomer than my brother.

Je suis plus savant que ma sœur (a boy speaks) ;
I am more learned than my sister.

Because in the first instance *vouloir* requires a different construction from *promettre* : the sentence should therefore be,—*Je veux accomplir ma promesse, & je le promets, (or de le faire.)*

And

And in the second, although *fit des careffes* and *donna sa bénédiction*, both govern a dative, yet the first verb must have its particular case as well as the second; and the sentence be, *Il fit des careffes à son fils, & lui donna sa bénédiction.*

And in the third and fourth instances, *belle* and *savant* being each of a particular gender, cannot agree with the two genders mentioned in the sentence: we had better, therefore, use a circumlocution, and say,—

Mon frère est beau, mais je suis encore plus belle;

My brother is handsome, but I am still handsomer.

Ma sœur est savante, mais je suis encore plus savant;

My sister is learned, but I am still more learned.

So regular is the French language in its concord and construction.

It is the same with two prepositions; each must have its separate regimen, expressed or understood. For instance, we must render,—The one sat above, and the other below me,—*L'un s'assit au-dessus de moi, & l'autre au-dessous*: where *au-dessus* has its regimen expressed, and *au-dessous* understood.

PARTICULARS relating to the REGIMEN of certain VERBS.

Aider governs indifferently the dative and accusative of pronouns:

Aidez-lui (or le) à faire quelque chose;

Help him to do something.

NOTE.

If the change of regimen makes any difference, it is, that when it governs the dative case, it signifies more properly to share and divide the trouble with one.

Avertir, being attended by two nouns, governs the accusative of the person and the genitive of the thing; or, if a verb follow, the infinitive with *de*:

Avertir quelqu'un de quelque chose;

To warn somebody of something.

U

Avertir

Avertir quelqu'un *de faire* quelque chose ;
To warn somebody to do something.

5. *Charger* has the same regimen as *avertir* :

Charger quelqu'un *de* quelque chose ;
To give somebody charge of a thing.

Charger quelqu'un *de faire* quelque chose ;
To charge one to do something.

6. *Défendre* governs the *accusative* of the *thing*, and the *dative* of
7. the *person* ; or, with a verb, the infinitive with *de* ; and it may
8. be construed with the subjunctive with *que* :

D.

A.

Je vous défends cette liberté ; I forbid you that liberty.

D.

A.

Lycurgue défendit aux Spartiates tous les luxes & les agrémens
de la vie ;

Lycurgus forbade the Spartans all the luxuries and comforts
of life.

D.

Je vous défends de le faire ;
I forbid you to do it.

Je défends que vous fassiez cela ;
I forbid you to do that.

9. *Demander* requires the infinitive with *à*, when it simply im-
10. plies *asking* and *demanding* ; but in the sense of *desiring*, *beseeching*,
10a. &c. it requires *de* : but in this sense we had better use *prier* :

Il demande à manger ; He asks to eat.

Il m'a demandé [or *prié*] *de lui rendre ce service-là* ;
He besought me to do him that service.

11. *Prier* also governs the *accusative* of the *person*, and the *genitive*
of the *thing* :

Prier quelqu'un *d'une chose* ;

To ask one concerning a thing, to ask a thing of any one.

12. *Insulter* governs the *accusative*, when its regimen refers to a
13. person ; and a *dative*, when to a thing :

Insulter quelqu'un ; To insult one.

Insulter à la misère d'autrui ;

To insult others on account of their misfortunes.

We however say, and that with elegance too,—

245

Insulter aux misérables;

To insult the wretched.

Mériter requires either the infinitive with *de*, or the subjunctive with *que*; and so do also the adjectives *digne* and *indigne*: 15.
16.
17.

Il mérite d'être préféré, or qu'on le préfère;

He deserves to be preferred.

Il est digne [or indigne] d'être considéré;

He is worthy, or unworthy, of being well looked upon.

Il est digne [or indigne] qu'on lui rende service;

He is worthy, or unworthy, of being obliged.

Prendre garde requires after it the dative; and with a verb, the infinitive with *de*, or the subjunctive with *que*: 18.
19.

Prenez garde à cela; Take care of that.

Prenez garde de tomber; Take heed of falling; i. e. take care not to fall, or that you do not fall.

Prenez garde qu'il ne fasse cela;

Take care lest he should do that.

Observe with respect to this verb, that the French use no negative after *prendre garde* when the next verb is of the infinitive, though it is translated into English with a negative: 20.

Prenez garde de tomber; Take care not to fall; beware of falling.

Permettre and *refuser* govern the accusative of the thing, and the dative of the person: 21.

Il permet à son ami tout ce qu'il demande, & ne lui refuse rien;

He grants his friend every thing he asks for, and does not refuse him any thing.

They both require the infinitive with *de*. 22.

Persuader, attended by one noun only, governs it in the accusative: 23.

Persuader quelqu'un; To persuade one.

Persuader quelque chose; To persuade one to something.

When it is attended by two nouns, it governs the accusative of the thing, and the dative of the person: 24.

Persuader quelque chose à quelqu'un;

To persuade one to something.

25. And when it is followed by a verb, it requires the infinitive with *de* :

Persuader quelqu'un de faire quelque chose ;
To persuade one to do something.

26. *Dissuader* and *détourner* govern an accusative of the person, and
27. a genitive of the thing ; and the infinitive with *de* :

Dissuader, détourner, quelqu'un de quelque chose ;
To dissuade one from something.

Le dissuader, détourner, de faire quelque chose ;
To dissuade him from doing something.

28. *Instruire* governs the accusative of the person, and the genitive of the thing :

Instruire quelqu'un de quelque chose ;
To acquaint one with something.

29. *Enseigner, apprendre, and montrer,* govern the dative of the person, and the accusative of the thing :

Enseigner la grammaire à quelqu'un ;
To teach grammar to somebody.

30. *Satisfaire* governs the accusative of the person, and the dative of the thing :

Il n'a pas encore satisfait ses créanciers ;

He has not discharged his debts yet ; or, He has not paid his creditors yet.

Satisfaire à ses passions, à son ambition ;

To give scope to one's passions, to one's ambition.

31. Lastly, *Verbs and adjectives* governing the genitive and abla-
32. tive in *Latin*, govern the genitive in *French* ; and those governing the dative in *Latin*, govern it also in *French* :

Meminisse alicujus rei ; se souvenir d'une chose ;

To remember a thing.

Vesci pane & aqua ; vivre de pain & d'eau ;

To live upon bread and water.

Résister alicui ; résister à quelqu'un ; To resist one.

C'EST, personal.

Chambaud having very incautiously joined the personal applications of *c'est* to its impersonal ones, under the general head

head of the *Impersonal C'est*, it has been thought right to separate these different uses of this verb; inserting here those occasions where it is personally applied, and leaving those in which it is impersonal, to the Section on Impersonal Verbs.

The primitive pronoun demonstrative *ce*, joined with the third person singular indicative present of *être* (*c'est*), refers to a person or thing already mentioned, or supposed to be so:

Avez-vous jamais lu la Henriade de Voltaire? C'est un ouvrage excellent;

Have you ever read Voltaire's *Henriade*? It is an excellent work.

C'est une modèle de vertu; He or she is a pattern of virtue.

C'est bon, c'est juste, &c. It is good, it is just.

Observe, that the noun which follows it has always *un, du, or des*, or the article *le, les, &c.* preceding it:

C'est un évêque; He is a bishop.

C'est du pain; It is bread.

Qui est cet homme-là? Who is that man.

C'est l'homme dont je vous ai parlé;

It is the man I spoke to you of.

The only difference between *ce* and *il, elle*, applied to persons, seems to be, that *ce* is something less definitive than the regular pronouns personal, and that in general the noun following *il est, elle est*, except under particular circumstances, takes no particle; whereas with *c'est* it would have *un*:

C'est un évêque; It is a bishop.

Il est évêque; He is a bishop.

The verb substantive following *ce* is sometimes made plural:

Je lis Horace & Virgile, parce que ce sont les meilleurs poètes Latins;

I read Horace and Virgil, because they are the best Latin poets.

Les astronomes qui prétendent connoître la nature des étoiles fixes, assurent que ce sont autant de soleils;

Those astronomers who pretend to know the nature of fixed stars, assure that they are as many suns.

Ce, joined to a third person of *être*, refers also to a person or thing yet to be spoken of, and not previously mentioned:

C'étoit un grand capitaine que César (where *ce* refers to *César*);
Cesar was a great captain.

C'est ne pas connoître les courtisans, que de compter sur leurs promesses ; (where *ce* refers to the sentence *compter sur leurs promesses*)

He who relies on the promises of courtiers, does not know them.

1. The CONJUNCTIONS governing the INFINITIVE.

<i>à,</i>	} to.	<i>au lieu de,</i> instead of.
<i>de,</i>		<i>loin de,</i> far from.
<i>pour,</i> to, in order to, &c.		<i>excepté de,</i> except to.
<i>après,</i> after,		<i>avant de,</i>
<i>sans,</i> without.		<i>avant que de,</i> } before.
<i>jusqu'à,</i> to that degree, till.		<i>à moins de,</i> }
<i>sauf à,</i> saving.		<i>à moins que de,</i> } unless.
<i>faute de,</i> for want of.		<i>plutôt que de,</i> rather than to.
<i>afin de,</i> in order to.		And all other conjunctions
<i>de peur de,</i> for fear of.		ending with <i>de</i> .
<i>de crainte de,</i> for fear of,		

REMARKS on the INFINITIVE.

1. THE present of the infinitive active has frequently a passive sense :

Il n'y a rien à voir ; There is nothing to be seen.

Cela n'est bon qu'à jeter ;

That is only fit to be thrown away.

2. A verb in the infinitive may, as well as a substantive, be the subject of the verb of the sentence ; and when employed for this purpose, it is generally rendered by the verbal English noun ending in *ing* :

Manger & dormir sont les plus grandes nécessités de la vie ;

Eating and drinking are the two greatest necessities of life.

3. When an adjective, without a substantive, follows a plural verb, having two or more infinitives for its subject, that adjective is put in the plural number and masculine gender, which, in such an application, has the force of the neuter :

Manger

Manger peu, & dormir beaucoup, sont bons à la santé;
To eat little, and sleep much, are good for the health.

Infinitives sometimes assume the character of verbal nouns, so far as to take the article :

Le diner, dinner; *le souper*, supper; *le boire*, drinking; *le manger*, eating; *le savoir*, knowledge; &c.

NOTE.

Restaut considers the infinitive so much as a substantive, that he even declines it like one, thus ;

Nom.	<i>lire,</i>	6.
Gen.	<i>de lire,</i>	7.
Dat.	<i>à lire,</i>	8.
Accus.	<i>lire,</i>	9.
Ablat.	<i>de lire ;</i>	10.

and gives the following instances of its application :

Lire est une bonne occupation ; Reading is a good employment.

J'ai envie de lire ; I have a mind to read.

Je passe mon tems à lire ; I pass my time in reading.

Je veux lire ; I will read.

Je viens de lire ; I have just read.

What he says concerning the tenses of the infinitive may also find a place here. I give his observations in his own words : Ce qu'on appelle *le présent de l'infinitif* ne se rapporte de soi-même à aucun tems déterminé, & on peut l'employer, suivant les circonstances du discours, aussi bien pour *le passé* & pour *le futur*, que pour *le présent* :

Vous me voyez écrire ; You see me writing.

Vous m'avez vu écrire ; You have seen me writing.

Vous me verrez écrire ; You will see me writing.

Mais quand on veut exprimer dans l'infinitif, un *passé par rapport au tems du verbe qui le précède*, on se sert du participe passif, auquel on joint ou l'infinitif *avoir*, ou l'infinitif *être*, suivant la nature des verbes : comme quand on dit,

Vous me paraissez avoir perdu votre argent ;

You seem to me to have lost your money.

Ou, *J'ai cru être arrivé trop tard ;* I thought I had arrived too late.

Pour exprimer de même dans l'infinitif, un *futur par rapport au tems du verbe qui est auparavant*, on joint l'infinitif *devoir* à celui du verbe dont il s'agit : comme quand on dit,

Je croyais devoir suivre ce procès ;

I thought I should go on with that law-suit.

Ou, *Je crois devoir suivre ce procès ;*

I think I must go on with that law-suit.

§ Of the GERUND and PARTICIPLE.

1. The GERUND,

1. The gerund is a certain inflexion of the verb, always ending in *ant*; expressing its signification or energy in such a manner, as to render it *accessorial* and *subordinate* to that of the principal verb of the sentence; describing some *circumstance, manner, or means* of its action. It is indeclinable, and generally preceded by the preposition *en*. (RESTAUT.)

Qui empêche de dire la vérité en riant ?

Who hinders one from speaking the truth in a pleasant manner ?

2. The PARTICIPLE.

The Participle Present:

The participle present in *ant*, from its perfect similarity to the gerund, in formation, has been considered as the same by Chambaud; who has however been, in that particular, in an error.

- We have already explained what gerunds are, and in our definition shewn that they express the *modes* or *qualities* of the principal *verbs* of the sentences in which they occur. On the contrary, the *participles* in *ant* always refer to a *noun*, expressed or understood, denoting, like adjectives, some quality or attribute of it; differing, however, from adjectives in this, that they always have the same regimen with their primitive verbs :

Un écolier sage préfère l'étude au jeu ;

A wise scholar prefers study to play,

Un écolier sage préférant l'étude au jeu ;

A wise scholar preferring study to play.

3. And in being, for the most part, indeclinable, (except in a few instances, which will be here seen*, and where perhaps the participle is rather to be considered as a verbal adjective, usurping the regimen of its verb, than any thing else; not to say that most of those occasions of its being declined, occur only in legal writings, which can by no means establish any standard of propriety for the grammarian.)

Un

* See the Exceptions in the next page,

<i>Un homme,</i>	} lisant de bons livres.	<i>A man,</i>	} reading good books.
<i>Des hommes,</i>		<i>Men,</i>	
<i>Une femme,</i>		<i>A woman,</i>	
<i>Des femmes,</i>		<i>Women,</i>	

Adjectives formed from verbs, and commonly called *verbal adjectives*, however similar to participles in form, differ from them in nature, in this essential point, that they take not, like the participle, the regimen of the verbs from which they are formed. Thus we say, *Une femme suppliante* (where *suppliante* is a verbal adjective); but we cannot say, — *Une femme suppliante ses juges*; but must, in such case, use the participle: —

Une femme suppliant ses juges;
A woman supplicating her judges.

EXCEPTIONS.

Une étoffe approchante de la vôtre, A stuff somewhat resembling yours;
Les villages dépendans d'une seigneurie, The villages depending on a lordship;
Une requête tendante à la cassation d'un arrêt,
A petition begging the repeal of a decree;
Des filles majeures usantes & jouissantes de leurs droits,
Young women of age enjoying their rights;
Nos gens tenans nos cours de parlement,
Our people holding our courts of parliament;
La rendante compte, A woman who gives account;
Une humeur répugnante à la votre; A humour repugnant to yours.

NOTE.

Lest the distinction between the gerund in *ant*, and the participle in *ant*, should not be sufficiently clear, from what has been already said, I will subjoin Restaut's account of it, from whom I have borrowed many hints in this Section, to correct Chambaud's error respecting these parts of speech.

“ Le gérondif ne désigne qu'une circonstance, une manière, ou un moyen de l'action exprimée par le verbe principal auquel il est subordonné; au lieu que le participe marque toujours ou l'état du sujet auquel il se rapporte, ou la raison & le fondement d'une action exprimée par quelque verbe. — Quoique le gérondif soit souvent employé, sans être précédé de la préposition *en*, on peut néanmoins toujours la mettre avant quelque gérondif que ce soit, excepté avant les gérondifs ayant *de* étant; on ne peut jamais au contraire joindre cette préposition à un participe actif, sans altérer le sens de la phrase, & sans faire violence à l'usage: — Si je dis, — Je suis persuadé que travaillant pendant six mois avec application, vous surpasserez votre frère; — travaillant n'exprime qu'une manière ou un moyen de l'action signifiée par le verbe *vous surpasserez*, c'est-à-dire un moyen de surpasser votre frère; & on peut y joindre *en*, sans changer le sens de la phrase, en disant — Je suis persuadé qu'en travaillant pendant six mois, &c. Par conséquent travaillant est un gérondif en cette occasion.

“ Mais dans cette autre phrase, La plupart des grands du royaume jugeant la seconde croisade contraire au bien de l'état, voulurent en détourner St. Louis, — jugeant marque le fondement de l'action exprimée par les verbes *voulurent détourner*; c. à. d. que les grands du royaume voulurent détourner St. Louis de la seconde croisade,

croisade, par ce qu'ils la jugeoient contraire au bien de l'état : & l'on ne pourroit pas dire, sans altérer le sens de la phrase, & sans faire violence à l'usage, La plupart des grands du royaume, en jugeant la seconde croisade contraire, &c.

- 4f. " On sentira encore mieux la différence d'un gérondif & d'un participe, en se servant d'un même verbe avec ou sans la préposition *en*. Par exemple, ce n'est pas la même chose de dire, Je vous ai vu *priant* Dieu, ou, Je vous ai vu *en priant* Dieu. La première phrase, où *priant* est participe, signifie, Je vous ai vu *lorsque vous priez* Dieu ; & la seconde, où *priant* est gérondif signifie, Je vous ai vu *pendant que je priais* Dieu."

5. In French, we often express with a relative pronoun and a tense of the indicative, what is expressed with a participle in English, in order to avoid the ambiguity which may arise from the French participle being indeclinable : thus, instead of saying, *Je les ai rencontrés courant la poste*, (I met them riding post) we say, *Je les ai rencontrés qui couroient la poste* ; because *courant* may as well refer to the subject *je*, as to the object *les* :

Il a été chez elles, & il les a trouvées qui buvoient & mangeoient ;

He has been at their house, and found them eating and drinking.

6. The following uses of the English participle are turned thus into French,

He is gone *a walking* ; *Il est allé se promener.*

A virtuous man does not cease to do good till he ceases to live ;

L'homme vertueux ne cesse de faire du bien, qu'en cessant de vivre.

His perfect knowledge of the French tongue is the reason of his being chosen for that embassy ;

La connoissance parfaite qu'il a de la langue Françoisse, est la raison pourquoi on l'a choisi pour cette ambassade.

Prevent him from doing mischief ; *empêchez-le de faire du mal.*

There is a pleasure in silencing great talkers ;

Il y a du plaisir à fermer la bouche aux grands parleurs.

7. The continuation of the action is expressed in English throughout all the tenses with the auxiliary verb *to be*, and the participle present of the verb ; as, I am dancing, *Je danse*, &c.

8. The same is to be observed throughout all the tenses of the verb :

I shall be dancing, *Je danserai ;*

I should be dancing, *Je danserois ; &c. &c.*

The Participle Past.

Participles of this tribe are frequently mere adjectives, affirm-
ing something of a subject, and qualifying the substantive.
They are then always declinable:

Un homme estimé, A man esteemed;
Une femme estimée, A woman esteemed;
Des gens estimés, People esteemed;
Des nations estimées, Nations esteemed;
Il est perdu, He is lost;
Elle est perdue, She is lost;
Il est ravi, He is overjoyed;
Ils sont ravis de danser, They are overjoyed to dance.

As participles, they serve to form the compound tenses of
verbs; and are sometimes used in short incidental sentences,
like the Latin absolute case:

Cela dit, il s'en alla (hoc dicto, abiit);
That said, he went away.

Participles when forming the compound tenses of verbs, are
sometimes declinable, and sometimes not.

They are declinable, when the tense compound, either of
avoir or *être*, is preceded by any of the following pronouns, in
the accusative case, governed as an object; viz. *que, le, la, mes,*
me, te, se, nous, vous, or by a noun with a pronoun inter-
rogative.

Les peines que mes amis ont prises;
The trouble that my friends have taken.
Les peines que mes amis se sont données;
The trouble that my friends gave themselves.
Ses sœurs ont bien du mérite, je les ai toujours estimées;
His sisters are very deserving, I have always esteemed them.
Nous nous sommes trompés (men speak); We are mistaken.
Nous nous sommes trompées (women speak); We are mistaken.
Quelles peines a-t-il prises? or, s'est-il données, &c.
What trouble did he take, or give himself?

They are indeclinable, 1st, when the sense of the sentence
is not completed by the compound verb of which the participle
makes a part, but some other word or words must be added to
complete it:

Les montres qu'il a fait faire;
The watches that he caused to be made.

Il ne les a pas voulu payer ; He would not pay for them.

Il a dit toutes les raisons qu'il a pu, voulu, or dû (where *dire* is understood) ;

He gave every reason that he could, chose, or ought to give.

Les tumultes qu'il a fallu appaîser ;

The riots which it was necessary to quell.

Les raisons qu'il a cru que j'approuvois ;

The reasons which he thought I approved of.

Les personnes que j'ai vu qui étoient prévenues ;

The persons that I saw who were prepossessed.

Le commerce l'a rendu puissante ;

Commerce has rendered it powerful.

Les Anglois se sont rendu maîtres de la mer ;

The English have rendered themselves master of the sea.

2dly, When the subject of the verb comes after it :

Les peines qu'ont pris mes amis ;

The trouble that my friends have taken.

(Wherefore, as Rollin observes in his *Belles Lettres*, the following epigram is erroneous :

" Pauvre Didon ! où t'a réduite,

De tes maris le triste sort !

L'un mourant, cause ta fuite ;

L'autre en fuyant, cause ta mort ! "

Poor Dido ! what art thou reduced to, through the sad fate of thy husbands ! The death of the one caused thy flight, the flight of the other thy death !

Because *réduite* should not have been declined, as the verb *a réduite* has its nominative case, *le triste sort*, coming after it.)

3dly, When the pronoun is governed in the dative, expressive of the end of the verb ; and not in the accusative, expressing its object :

Elle s'est donné la mort ; She has put herself to death.

Where *se* is not the accusative, but the dative.

NOTE.

And here it would not be improper to say a word or two, to account for the participles being declinable in the manner that they are ; a circumstance which, at first sight, appears most unaccountable to the English scholar.—How is it consistent, that the participle, whose energy is affirmed of the subject, should agree in number and gender with the object ? The propriety of it is evident, when we reflect, that by means of this agreement we come at the gender of the noun, (as well as its number) which is referred to by the pronoun.—*Je vous ai estimé*, I esteemed you ; I know that

that *vous* refers to a man:—*Je vous ai estimée*; I know that it is the substitute of a woman. —*Je vous ai estimés*; it describes two or more men:—*J'ai vous ai estimés*; I am speaking to two or more women. And so of the other pronouns, which do not of themselves define their gender and number. These observations will serve to place this peculiarity of the French language in its true light, that of a farther step to its perfection.

§ Of VERBS IMPERSONAL.

Of *C'est* and *Il est*.

These two impersonals (or rather the pronouns joined to *est*) cannot be used indiscriminately the one for the other. The following observations will lead to an explanation of their proper force and application.

1. *C'est*.

The impersonal *c'est* is always used when the *chose* is expressed:

C'est de cette chose-là que je parle;
It is of that thing I am speaking.

When the question concerning the hour is of such a nature as to be followed by a relative member, *c'est* must be used:

Quelle heure est-ce qui sonne?
What hour is the clock striking.

And whenever the question is asked with *c'est*, it must also be answered with it; for this evident reason, that the same relative member is understood after it, as is expressed after the question:

Quelle heure est-ce qui sonne? C'est une heure, c'est midi; i. e.
C'est une heure, c'est midi qui sonne;
It is one, it is striking twelve.

We also say,

C'est aujourd'hui Dimanche; To-day is Sunday.

C'est demain Lundi; To-morrow is Monday.

C'est Mardi fête, &c. Tuesday is a holiday.

EXCEPT the few cases which will be mentioned by and by, wherein *il est* is used, *c'est* is always proper, in impersonal methods of speaking with *est*, before nouns and pronouns; care being

5. being taken to make the pronoun which follows it disjunctive :

C'est la loi qui l'ordonne ; It is the law that prescribes it.

C'est le laquais, or, la servante qui l'a dit ;
It was the footman or the maid that said that.

C'est moi—c'est lui qui le croit ;
It is I—it is he that believes it.

6. The pronoun *ce*, used impersonally with *être*, is not only construed with all pronouns personal of the singular number followed by a relative and a verb which agrees with the pronoun personal ; as,

C'est moi qui ai fait cela ; It was I that did that.

C'étoit vous qui aviez fait cela ; It was you that did that.

Ce fut lui qui fit cela ; It was him that did that.

7. But also with the pronouns personal of the plural, followed by a verb after the same manner :

C'est nous qui avons fait cela ; It was we that did that.

C'est vous qui avez fait cela ; It was you that did that.

(Where *vous* is supposed to allude to *more than one person*.)

C'est eux qui ont fait cela ; It was they that did that.

C'étoit les dragons qui ne vouloient pas obéir ;

It was the dragoons that would not obey.

8. But what is more remarkable, this pronoun *ce* is construed with the third person plural of the verb substantive, at the pleasure of the writer or speaker :

Ce sont eux qui l'ont fait ; It was they that did that.

C'étoient les dragons qui ne vouloient pas obéir ;

It was the dragoons that would not obey.

Ce furent les dragons qui ne voulurent pas obéir ;

It was the dragoons that would not obey.

Ce seront les dragons qui feront cette attaque ;

The dragoons are to make that attack.

9. But when a question is asked with this impersonal, it is always singular :

Est-ce eux qui ont fait cela ? Is it they that have done it ?

Etoit-ce les dragons qui ne vouloient pas obéir ?

Was it the dragoons that would not obey ?

Fut-ce les dragons qui ne voulurent pas obéir ?

Was it the dragoons that would not obey ?

NOTE.

Observe, in the use of the impersonal *c'est*, the following rules with respect to its tenses, compared with those of the verb in the relative member following it.

In all cases of *simple tenses* being used for the *relative verb*, *similar tenses* may be used for *être* with *ce* :

C'est moi qui le dis ;	It is I that say it.
C'étoit moi qui le faisois ;	It was I that did it.
Ce fut moi qui le fis ;	It was I that did it.
Ce sera moi qui le fera ;	I shall do it.

Besides this, observe that the *present tense* of *être*, with *ce*, may be used, when the *relative verb* is in the compound of the *present*, the *perfect*, and the *future* :

C'est moi	{	qui l'ai fait ;	It is I that have done it.
		qui le fis ;	It was I that did it.
		qui le fera ;	I shall do it.

And the *imperfect*, with the compound of the *imperfect* :

C'étoit moi qui l'avois fait ; It was I that had done it.

12.

This seems to be the most regular *ratio temporum* that can be laid down between *c'est* and the *relative verb* ; although we shall not find it always observed in the cases of *c'est* preceding a member beginning with *que* conjunction, as will be seen presently, where popular use has over-ruled grammatical propriety.

C'est or *c'étoit* is sometimes used, followed immediately by *que*, which then has the force of *parce que* :

C'est, or c'étoit, que je ne savois pas qu'il fut arrivé ;
It is, or it was, because I did not know that he was arrived.

But in the following sentences, where a word of time intervenes between the impersonal and *que*, *que* must be rendered by *that* :

C'est alors que je prends mes mesures ;
It is then that I take my measures.

C'étoit alors, or, dans ce moment, que je le vis entrer ;
It was then, or at that moment, that I saw him enter.

The impersonal *c'est* is often idiomatically used, having the noun, which would be its subject if it was personal, following it in the genitive case : this is mostly the case when the impersonal is immediately followed by *trop*, *trop peu*, or *assez* :

Henri IV. fit brûler un Lollard : c'étoit trop peu d'un, si cette rigueur étoit juste ; c'étoit beaucoup trop [d'un understood], si elle n'étoit que barbare. (Histoire de la Querelle d'Edouard III. & des Valois, par M. GAILLARD)

Henry IV. committed one Lollard to the flames : one was too little, if that rigour was just ; but too many, if it was merely an act of barbarity.

C'est

C'est assez de cette démarche imprudente pour vous ruiner ;
That imprudent step is sufficient to ruin you.

N O T E.

16. The impersonal *il suffit*, which has, in many respects, the same force as *c'est assez*, has the noun after it in the same case :

Il suffit de cette démarche pour vous ruiner ;
That imprudent step is sufficient to ruin you.

17. *Ce* is sometimes omitted, and *être* used alone, in hypothetical sentences ; although *ce* is necessarily understood, with *si*, in order to reduce the sentence to grammatical regularity :

J'en pourrais produire mille exemples, n'étoit que je crains d'abuser de votre patience ; for, *si ce n'étoit que, &c.*

I could produce a thousand examples of it, were it not that I am afraid of abusing your patience.

N'étoit sa bonne conduite ; for, *si ce n'étoit, &c.*

If it was not for his good conduct.

N'étoit la crainte que j'ai de vous déplaire ; for, *si ce n'étoit la crainte, &c.*

If it was not for the fear of offending you.

18. In the use of this ellipsis, the subjunctive compound perfect is employed, instead of the indicative compound perfect :

Je l'aurais pu convaincre, n'eût été que je craignois ; for, *si ce n'avoit été que je craignois ;*

I should have been able to convince him, if it had not been that I was afraid.

Il est.

19. *Il est* is used when the verb is followed by an adjective without a noun, and with a sentence which is necessary in order to complete the sense of the adjective and impersonal :

Il est bien fâcheux d'être malade, & de n'avoir point d'argent ;
It is a very sad thing to be sick, and have no money.

Il est bon de se tenir sur ses gardes ;
It is prudent to stand upon one's guard.

- 19a. Which sentences might be turned,

C'est une bonne chose de se tenir sur ses gardes ;

C'est une chose bien fâcheuse d'être malade, & de n'avoir point d'argent.

The impersonal *il est* is used before nouns denoting time, or 20.
part of time, when no relative sentence follows it, either expressed or understood :

Quelle heure est-il ? What o'clock is it ?

Il est deux heures ; It is two o'clock.

Il est tard ; It is late.

Il est tems de partir ; It is time to go, or set out.

It is, followed by *with*, is expressed in French by *il en est*, 21.
with the genitive of the noun :

It is with poetry as with painting ;

Il en est de la poésie comme de la peinture.

It is with women as with children ;

Il en est des femmes comme des enfans.

Il est is sometimes elegantly used instead of *il y a* : as, 22.

Il est des amitiés véritables ; for, *Il y a des amitiés, &c.*

There is true friendship.

Il est à craindre ; for, *Il y a à craindre ;*

It is to be feared.

Of *Il y a*.

Most phrases beginning in English with *some*, and the verb 1.
to be, are expressed in French by the impersonal *il y a*, and one of the particles *de*, *des*, &c. next to it.

Some friends are false ; *Il y a de faux amis.*

Some pains are salutary ; *Il y a des douleurs salutaires.*

Sometimes the adjective is joined to its noun by means of the 2.
pronoun *qui*, and the verb *être* :

Il y a des chrétiens qui sont indignes de ce nom ;

Some christians are unworthy of that name.

N. B. Observe, that *il y a* is used as well with nouns plural 2a.
as nouns singular ; and that *avoir*, in this impersonal form,
is never used but in the singular :—a circumstance which
indeed is characteristic of verbs impersonal in general.

The impersonal *il y a* is besides applied with propriety in sentences expressive of *time*, *space*, and *number*.

1. To denote the quantity of *time* past since an event, the 3.
French begin with *il y a* ; then comes the noun of time, and its

numeral prefixed, and followed by *que*; next a noun or pronoun, standing as the subject of the verb which comes after it, and is in the present or compound of the present, as the sense of the sentence may require:—*Il y a—trente ans—qu'il est mort.* Or the phrase may be transposed thus, with the omission of *que*:—*Il est mort il y a trente ans*: and it is rendered into English, *he has been dead these thirty years*; which is equivalent to the literal meaning—*it is thirty years that he is dead.*

5. In asking a question of time, beginning with *how long*, in English, we must not say, *comment*, *comment long*, or *comment longtemps*; but *combien y-a-t-il que*; then the noun or pronoun which is the subject of the verb that comes after it in the present:

Combien y a t-il qu'il est mort ?

How long has he been dead?

Combien y a-t-il que vous demeurez à Londres ?

How long have you lived in London?

5a. And the answer must be made by *il y a*, joined to the noun of time:

Il y a dix ans; These ten years.

Or simply, *Dix ans*, Ten years.

N O T E.

5b. The reason of this is evident:—*Comment* is an adverb of *quality*, not of *quantity*; and the question is entirely concerning the latter. Moreover, observe that *Combien y a-t-il qu'il est mort ?* How long has he been dead? is elliptical for, *Combien de jours, de mois, d'années ?* How many days, months, years? according as the speaker's idea of the portion of time in question is extensive or contracted: and that *que*, which occurs in the above sentences of time, has the force of *depuis que*.

6. When the verb following *il y a* is in the present, the sentence implies that the action expressed by the verb is still in transaction; but when the verb is in the compound of the present, the sentence implies that the action expressed by it was completed in the time specified, and consequently that it is not now doing. The difference will more clearly appear by means of examples:

Il y a vingt ans qu'il voyage par toute l'Europe;

He has been travelling for these twenty years all over Europe [and is travelling still].

Il y a vingt ans qu'il a voyagé par toute l'Europe;

He travelled over Europe twenty years ago.

2. *Il y a* is used with propriety before words denoting the space of place:

Il y a cent vingt lieues ou trois cents soixante milles de Londres à Paris;

Paris is one hundred and twenty leagues, or three hundred and sixty miles, distant from London.

But the question of space is asked thus :

Combien y a-t-il de Londres à Paris ?

How far is it from London to Paris ?

N. B. Observe, that in French the place where the speaker is, or is supposed to come from, is named first with *de*.

3. Before words denoting number :

Il y a dix millions d'ames en Angleterre;

There are ten millions of souls in England.

The participle in *ant* of the impersonal *il y a*, is often used to begin a sentence with the same force as an indicative tense of *il y a* :

Des quatre personnes à qui il avoit commis la formation de l'édit, n'y ayant que le seul Calignon de protestant (SULLY); (which is the same as—*comme il n'y avoit de protestant que le seul Calignon—*)

Among the four persons to whom he had committed the formation of the edict, there not being a protestant but Calignon alone

Of *Il fait*.

The impersonal *il fait* is used with adjectives, and some few nouns, denoting the state of the weather and air, and certain accidents of time; and is englished in such acceptation by *it is*.

<i>Il fait</i>	{	<i>beau, or beau tems,</i>	}	<i>It is</i>	{	fine weather.
		<i>chaud,</i>				hot.
		<i>froid,</i>				cold.
		<i>vilain,</i>				horrid weather.
		<i>crotté</i>				dirty weather.
		<i>jour,</i>				day.
		<i>nuit,</i>				night.
		<i>obscur,</i>				gloomy.
		<i>sombre,</i>				

Il fait { *vent,*
du vent,
soleil,
clair de lune,
mauvais tems,
brouillard,
fale,

} *It is* { *windy.*
sunshine.
moonshine.
bad weather.
foggy.
dirty weather.

3. The English impersonal *it is*, construed with an adjective and
 4. a noun, or with one of the adjectives, *good*, *bad*, *better*, *dangerous*, followed by a noun or other word of place, is also rendered into French by *il fait*, followed by an adjective, with a verb in the infinitive, either expressed or understood :

It is dear living at London ; Il fait cher vivre à Londres.

It is dangerous being at sea ; Il fait dangereux (être) sur mer.

It is good being here ; Il fait bon ici.

Of *Il faut*.

5. The impersonal *il faut* requires after it either the subjunctive
 6. with *que*, or the infinitive without the preposition. It denotes the necessity of doing something, and is englished by *it must*, *it is necessary*, *requisite*, *needful*, *one should*, *one ought* :—

Il faut que les officiers fassent leur devoir ;

The officers *must* do their duty.

Il faudroit que les enfans apprissent tous les jours quelque chose par cœur ;

Children *should*, or *ought to* learn something by heart every day.

7. *Il faut* before an infinitive denotes the necessity of doing something, in general ; but without specifying *who* is bound by it : then, of course, the subject of the verb *must*, may be *I* or *we*, *he*, *she*, or *they*, or *any body*, as the speaker may mean, and as the context may point out :—

Il faut faire cela ;

One or we, or you, he, somebody, must do that.

Il faut y aller ; I, or you, or we, or somebody, must go thither.

8. Sometimes the verb coming after the impersonal is englished by the passive voice, and the noun which follows the verb in French, precedes *must* in English :

Il faut instruire les enfans ; Children must be instructed.

All which sentences may be equally as well expressed with 9. the subjunctive:—*Il faut que cela se fasse*; or, *il faut qu'il*, or *qu'elle*, or *qu'on fasse cela*; or, *que nous fassions cela*.

Again, the necessity of having something is also denoted by 10. *il faut*, before the noun of the thing only, without any verb: and *il faut* thus applied, is englished by *one must have*, *it is necessary that one should have*; or, the thing named *must be had*, or *is necessary*:

Il faut de l'argent pour plaider;

One must have money to go to law.

Pour se pousser dans le monde, il faut des amis;

Friends are necessary to advance one in the world.

And a pronoun personal conjunctive in the dative case, 11. coming between *il* and *faut*, appropriates the necessity or want to the person signified by the pronoun, which is made the subject of *must* in English:

Il me faut de l'argent; I must have, or I want money;

Il me faut un chapeau; I must get a hat.

Il vous faut des livres; You must have books.

The impersonal *il faut* is used absolutely at the end of a sen- 12. tence, with the conjunction *comme*, or the pronouns *ce qui*, 13. before it; in which case it implies *duty* and *decency*, and is englished by *should*, and sometimes *should do* and *should be*:

Il ne se conduit pas comme il faut;

He does not behave as he *should* or *ought*,

Faites cela comme il faut; Do that as *it should be*, &c.

Il fait ce qui faut; He does what is requisite.

There is, besides, a species of impersonal, which may be 14. called *reflected*, composed of the pronouns *il* and *se*, with the third person of any verb active, followed by a noun with one of the particles *de*, *du*, *des*, before it:—

Il se boit de bon vin en France;

There is good wine drunk in France.

Il se mange de bonne viande en Angleterre;

There is good meat eaten in England.

It may not be improper to observe, that these expressions 15. may as well be turned,—

On boit *de bon vin*, &c. They drink good wine, &c.

On mange *de bonne viande*, &c. They eat good meat, &c.

C H A P. VI.

Of the FRENCH NEGATIVES.

WE have already treated of the position of the negatives *ne*, *pas*, and *point*, with respect to the pronouns conjunctive and the verb: we are now to consider their construction, as also that of several other negatives in the French language.

1. *Ne*, comes, as has been said, after the subject, and immediately before the verb; and *pas* or *point* after the verb, if the tense be simple—*Je ne sais pas*, I do not know; and between the auxiliary and the participle, if the tense be compound—*Je n'ai point su cela*, I did not know that.
4. But when the verb is in the present of the infinitive, the two negatives come together before it, after the preposition, if there be any before the verb:

Je vous dis de ne pas vous mêler de cela;

I tell you not to meddle with that.

Pour ne point répéter ce que nous avons déjà dit;

Not to repeat what we have already said.

5. *No* is *non*, used at the end of a sentence, or absolutely, as in
6. answer to questions; and *not* is *non pas*, used also absolutely, in the beginning of a sentence, and followed by *que* with the subjunctive:

Croyez vous cela? Non. Do you believe that? No.

Je ne crois point cette nouvelle; non pas que la chose soit impossible, mais parce qu'elle ne me paroît pas vraisemblable:

I do not believe that piece of news; not that the thing is impossible, but because it does not appear probable to me.

7. Although *pas* and *point* may appear to be synonymous, yet *point*, in reality, denies with more emphasis than *pas*, implying not at all.

8. *Pas* is always used before these modifying words:

beaucoup, much;

peu, little;

mieux, better;

plus, more;

moins, less;

souvent, often;

toujours, always;

si, so;

tant, so much;

autant, as much;

trop, too much;

fort, } very;

très }

extrêmement, extremely;

infiniment, infinitely;

9. and all adverbs in general.

If there is any difference between asking a question with *pas* or *point*, it consists in *point* intimating that the subject of the question is intirely new to us; whereas, *pas* implies that we have heard something of it before.

NOTE.

The following extract from the *Synonymes* of the Abbé Girard will illustrate the subject of *pas* and *point* in the clearest manner; I give it in his own words:—
 “*Pas énonce simplement la négation; Point, appuie avec force, & semble l'affirmer: le premier souvent ne nie la chose qu'en partie, ou avec modification; le second la nie toujours absolument, totalement, et sans réserve: voilà pourquoi l'un se place très-bien avec les modificatifs (see the list just now given under pas), & que l'autre y auroit mauvais grace. On dirait donc, N'être pas bien riche, & n'avoir pas même le nécessaire: mais si l'on vouloit se servir de point, il faudroit ôter les modificatifs, & dire—N'être point riche, & n'avoir point de nécessaire.*”

Besides these negatives (to which add *ni* repeated, signifying neither and nor), the following words, which are of themselves negative terms, require moreover the particle *ne* before their verb, which is then without *pas* or *point*:

<i>personne</i> , nobody;	<i>guères</i> , but little;
<i>pas un</i> , not one;	<i>jamais</i> , never;
<i>aucun</i> , not any;	<i>rien</i> , nothing;
<i>nul</i> , none;	<i>mot</i> , word;
<i>nullement</i> , by no means;	<i>goutte</i> , not at all.

But the last two, *mot* and *goutte*, come under this rule only when *mot* is used with *dire*; and *goutte* (which, by the bye, is never used at all with any other words) with *voir* and *entendre*:

Je ne vois personne; I do not see any body.

Vous ne dites rien; You say nothing.

Elle n'a aucun parent; She has no relation.

Il ne dit mot; He does not say a word.

On ne voit goutte; One cannot see at all.

N'entendre goutte; Not to hear at all.

EXCEPTIONS with respect to *Rien* and *Jamais*.

With the preposition *sans*, which implies exclusion and negation, *rien* is used without *ne* or any other negative particle:

Ils y restèrent sans rien faire; They remained there without doing any thing:

Which has the same force as,

Et ils ne firent rien; And they did nothing.

In interrogative sentences where *rien* is used to signify something or any thing, the negative *ne* is omitted:

Avez-vous jamais rien vu de si beau? Have you ever seen any thing so beautiful?

When *jamais* signifies ever (which sometimes is the case) it is construed without a negative.

Si jamais j'y retourne; If ever I return thither.

1. The conjunctions *à, moins que, de peur que, de crainte que,*
2. *lest,* or for fear that, (but not *de peur de, de crainte de,* which govern the infinitive) will have after them *ne* alone, before the
3. next verb: as likewise these three verbs: *empêcher,* to hinder, to prevent; *craindre,* to fear; *appréhender,* to apprehend; after
4. which verbs the following verb is in the subjunctive. But when they are used in the infinitive, no negative is joined with them:

A moins que vous ne le vouliez ainsi;

Unless you will have it so.

J'empêcherai qu'il ne vous nuise;

I will hinder him from hurting you.

NOTE.

5. But it is to be observed, with respect to the verbs of *fearing* and *apprehending*, that it is only when we speak of an effect not wished for, that the second negative, *pas* or *point*, is left out after the next verb; for if we wish that the thing in question should happen, then the verb which follows *craindre* and *appréhender* must be attended by two negatives:

Il craint que sa femme ne meure, He fears *lest* his wife *should* die;

Il craint que sa femme ne meure pas; He fears *lest* his wife *should not* die.

The first instance is of an effect not wished for; the last, of one wished for.

7. *Nier* (to deny) requires also elegantly *ne* before the next verb in negative sentences:

Je ne nie pas que je n'aie dit cela;

I do not deny that I have said that.

8. In negative sentences, where there is a negative subjunctive member added to the principal negative member, that subjunctive member has but one negative particle; which, however, has all the force of the two negatives used upon other occasions:

Il n'est pas possible que la patience avec laquelle ils souffrent ce traitement, ne les ait avilis aux yeux de la nation qui en est le témoin. (RAYNAL, Hist. Phil. & Politique.)

It is not possible that the patience with which they suffer this treatment has degraded them in the eyes of the nation which is witness of it.

9. In a similar case, where *rien* occurs in the negative subjunctive member, *ne* is not added, because *rien* has the force of one negative; and we have seen that such members of such sentences require but one:

On ne peut point dire qu'une chose ait rien de grand, quand le mépris qu'on fait de cette chose, tient lui-même du grand. (BOILEAU, Traité du Sublime par Longin.)

We cannot say that a thing is in any manner great, when the contempt with which we treat that thing has something great in it.

The negative *ne* is used before the verb which comes after these five words of comparison, *plus*, *moins*, *mieux*, *autre* and *autrement* :

Il est plus sincère qu'il ne faudroit ;
He is more sincere than he *should be*.

Elle est moins âgée que je ne croyois ;
She is less old than *I thought*.

Il (or elle) est tout autre que je ne pensois ;
She is quite different from what *I thought*.

Vous avez fait tout autrement que je n'aurois fait ;
You have acted quite differently from what *I would have done*.

Likewise after *que* and *si*, signifying *before* or *unless*, or *but* in the latter member of a compound sentence; the former member of which is negative :

Je ne la reverrai point, que sa mère ne m'envoie querir ;
I will not see her again, before (or unless) her mother send for me.

Je n'y irai pas s'il ne m'en prie ;
I will not go there, if he do not (or, unless he do) desire me.
Il ne sauroit ouvrir la bouche qu'il ne dise quelque impertinence ;
He cannot open his mouth, but he says (or, without saying) some foolish thing or other.

And before the verb which precedes *ni* repeated in the sentence, which answers to *neither*, *nor* :

Je n'aime ni à boire, ni à fumer ;
I love neither to drink, nor to smoke.

And when there is no verb before *neither*, this English negative is rendered by *ne* only, and *nor* by *ni ne* ; thus :

Je ne bois, ni ne fume ; I neither drink nor smoke,

NOTE.

When two adjectives meet together in a negative sentence, they are not joined with the particle *ni*, if they are *synonymous*, or express, both, the same thing in different words ; but only when they express two different or contrary things. When they are merely *synonymous*, they are joined by *et* :

Je ne me souviens point d'hiver plus rude & plus froid que celui de 1740 ;
I do not remember a winter more rough and cold than that of 1740.

Dur and *froid* are evidently *synonymous*, and therefore joined by *et* ; but in the following sentence the two adjectives express very different ideas, and are therefore coupled by *ni* :

Jamais on ne vit de saison plus pluvieuse, ni plus froide ;
A more rainy or cold season was never seen.

And here I would just by the way make an observation respecting *sans*, the preposition, as connected with *ni*.

16. It is first of all to be observed, that in certain negative sentences, in which more than one noun is expressed with negation, *ni* is repeated before each noun, expressive of *neither* and *nor* ; thus :

Une mer qui n'avoit ni fond, ni rive ;

A sea which had *neither* bottom *nor* shore, a bottomless and a boundless ocean.

17. Now should the same sentence be expressed in fewer words by means of *sans*, it would be placed immediately before the first noun; and have the force of the subject, the verb, and the two negatives, *ni*, and the first *ni*, and in such capacity would require the second *ni* before the second noun; and the sentence thus arranged and abbreviated, expresses the same thing as the former one :

La finance, qui étoit alors une mer sans fond ni rive ; (SULLY)

Finance, which at that time was like a sea without either bottom or shore.

18. And in like manner, if the sentence with *sans* be expressed by verbs and not by nouns, the verbs are infinitive, the first having *sans* before it, and the second *ni* :

Il s'en retourna sans boire ni manger ; (Idem)

He returned from that place without eating or drinking.

Which is the same as, *n'ayant ni bu ni mangé*.

1. The particle *ne* only, without any other negative, is used with these five verbs, applied in a negative sense; *oser*, to dare; *cesser*, to cease; *pouvoir*, to be able; *savoir*, to know; and *prendre garde*, to take care :

Il n'ose me contredire ; He dares not contradict me.

Elle ne cesse de babiller ; She does not cease prattling.

Prenez garde qu'on ne vous trompe ;

Take care lest they cheat you.

Il ne peut (or, sauroit) marcher ; He cannot walk.

NOTE.

1. 1st. Observe that it is only an elegance to use but one negative with *pouvoir*, it being not improper to say, — *Il ne peut pas marcher* ; and that when a question is asked, regard must be paid to the ear, in expressing or leaving out the second negative, although it is most common to say,

Ne peut-il pas faire cela ? Can he not do that ?

Which is therefore better than, *Ne peut-il faire cela ?*

- 2dly. When *savoir* is used in the sense of *pouvoir* (which is never the case but when it is used in the conditional tense), it requires only one negative, and never can be used with two : — *Il ne sauroit marcher ;* ne sauroit-il faire cela ? When it is used in its proper signification of *knowing*, there is another distinction to be made ; for if it implies only *uncertain knowledge*, it requires but one negative : as, *Il ne sait ce qu'il doit espérer de son procès* ; that is, he is *uncertain* of the event of his cause ; he hopes, but *knows not how far* to hope. But when its energy is *absolute and certain*, it requires two negatives ; as,

Il ne sait pas que le juge l'a condamné ;

He does not know (or, He is wholly ignorant of it) that the judge has condemned him.

Again,

Again, *savoir* requires but one negative when it meets with any of these particles, *où, comment, combien, quand, quel, quoi, si*; which by their nature modify its energy: 6.

Il est je ne sais où; He, or it, is I do not know where.

Cela s'est fait je ne sais comment; That was done I do not know how.

Là-dessus est entré je ne sais quel homme;

Thereupon entered I do not know what man.

Je ne sais s'il dit vrai; &c. I do not know whether he tells the truth; &c.

And here I cannot help inserting an extract from the *Synonymes* of the Abbé Girard, which will serve to point out the difference between *on ne peut*, and *on ne sauroit*; and which seems not entirely foreign to the subject of which we are treating:—"On ne sauroit paroît plus propre pour marquer l'impuissance où l'on est de faire une chose. On ne peut semble marquer plus précisément, & avec plus d'énergie l'impossibilité de la chose en elle-même. C'est par cette raison que la particule *pas*, qui fortifie la négation, ne se joint jamais avec la première de ces expressions; & qu'elle accompagne souvent l'autre avec grace:—Ce qu'on ne sauroit faire est trop difficile; Ce qu'on ne peut pas faire, est impossible." 7.

3dly. *Prendre garde* signifies either to take care, or to take notice, to mind, observe, consider; and it is in the first signification only that it requires but one negative before the next verb, for in the others it requires two: 9.

Prenez garde qu'on ne vous trompe; Take care that you are not cheated. 10.

Il prit garde qu'on ne le recevoit pas si bien que de coutume;

He took notice that he was not received so cordially as usual.

And it is worth while observing here, that in the first sense of *prendre garde* it governs the subjunctive, and in the latter the indicative.

The sentence following *peu s'en faut*, if negative, takes only *ne* with the subjunctive: 1.

Peu s'en faut, quelle que soit aujourd'hui la misère, que je ne me fassé un scrupule de prêter au denier cinq. Gil Blas.

How great soever the present calamity may be, I can hardly without a scruple lend at five per cent.

The French use the negative *ne* only after the impersonal *il y a*, followed by a compound of the present tense: 2.

Il y a dix ans que je ne l'ai vu;

I have not seen him these ten years.

But if any other tense comes after the impersonal, they use the two negatives: 3.

Il y a un mois que je ne lui parle point;

I have not spoken to him this month.

Il y avoit un an que je ne la voyois point;

I had not seen her for a year.

And when a question is asked with *que*, signifying *pourquoi*: 4.

Que ne faites-vous cela? Why don't you do that?

5. So also with the adverb *plus*, used absolutely:
Je ne veux plus le voir ; I will never see him more.
6. But when *plus* is used comparatively, that is to say, as a sign of comparison before an adjective, with or without *que*, two negatives are requisite:
Je ne le veux pas plus grand que l'autre ;
 I will not have it larger than the other.

NOTE.

- It may not be improper here to mark an occasion where three negatives are used, in certain sentences where *plus* occurs. When after a verb attended, as usual, with two negatives, we would mean to express *any more*, we do it by *non plus* ; but observe, that *any more* does not imply there *again*, but in the sense of *one thing or person more than another* : thus,

Les loix Romaines qui ne l'admettoient pas, non plus, périrent de même ; (MONTESQUIEU)

The Roman laws, which did not admit it *any more* (than some other laws mentioned before) perished in like manner.

Je n'irai pas en ville ; I will not go into the city.

Et moi, je n'y irai pas non plus ; (i. e. non plus que vous)

Nor will I go *any more* [than you].

8. Only one negative [*ne*] is used after *si* and *que*, in the sense of *unless* or *but* :—

Je ne saurois boire si je ne mange ;

I cannot drink *unless* I eat.

Je n'y irai pas qu'elle ne m'y invite ;

I will not go there *unless* she invite me.

Elle ne sauroit ouvrir la bouche, qu'elle ne dise quelque sottise ;

She cannot open her mouth *but* she says some foolish thing or other.

NOTE.

- 9a. It is indifferent in some few cases to use the two negatives with *si*, or only one ; but they must be discovered by practice ;—and in such instances I am of opinion that the ear must often decide. Thus we say,

S'il ne me fait ce plaisir-là, or, S'il ne me fait pas ce plaisir-là, je ne me mêlerai pas de ses affaires ;

If he do not do me that kindness, I will not meddle with his affairs any more.

S'il ne me paie cette somme, or, S'il ne me paie pas cette somme, je le ferai arrêter ;

If he do not pay me this week, I will arrest him.

9. *Ne*, followed in the same sentence by *que*, expresses, and is Englished by, *but*, or *nothing but*, or *only* :

Je ne ferai que ce qu'il vous plaira ;

I will do *only* what is agreeable to you.

Il ne fait que jouer ; He does nothing but play.

Je ne fais qu'un repas par jour ;
I make *but* one meal a day.

But likewise, in the middle of a sentence, is rendered into 10. French by *que* and *ne*, or the relative *qui* and *ne*, but without *pas* or *point*, and the second verb is subjunctive (conformably to our former rules : as,

Je ne doute point qu'il ne vienne ;
I do not doubt *but* he will come.

Y a-t-il quelqu'un qui ne le sache ?
Is there any one *but* knows it ?

C H A P. VII.

Of ADVERBS.

I. Of the Formation of ADVERBS.

GENERALLY speaking, one can make as many adverbs in French as there are adjectives, by adding the termination *ment* to the adjective ; but with this previous distinction, that with adjectives ending in *é* [acute], or in *i*, or *u*, it is to the masculine gender that *ment* is subjoined ; but to the feminine of those ending in *e* [mute], or in a consonant, it is added.

Adj. Masc.		Adv.
aisé	—	aisément,
hardi	—	hardiment,
absolu	—	absolument, &c.
Adj. Fem.		Adv.
sage	—	sagement,
doux, douce	—	doucement, &c.

NOTE.

Observe, that those adjectives ending in *é* [acute] retain it in the adverbial form, and that the adverbs formed from adjectives feminine which end we know in *e* [mute] ; have accordingly, *e* before *ment*, mute, EXCEPT these seven ; — *aveuglement*, from *aveugle* ; *commodément*, from *commode* ; *incommodément*, from *incommode* ; *conformément*, from *conforme* ; *énormément*, from *énorme* ; *uniformément*, from *uniforme* ; and *impunément*, which however comes from *impuni*.

Chambaud, whose ideas seem to have been remarkably deficient in point of arrangement, has considered the eight following adverbs as derived from adjectives ending in a consonant, and as having the *é* acute, which occurs between the termination *ment* and the

the original adjective, by virtue of a rule totally distinct from the exception made above:—*Expressément*, from *exprès*; *confusément*, from *confus*; *précisément*, from *précis*; *communément*, from *commun*; *importunément*, from *importun*; *obscurément*, from *obscur*; *profondément*, from *profond*; *profusément*, from *profus*: but the truth is, that these adverbs are derived from the *feminines* of those adjectives, and being thus derived, come under the above-mentioned exception of the *e* [mute] being changed into *i* [acute]; thus,

<i>M. exprès</i>	—	<i>F. expresse</i>	—	<i>expressément</i> ,
<i>confus</i>	—	<i>confuse</i>	—	<i>confusément</i> ,
<i>précis</i>	—	<i>précise</i>	—	<i>précisément</i> ,
<i>commun</i>	—	<i>commune</i>	—	<i>communément</i> ,
<i>importun</i>	—	<i>importune</i>	—	<i>importunément</i> ,
<i>obscur</i>	—	<i>obscur</i>	—	<i>obscurément</i> ,
<i>profond</i>	—	<i>profonde</i>	—	<i>profondément</i> ,
<i>profus</i>	—	<i>profuse</i>	—	<i>profusément</i> .

For the propriety of this correction I have only to appeal to any one who is tolerably conversant with the French language.

The five following adjectives, ending either in a consonant or the vowel *u*, when changed into adverbs, take, together with the termination *ment*, a circumflex accent over their last vowel, which is therefore somewhat lengthened in the pronunciation:

<i>éperdu</i>	—	<i>éperdument</i> ,
<i>gentil</i>	—	<i>gentiment</i> ,
<i>ingénu</i>	—	<i>ingénument</i> ,
<i>dû</i>	—	<i>dûment</i> ,
<i>assidu</i>	—	<i>assidument</i> .

NOTE.

Except *dûment*, which is circumflexed because its primitive participial adjective [*dû*] is so, and which therefore Charnaud might as well have omitted from the above list. All the other adverbs are formed from the feminine of their adjectives in *i* and *u*; and this we have a proof of in the superscription of the circumflex, which is there a mark of *disson*. The true state of the case is then as follows:

<i>M. éperdu,</i>	<i>F. éperdue</i>	—	<i>éperduement,</i>	} for which we use {	<i>éperdument.</i>
<i>gentil,</i>	<i>gentille</i>	—	<i>gentillement</i>		<i>gentiment.</i>
<i>ingénu,</i>	<i>ingénue</i>	—	<i>ingénument,</i>		<i>ingénument.</i>
<i>assidu,</i>	<i>assidue</i>	—	<i>assidument</i>		<i>assidument.</i>

I have here, I must confess, hazarded my own unsupported opinion, which must stand or fall as it is found to be right or wrong.

From adjectives ending in *ant* and *ent*, adverbs are formed, by changing the termination into *amment* and *emment* (pronounced alike). Thus, from *constant*, is formed *constamment*; from *évident*, *évidemment*; &c.

The following are of more irregular derivation: *Diablement*, from the noun *diable*; *comment*, from the conjunction *comme*; *incessamment*,

incessamment, from the verb *cesser*, with the preposition *in*, having a negative signification; *notamment*, from the verb *noter*; *nuitamment*, from the noun *nuit*; and *sciement*, from *savoir* (or rather from *scio*, the primitive of *savoir*).

NOTE.

These following adjectives are also used adverbially with some verbs:

<i>baut</i> ,	<i>parler baut</i> , to speak aloud.
<i>bas</i> ,	<i>parler bas</i> , to speak low.
<i>clair</i> ,	<i>voir clair</i> , to see clear; <i>plain</i> , to be clear-sighted.
<i>double</i> ,	<i>voir double</i> , to see double (not clearly or plainly).
<i>trouble</i> ,	<i>voir trouble</i> , to be dim-sighted.
<i>franc & net</i> ,	<i>dire franc & net</i> , to say or speak freely and plainly,
<i>juste</i> ,	<i>penfer, parler, chanter juste</i> , to think, speak, sing right.
<i>fort</i> ,	<i>frapper fort</i> , to strike hard
<i>dur</i> ,	<i>entendre dur</i> , to be hard, or dull of hearing.
<i>doux</i> ,	<i>filer doux</i> , to give fair words, to be submissive.
<i>sec</i> ,	<i>répondre sec</i> , to make a sharp, rough, dry answer.
<i>bon</i> ,	<i>sentir bon ou mauvais</i> , to have a good or bad smell.
<i>mauvais</i> ,	<i>trouver bon ou mauvais</i> , to like or dislike.
<i>ferme</i> ,	<i>tenir ferme</i> , to hold fast, hold out, persist.
	<i>faire ferme</i> , to stand one's ground, make a vigorous resistance.
<i>droit</i> ,	<i>marcher droit</i> , to walk straight, act rightly.
<i>frais</i> ,	<i>boire frais</i> , to drink cold.
<i>chaud</i> ,	<i>boire chaud</i> , to drink hot.
<i>gras</i> ,	<i>parler gras</i> , to lisp (speak as if one's tongue was fat).
<i>gros</i> ,	<i>écrire gros & menu</i> , to write a large or a small hand.
<i>menu</i> ,	
<i>cher</i> ,	<i>vendre cher</i> , to sell dear.
<i>vite</i> ,	<i>aller vite</i> , to go fast, with speed
<i>belle</i> ,	<i>l'échapper belle</i> , to have a narrow escape.
<i>fin</i> ,	<i>couper fin</i> , to cut small.

As likewise *nouveau* and *nouvelle*, *fraiche* (the feminine of *frais*, fresh), and even the noun *goutte*:

un nouvel arrivé,
une nouvelle arrivée, } one newly arrived, { for *nouvellement*.

Des herbes toutes fraîches cueillies; herbs fresh, or just gathered.

Ne voir, or *n'entendre goutte*; not to see, or hear at all.

Moreover observe, that there are certain adverbial methods of speaking, formed of adjectives and substantives, joined with particular prepositions, which it would be an almost endless task to enumerate, as there may be nearly as many of these as there are substantives and adjectives in the French language: *de sang rassis*, *de gaieté de cœur*, &c.

2. Of the Position of ADVERBS.

We know that the genuine use of adverbs is to qualify verbs; whence their name, implying their *belonging to verbs*: they are therefore

therefore always placed in a situation betokening that connection, as we shall see by the following rules :

1. When adverbs meet with a verb, they are commonly put immediately after it, if the tense is simple :
Elle parle beaucoup ; She speaks much.
2. And between the auxiliary and participle, if the tense is compound :
Je suis fort porté à le faire ;
 I am very much inclined to do it.
Il n'a pas encore appris sa leçon ;
 He has not learned his lesson yet.
3. Monosyllables [*bien, mal, mieux, pis, &c.*] may indifferently come either before or after an infinitive verb :
Bien chanter, or, chanter bien ; To sing well.
Se mieux porter, — se porter mieux ; To be better.
Se mal conduire, — se conduire mal ; To behave ill.
4. When adverbs serve as *qualifiers* of *adjectives*, they immediately precede them :
Il est bien fait ; He is well made.
Il est extrêmement heureux ; He is extremely happy.
5. The adverbs *jamais, toujours, souvent*, meeting with another adverb, are placed first :
Nous sommes souvent ensemble ;
 We are often together.
J'ai toujours mûrement considéré ;
 I have always considered maturely.
Je ne bois jamais trop ; I never drink too much.
6. Compound adverbs always come after verbs and adjectives :—
Il tomba à la renverse ; He fell backwards.
Un homme [qui est] à la mode ; A fashionable man.
Méchant de gaieté de cœur ; Wilfully wicked.
7. *Rien* and *tout*, meeting with a verb, are placed like adverbs with respect to the verb :
Il ne m'a rien dit ; He has told me nothing.
Je ne veux rien manger ; I will not eat any thing.
J'ai tout vu ; I have seen all.

3. Of the Application of ADVERBS as SUBSTANTIVES.

CERTAIN adverbs, through the licence of custom, have usurped the place of substantives, being, to all intents and purposes, governed, and governing, after the manner of those parts of speech. A simple detail of examples, without any further observations, will be sufficient here :

Le maître de céans ; The master of this place.

Les échos d'alentour ; The neighbouring echoes.

La partie de deça ; The part on this side.

Ma colère ne tient à guères, & ma tendresse tient à beaucoup ;
SEVIGNE'.

My anger is easily done away, and my tenderness is rooted.

Il y a prodigieusement de mal ; (VOLTAIRE)

It is extremely hard, or difficult.

Elle avoit médiocrement d'esprit ; (SULLY)

She had a moderate understanding.

The following, *dehors, dedans, dessus, dessous, devant, derrière, environ*, become true nouns in the most extensive sense of the word ; taking the article before them, being regularly declined, and admitting, some of them, of a plural termination : 9.

Les dehors d'une place ;

The outworks of a fortified town or place.

Cent dehors fardés ; (MOLIERE)

An hundred artfully-coloured appearances.

Cela tient au dedans de la boîte ;

That sticks to the inside of the box.

Le dedans souffre (VOLTAIRE) ; Domestic concerns are suffering.

Le dessus de quelque chose ; The upper part of any thing.

Gagner le dessus du vent ; To get to windward.

Le dessus de la tête ; The top of the head.

Avoir le dessus dans un combat ;

To get the better in an engagement.

Le dessous de quelque chose ; The lower part of any thing.

Voir le dessous des cartes ;

To be in the secret, To know an affair to the bottom.

Avoir du dessous ; To be worsted or overpowered.

Le devant est tout usé ; The fore part is quite worn out.

Prendre les devans ; To get the start, be beforehand.

Aller au devant de quelqu'un ; To go to meet any one.

Le derrière ; The hinder part.

Montrer le derrière ; To fail in one's promise.

Les environs d'une place ;

The adjacent places of a town, &c.

NOTE.

10. It is to be observed, with regard to the regimen of adverbs, that those of them which are derived from verbs or adjectives, govern nouns in the same cases with their primitives :

Différemment de ce que je vous montre ; Differently from what I show you.

Indépendamment des lois ;

Independently, or in a manner independent, of the law.

Relativement à l'acte du parlement ;

Relatively, or with relation, to the act of parliament.

Préférentiellement à toute autre chose ;

Preferably, or in preference to any thing else.

C H A P. VIII.

Of PREPOSITIONS.

PREPOSITIONS are words invented to *express the relation which things bear to one another.*

Our principal design in this Chapter is to consider particularly the force of all those French prepositions which are idiomatically used, with a construction and signification different from the English prepositions naturally corresponding to them.

A.

1. 1. *A* denotes, first (whether alone or joined to the article), *the end of the action of the verb, and the person or thing to which it tends* (which relation answers to the dative of the Latins, and has been heretofore qualified as such) :

Donner une chose à quelqu'un ; To give a thing to somebody.

A qui est ce livre ? Whose book is this ?

Il est à moi ; It is mine.

Parvenir à son but ; To obtain one's end.

2. Secondly,

2. Secondly, *à* denotes *the place where one is, and whither one goes* (provided it be a town, &c. and not a province, or country at large; see the chapter on the article):

Demeurer à Londres; To live *at* or *in* London.

Aller à la campagne; To go *into* the country:

Il demeure à vingt milles d'ici;

He lives [*at*] twenty miles from hence.

Détournez à droite; Turn *to* the right, or *on* the right.

C'est à deux doigts de terre;

It is *within* two inches from the ground.

3. Thirdly, *à* denotes *time, and succession of time and action*:

Se lever à six heures; To rise *at* six o'clock.

Arriver à tems; To arrive *in* time.

A demain; *Against* to-morrow.

A l'honneur, au revoir; *Till* our next meeting.

Parler à son tour; To speak *in* one's turn.

Se remettre peu à peu;

To recover *by degrees* (literally, little to little).

Arracher brin à brin;

To pluck out, slip *by* slip, or *piece by* piece.

4. Fourthly, *à* denotes *the part of the body which is affected by pain, or wounded*:

Avoir mal à l'épaule; To have a pain *in* one's shoulder.

Etre blessé à la cuisse; To be wounded *in* the thigh.

5. Fifthly, *à* denotes *the nature of the condition and conduct of people, as also their posture, gesture, and action*:

Etre à son aise; To be *at* one's ease.

Vivre à sa fantaisie; To live *after*, or *according to*, one's fancy.

Faire tout à sa tête; To do every thing *of* one's head.

S'habiller à la Française; To dress *after* the French fashion.

Aller à pié ou à cheval; To go *on* foot or *on* horseback.

Se mettre à genoux; To kneel.

Recevoir à bras ouverts; To receive *with* open arms.

6. Sixthly, *à* denotes *the quality, price, weight, and measure of things, and the aggregate number by which we compute*:

Des bas à trois fils;

Three-thread stockings, or *of* three threads.

De l'or à vingt carats; Gold *of* twenty carats.

Du drap à dix-huit chelins la verge ;
Cloth at 18s. per yard.

Vendre de la viande à la livre ; To sell meat by the pound.

Mesurer au compas ou au cordeau ;
To measure with or by the compass or line.

Ils se tuent à milliers ; They kill each other by thousands.

10. 7. Seventhly, *à* denotes *the matter, instruments, and tools used in working :*

Travailler à de la dentelle ; To work in lace.

Bâtir à chaux & à ciment ; To build with lime and mortar.

Peindre à l'huile ; To paint in oil.

Aller à voiles & à rames ; To go with sails and oars.

Elle travaille à l'aiguille ; She works at her needle.

11. 8. Eighthly, *à* denotes *the games one plays at :*

Jouer aux cartes ; To play at cards ; &c.

12. 9. Ninthly, *à* is used in *reckoning games :*

Deux à trois ; Two to three.

Quatre à quatre ; Four all.

Six à point ; Six love ; &c.

13. 10. Tenthly, *à* is used in a very idiomatical manner, in sentences like these :

Il faut voir à qui l'aura ; Let us see who will catch it.

C'est à qui l'attrapera ; He who catches it shall have it.

(See these sentences considered under the relative *qui*, page 194.)

14. 11. Eleventhly, *à*, between two nouns appellative, or
 15. between a noun and an infinitive verb, denotes *the manner, and form, and species of a thing signified by the noun first named ; as likewise the use for which it is designed :*

Un chandelier à bras ; A branched candlestick.

Un chapeau à grands bords ; A broad-brimmed hat.

Un clou à crochet ; A tenterhook.

Une boîte à mouche ; A patch box.

De l'huile à bruler ; Lamp-oil.

Une salle à manger ; A dining-room.

Un moulin à vent & à eau ; A wind and a water mill.

Une arme à feu ; A fire arm.

16. 12. Twelfthly, *à* is sometimes used before the noun *marking any*

any particular disorder, when it follows some other word expressive of a remedy for it :

On ne saigne point en ce pays aux rheumatismes ; (SEVIGNE')
People do not bleed in this country for the rheumatism.

13. Thirteenthly, *à*, between two nouns of number, signifies 17.
between, about, marking an uncertainty in the speaker, which is the number he particularly means of the two, or that it is a number lying between the two mentioned :

Un homme de quarante à cinquante ans ;

A man between forty and fifty years.

Il y a quatre à cinq lieues ;

It is about four or five leagues.

14. Fourteenthly, *à*, before an infinitive, most commonly 18.
denotes what is proper to be done, the merit or demerit of persons and things, their seeming capacity, aptitude, fitness, and disposition, state or condition, turn or duty :

Un avis à suivre ; An advice fit to be followed.

Des fruits bons à garder ; Fruits fit for keeping.

Une occasion à ne pas laisser échapper ;

An opportunity not to be lost.

Un homme à récompenser ou à pendre ;

A man who deserves to be rewarded or hanged.

C'est une affaire à le perdre ;

It is an affair that will ruin him.

Il est changé à n'être pas reconnoissable ; (SEVIGNE')

He is changed so as not to be known again.

La presse étoit à mourir ;

The crowd was enough to kill one.

Ce que vous m'en disiez l'autre jour, est à imprimer ; (SEVIGNE')

What you told me of it the other day, is fit to be printed.

Il est homme à s'en fâcher ;

He is one who will take it ill.

C'est à vous à jouer ; It is your turn to play ; &c.

15. Fifteenthly, *à*, coming before an infinitive, signifies 19.
sometimes wherewith ; and sometimes the verb may be resolved 20.
by the indicative with if, or by a gerund. 21.

Verser à boire ; To pour out to drink.

Il n'a pas à manger ; He has nothing to eat.

A en juger par les apparences ;

If we may judge by appearances.

A vivre comme il fait, il n'ira pas loin ;

If he lives at that rate, or, by living at that rate, he will not hold it out long.

NOTE.

220

Miscellaneous idiomatical Uses of *A*.

Etre à l'abri ; To be sheltered.

Se tenir à couvert ; To keep under cover.

Tenir à bonneur ; To hold for, reckon as, an honour.

Réputer à injure ; To deem it an injury.

Mettre aux arrêts ; To put under arrest,

A votre avis ; In your opinion.

A son compte ; By his account.

A ce qu'il me semble ; As far as, by what, I apprehend.

Parler à tort & à travers ; To speak at random.

Marcher à tâtons ; To go groping along in the dark.

Je suis ici à l'attendre depuis deux heures, il est encore à revenir ici ;

I have been here waiting for him these two hours, and he is still to return (i. e. he is not yet come back).

A cela près, nous voilà d'accord ; Excepting that, we agree.

Elle refuse tout à plat ; She flatly refuses.

Me voilà à pleurer ; There I fell a crying : &c. &c.

De.

De, whether alone or in composition*, denotes,

1. 1st, A relation of *union, separation, effect, cause, or dependence*, &c. or, in other words, is the sign of the genitive and ablative cases :

L'amour de Dieu ; The love of God.

Etre retranché de la société ; To be cut off from society.

Etre estimé de tout le monde ; To be esteemed by every body.

2. 2. Secondly, *De* denotes the *quality* of a person or thing, the *sort, species, and matter* of which a thing is made ; which is expressed by the first of the two nouns which are joined by *de* :

Un homme d'honneur ; A man of honour.

Un plat d'argent ; A silver plate.

Un pont de pierre ; A stone bridge.

* Chambaud, by *composition*, here signifies the union of *de* with the article, in *des* for *de les*, and *des* for *de les*,

3. Thirdly,

3. Thirdly, *De*, either preceding or blended with the article, 3.
denotes *the limited sense* of nouns :

De l'argent; Some money.

Du pain; Some bread.

J'ai affaire à des gens fort honnêtes;

I have to do with very honest people.

4. Fourthly, *De* denotes *the place from which one comes*, and 4.
the term from which one begins to act : 5.

Sortir de Londres; To go out of London.

Revenir de France; To return from France;

Tomber de haut; To fall from a high situation.

Mesurer d'un bout à l'autre;

To measure from one end to the other.

5. Fifthly, *De* denotes *the manner of acting or being*, the 6.
means or cause :

Faire de son mieux; To do [according to] one's best.

Danser de bonne grace;

To dance with a good grace, genteelly.

Couper de biais; To cut slopingly, with a slope or bias.

S'y prendre de la bonne façon;

To go to work (after) the right way.

Mourir de froid; To die with cold.

Vivre de fruits & de légumes;

To live upon (i. e. by means of) fruit and pulse.

Sauter de joie; To leap with, or for, joy.

Il se conduit de cette manière;

He behaves in or after that manner.

Vivre d'une belle vie; (J. B. ROUSSEAU)

To live [by] a glorious life.

Mourir de mort naturelle; To die [by] a natural death.

6. Sixthly, *De* is used before the noun of *the thing made use* 7.
of, and *the instrument upon which one plays* :

Se servir d'une épée; To make use of a sword.

Jouer de la flûte;

To play on the flute, i. e. with it; &c. &c.

7. Seventhly, *De* is used after many verbs attended by a 's,
noun :

Se moquer de quelqu'un; To mock one.

Jouir d'une chose ; To enjoy a thing.
Se repentir de sa faute ; To repent of one's fault.
Mêlez-vous de vos affaires ;
 Meddle with your own concerns.

9. 8. Eighthly, *De*, before a noun of time, signifies the time
 10. when, and sometimes the duration of the time specified :

Il partit de nuit ; He set out by night.
De jour, By day ; Du matin, In the morning ;
De grand matin ; Very early in the morning.
Elle partoît d'hier ; (SEVIGNE')
 She set out [from, or since] yesterday.
Du jour qu'elle y sera, il faut dire adieu à tous ses charmes ; (Ib.)
 From the day she goes there, she must bid adieu to her
 charms.

Vous partez d'aujourd'hui en huit jours ; (Ib.)
 You set out this day week ; literally, in a week from to-day.
Je ne l'ai point vu d'aujourd'hui ;
 I have not seen her [for] to-day.
Je ne le verrai de ma vie ;
 I will not see him for my life, as long as I live.

11. 9. Ninthly, *De* is used before nouns denoting dimension, and
 12. after nouns preceded by a numeral, and followed by a participle :

Il croit tous les jours d'un pouce ;
 He grows every day [by] an inch.
Il y a trente vaisseaux d'achevés ;
 There are thirty vessels finished.

13. 10. Tenthly, *De* is used after pronouns indeterminate, adverbs
 14. of quantity, and these words, *point, jamais, rien, quelque chose,*
 15. and *que*, of admiration or exclamation, followed by a substantive and adjective :

Personne de blessé ; Nobody wounded.
Y en avoit-il quelqu'un d'ivre ?
 Was any of them drunk ?
Assez de provisions ; Provisions enough.
Plus d'effets & moins de paroles ;
 More deeds and less words.
Point de sens commun ; No common sense.
Quelque chose de bon ; Something good,

Que de plaisir & de peine à la fois !
What pleasure and pain all at once !

11. Eleventhly, *De* is used before an infinitive, after adjectives signifying *fulness, emptiness, plenty, or want*; likewise after certain verbs, and almost all nouns, so they do not signify inclination, reluctance, aptness, fitness, or unfitness:

Indigne de vivre; Unworthy to live.

Il est capable de faire cela; He is capable of doing that.

Je m'abstiendrai d'y aller; I will refrain from going thither.

Il m'a détourné de faire cela;

He has deterred me from doing that.

Le désir d'apprendre; The desire to learn.

Il a le bonheur de plaire; He has the good luck to please.

12. Twelfthly, *De, des*, an inseparable preposition, gives the words composed of it a contrary signification to that which they have when simple:

Désaire, (to undo); désavantage, (disadvantage).

14. Thirteenthly, *De par* is a form of speaking, expressing from, in the name of:

De par le Roi; In the king's name.

NOTE.

Idiomatical Uses of *De*.

21.

Si j'étois de vous; si j'étois que de vous; If I was in your place.

J'y travaillerai de mon côté; I will exert myself about it on my part.

Il me fait l'honneur de me mettre de toutes ses parties de plaisir;

He does me the honour to take me upon all his parties of pleasure.

Je suis de toutes ses parties; I am upon all his parties.

Personne n'y est souverain de droit, mais seulement de fait; (MONTESQUIEU)

No one is sovereign there de jure, &c. i. e. possession, and not right, confers the crown there.

Cicéron ne nous dit point quelle étoit cette somme, mais Dion dit qu'elle étoit de cent mille sesterces; (1b.)

Cicero does not tell us what that sum was, but Dion tell us that it was a hundred thousand sesterces (une somme de 100,000 sesterces).

Il est de toutes les fêtes; He is at all public entertainments.

Fourberies qui sont assez de tous les tems, & de tous les lieux;

Tricks to be met with at all times, and in all places.

Elle seule est du secret; She alone is in the secret.

Etre de moitié; To go halves, to be for half.

Le travail les épuisant de force;

Labour exhausting them in point of strength (natura, secundum).

Changer d'habits; To change one's clothes, to change in clothes.

Passer de mode; To go out of fashion:

Désobéir son prince d'effet ou de parole ; (SULLY)

To disobey one's prince in word or deed.

Ce sont eux qui l'avilissent de cœur ; (ROUSSEAU)

It is they which debase him in heart.

De ce qu'un homme est plus adroit, ou plus fort qu'un autre, il ne s'ensuit pas qu'il ait de meilleures raisons ;

Because one man is more dexterous, or stronger than another, it does not follow that he has the better cause ; (because that, &c. literally, from this, that, &c.)

Son habit est comme de cire ;

His coat fits on him like wax, (i. e. comme (un habit) de cire).

De grace, n'en faites rien ;

Pity, for pity's sake, I beg as a favour you would not do it.

Vous êtes fort de son goût ; You are quite to her taste ;

Il vient de sortir ; He is just gone ; literally, he comes from going out.

Comme si de rien n'étoit (SEVIGNÉ) ; As if nothing was the matter.

De vous dire comment cela est arrivé, c'est ce que je ne sais pas ; (i. e. Ce que je ne sais pas dire, c'est de vous dire comment cela est arrivé) ;

To tell you how that has happened, is what I cannot do.

Les magistrats doivent rendre la justice de citoyen à citoyen, chaque peuple la doit rendre lui-même de lui à un autre ;

Magistrates ought to do justice between citizen and citizen, i. e. from citizen to citizen, all nations ought to do justice the one to the other.

Ces étrangers ne demandoient d'abord les productions du pays que de gré à gré (RAYNAL) ;

These strangers did not at first require the productions of the country, but on terms agreeable to both parties, from will to will.

La reine avoit fait de Mazarin le maître absolu de la France & le sien ; (VOLTAIRE)

The queen had made (of) Mazarin the absolute master of France and of herself.

Décider de quelque chose ; To decide upon any thing.

Discerner le bien d'avec le mal ; To discern good from evil.

- 22 (The force of the two prepositions *de* and *avec* is this : *avec* implies that the good and evil in question are previously brought together, for the purpose of comparison ; and the *de* shews that after such comparison a discrimination is made.)

Connu de nos jours ; Known in our days.

Dépendre d'autrui ; To depend of or on another.

Qu'est-ce que de nous ! What wretched creatures we are ! literally, What is it, namely, of or with us !

Que sera-ce donc d'un acte aussi compliqué que la navigation ! (Oeuvres de THOMAS)

What will then be the case of or with an act so complicated as navigation ! i. e. how complicated an operation then must navigation be !

Tout d'un coup je vis sortir du couchant un nuage noir & poétique où le soleil s'alla plonger, & en même tems un brouillard épais & moi de courir ; (SEVIGNÉ)*

All of a sudden, I saw a black and romantic cloud spring up where the sun had plunged himself, and at the same time a thick mist, and I fell to running.

Il est de bonne compagnie ; (ib.) He is very good company.

On porta le deuil de Cromwell à la cour de France ; (VOLTAIRE)

They wore mourning for Cromwell at the court of France.

* This phrase I cannot account for.

Avant.

Avant denotes priority of time, as also of order and rank, and 1.
is the contrary to *après*; it signifies in English *before*:

J'ai vu cela avant vous; I saw that before you.

Il faut mettre ce mot-ci avant l'autre;

This word must be put before the other.

Il arriva avant moi; He arrived before me.

Avant is also an adverb of place and time, commonly used 2.
with the adverbial particles, *si*, *bien*, *trop*, *plus*, *assez*, *fort*, and 3.
is englished by *far*, *deep*:

N'allez pas si avant; Do not go so far.

Creuser fort avant dans la terre;

To dig very deep into the ground.

Plus avant; Farther, deeper.

L'épée lui est entrée bien avant dans le corps;

The sword went very far into his body.

Bien avant dans la nuit; Very late at night.

Vous poussez les choses trop avant; You carry things too far.

La chose alla si avant que; The matter went so far that.

Jamais philosophe ne pénétra plus avant dans la connoissance de la nature;

Never did any philosopher make greater progress in the knowledge of nature.

Nous étions bien avant en mer;

We were got a great way to sea.

Gravez cela bien avant dans votre mémoire;

Engrave that deeply on your memory.

Il étoit bien avant dans les bonnes grâces du Roi; (SULLY)

He was much in favour with the king.

In the latter phrases we see *avant* used figuratively.

NOTE.

Avant que is a conjunction governing the subjunctive: 4.

Avant qu'il soit un an; Before a year be gone.

Avant que de is another conjunction, governing the infinitive: 5.

Parlez-lui avant que de le faire; Speak to him before you do it.

Avant sometimes assumes the character of a substantive, governed by the preposition *en*, and signifying place and time, with the idea of priority or advancement: 6.

Aller en avant; To go forward.

De ce jour-là en avant ; From that day forward.

Mettre en avant ; To advance, to assist.

Vous mettez en avant un principe fort dangereux ;

You advance, or assert, a very dangerous principle.

Après.

7. *Après* denotes *posteriority* both of *time*, *place*, and *order*, and
8. is used in opposition to *avant*, with respect to *time* ; and to
9. *devant*, with respect to *place* and *order* :

Après le déluge ; after the deluge.

Sa maison est après la vôtre ;

His house is after or next to yours.

Il marchoit après moi ; He walked after me.

10. *Après* is construed with the infinitive :

Il mourut après avoir diné ; He died after having dined.

Après diner [or, après le diner, making the infinitive a noun] ;
After dinner.

Après boire ; After drinking.

NOTE.

11.

Idiomatical Uses of *Après*.

Nous n'avons rien de plus cher après l'honneur ;

Next to our honour, nothing can be dearer to us.

C'est la plus laide bête après le loup ; [said of a very ugly person]

He or she is ugly enough to frighten a horse ; literally, is the ugliest beast next to a wolf.

Crier après quelqu'un ; To scold at one.

Tout le monde crie après lui ; Every body complains of him.

Il est toujours après moi ; He is always banging about me, dangling after me.

Etre après quelque chose ; To be about any thing.

Je suis après votre montre ; I am about your watch.

On est après ; It is doing.

Je vais me mettre après ; I will set about it presently.

Il y avoit long-tems qu'il courroit après cet emploi, qu'il étoit après ce bénéfice ; il l'a enfin obtenu :

He has a long time solicited this living, or that place ; at last he has got it.

Soupirer après quelque chose ; To sigh after a thing.

Se mettre après quelqu'un ; To fall upon one.

On a long-tems attendu après lui ; We have waited for him a long time.

On n'attend plus qu'après cela pour partir ;

That is the only thing which prevents our going away : literally, We wait only for after that [for that to take place] in order to set out.

N'attendre pas après une chose ; To be in a condition to live, and do, without a thing.

C'est un homme riche, &c. qui n'attend pas après cela ;

He is a rich man, and he can live without that.

Après

Après cela, après lui, *il faut tirer l'échelle* ;
That, or he, is *never to be outdone* [literally, *no one can mount higher, and therefore the ladder, after he has ascended, may as well be drawn up*].

Après quoi is an expression very commonly used as a *continuative* in narrations, and 12. signifies *afterwards* :

On signa la capitulation, après quoi la place se rendit ;
They signed the capitulation, and afterwards the place surrendered.

Après tout is also frequently employed in the conclusion of long sentences, at the 13. beginning of the last member, in order to sum up the argument :

Après tout il faut conclure, que cette chose-là demande beaucoup de soins & d'attention ;
After all we must conclude, that that thing demands much care and attention.

Ci-après is a compound word, used for *après-ci*, to signify *in the sequel* : 14.
Comme on verra ci-après ; As will be seen in the sequel.

D'après is a compound preposition, signifying *from, by, after, according to* : 15.

Ce portrait est fait d'après nature ; That picture is drawn after life.
Un tableau d'après Raphaël ; A picture copied from the original of Raphael.

Après is used as an adverb of time, if it is not rather that it is a preposition, whose 16. regimen is understood :

Commencez par déjeuner, & vous étudierez après [cela] ;
Begin with breakfasting, and after that you will study.

Après que is a conjunction governing the indicative : 17.

Après que vous aurez fait ; After you have done.
Après que les troupes furent parties ; When the troops were gone.

Devant.

Devant is used in opposition to *après* and *derrière*, and is frequently construed with *de, au, and par* : 1. 2.

Mettez cela devant le feu ; Put that *before* the fire.

Il demeure tout devant l'église ;
He lives just *over against* the church.

Otez-vous de devant moi, or, de devant mon jour ;

Get out of my fight, out of my light, [i. e. *from before* me, *from before* my light].

Ils passent par-devant chez nous ;

They pass *before* our door [literally, *by before, &c.*]

Un acte par-devant notaire ;

A deed drawn by a notary or lawyer.

NOTE.

Ci-devant is used for *devant-ci*, as *ci-après* for *après-ci* : 3.

Comme nous avons dit ci-devant ; As we said *before*.

Envoyer au-devant de quelqu'un ; *Aller au-devant de* ; *Venir au-devant de* ;
To send, go, come, to meet one.

Aller

Aller au-devant d'une chose; To obviate, prevent a thing.

Aller au-devant des desirs d'un ami; To anticipate the wishes of a friend.

In all which phrases it may be doubted whether *devant* be not a noun in the dative, with a genitive following.

4. *Devant* is also used adverbially in some phrases:

Sens devant derrière (i. e. *le sens [qui est] devant [mis] derrière*);

Preposterously, the wrong side, in a wrong situation; literally, the side before, behind.

Il met sa chemise sens devant derrière; He puts on his shirt the wrong way.

Passer devant; Go before.

Si vous êtes pressé, courez devant; (Prov.)

If you are in a hurry, set off, or forward, you may set off whenever you please.

Les premiers vont devant; (Prov.) The most diligent get the start of others.

Il est blessé par devant; He is wounded in the fore part of the body.

Le chapitre de devant; The chapter before.

Le train de devant d'une carrosse; The fore-wheels of a coach.

Les jambes de devant d'un cheval; The fore-legs of a horse.

5. *Devant* is also a noun, signifying the fore-part of a thing:

Un devant de chemise; The fore-flap of a shirt.

Un devant d'estomac; A stomacher.

Le devant d'une perruque; The fore-top of a perriwig.

Le devant d'une cuirasse; The breast-plate of a suit of body-armour.

Un devant d'autel; The antependium of an altar.

Prendre le devant; Gagner le devant, or les devans; To have, to get the start of one.

La cavalerie tenoit les devans; The cavalry marched first.

Prendre le devant, or les devans; (in a figurative sense)

To prevent, to be beforehand with one.

Bâtir sur le devant; (Prov.) To grow burly, or bulky, get a big belly.

6. *Devant*, as we have said before, is used in opposition to *après*:

Il marchoit devant moi; He was walking before me.

Avoir le pas devant quelqu'un;

To have the precedence of one.

7. *Devant* signifies also in the presence of:

Prêcher devant le roi; To preach before the king.

Quand il fut devant ses juges;

When he was before his judges.

Son ame est devant Dieu;

His soul is before God; i. e. he is dead.

Derrière.

1. *Derrière* denotes place, and is the opposite of *devant*:
Regardez derrière vous; Look behind you.

NOTE.

NOTE.

Derrière is also used adverbially, and frequently construed with *de* and *par*.

9.

Qu'importe que cela soit devant ou derrière ?

What does it signify whether it be before or behind?

Par derrière ; Behind.

Porte de derrière ; A back-door ; and figuratively, a shift, an evasion.

Mettre une chose sans devant derrière ; To put a thing preposterously.

Les jambes de derrière d'un cheval ; The hind legs of a horse.

Faire rages de pieds de derrière ; (Prov.) To work with might and main.

Derrière is also said of the posterior part of a thing or person :

10.

Etre logé sur le derrière ; To lodge backwards.

Il montre son derrière ; He shows his hinder parts.

Montrer le derrière ; (Prov.) To fail in one's promise.

Chez.

Chez denotes at, or to, the house of any one, it is construed with *de* and *par*, and the compound *par-devant* :

11.
12.

Il est chez moi ; He is at my house.

Je vais chez moi ; I am going home.

Je viens de chez Madame le Blanc ;

I am come from Mrs. White's.

J'ai passé par chez lui ; I have called at his house.

J'ai passé par-devant chez lui ; I have passed by his house.

Chacun est maître chez soi ; Every body is master at home.

Avoir un chez soi ; To have an house of one's own (where *chez soi* is used substantively).

Chez signifies also among, with :

124.

Il y avoit une coutume chez les Romains ;

There was a custom amongst the Romans.

Contre.

Contre denotes opposition, displeasure, &c.:

13.

Aller contre vent & marée ; To sail against wind and tide.

Se fâcher contre quelqu'un ; To be angry with one.

Se battre contre quelqu'un ; To fight with any one.

Contre denotes also proximity of situation :

14.

J'étois assis contre lui ; I sat by him.

La maison est contre la mienne ; His house is by mine.

Contre le bois ; Near the wood.

NOTE.

15.

NOTE.

Quand on fit cette proposition, tout le monde s'éleva contre ;
 When the proposition was made, every body expressed their dislike to it.
Pour moi, je suis contre ; For my part, I am against it.
Je ne suis ni pour, ni contre ; I am neither for, nor against it.

- 16.
- Contre*
- is made a noun of, and signifies
- opposition*
- :

On parle diversement de cette affaire ; il faut savoir le pour & le contre.
 They speak diversely of that affair ; one must know what is said *pro* and *con* ; we must hear both sides of the question.

La chose n'est pas sans difficulté ; The thing is not without difficulty.
Il y a du pour & du contre ; Much may be said on both sides.

Dans and *En*.

- 1.
- Dans*
- denotes a relation of time and place, and implies
- in*
- ,
- within*
- , &c.

Etre dans la boîte ; To be in the box.
Dans la maison ; In the house.
Dans la ville ; In the town.
Dans la même année ; In the same year.
Dans un mois ; Within a month.

2. (With verbs of motion it signifies
- into*
- :

Quand il entra dans la chambre ;
 When he went into the chamber.)

- 3.
- Dans*
- denotes the motive and view of one's actions :

Il fait sa cour dans le dessein de s'avancer ;
 He pays his court with a design to be preferred.

- 4.
- Dans*
- signifies also
- according to*
- :

Cela est vrai dans les principes d'Aristote ;
 That is true according to the principles of Aristotle.

5. Where
- in*
- occurs in English before the names of towns and authors,
- dans*
- is used, and not
- en*
- :

Il est dans Londres ; He is in London.
Nous lisons dans Cicéron ; We read in Cicero.
J'ai vu cela dans Ovide ; I have seen that in Ovid.

NOTE.

6. I cannot help suggesting here a very peculiar use of
- dans*
- , in sentences like this—
-
- He drinks out of the cup ; he took it out of an author ; he took her out of the convent—
-
- where
- out of*
- must be rendered by
- dans*
- :—
- Il boit dans le vase ; il le puisoit dans un*
-
- auteur ; il la prit dans le convent.*
- The truth is, the English mark the action of separation

ration and removal of the thing from its former situation; and the French, that situation itself :

Il boit (la liqueur qui est) dans le vase ; He drinks (the liquor which is) in the cup.

Il puise cette expression (qui est) dans tel auteur ;

He cites that expression (which is) in such an author.

Il la prit (elle qui étoit) dans le couvent ;

He took her (she who was) in the convent.

En denotes *place*, and *things considered as relating to place*, and 7.
very rarely admits of the article before its regimen, except when 7a.
it suffers an elision :

Etre en Angleterre ; To be in England.

Vivre en sa maison ; To live in one's own house.

En marks the country *whither one is going* :

8.

Aller en France ; To go to France.

Venir ou passer en Italie ; To come from or go over to Italy.

En denotes *time*, and *things considered as relating to time* :

9.

En tout tems ; At all times.

En plein jour, en hiver ; In open day-light, in winter.

Tant en paix qu'en guerre ; Both in peace and in war.

NOTE.

But in a sentence like the following, where a comparison is made between two 10.
portions of time, *dans*, and not *en*, is used :

Une année dans l'autre (RAYNAL) ; One year with another.

En before a noun of time denotes *the space of time which slides 11.*
away in doing any thing. ; and *dans*, the space of time *after which 12.*
some thing is to be done :

Le roi va à Hanover en trois jours ;

The king goes to Hanover in three days ; i. e. He is no longer than three days in going.

Le roi va à Hanover dans trois jours ;

The king goes to Hanover three days hence ; after three days are gone, he will set out.

En denotes the *state and disposition of persons and things* :

13.

Etre en vie ; To be alive.

Etre en bonne santé ; To be in good health.

Un enfant en nourrice ; A child at nurse.

Une femme en couche ; A woman lying-in.

Etre en bonheur ; To have good luck, to be lucky.

Etre en dévotion, en oraisons, en prières ;

To be at one's devotions or prayers.

14. *En* denotes the *dress one is in*, and the *manner of being or acting* :
Etre en robe de chambre, en bonnet de nuit, & en pantoufles ;
 To be in one's night-gown, night-cap, and slippers.
Vivre en roi ; To live like a king.
Se conduire en étourdi ; To behave like a harebrained person.
15. *En* implies (but less definitely than *dans*) the *motive and end of action* :
Il fit cela en haine de ce que, &c.
 He did that through hatred, &c.
En considération de ses services ;
 In consideration of his services.
En dépit de lui ; In spite of him.
16. *En* denotes the *passage from one place to another, the progress of things*, and the *change of condition with respect to persons and things* :
Courir de rue en rue ; To run from street to street.
Narcisse fut métamorphosé en fleur ;
 Narcissus was changed into a flower.
L'affaire va de mal en pis ;
 The affair grows worse and worse, *i. e.* goes from bad to worse.
De bien en mieux ; Better and better.
17. *Dans* and *en* must be repeated before each noun governed :
Il étoit en robe de chambre, en bonnet de nuit, & en pantoufles ;
 He was in a morning-gown, night-cap, and slippers.
On ne voit que des brochures dans sa salle, dans sa chambre, & dans son cabinet ;
 There is nothing but old books to be seen in his parlour, in his room, and in his study.

NOTE.

18. Though it is sometimes indifferent to use either of these two prepositions, yet that of the two which is used before the first, must continue the same before each noun, when the same narration or discourse is continued in one unbroken thread :
La gloire d'un souverain consiste bien moins en la grandeur de ses états, en la force de ses citadelles, & en la magnificence de ses palais, qu'en la multitude des peuples sur lesquels il règne ;
 The glory of a sovereign consists much less in the extent of his dominions, in the strength of his citadels, and in the stateliness of his palaces, than in the multitude of people over whom he reigns.

Il est fidelle dans ses promesses, inépuisable dans ses bienfaits, juste dans ses jugemens ;
 He is faithful in his promises, inexhaustible in his favours, just in his judgments.

But if the same thread of discourse is not kept up, and the same sense does not run through the sentence, both prepositions may be used, for the sake of variety :

Il passa un jour & une nuit entière en une si profonde méditation, qu'il se tint toujours dans une même posture ;

He passed a whole day and a night in so profound a meditation, that he always remained in the same posture.

¶ And here, as Chambaud has by no means sufficiently discriminated between the use and application of *dans* and *en*, I must beg leave to introduce a passage from Girard's *Synonimes*, which is quite satisfactory on the subject.—“ *Lorsqu'il s'agit du lieu, dans a un sens précis & défini, qui fait comprendre qu'une chose contient ou enferme une autre, & marque un rapport du dedans au dehors :—On est dans la chambre, dans la maison, dans la ville, dans le royaume, quand on n'en est pas sorti. En a un sens vague & indéfini, qui indique seulement en général où l'on est, & marque un rapport du lieu où l'on se trouve à un autre où l'on pourroit être :—On est en ville, lorsqu'on n'est pas à sa maison ; en campagne ou en province, quand on a quitté Paris : On met en prison, & l'on met dans les cachots. Lorsqu'il est question du tems, dans marque plus particulièrement celui où l'on exécute les choses ; & en marque plus proprement celui qu'on emploie à les exécuter :—La mort arrive dans le moment qu'on y pense le moins ; & l'on passe en un instant de ce monde à l'autre.* ”

“ *Lorsque ces mots sont employés pour indiquer l'état ou la qualification, dans est ordinairement d'usage pour le sens particularisé, & en pour le sens général : ainsi on dit, Vivre dans une entière liberté, être dans une fureur extrême, tomber dans une profonde lébargie. Mais on dit, Vivre en liberté, être en fureur, tomber en lébargie.* ”

En, when it is construed with a gerund, denotes either *time* or *manner*, and may be rendered by *when*, *whilst*, or *as*, with a tense of the indicative :

Parler en tremblant ; To speak trembling.

Il laissa ordre en partant ; He left orders as he went away.

Il l'aborda en riant ; He accosted her with a smile.

En passant ; *Whilst*, or *when* he was passing by.

C'est une chose dite en passant, (Id obiter dictum est) ;

It is a thing said by the way.

NOTE.

IDIOMATICAL USES of *dans* and *en*, either considered absolutely or relatively ; together with some cursory observations concerning the proper method of rendering the correspondent English prepositions, *in* and *into*, in certain cases.

Etre en butte à tout le monde ; To be exposed to the attacks of the world, to be for a butt (i. e. a mark to shoot at), to, &c. *En avant*, forward :—*Mettre en avant. En dedans*, within :—*Il est en dedans. Etre en train ;* To begin, to be at it, have one's hand in :—*Quand il est en train, rien ne lui coûte ;* When he is in the humour, he does every thing with ease. *En train de parler, de boire ;* In a drinking, talking *L'amour. Mettre en train ;* To set one on, set a going :—*Se mettre en train de— ;* to begin to—. *En tant que* is used conjunctively in the signification of considered as, literally, in so much as (being) :—*Jésus Christ en tant qu'homme ;* Jesus Christ considered as a man. It is also a law-expression, signifying as far as, as much as :—*En tant que je puis ;* As far as lies in my power : *En tant que besoin sera ;* As far as need will require.

29. We say both *en été* and *dans l'été*, in summer; *en hiver* and *dans l'hiver*, in winter;
 30. *en automne* and *dans l'automne*, in autumn: but we do not say, *en printemps*, but *dans le printemps*, or *au printemps*, for in the spring; because *printemps* is as it were *le premier tems*, before which *en* could not be used.

31. *In* and *into* cannot always be rendered by *dans* or *en*; in the following expressions *entre* corresponds to them:

To hold a child in one's arms; *Tenir un enfant entre ses bras.*

To deliver a thing into any one's hands;

32. *Remettre quelque chose entre les mains de quelqu'un* (where we might say, *remettre en main*).

To get it again from his hands; *Le retirer d'entre ses mains.*

If we consider the force of *dans* and *en*, and of *entre*, with any degree of critical exactitude, we shall see the propriety of this distinction.

INSTANCES where there is an *Ellipsis* of *dans* and *en*.

33. In some cases *dans* and *en* are not expressed, although understood, and the noun is used singly, or with an article:

Il se levait à quatre heures, été & hiver, (THOMAS) [for *en été, en hiver*];

He rose at four o'clock, summer and winter.

Les enfans chantent la nuit quand ils ont peur, (ROUSSEAU) [for *dans la nuit q. d. pendant la nuit*];

Children sing in the night-time when they are afraid.

Les ventes s'étoient élevées jusqu'à—ce qui faisoit, l'année commune, en paix & guerre, (RAYNAL) [for *dans l'année commune, en paix & en guerre*];

The sales were raised to—which in time of peace and war, on an average, amounted to—

On arrêta, la nuit suivante, les esclaves dans leurs loges, (Id.) [for *dans la nuit suivante*];

The following night they seized the slaves in their huts.

Nous partons demain matin pour être, Jeudi sept, à Paris, (SEVIGNE') [for *Jeudi en sept jours*];

We are to set out to-morrow morning, in order to be at Paris on Thursday week.

Depuis.

1. *Depuis* denotes both *time, place, and order, or enumeration of things*, and is commonly followed in the sentence by *jusqu'à*:
 10. in such case *depuis* denotes the term *from which*; and *jusqu'à*, *to which*:

Depuis ce tems-là; *From that time.*

Je ne l'ai pas vu depuis son retour;

I have not seen him *since* his return.

Je vous attendrai depuis cinq jusqu'à six;

I will wait for you *from* five *till* six.

Vous êtes venu depuis lui; You arrived *since* he did.

Depuis le commencement jusqu'à la fin;

From the beginning to the end.

Il m'a suivi depuis la Bourse jusqu'au Palais ;
 He has followed me from the Royal Exchange to the Palace.
Je les ai tous vus depuis le premier jusqu'au dernier ;
 I have seen them all, from the first to the last.

NOTE.

Observe the difference between *depuis* and *jusqu'à*, *de* and *à*, and *de* and *en* ; all which prepositions are respectively rendered by *from* and *to*. The comparison holds good only in speaking of *place*, to which subject therefore our observations are referable. When merely the distance between two places is described, *de* and *à* are used : 2.

On compte vingt milles de Windsor à Londres ;
 They reckon twenty miles from London to Windsor.

But when the quality of the distance is involved in the observation, *i. e.* its being great or small, we use *depuis* and *jusqu'à* : 3.

Il marcha depuis Windsor jusqu'à Londres ;
 He walked (*quite*) from Windsor to London.

De, and *en*, with the same noun repeated, denote succession of place : 4.
Il va de cabaret en cabaret ; He goes from alehouse to alehouse.

They are used figuratively also :

Le royaume avoit descendu jusqu'à lui de père en fils ; 5.
 The kingdom had descended to him in succession from father to son.

IDIOMATICAL PHRASES formed by *depuis*.

Depuis peu ; Lately, not long since. 6.

Depuis quand ? How long ? how long since ? since when ?

Depuis deux ans ; These two years.

Depuis long-tems ; This long time.

Jusque or *Jusques*.

Jusque denotes *place* and *time* to a degree which cannot be exceeded, or *which*, in the mind of the speaker, is *very great* ; and requires besides the preposition *à*, if no other preposition intervene, before a noun and verb. It is indifferent to spell it with or without an *s* at the end ; but when it is construed with a vowel, it loses its final *s*, and *e* is cut off : 7. 8. 9.

Depuis Paris jusqu'à Londres ; From Paris to London.

Depuis la St. Jean jusqu'à Noël ;
 From Midsummer till Christmas.

Il alla jusqu'au Grand Caire ;
 He went as far as Grand Cairo.

Le vice règne jusques sur le trône ;
 Vice reigns even on the throne.

Jusqu'à présent ; Till now.

Jusqu'où ? To what place ? how far ?

Jusqu'ici ; To this place, hither, so far.

Jusques-là ; To that place, thither, so far.

Ils en vinrent jusques-là qu'on crut qu'ils s'alloient battre ;

They went so far, or to such extremities, that people thought they were going to fight.

Jusqu'à quand ? How long ?

NOTE.

10.

PHRASES wherein *jusqu'à* occurs.

Crier jusqu'à s'enrouer ; To bawl one's self hoarse.

Brûler du vin jusqu'au déchet de deux tiers ;

To burn away wine two thirds (literally, to the loss, waste, or diminution of two thirds) ;

Jusqu'au revoir (a phrase at parting) ; Till we meet again.

Ami jusqu'aux autels ; A friend as far as conscience permits.

Brave jusqu'au dégain (said of a bully) ;

Courageous till he comes to the point, till he is to draw.

11. *Jusqu'à*, *jusqu'aux*, occur, in certain elliptical sentences, expressive of *extremes* and *excess* :

Il aime jusqu'à ses ennemis ; He loves even his enemies ;

i. e. *il aime tous les hommes depuis ses amis jusqu'à ses ennemis.*

Jusqu'aux plus abjets des hommes se donnoient la licence de— ;

i. e. *tous les hommes jusqu'aux plus abjets des hommes, &c.*

Even the most abject of men took the liberty to—.

NOTE.

Jusqu'à and *jusqu'aux* are sometimes used in this sense, with the force of the dative case, i. e. as the *end*, and not the *object* or *subject* of the verb (the sentence being still elliptical, with this difference however, that the sentence is defective in a

12. *dative*, not an *accusative* or *nominative noun*) ; but with such verbs only as require nothing

13. but the dative case after them, or have both a dative and accusative together : thus we say,—*Il vise jusqu'à la couronne* (in the sense of, *il vise à la couronne même*). He aims even at the crown—because *viser* governs the dative only ; and, *Il étendit sa libéralité jusqu'aux valets* (in the sense of, *aux valets mêmes*). He extended his generosity even to the servants—because *étendre* has both an accusative and dative after it : but we cannot say,—*Il donna jusqu'aux valets*, to express that he gives presents even to his servants ; because it would rather, and really does imply, that he gave away every thing he had, and even his very servants ; the sentence being elliptical for—*Il donna (tout) jusqu'aux valets (à ceux qui lui) demandoient des faveurs*, or something like it.

As to the ellipsis occurring in such sentences as have *jusqu'à*, *jusqu'aux*, as prefixes of a dative case, they are to be supplied thus :—*Il vise (aux plus grandes choses) jusqu'à la couronne ; Il étendit sa libéralité (à tous les hommes) jusqu'aux valets.*

14. *Jusque* serves to form a compound conjunction (*jusqu'à ce que*) governing the subjunctive :

Jusqu'à ce qu'il vienne ; Till he come.

Hors

Hors, hormis, excepté, à la réserve.

Hors denotes *exclusion* and *exception*: when it comes before a ^{1.} noun of time and place, it requires the preposition *de* before ^{2.} the noun; as also before an infinitive; and, joined with *que*, ^{3.} it forms a compound conjunction, governing the indicative:

Vous les verrez quand ils seront hors de table;

You will see them when they are risen from table.

Hors du royaume; Out of the kingdom.

Hors de saison; Out of season.

Hors d'œuvres;

Kickshaws, dainty dishes, an outwork in fortification.

Il ne pouvoit faire pis, hors de se pendre;

He could not do worse, *except* hang himself.

Il lui a fait toutes sortes de mauvais traitemens hors qu'il ne l'a pas battu;

He has used him as ill as he could, *except that* he has not beaten him.

Hors cela, nous sommes d'accord;

Excepting in that point, we agree.

Hormis and *excepté* denote also *exclusion* and *exception*, but they ^{4.} govern the noun immediately, without *de*, although they re- ^{5.} quire it before the infinitive; they also govern the indicative ^{6.} with *que*:

Ils sortirent tous, hormis or excepté deux ou trois;

They all went out, *but or except* two or three.

Il lui permet tout, excepté d'aller aux assemblées:

He indulges her or him in every thing but in going to assemblies.

Je me porte assez bien, excepté que mon bras est toujours enflé, or, hormis or excepté mon bras qui, &c.

I am pretty well, *except that* my arm is still swelled.

À la réserve is used in the same sense, but is attended with *de* ^{7.} before the next noun as well as the infinitive:

Il a donné tout son bien à ses enfans, à la réserve de ses rentes viagères;

He has given all his substance to his children, *except his annuities for life.*

Il a tout pouvoir, à la réserve de conclure;

He has full powers, *except of concluding.*

Loin.

8. *Loin* implies *distance*, and requires the preposition *de* before the
9. next noun or infinitive; or *que* before the subjunctive, which it governs:

Loin du chemin, de la rue, de chez moi;

Far from the road, from the street, from home:

Loin d'ici; Fâr from hence.

Loin de secourir ses alliés, il se déclare contre eux;

Far from assisting his allies, he declares himself against them.

Loin qu'il soit disposé à vous faire satisfaction, il est homme à vous quereller;

Far from being disposed to give you satisfaction, it is likely he will pick a quarrel with you.

Bien loin que cela soit ainsi; It is so far from being so.

Malgré, en dépit.

10. *Malgré* and *en dépit* imply *resistance* and *opposition*, and govern,
11. *malgré* the noun without *de*, and *en dépit* with it; they also
12. form with *que*, a conjunction governing the subjunctive:

Il l'a fait malgré moi; He did it in spite of me.

En dépit de lui, & de tout le monde;

In spite of him, and of all the world.

Il le fera malgré qu'il en ait, or, en dépit qu'il en ait;

He shall do it in spite of his teeth.

Malgré, bon gré, je l'aurai; Will he, will he, I shall have it.

Par.

1. 1st. *Par* denotes the *cause*, *motive*, *means*, *instrument* and *manner*, answering very aptly to the Latin *per*, from which it is derived:

Par ordre du Roi; By the king's order.

Je lui ai fait dire par un tel; I have sent him word by such a one.

Il l'a obtenu par mon moyen;

He obtained it through my means.

Vous n'en parlez que par envie;

You speak of it only out of, from a motive of, envy.

Je l'ai fait par cette raison; I did it for that reason.

Il entra par la porte, mais il sortit par la fenêtre;

*He came in at the door, but went out at the window,
i. e. by means of the door and window,*

Je le lui ferai tenir par la première occasion ;
I will send it to him by the first opportunity.

Je compris par-là ; I understood thereby.

2dly. *Par* denotes *place*, and is construed with several prepositions and adverbs of place :

Cela se fait par tout pays ; That is done in all countries.

Par tout le royaume ; All over the kingdom.

Par tout où ; Wheresoever.

Par où ? Which way ?

Par ici ; This way.

Par là ; That way.

Par deçà ; This side, on this side.

Par delà ; On that side, on the other side.

Par dedans ; Within.

Par dehors ; Without.

Par après ; By.

Par devers ; By, in his possession. [*Il a les papiers par devers lui ;* He has the papers by him, in his possession.]

Par dessus ; Upon, over, above, over and above.

Par dessous ; Under, underneath.

Par derrière ; Behind.

Par à côté ; By.

Par le haut ; Towards the top, upwards.

Par le bas, par en bas ; downwards.

Par le haut par en bas, par haut & par bas ;

Upwards and downwards.

Par le passé ; Formerly, in times past (q. d. *par le (tems) passé*).

Par-ci par-là ;

Here and there, now and then, at several times.

Par ainsi ; Therefore.

3dly. *Par* denotes *motion* and *passing through* :

Il a passé par Paris ; He went through Paris.

Se promener par les rues ; To walk about the streets.

Jeter par la fenêtre ; To throw out of the window.

So in a figurative sense, which is referable to this division of 3^a. the use of *par*, we say,

Passer par l'examen ;

To submit to, go through the examination.

Il en faut passer par-là : Il faut passer par là, ou par la fenêtre ;
(Prov.)

These things must be submitted to, or worse may happen.

4thly.

- 4thly. *Par* is construed with the infinitive after verbs signifying *beginning* or *ending* :
Il commença par se plaindre, & finit par demander de l'argent ;
 He began *with* complaining, and concluded *with* asking money.
- 5thly. *Par* sometimes precedes nouns denoting the *accidents* of the weather :
Où allez-vous par cette pluie-là ?
 Where are you going *in* all this rain ?
Nous partîmes par un beau tems ; We set out *in* fair weather.
- 6thly. *Par*, construed with nouns without the article, denotes *distribution* and *division* :
Distribuer par chapitres ; To divide into chapters.
Aller par bandes ; To go *in* companies.
Donner tant par tête ;
 To give so much *per* head, *for* each, &c.
Cent pièces par an ; An hundred pounds *per annum*, yearly.
Une guinée par soldat ; A guinea *to* each soldier.

Pour.

- 1st. *Pour* denotes the *end* or *final cause*, *motive*, and *reason* of *action*, and the *use* for which a thing is designed :
Cela est pour vous, & ceci est pour moi ;
 That is *for* you, and this is *for* me.
J'ai tant eu pour ma part : I have had so much for my share.
Pour l'amour de vous ; *For* your sake.
Il fera cela pour vous ;
 He will do that *upon* your account, *for* your sake.
- 2dly. *Pour* denotes the *suitableness* or *unsuitableness* of a thing to some other thing with which it is compared :
Cet enfant est bien avancé pour son âge, or pour le tems qu'il a appris ;
 That child is very forward *for* or *considering* his age, or the little time he has been learning.
- A comparison is made between the age of the boy, or the time of his learning, and his improvements, which are found to be *more than suitable* to those circumstances, to *exceed* them.

3dly.

3dly. *Pour* is construed with the infinitive (and not *de* or *à*) 3:
after *trop*, *assez*, *suffisant*, and *suffire*; and whenever we express 4:
the design, cause, and reason of doing any thing:

Il est trop sensé pour faire cela :

He has too much sense to do that.

Le mérite ne suffit pas pour réussir ;

Merit is not enough to thrive.

Il l'a fait pour me faire de la peine ;

He did it to make me uneasy.

Il a été pendu pour avoir volé sur le grand chemin ;

He was hanged for robbing on the highway.

4thly. *Pour* before an infinitive, followed by *moins* and a 5:
negative in the latter part of the sentence, or by *ne laisser pas de*, 5a:
or *ne laisser pas que de*, is very well rendered by *although*; and
moins with the negative, or *ne laisser pas de*, *ne laisser que de*, sig-
nifies, and may be rendered by *nevertheless* or *yet*:

Pour avoir de la religion, elle n'en est pas moins femme ;

Although she is religious, yet she is still a woman.

Pour n'avoir point de bien, elle ne laisse pas d'être extrêmement fière ;

Although she has no fortune, she is nevertheless, for all that, very proud.

5thly. *Pour*, between two nouns without the article, or be- 6.
tween two infinitives, without any other preposition attending 7.
them, denotes two alternatives offered, of which one must be
chosen; and which, though similar in their nature, are yet dif-
ferent in their circumstances:

Chambre pour chambre, j'aimer mieux celle-ci que l'autre ;

Since I must have one of these two chambers, I like this better than the other.

Mourir pour mourir, il vaut mieux mourir en combattant qu'en fuyant ;

Since a man may die one way or the other (i. e. either fighting or running away), it is better to die fighting than running away.

6thly. *Pour* followed by *que* forms a conjunction governing 8.
the subjunctive, and used after *assez* and *trop*:

Je ne suis pas assez heureux pour que cela m'arrive, &c.

I am not lucky enough for that to happen to me.

NOTE.

9. *Pour peu que* is another conjunction governing the subjunctive :
Pour peu que vous en preniez soin ; If you take never so little care of it.
Pour peu qu'ils soient jolis ; If they are at all pretty.
10. The following are phrases wherein *pour* occurs :
Pour toujours, pour jamais ; For ever.
Pour le moins ; At the least.
Pour lors ; Then, at that time.
Pour cet effet ; Therefore.
Je compte son témoignage pour dix autres ; I reckon his testimony as good as ten others.
Je le tiens pour mon ami ; I consider him as my friend.
Je n'en dis pas davantage, & pour cause ;
I say no more, and good reason why, for reasons.
Ne laissons pas, pour cela, de nous divertir ;
Let us, nevertheless, for all that, divert ourselves.
- 10a. *Pour ainsi dire ; As one may say, if one may be allowed to use the expression.*
Il a beaucoup d'esprit ; mais pour du jugement, il n'en a point ;
He has much wit ; but as for judgment, he has none.
Pour moi, je crois que ; As for me, for my part, I believe that : Pour ce qui est de moi ; id.
11. Observe that *for*, in English, before a noun of time, is not rendered by *pour*,
 12. but by *pendant* before, or *durant* after the French noun of time :
He has drunk the water for six weeks ;
Il a pris les eaux pendant trois semaines, or, six semaines durant.

Près.

1. 1. *Près* denotes *proximity of place*, and is always attended by
 1a. *de*, except in some few cases of common discourse :
S'asseoir près de quelqu'un ; To sit by or near one.
Il demeure près du palais ; He lives near the palace.
Il demeure ici-près, for près d'ici ;
He lives hard by, very near this place.
2. *Près* is usually construed with *trop, si, assez, plus, bien*, when
 the idea of comparison or intention is joined to it.
 (N. B. They are never construed with *auprès*.)
3. 2. *Près* denotes also *proximity of time*, and in such sense is
 3a. construed with the infinitive :
Il est bien près de midi ; It is very near twelve.
Cela n'est pas près d'être fait ; That is not near being done.
Elle est près d'accoucher ; She is near her time.
Il a été près de trois heures à diner ;
He has been almost, near, three hours at dinner.

Son armée est de près de cinquante mille hommes ;
His army is almost fifty thousand strong.

Près is also used in the sense of *save, excepting* ; but it always comes after its regimen, which is besides preceded by the preposition *à*, and *de* is omitted after *près* :

C'est un galant homme, à son humeur près ;
He is a clever man, *save* in his temper.

J'ai été payé, à cent louis près ;
I have been paid all, to an hundred louis d'ors, or *excepting* that sum.

A cent louis près, nous sommes d'accord ;
There is but the difference of a hundred louis-d'ors between us.

A cela près, à telle chose près ;
Save that, that being excepted.

Ne laissez pas de conclure votre marché, à cela près ;
Strike up a bargain for all that, or notwithstanding that.

Au Latin près, je devins un garçon universel ;
Put Latin out of the question, I became a young man of an universal knowledge. (Gil Blas)

Il n'est pas à cent guinées près, Il n'en est pas à cela près ;
He can afford to lose, give, or throw away an hundred guineas, that amount, as much as that ; (*i. e.* he is so rich, that upon occasion of spending money, he has no need to say, *Je puis dépenser de l'argent, à cent guinées près ;* I can spend money to the amount of nearly a hundred guineas.)

A peu près ; Pretty near, nearly, within a trifle, save a little.
Il reconnoît une divinité, mais à peu près de la trempe des dieux d'Epicure ;

He believes in a god, but it is in one of much the same kind with the god of Epicurus.

NOTE.

Près, de près, are adverbs signifying *near, hard by, close* :

Plus près ; Nearer.

Près à près ; Close, close together, quite near each other.

Plus près à près ; Still closer one to another.

Voir l'ennemi de près ; To see the enemy near at hand (literally, from an adjacent situation occupied by the spectator).

La véritable amitié n'y regarde pas de si près ; Real friendship is not so strict.

Il regarde de trop près aux choses ; He looks too narrowly into things.

Si l'on examine de près leur religion ; If we examine narrowly into their religion.

Suivre de près ; To follow close.

Observer

Observer de près ; To observe at close view.

Tenir un homme de près : Le presser de près, se prendre de près ; To press him hard.

Cela me touche de près ; I am nearly concerned in it.

Il me touche de près ; He is my near relation.

Il n'en veut entendre parler ni de près ni de loin, ni près ni loin ;

He will not hear of it at all, upon any terms.

Auprès.

6. 1. *Auprès* denotes also *proximity of place*, and is construed with *de* :

Sa maison est auprès de la mienne ;

His house is next to mine.

7. 2. *Auprès* implies a *relation of domestic, servile*, or at least *dependent attachment* :

Etre auprès d'un seigneur ;

To be about a nobleman's person.

L'ambassadeur de sa Majesté Britannique auprès du Roi Très-Christien ;

The ambassador of his Britannic Majesty to the Most Christian King.

Il me demanda pour être auprès de son fils unique, qui avoit à-peu-près mon âge ;

He asked me as a companion [of a subordinate condition] for his only son, who was about my age.

NOTE.

8. *Etre bien auprès de quelqu'un ; To be well with any one, to be in favour with him.*
N'être pas bien auprès de quelqu'un ; To be in disgrace with any one.
Pouvoir beaucoup auprès de quelqu'un, Avoir du pouvoir auprès de quelqu'un ;
To have some influence over, or with any one.
Elle peut tout auprès de lui ; She can do any thing with him.

9. 3. *Auprès* denotes, besides, a *relation of comparison* :

La terre n'est rien auprès du reste de l'univers ;

The earth is nothing in comparison with the rest of the universe.

NOTE.

20. *Auprès* is also an adverb of place, of the same signification as the preposition :
Je ne puis voir cela, si je ne suis auprès, or tout auprès ;
I cannot see that, unless I am near it.
Par auprès ; By, near, a little on the side (of any place) ;
Il n'est pas besoin d'entrer dans la ville, il ne faut que passer par auprès ;
We have no occasion to enter the city, we need only pass by it.

Proche.

Proche.

Proche denotes also *proximity of place*, and is generally accompanied by *de* : 11.

Proche de la ville ; *Near the city.*

Il demeure ici-proche (*for proche d'ici*) ; *He lives hard by.* 11a.

Vis-à-vis, à l'opposite.

Vis-à-vis, and *à l'opposite*, two compound prepositions, are both attended by *de*, for the most part, and signify *over against*. *Vis-à-vis* is said both of persons and things ; *à l'opposite* is said of things and places, but not of persons : 12. 13.

Je me plaçai vis-à-vis de lui ; *I sat opposite to him.*

Il est vis-à-vis ; *He is over the way :*

where the regimen of *vis-à-vis* [*d'ici*, or something of that kind] is understood : 13a.

A l'opposite de sa maison est une colline ;

Over against his house is a hill.

NOTE.

The preposition *de* is sometimes left out, in common conversation, after *près*, *proche*, and *vis-à-vis* :

Près l'église St. Paul ; *Near St. Paul's church.*

Proche le pont de Londres ; *Near London-bridge.*

À côté [de].

A côté [de] serves also to form another compound preposition, implying *proximity of place* : 15.

d'asseoir à côté de quelqu'un ; *To sit by one.*

Passer à côté du village ; *To pass by [the side of] the village.*

Sans.

Sans denotes *exclusion* and *privation*, and consequently has a negative meaning implied in its-signification. It is sometimes construed with the infinitive, and, with the conjunction *que*, forms a compound conjunction governing the subjunctive mood : 1. 2. 3.

Sana

Sans argent; *Without money, moneyless.*

Sans amis; *Friendless.*

Un homme sans moral; *An immoral man.*

Sans parler; *Without speaking.*

Sans y penser; *Without thinking of it, unwittingly, unawares.*

Sans que j'y aille; *Without my going there; &c.*

NOTE.

4. When a second verb or noun is joined to the verb or noun governed by *sans*, and the word connecting the two English verbs or nouns is *or*, the connecting French word must be *ni*, instead of *sans* repeated, and preceded by the conjunction *et*:

La finance étoit alors sans fond ni rive (SULLY), instead of *sans fond, & sans rive*;
The finance was at that time like a bottomless and boundless ocean.

Il s'en retourna sans boire ni manger; (Id.)

He returned from that place without eating or drinking.

This subject has already been discussed in a note on the Chapter upon Negatives.

Selon, suivant.

5. *Selon* and *suivant* imply *according to, agreeably, conformably, pursuant to*, and govern the noun immediately, without any
 6. other preposition intervening. They form, with *que*, two compound conjunctions governing the indicative:

On l'a traité selon son mérite;

He has been treated according to his merit.

Selon moi; *In my judgment, or opinion.*

C'est selon [q. d. *selon les occurrences, selon les dispositions des choses*];

That is as it happens; May be so, may be not; That is as it may be.

Les hommes n'ont point changés selon leurs cœurs; (LA BRUYERE)

Men are not changed in respect to their hearts, with regard to—

Je me conduirai en tout suivant vos avis;

I shall conduct myself in every thing according to, conformably to, your advice.

Il sera payé selon qu'il travaillera;

He shall be paid according as he works; &c.

Sur.

7. 1. *Sur* denotes *upon, on, over*, both in the proper and figurative sense:

Sur la table; *Upon the table.*

Sur

Sur la rivière ; Upon the river.

Sur un vaisseau ; On board a ship.

Se reposer sur quelqu'un ; To rely upon one.

Il se déchargea sur son frère du soin de le vaincre ; (RAYNAL, Hist. Philosoph. & Politique, V. iii.)

He transferred the business of conquering him to his brother ;
q. d. unburthened himself of the care of conquering him [by laying it] *on* his brother.

2. *Sur* denotes *time*, as a particular one to which we approach, 8. either expressed or understood :

Je partirai sur les trois heures ;

I shall set out *at, about, or by*, three.

Sur le soir ; Towards the evening.

Sur la brune ; In the dusk of the evening.

Il est sur [le tems de] son départ ;

He is *upon the eve of* his departure.

Un boulet de canon qui étoit sur sa fin ; (THOMAS)

A cannon ball which was nearly spent.

3. *Sur* is made use of in sentences describing *admeasurement* 9. of *space*, when a comparison is made between the length and the breadth :

De deux lieues de long sur une, dans sa plus grande largeur ;
 (RAYNAL, &c.)

Two leagues in length *by* one, at its broadest part.

4. *Sur* denotes *superiority of power or excellence* :

Un prince qui règne sur plusieurs nations ;

A prince who reigns over many nations.

Les Anglois ont de grands avantages sur les autres nations ;

The English have great advantages over other nations.

NOTE.

Various Uses of *Sur*.

Sur la fin de la semaine ; Against the end of the week.

Je me réglerai sur son exemple ; I will regulate myself by his example.

Il s'excusa sur son âge ; He excused himself on account of his age.

Nous en étions sur un tel propos ; We were upon such a topic.

Il partit avec précipitation sur l'avis qu'on lui donna ;

He set out in great precipitation *upon* the tidings that were related to him.

Nous le raillâmes beaucoup sur ce chapitre ;

We rallied him a good deal *about, on*, that subject.

Je ne suis pas tout-à-fait de votre sentiment sur la prétendue frugalité dont vous voulez me faire fête ;

I am not altogether of your opinion, with regard to the pretended frugality you so much praise.

Délibérer sur une proposition ; To deliberate upon a proposal.

Juger de quelqu'un sur sa mine ; To judge of any one by his looks.

Il ne porte jamais, or, il n'a jamais de l'argent sur soi ;

He never carries, or has any money about him.

Avoir quelque chose sur le cœur ; To have any thing upon one's mind.

Se tenir sur la défensive ; To stand upon the defensive.

Marcher sur les traces de ses ancêtres ; To tread in the footsteps of his ancestors.

Le prendre sur le haut ton, or, sur un ton bien haut ;

To assume a haughty strain, to be on the high ropes, to behave arrogantly.

Mettre la main sur quelqu'un, or, sur quelque chose ;

To lay hold of any person or thing.

Mettre la main sur quelqu'un ; To strike a man, to lay hands upon him, to beat him.

Mettre une question sur le tapis ; To bring a subject upon the carpet.

Prendre l'événement d'une chose sur soi ; To answer for, take upon one's self, &c.

Tournez sur la droite, or, sur la gauche ; Turn to or on the right, &c.

Je vous l'accorde sur votre bonne mine ;

I grant it, on account of, for, in favour of your good looks, because I like your looks.

Sur cela, ils se battirent ; Thereupon they fought.

Ayez sur cela l'esprit en repos ; Be quiet upon that score.

Il sont en différend sur un seul point ; They differ only in one particular.

Sur vingt écus, il y en avoit dix de faux ;

Of twenty crowns, there were ten bad or counterfeit.

Nous avons pris force butin sur les ennemis ; We made large booty from the enemy.

Il a été pris sur le fait ; He has been taken in the fact.

Sur tout ; Above all things, especially.

Sur peine de la vie ; On pain of death.

Sur le champ ; Immediately, on the spot.

Sur ces entrefaites ; During these transactions ;

Sur ce qu'il apprit que — ; Upon hearing that —.

Chambaud calls *sur ce que* a conjunction governing the indicative : let those who are acquainted with the French language, and consequently with the use of *ce que* governed by a preposition, judge for themselves on the propriety of his observation.

Au-dessus, au-dessous.

1. *Au-dessus* and *au-dessous* are two compound prepositions, denoting superiority and inferiority of age, place, rank, and other physical and moral circumstances, which require *de* before their regimen :

Loger au-dessus, or au-dessous, de quelqu'un ;

To lodge above, or below, one.

On enrôle tous les gens au-dessus de quatorze ans, & au-dessous de cinquante ;

They enlist every body above fourteen years of age, and under fifty.

Il fait un peu trop le familier avec ceux qui sont au-dessus de lui ;
He is rather too familiar with his superiors.

Il est au-dessus de ses affaires ;
He is beforehand with the world.

Etre au-dessous d'un autre en mérite, en bien, &c.
To be inferior to one in merit, in wealth, &c.

Au-dessus and *au-dessous* are supposed to become adverbs ; but 2.
perhaps the truth is, that there is an ellipsis of their regimen :

Il occupe le premier étage, & je loge au-dessus [i. e. au-dessus de lui, or du premier étage] ;

He occupies the first floor, and I lodge above.

Hérode fit tuer tous les enfans de deux ans & au-dessous [i. e. au-dessous de cet âge] ;

Herod caused all the children of two years old and under to be put to death.

Par-dessus and *par-dessous* are also prepositions, but without 3.
requiring *de* before their regimen. They are also supposed to be 3a.
used sometimes adverbially, but with as little reason as *au-dessus* and *au-dessous*.

NOTE.

Sur, sous, dans, and hors, are prepositions always requiring a regimen ; but *dessus*, 4a.
dessous, *dedans*, and *dehors*, which are adverbs signifying as much as the prepositions 5a.
with a noun, become also prepositions used instead of, and in the same sense as, *sur*, 5a.
sous, *dans*, *hors*, (of which they are composed) whenever they are preceded by the
prepositions *par* and *de*, or when they both serve for one and the same noun, especially
if the two prepositions are of opposite or contrary meanings one to another ; in which
case *dehors* governs its noun, without the intervention of *de*, although *hors* is for the
most part followed by it, before its regimen :

Est-il dedans ou dehors la maison ? Is he within or out of doors ?

Cherchez dessus & dessous la table [not sur & sous] ;

Look upon and under the table.

Il n'est ni dedans ni dessous le coffre [not dans & sous] ;

It is neither in nor under the chest.

*La balle lui passa par-dessus la tête [and not sur, which would imply that it had
touched his head] ;*

The ball went over his head.

Il passa par-dedans la ville ; which implies that he went into and passed through the 5b.
city ; a meaning which could not be expressed by any single preposition, nor, with
such grammatical propriety, by any two other prepositions.

On le tira de dessous le lit ; He was dragged from under the bed :

and not *de sous* ; for *sous* always implies contact : *de dessous* signifies that he was
under the bed, and that they drew him from under it.

These and such like cases excepted, *sur, sous, dans, hors*, must always be prepo- 6.
sitions ; and *dessus, dessous, dedans, and dehors*, adverbs. 7a.

Vers, envers.

8. 1. *Vers* denotes a tendency towards a certain side, quarter, or situation :
Vers l'orient ; Towards the east, &c.
9. 2. Sometimes it signifies the destination of an ambassador :
Envoyé vers les princes d'Allemagne ;
Envoy to the princes of Germany.
10. 3. *Vers* denotes time, as approaching to a certain portion of it :
Vers les quatre heures ; About, near four o'clock.
11. *Envers* is a preposition implying relation, but used only in reference to persons :
Sa tendresse envers eux ; His tenderness towards or to them.
Ingrat envers son bienfaiteur ; Ungrateful to his benefactor.
Je vous défendrai envers & contre tous ;
I will defend you against all manner of persons.

A l'égard.

1. *A l'égard* (as to, or for, with respect to, in comparison of,) requires *de* before its regimen :
A l'égard du prix, nous en conviendrons ;
With respect to the price, we will agree.
A l'égard de ce que vous me devez ;
With regard to, as to what you owe me.
La terre est petite, à l'égard du soleil ;
The earth is small, in comparison with the sun.
2. Where the relation is to a pronoun, and not to a noun, the pronominal possessive adjective must be used in agreement with *égard* as with a noun, instead of the personal pronoun of the genitive :
À mon égard ; For my sake, on my account, towards me.
On doit être honnête à son égard, & à l'égard des autres ;
We ought to be honest with respect to ourselves and to others.

Au lieu.

Au lieu requires also *de* before the next noun or infinitive, 3.
and implies *substitution* :

Au lieu de celui que j'attendois, il est venu un homme de sa part ;
Instead of the man I expected, there came a man from him.

Au lieu de secourir son ami, il l'a trahi ;
Instead of succouring his friend, he has betrayed him.

Au lieu que is a conjunction governing the indicative :

Il ne songe qu'à son plaisir, au lieu qu'il devoit veiller à ses affaires : 4.

He minds nothing but his pleasure, *whereas, on the contrary,*
he should attend to his affairs.

A rebours, au rebours.

A rebours, au rebours, (against the hair or grain, the wrong way, 5.
preposterously, cross, quite contrary) is also used as a preposition
with *de* :

Vergéter du drap à rebours (q. d. à rebours du drap) ;
To brush cloth against the grain.

Il fait tout à rebours, au rebours de ce qu'on lui dit ;

He does every thing *the wrong way, the reverse of* what he is
bidden.

A travers, au travers.

A travers, au travers, (through, across) are two compound
prepositions, of which *à travers* comes immediately before its 6.
regimen ; *au travers* takes *de* between it and its regimen : 7.

A travers le corps, au travers du corps ; Through the body.

Il se fit jour au travers des ennemis, à travers les ennemis ;

He made his way *through* the enemy.

A travers des champs ; Across the fields.

Regarder au travers d'une jalousie ; To look *through* a blind.

A travers is sometimes used adverbially :

Parler à tort & à travers ; To talk *at random.* 8.

MISCELLANEOUS OBSERVATIONS concerning the FRENCH PREPOSITIONS.

1. The following prepositions, *de*, *contre*, *sur*, *sous*, *sans*, must always be repeated before each noun governed :
Beaucoup d'amour pour le plaisir, & de haine pour le travail ;
 Much love for pleasure, and aversion for work.
Je suis sans amis, sans protection, sans secours, & je meurs de faim ;
 I am friendless, without protection, without help, and starving with hunger.

N O T E.

2. This rule does not contradict the observation before made concerning *sans* and *ni* ; for in the example just given, we see that there is no connection between the nouns governed by *sans*, and that there are more than two nouns in the sentence which refer to it, which makes a material difference.

3. These other must in like manner be repeated, when the noun
4. or nouns are not synonymous, or nearly of the same signification, with the first noun ; viz *à*, *par*, *pour*, *avec* :

Il est venu à bout de ses desseins, par les ruses, & par les armes de mes ennemis ;

He has compassed his ends by the devices and arms of my enemies.

¶ These *six* prepositions have the right of governing others before the noun governed ; *de*, *pour*, *excepté*, *hors*, *jusque*, *par*.

5. 1. *De* governs these eight ; *entre*, *après*, *chez*, *avec*, *par*, *en*, *dessus*, *dessous* :

Plusieurs d'entre eux y allèrent ;

Many of [or from among] them went thither.

Je viens de chez-vous ; I come from your house.

Je sors d'avec lui ;

I have just left him, *i. e.* I come out from [being] with him.

La partie d'en haut ; The upper part.

De par le roi ; In the king's name.

6. 2. *Pour* governs these five ; *après*, *dans*, *devant*, *derrière*, *à côté* :

Ce sera pour après le dîner ; It will be for after dinner.

C'est pour dans quinze jours ; It is for a fortnight hence.

Ce morceau est destiné pour devant la porte, celui-là pour à côté, & l'autre pour derrière le lit ;

This piece is designed for before the door, that for the side, and the other for behind the bed.

3. *Jusque* governs these six ; *à, par, en, dans, sur, sous ;* 7.

Jusqu'au plafond ; As high, as far as, the ceiling.

Jusques dans le lit ; Even in the bed.

Jusques par delà la rivière ; Even beyond the river, &c. &c.

4. *Par* governs these eight ; *chez, à côté, dessus, dessous, devant, 2. derrière, déjà, delà :*

Passer par chez nous ; Call at our house.

Par dessus la tête ; Above one's head.

Par delà la mer ; Beyond the sea, &c.

5. 6. *Excepté* and *hors* govern these nineteen ; *chez, dans, 9. sous, sur, devant, derrière, parmi, vers, avant, après, entre, depuis, avec, par, durant, pendant, à, de, and en.* Examples may be found every where.

¶ Prepositions always come before the noun which they go- 10. vern, and never after, as we sometimes see in English :

Avec qui, or à qui voulez-vous que je parle ?

Whom will you have me speak with ?

Except these three, *après, durant, près ;* 11.

Quelque tems après ; Some time after.

Sa vie durant ; During, or for his life.

A son humeur près ; Save his humour.

But it is not necessary that *après* and *durant* should come after 11a. the noun, nor that *près* should, except in that particular acception.

¶ From a great many nouns, prepositions are formed, by 12. putting before them some preposition, especially *à, au, aux, en*, which compound parts of speech, although they govern the next noun in the genitive, yet nevertheless have all the true, connective force of simple prepositions, and are therefore to be considered as real prepositions :

Au milieu de la compagnie ; In the midst of the company.

En présence de ses amis ; In the presence of his friends.

A l'insu de son père ; Unknown to his father.

A raison de vingt pour cent ; At the rate of twenty per cent.

OBSERVATIONS on the manner of rendering certain ENGLISH PREPOSITIONS and PARTICLES.

1. These English prepositions, *again, back, away, up, down, in, out of, over, forth, &c.* oftentimes make part of the signification of the verbs which they attend, and are not particularly expressed in French, but by the comprehensive force of the verb : *To keep back, (retenir); to take away, (emporter); to come up, (monter); to take up arms, (prendre les armes); to lay them down, (les quitter, les mettre bas); to pull off, (arracher); to go, or set out, (partir); to go forth, (sortir); &c.*
2. *On board, aboard, a ship, is, A bord d'un vaisseau;* but *To embark on board a ship is, S'embarquer sur un vaisseau, monter sur un vaisseau.*
4. *About* answers to divers French prepositions.

<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 4^a. <i>About the end of the year ;</i> <i>Sur la fin de l'année.</i> 4^a. <i>I come to you about that business ;</i> <i>Je viens vous voir touchant cette affaire.</i> 4^b. <i>About the latter end of that book ;</i> <i>Vers la fin de ce livre.</i> 4^c. <i>What do you cry about the streets ?</i> <i>Qu'est-ce qu'on crie dans* les rues ?</i> 4^d. <i>He took him about the middle ;</i> <i>Il le prit par le milieu du corps.</i> 4^e. <i>I have no money about me ;</i> <i>Je n'ai point d'argent sur moi.</i> 4^f. <i>What are you about ?</i> <i>A quoi êtes-vous occupés ?</i> 4^g. <i>It is not so about, us ;</i> <i>Il n'en est pas ainsi chez, or parmi nous.</i> Look about you ; <i>Prenez garde à vous.</i> 4^b. <i>I do not like to have people of your stamp</i> <i>about me ;</i> <i>Je n'aime pas que des gens de votre plumage soient</i> <i>auprès de moi.</i> 	} } } } } } } } } }	<i>sur.</i> <i>touchant.</i> <i>vers.</i> <i>dans.</i> <i>par.</i> <i>sur.</i> <i>à.</i> <i>chez &</i> <i>parmi.</i> <i>à.</i> <i>auprès.</i> <i>&c. &c.</i>
--	--	---
5. *Against*, which signifies *contre* in its proper and general sense, sometimes

* Or, par les rues ?

sometimes denotes time, and in such acceptation is rendered differently :

Against the end of the week ;

Sur la fin de la semaine.

} *sur.* 3a.

Your shoes will be made *against* after to-morrow ;

Vos souliers seront faits pour après demain.

} *pour.* 5b.

(Or else simply, *après demain.*)

Against is also a conjunction, expressed variously in French: 6.

Against he comes ; *En attendant qu'il vienne.*

Let all things be ready *against* we come back ;

Que tout soit prêt à notre retour.

Both, before two nouns copulated by *and*, is rendered in French by *Et* before each noun, or by *tant* before the first noun, and *que* before the second ; or it is not expressed at all : 7.

Both young and rich ;

Et jeune & riche ; Tant jeune que riche.

Both by sea and land ; *Par mer Et par terre, &c.*

The English particle *on*, coming after a verb whose action it denotes the continuation of, is rendered by the French verb *continuer*, or the adverb *toujours* : 10.

Play *on* ; *Continuez de jouer, or jouez toujours.*

Away, a particle variously and elegantly used, cannot be rendered into French separately from the verb, which expresses its force diversely, according to the extent of its own meaning, and the genius of the language : 11.

Away with this ; *Otez tout ceci.*

Away with him to the university ;

Qu'on l'envoie à l'université :

I cannot *away* with it ;

Je ne saurois souffrir cela, ou le digérer.

Away with these fopperies ; *Défaites-vous de ces sottises.*

To eat a bit, and *away* ;

Manger un morceau à la hâte, avant que de partir.

To scold one *away* ;

Obliger quelqu'un à s'en aller à force de le gronder.

He shall not go *away* with it so ;

Il n'en sera pas quitte à si bon marché.

C H A P. IX.

OF CONJUNCTIONS.

WE have already given a list of the conjunctions governing the indicative, subjunctive, and infinitive moods, when we treated of those moods. We have now only to say a word or two on some particular conjunctions which require consideration.

Que (conjunction) is of most extensive use, and is the substitute of a variety of words, as will be seen presently

1. It is used in the second part of a period, joined to the first by the enclitic *Et*, instead of repeating the conjunction *si*, expressed at the beginning of the sentence; and that *que* governs the subjunctive:

S'il le souhaite, Et que vous le vouliez (q. d. si vous le voulez);
If he desires it, and if you will have it so.

2. It is used in the middle of a sentence, in the sense and place of *comme*, *lorsque*, though they be not expressed before:

Ils arrivèrent que j'allois partir;

They arrived when I was about to depart.

César n'étoit encore qu'édile qu'il fit faire secrètement la statue de Marius; (VERTOT).

Cesar was only an edile when he caused the statue of Marius to be secretly made.

NOTE.

The two examples just cited, suggest an observation, by the way, concerning the constitution of their tenses, as compared, the one sentence with the other. In the first, the *preter* tense comes first, and the member connected by *que* is *imperfect*: in the second, the *imperfect* tense comes first, and the member connected by *que* is *perfect*. This difference is accountable. *Ils arrivèrent*, and *César fit faire la statue de Marius*, are the principal circumstances of the narration, which must be *perfect*, be the form of the sentences what it will. So *j'allois partir*, and *il étoit édile*, are only circumstances purely incidental, and must be *imperfect*, whether placed first or last in the sentence, and in all and every of its modifications.

3. *Que* has the force of *peut-être* in the second member, where *peut-être* has occurred in the first:

Peut-être l'aime-t-il, mais qu'il ne veut l'épouser;

Perhaps he loves her, but perhaps he is unwilling to marry her.

NOTE.

NOTE.

We must not be surpris'd at this substitution; we must recollect the true, original force of *peut-être*, *il peut être que*; and then putting the sentence into the following form, we shall see the propriety of this use of *que*:

[11] *peut être* [qu'] *il l'aime, mais* [il peut être] *qu'il ne veut pas l'épouser.*

Que is used instead of *à moins que*, *avant que*, *sans que*, and, 4 like those conjunctions, governs the subjunctive; and requires the negative *ne* before the next verb:

Je ne serai point content, que je ne le sache;

I shall never be contented, unless I know it.

Je n'irai point, qu'elle ne soit venue;

I will not go before, unless, without, she be come.

Je ne l'ai point servie, que je n'en aie eu du chagrin, for sans que je n'en aie, &c.

I have never obliged her without having had vexation about it.

Que is used for *jusqu'à ce que*, and governs, like it, the sub- 5 junctive:

Attendez qu'il vienne; Stay till he comes.

Que is used for *cependant*: 6

Il me verroit périr, qu'il ne seroit point touché;

He would see me die, yet he would not be concerned at it.

Il auroit tout l'or du monde, qu'il en voudroit encore davantage;

Though he had all the gold in the world, yet he would wish for more.

Ce ne la seroit pas, qu'il seroit trop tard pour s'en dédire;
(ROUSSEAU's Emile)

Though it might not, should it not, be her, yet it would be too late to retract.

NOTE.

These sentences might be turned as well thus:

Quand même *ce ne la seroit pas*, cependant *il seroit trop tard*; or simply—*Il seroit trop 71*
tard pour s'en dédire.

Que de is sometimes used elliptically for *rien de meilleur* 84
que de:

Il n'est que de prendre le ton haut avec les prétendus importants;

There is nothing better than, nothing like, assuming an authoritative air with people of pretended consequence.

Il n'est chère que d'avaricieux (il n'est meilleure chère que celle d'un avaricieux) ; Prov.

There is nothing like a miser's feast. (BUFFIER)

9. *Que* is used instead of *afin que*, and as such governs the subjunctive :

Approchez, que je vous baise ;

Draw near, (in order) that I may kiss you.

Je vous prie de venir ici, que je vous dise quelque chose ;

I beseech you to come hither, that I may tell you something.

10. *Que* is used instead of *de peur que*, and accordingly governs the subjunctive, and requires the negative *ne* before the verb :

N'approchez pas de ce chien, qu'il ne vous morde ;

Do not come near that dog, lest he bite you.

Dépêchons, que quelqu'un ne vienne ;

Let us make haste, for fear that somebody should come.

11. *Que* is used in the place of *si* or *dès que* in the beginning of a sentence, and governs the subjunctive :

Qu'il boive de la bière, il est malade à la mort ;

If, when, or as soon as he drinks beer, he is sick to death.

12. *Que* is used in the middle of a sentence, after *il y a*, instead of *depuis que* :

Il n'y a qu'une heure qu'il est parti ;

It is but an hour since he went away.

13. *Que* is used for *de sorte que* :

Si vous n'êtes sage, je vous étrillerai, que rien n'y manquera ;

If you are not good, I will flog you so that nothing shall be like it—soundly.

14. *Que* is used before the second verb of a sentence beginning with the conjunction *à peine*, of which it serves to form a part (*à peine que*) :

A peine eut-il achevé de parler, qu'il expira ;

He had hardly ended speaking before he expired.

15. *Que* is used after a comparative, in the sense of *than* :

Le mari est plus raisonnable que la femme ;

The husband is more reasonable than the wife.

Plutôt que de le faire ; Rather than do it.

16. *Que*, followed by an adjective, signifies *comme* ; and if the adjective be preceded by *tout*, *tout que* may be very well expressed by

by *quoique*, the indicative verb being then changed into a subjunctive one :

Malade qu'il est, il ne sauroit vaquer à ses affaires ;

Sick as he is, in his condition, he cannot attend his business.

Tout savant qu'il est, il a bien peu de jugement (or, quoiqu'il soit savant) ;

As learned as he is, though he be learned, he has but very little judgment.

Que, after a noun of time, signifies *quand* :

18.

Le jour qu'il partit ; The day *that* (q. d. *when*) he set out.

Que, after a noun of place, is used in the sense of *où* :

19.

C'est à la cour qu'on apprend les manières polies ;

It is at court *that* (q. d. *where*) we learn politeness.

Que is sometimes the sign of the imperative :

20.

Qu'il vienne ; Let him come.

Qu'ils tiennent ; Let them keep.

NOTE.

Que is left out in the following imperative phrases :

21.

Vienne qui voudra ; Come who will.

Sauve qui peut ; Save himself who can, let every one make the best of his way.

Qui m'aime me suive ; Let him that loves me follow me.

Que is used in the beginning of sentences (with an indicative) which stand, for the most part, as titles to chapters, sections, &c.

Qu'on ne peut prouver l'immortalité de l'ame, avant que d'en connoître la nature ; Et que sa nature est incompréhensible.

That the immortality of the soul cannot be proved before its nature be known ; and that the nature of the soul is incomprehensible.

Que is used to connect members of sentences together, being followed by the indicative or subjunctive mood, accordingly as the verb of the first member requires the one or the other after it :

Je vous assure que cela est ainsi ; I assure you that it is so.

Je doute que cela soit ainsi ; I doubt whether it be so.

Que, in the middle of a sentence beginning with *c'est* personal, is entirely a demonstrative particle, (and not expletive, as Chambers considers it) having the force of *namely* :

C'est

C'est une passion dangereuse que le jeu ;

It is a dangerous passion, namely, gaming.

C'est une sorte de honte que d'être malheureux ;

It is a sort of shame, namely, to be wretched.

26. *Que*, immediately preceded by *c'est*, signifies *parce que* :

C'est que je ne savois pas que ;

It is [or was] *that* [q. d. *because*] I did not know that.

27. And when a word comes between *c'est* and *que*, *C'est que* is redundant :

C'est alors que je vis ; Then I saw.

28. *Que*, being followed by *si* in the beginning of a member of a sentence, is a kind of connective particle, occurring commonly in narrations, and answering very nearly to *autem* in Latin :

Que si vous dites ; But if you say.

En vain on portoit des plaintes de ces excès aux décemvirs ; les malheureux étoient rejetés avec mépris ; & la faveur seule, ou des vues d'intérêt, tenoient lieu de droit & de justice : que si quelque citoyen, par un reste de liberté, étoit assez hardi pour faire éclater son ressentiment, les tyrans le faisoient battre à coups de verge comme un exilé ; d'autres étoient exilés ; il y en eut même qu'on fit mourir." (VERTOT, Rév. Rom. L. v.)

In vain were these abuses complained of to the decemvirs ; the unfortunate complainers were rejected with contempt ; and favour alone, or selfish views, occupied the place of right and justice : but if any citizen, moved by a remaining spark of liberty, was bold enough to discover his resentment, the tyrants caused him to be whipped like an exile ; others were banished ; some were even put to death.

Si autem aliquis à civibus, animo libertate adhuc accenso, non has injurias tacitè ferret.

29. *Que* is used after *tel*, or any adjective preceded by the adverb *si* :

Soyez tel que vous voulez être estimé ;

Be really such as you would wish to be taken for.

Je ne suis pas si fou que de le croire ;

I am not so foolish as to believe it.

31. *Que* is used after *autre* and *autrement*, in the sense of *than* :

Il est tout autre que vous ne disiez ;

He is quite another man than you said.

Que being used in the beginning of a sentence with the subjunctive (then a true optative) denotes *wishing* or *imprecation*: 32.

Que Dieu vous bénisse ! God bless you !

Que je meure si j'en fais quelque chose !

May I die if I know any thing of it.

NOTE.

Sometimes also *que* is left out in this kind of sentences :

Dieu vous bénisse ! God bless you !

Grand bien vous fasse ! Much good may it do you !

La peste l'étouffe ! Choke him !

33.

Que is also used in the beginning of the sentence with the subjunctive, to express, by an exclamation, one's *surprise at*, *aversion from*, and *reluctance to* something, in which case there is a verb grammatically understood before *que*: 34.

Qu'il se soit oublié jusqu'à ce point ;

[I wonder, or is it possible] that he should have forgotten himself so far !

Que j'agisse contre ma conscience !

Must I, or can I, act against my conscience !

Que is used adverbially in the beginning of sentences of exclamation with the indicative, and is rendered into English by *how*, or *how much*: 35.

Que vous aimez à parler ! How much you like to talk !

Qu'il fait crotté ! How dirty it is !

Qu'elle est aimable ; How lovely she is !

Sometimes the verb is omitted :

Que de plaisir & de peine à la fois !

What, or, how much pleasure or pain at once !

36.

Sometimes also *que* comes after the noun, especially if the exclamation imply *pity*, *indignation*, or any such *passion*: 37.

Le malheureux qu'il est ! What a wretch he is !

L'indigne action que la sienne !

What an unworthy action of his !

Que, in the beginning of an interrogative sentence, signifies *comment*: 38.

Que savez-vous si l'ame de votre père n'étoit pas passée dans cette bête ?

How do you know but that your father's soul hath passed into that beast ?

Que,

39. *Que*, beginning an interrogative sentence, and followed by the negative *ne* only, stands for *pourquoi* :

• *Que ne parlez-vous ?* Why do not you speak ?

NOTE.

40. But when *que* is followed by the double negative *ne pas*, it is then a pronoun, and stands for *quelle chose* :

Que ne fait-il pas pour s'enrichir ? What does he not do to enrich himself ?

Que ne lui dites-vous pas pour l'en détourner ?

Is there *any thing* which you did not tell him, to deter him from it ?

41. *Que ne* sometimes is exclamatory, and denotes an earnest wish and desire for a thing :

Que ne suis-je déjà aux portes de Valence ? (GIL BLAS)

Would I were already, i. e. why am I not already, at the gates of Valencia !

42. *Que* in the middle of a sentence, preceded by *ne*, with one or more words between, signifies *seulement* :

Le roi n'a en vue que le bien public ;

The king has *only* the public good in view, i. e. has *nothing* but that, &c.

NOTE.

43. Chambaud joins the following use of *que pronominal* to the application of *que conjuction* so closely, that I am inclined to believe that he supposed it to be a conjunction in that instance also. *Que*, preceded by *ne*, and followed by the infinitive *faire*, without a preposition, signifies *nothing* ; or *not to need*, if *faire* is followed by another infinitive with *de* :

Je n'ai que faire de cela ; I have *nothing* to do with that.

Je n'ai que faire d'y aller ; I need not, I have no need, or occasion, to go there.

44. We also say, with a dative following *faire*,

Je n'ai que faire à cela ; I am not concerned with that.

In all these instances *que* signifies, literally, *what*, i. e. *any thing which* :

I have not *any thing* which I may do, or to do ; *Je n'ai que faire de cela.*

I have not *any thing* to do, by going there ; *Je n'ai que faire d'y aller.*

I have not *any thing* to do, in relation to that ; *Je n'ai que faire à cela.*

The least consideration will shew that *que* is pronominal in the examples before us, and has some such meaning as that here given to it.

45. *Que*, preceded by any tense of *faire* with the negative *ne*, and followed by an infinitive, without any preposition at all, denotes the continuance of the action signified by the second verb :

Il ne fait que boire & manger ;

He is *continually* eating and drinking, does *nothing* but eat and drink.

Que,

Que, preceded by any tense of *faire* with the negative *ne*, 46
and followed by an infinitive with the preposition *de*, signifies
that the action of the second verb was but just begun; and is
accordingly, with *faire*, rendered by *just*, or *just now*:

Nous ne faisons que de commencer; We do but *just* begin.

Il ne faisoit que d'achever quand—;

He had but *just* finished when—; (i. e. *He had done nothing*,
or *was doing nothing*, after finishing, when—.)

When is both *quand* and *lorsque*, in the use of which there is
a distinction to be made: *quand* denotes time in a more especial 1.
manner; *lorsque*, in a degree secondary to some circumstance 2.
expressed, which it has principally in view:

Ne manquez pas de venir quand je vous appellerai;

Do not fail to come at the time that I shall call you.

And when a question is asked, we always do it with *quand*, 3.
and never with *lorsque*, the nature of such a question implying
an immediate reference to time:

Quand viendrez-vous? A tel ou tel tems.

When will you come? At such, or such a time.

*Au tems des premières conquêtes, lorsque les émigrations étoient les
plus fréquentes*;

At the time of the first conquests, when emigrations were
most frequent.

Les premières conquêtes is the circumstance of reference to
lorsque; *tems* is only secondarily and relatively so, as, *le tems des
conquêtes, &c.*

NOTE.

As a farther explanation of the difference between *quand* and *lorsque*, I beg leave to
cite the following passage from Girard's *Synonymes*:—"Quand paroît plus propre pour
marquer la circonstance du tems; & lorsque semble mieux convenir pour marquer celle 4.
de l'occasion:—Ainsi je dirois, *Il faut travailler quand on est jeune*; *Il faut être docile,*
lorsque on nous reprend à propos; *On ne fait jamais tant de folies que quand on aime, on*
se fait aimer lorsqu'on aime; *Le chanoine va à l'église quand la cloche l'avertit d'y aller*;
& il fait son devoir, lorsqu'il assiste aux offices."—This difference may at first appear
frivolous, but it is a real and important one; and we may easily discover it by sub-
stituting *dans le tems que*, or *au moment que*, in the place of *quand* and *lorsque*, and we
shall find that they will answer very well for *quand*, but not for *lorsque*:—"Il faut tra-
vailler ^{quand} ^{lorsque} ^{au tems qu'} ^{on est jeune}: *Il faut être docile ^{quand} ^{lorsque} ^{au tems qu'} ^{on nous reprend à propos}. In
the first instance the substitution is justifiable; for youth is a particular time or season of
a man's life, and the idea of time is properly joined to it: but *seasonable reproof* marks
no time or precise period, and derives no new force from being attributed to any par-
ticular moment; it is only an occasional circumstance always calling for our docility:
so,—*On ne fait jamais tant de folies que ^{quand} ^{au tems qu'} ^{on aime}*; *On se fait aimer ^{lorsque} ^{au tems qu'} ^{on}*
B b aime.*

- aimé*. In the first substitution we see a manifest propriety; for at the *time*, during the *season*, of our being in love we commit many follies: but in the second change an error is strikingly apparent; for it is no specified time which dates our being beloved, it is the *occasion* of our loving which inspires the reciprocal passion; and though this exists in time itself, yet we are not called upon to consider it as taking place at any stated period, whether a day, month, or year, but only as happening in general: the *time when* does not affect us at all; the *fact* does entirely.—From all that has
5. been said, we may gather, that when the idea of time stands in the sentence as an
6. immediate, principal point of consideration, *quand* ought to be used; but when the circumstance itself is the main object in the sentence, independent of, and unconnected with, the idea of time, *lorsque* is most proper.

7. *Quand* being construed with the conditional, has the signi-
8. fication of *although*; and *même*, or *bien même*, is sometimes added to *quand*, giving some new force to its meaning:

Quand il y consentiroit; quand même, quand bien même il y consentiroit, cela ne se pourroit pas faire;

Although he would even consent to it, that could not be done.

9. Such kind of sentences may also be turned by the verb in the perfect of the subjunctive, with its nominative pronoun following it, without any conjunction at all:

Fût-elle riche à millions, quand même elle feroit riche à millions, je n'en voudrois point;

Though she were worth millions, I would not have her.

10. *Si* is never construed with the conditional, as *if* is in English; but we use in French the imperfect, to express that conditional:
If he should come; S'il venoit.

11. *Si* after *et* signifies yet:

Il travaille toujours, & si il meurt de faim;

He is always working, and yet is starving.

But this is rather a vulgarism.

12. *D'où vient que* (a conjunction interrogative) requires immediately after it the pronoun or noun which expresses the subject
13. of the principal verb of the sentence; whereas, with the other conjunctions interrogative, it comes after the verb; (the reason of this being, that in fact the verb of the question is *vient*, having for its nominative *il*, understood, after it):

D'où vient que vous ne voulez pas faire cela? or, Pourquoi ne voulez-vous pas faire cela?

Whence comes it that you won't do that? Why won't you do it?

14. *Pourtant*, *cependant*, and *toutefois*, signify *however*, yet. *Toute-*
15. *fois* begins to grow obsolete: *pourtant* always comes after the verb,

verb, or between the auxiliary and the participle if the tense is 16.
compound, and is more positive and decisive in its meaning
than *cependant*. *Cependant* may indifferently begin the sentence, 17.
or come after the verb, and they both make a contrast with
these two other conjunctions, *quoique* and *bien que* :

Quoiqu'il ait tant étudié, il ne sait pourtant pas cela ; or, cependant il ne sait pas cela ;

Although he has studied so much, yet he does not know that.

Donc, c'est pourquoi, are two other conjunctions, signifying
therefore, then. *C'est pourquoi* always begins the sentence ; and 18.
donc but seldom, generally occupying the second or third place 19.
in the sentence ; EXCEPT, however, when it serves to draw a 20.
consequence from premises :

C'est pourquoi vous m'obligerez de faire cela ; or, vous m'obligerez donc de faire cela ;

Therefore you will oblige me to do that ; you will oblige me then to do that.

Il rougit ; donc il est coupable :

He blushes ; therefore he is guilty.

Encore, as an adverb, signifies *again, yet, still* ; but as a con- 21.
junction copulative it signifies *even, also, and else, besides*, in 22.
such expressions as these :

Qui encore ? Who else ?

Quoi encore ? What else ? what besides ?

But *encore* is, besides, a conjunction adversative, especially 23.
when *et si* comes before it, and as such is properly rendered by
nevertheless, besides, yet :

Il est extrêmement riche, encore n'est-il pas content, & si encore il se plaint ;

He is very rich, nevertheless he complains, yet he is not contented.

Encore has great force in the following use of it, where it 24.
seems to be copulative :

Encore s'il ne faisoit pas l'entendu, on lui passeroit son ignorance ;

If he would but cease to pretend to so much knowledge, if he was only less conceited, even if he did not assume the airs of a man of abilities, his ignorance would be forgiven him.

Encore s'il savoit quelque chose, mais il ne sait rien du tout ;

If he did but know something, but he knows nothing at all.

NOTE.

Observe that this last sentence is elliptical; a member is wanting between *quelque chose* and *mais*, which we may thus supply:

Encore s'il savoit quelque chose [on pourroit souffrir son ignorance sur d'autres sujets], mais il ne sait rien du tout.

Au moins, *du moins*, and *pour le moins*, are three conjunctions of restriction, signifying *at least*, but with some difference one from the other.

1. *Au moins* is used where no member precedes that in which it occurs, in opposition to it:

Prenez garde au moins de vous retirer de bonne heure;

Take care, I pray you, to come home in good time.

2. *Du moins* is proper where two members are opposed to each other, its place being in the second:

Si vous ne voulez pas prendre son parti, du moins ne vous déclarez pas contre lui;

If you will not take his part, *at least* do not declare against him.

3. *Pour le moins* is applicable to such cases as the following:

Vous n'avez jamais été le voir: J'ai été le voir deux fois pour le moins.

You have never been to see him: I have been to see him twice *at least*.

NOTE.

4. Sometimes also *tout* is joined to *au moins* and *du moins*, and increases their restrictive sense. And here we may observe, by the way, that this augmentative (*tout*) is likewise prefixed to the following comparative terms, *comme*, *de même que*, *aussi bien que*, *autant que*, *aussi peu que*, and may be Englished by *just* or *full*:

Vous faites tout comme il vous plaît; You do *just* as you please.

Je vis tout aussi bien en Angleterre qu'en France;

I live *full* as well in Eng and as in France.

5. These English conjunctions, *either* and *or*, used in the same sentence before nouns and verbs, are rendered into French,
 6. *either* by *soit* before the first noun or verb, and *or* by *ou* before
 7. the other or others, or by *soit* before each noun or verb; which last way is the most forcible:

Either through gratitude, *or* clemency, *or* policy, he pardoned him;

Soit par reconnaissance, ou par clémence, ou par politique, il lui pardonna; or, *soit par reconnaissance, soit par clémence, soit par politique, &c.*

NOTE.

NOTE.

In sentences of this kind, whether the members be joined by *soit* and *ou*, or *soit* repeated, the preposition *par* is very frequently omitted, though necessarily understood :

Ceux qui avoient conservé quelques principes de douceur & d'humanité, soit paresse, soit fanatisme, n'avancèrent pas leur raison, ni, jusqu'à un certain point, leur industrie ; (RAYNAL, Hist. Philosoph. & Politique.)

Those who had preserved some principles of mildness or humanity, either through idleness or fanaticism, did not improve their reason, nor even, in a certain degree, their industry.

Les peuples du midi, soit paresse d'esprit, ou foiblesse de corps, semblent être nés pour le despotisme ; (Id.)

Southern nations, either through sluggishness of mind or weakness of body, seem to be born for despotism.

The same English conjunctions, upon occasions like the following, are rendered into French by *soit* repeated, by *soit—ou*, or by *ou* repeated :

An exercise *either* of the body *or* the mind ;

Un exercice soit du corps soit de l'esprit ;

Un exercice soit du corps ou de l'esprit.

Either he is a wise man, *or* a fool ;

Ou il est sage, ou il est fou.

These English conjunctions, *whether* and *or*, are rendered into French by *soit que* repeated, or by *soit que* before the first part of the sentence, and *ou que* before the other :

Whether you have done that, *or* no ;

Soit que vous ayez fait cela, soit que vous ne l'ayez pas fait ;

Soit que vous ayez fait cela, ou que vous ne l'ayez pas fait ; or only, *ou non.*

Or else is rendered into French by *ou bien*, or *ou only*, or *si non* :—

The case is so, *or else* I should have been deceived ;

La chose est ainsi, ou bien, or, ou l'on m'auroit trompé.

It may not be improper to observe here, that some words answer to divers parts of speech, according to their grammatical application : thus *après*, in the first of the following examples, is an adverb ; in the second, a preposition ; and in the third, a conjunction :

Il parla après ; He spoke afterwards.

Il parla après moi ; He spoke after me.

Après qu'il eut parlé ; After he had spoken.

C H A P. X.

OBSERVATIONS upon the CONSTRUCTION, USE, and SIGNIFICATION of certain WORDS, which most frequently occur in Conversation; with some few other PARTICULARS, wherein chiefly consists the IDIOM of the FRENCH LANGUAGE.

1. 1. *AMITIÉ* (friendship) is often used in the singular for favour, act of kindness :
Faites-moi cette amitié ; Do me that kindness, or favour.
2. *Amitiés* (in the plural) is said of *caresses* and other marks of attention and fondness :
Il m'a fait mille amitiés ;
He made much of me, was profuse in his civility to me.
3. *Amitiés* is also used to express those compliments of regard and remembrance, which pass between friends in the course of letter-writing :
Madame de la Fayette vous fait mille amitiés ; (Lettres de SEVIGNE')
Madame de la Fayette sends her love to you.
4. 2. *Amours* (from *amour*, love) in the plural is feminine :
Il n'est point de laides amours ; Never seem'd a mistress foul.
5. EXCEPT when it signifies Cupids :
Il y a autour d'elle mille petits Amours ;
A thousand little Cupids hover round her.
6. 3. *An, année*, (a year) are not to be used promiscuously : *an* is properly only the denomination of that particular portion of
7. time which it expresses ; *année* is the portion of time itself, including a certain number of days and months. Upon this principle of distinction are, in general, to be accounted for, all the following circumstances in the use of the two words in question :
An is used,
8. 1. After nouns of the cardinal number :
J'ai trente ans ; I am thirty years old.
Il y a vingt ans passés ; It was twenty years ago.

2. Before

2. Before nouns of the ordinal number used as dates :

9.

L'an mil sept cent quarante neuf ;

The year 1749, (where the cardinal number is used for the ordinal.)

L'an quinzième de l'empire ;

The fifteenth year of the empire.

We say,

10.

Le Jour de l'An ; New-Year's day.

Le premier jour de l'an ; The first day of the year.

Année is used,

1. After nouns of the ordinal number, when one or more years inclusively are implied :

Elle est dans sa vingtième année ;

She is in her twentieth year.

2. After the article ; because in such cases the space of a year is signified, and not merely the name of it :

L'année passée, l'année dernière ; Last year.

L'année qui vient, or, l'année prochaine ; Next year.

But we say,

11.

L'an de grace ; The year of grace ;

L'an du monde, ou de notre Seigneur, A.M. A.D.

In the year of the world, or of our Lord :

because they have the nature of dates.

3. With an epithet or adjective, signifying any thing but mensuration of time ; when the year is, for the most part, considered as more than a name :

Une bonne & heureuse année ! A happy new year !

Nos belles années passent bien vite ;

Our prime goes away very quick, or is soon over.

4. In cases like the following, a reference to the distinction already laid down, between *an* and *année*, will evidently shew that *année* must be used :

Il reste encore trois mois de l'année ;

There are three months of this year yet to come.

The mention made of the year, as *passing* but *not past*, clearly points at the portion of time it contains, which we know is to be expressed by *année* ; and as this is generally our view when

we introduce a *year* or *years* before or after *nouns*, so we almost always use *année* with them.

7. 4. *Accoutumer* (to use), *s'accoutumer* (to use or accustom one's self), *être accoutumé* (to be used), require the preposition *à* before the next infinitive; and *avoir coutume* and *avoir accoutumé* (which begin to be obsolete) require *de*:

Il l'accoutume à le suivre; He accustoms him to follow him.

Il s'accoutume à lire; He accustoms himself to read.

Je suis accoutumé à souffrir; I am used to suffering.

J'ai coutume de perdre;

I generally lose, I am accustomed to lose.

3. 5. *Agir* (to act) preceded by the particle *en*, and followed by an adverb, signifies to do, act, deal with, to use one:

En agir bien avec, ou envers quelqu'un;

To do well by him, deal well with him.

Il en agit mal envers elle; He uses her ill.

4. And when *agir* is used impersonally, and in the reflected form (*il s'agit, il s'agissoit*); it is englished as follows:

De quoi s'agit-il? What is the matter?

Il s'agit de faire cela; That is the business in question.

Il ne s'agit pas de peu de choses; It is not a trifling concern.

5. 6. *Aller* (to go), in the present and imperfect, coming before an infinitive without a preposition, denotes a thing which one is, or was about to do, or which is, or was about to fall out or happen; and is rendered by *to be going, to be ready, to be about*, and sometimes only by the sign of the future:

Je vais étudier; I am going to study.

Je vais, or, je m'en vais partir tout-à-l'heure;

I shall set out presently.

8. Nay, these two tenses are even construed with the very verb *aller* in that sense:

Je vais m'en aller; I am about to go away.

Nous allions y aller; We were just going there.

9. 7. *Venir* (to come), in the present and imperfect, coming before an infinitive with the preposition *de*, denotes a thing just now done, and is generally expressed by that phrase:

Je viens de dîner; I have just dined.

Le roi vient de le nommer à cet évêché ;

The king has lately nominated him to that bishoprick.

Venir before the infinitive, with the preposition *à*, denotes, and is englished by, to prepare, begin, set, go about any thing :

Quand il vint à danser ; When he began to dance.

8. *Aller* and *venir* sometimes serve only to denote the possibility there is for the action of the verb following to take place, and are englished by, to happen, to chance, and sometimes by a conditional tense only :

Il seroit perdu, si sa femme alloit, or venoit à, savoir cela ;

He would be undone if his wife should chance to know it, or should know it.

Voyez où j'en serois, si elle alloit croire cela ;

See what case I should be in, if she should happen to believe that.

9. *Aller, venir, and revenir*, are said of ships bound from one place to another :

Ce vaisseau vient de la Havane, & va à Cadix ;

This vessel is bound from the Havannah to Cadiz.

Un vaisseau qui revient de l'Amérique ;

A ship homeward bound from America.

10. *Aller* and *faire* are said of things which fit, or do not fit well, as clothes, wigs, &c.

Cet habit vous va bien ; That coat fits you well.

Cette grande perruque ne lui va or fait pas bien ;

That large wig does not fit him well.

11. *Il y va*, the impersonal, formed from *aller* and *y*, requires the noun in the genitive, and is englished thus :

Il y va de l'honneur ; Honour is at stake.

Il y alloit de la vie ;

Life was concerned in it, was at stake, in jeopardy.

12. *Apparoître, and paroître* (to appear). The first is said only of spirits and ghosts :

Un ange lui apparut ; An angel appeared to him.

Les spectres n'apparoissent que la nuit ;

Ghosts, or spirits, appear only in the night-time.

Paroître,

3. *Paraître* signifies to appear in any other sense :
Le soleil paroît ; The sun appears, or shows itself.
Il paroît une comète ; A comet appears.
Il me paroît que— ; It appears to me that—.
4. 13. *Avoir* (to have) is used instead of *être*, when we speak of being old, hungry, thirsty, cold, and hot (relating to the weather as it affects men :)
Il a six ans ; He is six years old.
J'ai faim ; I am hungry.
Je n'ai pas soif ; I am not thirsty.
Elle a chaud ; She is warm.

NOTE.

5. Observe that *chaud* and *froid* are used as nouns ; and therefore when a woman speaks, she must not say, *J'ai chaude*, but *J'ai chaud* ; which is literally, I have cold.
6. If any particular part of the body is said to be hot or cold, the French noun, expressive of that part, must be in the dative :
J'ai froid aux pieds ; which is rendered, My feet are cold, &c.
- 6a. So, *to be diseased in any part of the body* is turned into French in the same manner :
J'ai mal à la tête ;
I have a pain in my head, my head aches ;
Il a mal aux yeux ; He has sore eyes.
7. 14. *Avoir beau*, used to denote a thing to be done in vain, is variously englished :
J'ai beau l'attendre, il ne viendra pas ;
I may look long enough, he will not come.
Il a beau faire, il n'en viendra jamais à bout ;
Let him do what he will, or what he can, notwithstanding all his efforts, he will never bring it about.
Vous avez beau lui donner des avis, elle ne veut suivre que sa tête ;
It signifies nothing to advise her ; in spite of all your advice, she will follow her own way.
Vous avez beau faire, & beau dire, il n'en fera ni plus ni moins ;
You may do and say what you please, do and say what you will, it will be so nevertheless.
Il aura beau dire & beau faire, je n'en rabattrai rien ;
He may do and say what he pleases, I will not bate an inch.

Le pauvre homme eut beau appeler du secours ;
It was to no purpose that the poor man called for assistance.

15. *N'avoir garde* signifies *not to have inclination or power to* 1.
do a thing, and is englished accordingly :

Il n'a garde de tromper, il est trop honnête ;
He is too honest a man to wish to deceive.

Il n'a garde de s'enfuir, il a la jambe rompue ;
He cannot run away, for his leg is broken.

16. *Avoir affaire de* is *to want, to have occasion for :* 2.

J'ai affaire d'argent ; I have occasion for money.

J'ai affaire de vous, ne sortez pas ;
I want you, don't go out.

Qu'ai-je affaire de tout cela ? What is all that to me ?

Qu'ai-je affaire d'aller me tuer à travailler pour des gens dont je
ne me soucie point ?

Why should I go and work myself to death for people that I do
not care for ?

17. *Au reste, du reste.* *Au reste* signifies *besides, as for the rest ;*
du reste signifies *but for the rest.* They must by no means be con-
 founded. *Au reste* is used when to that which has gone before, 3.
 something is added of the same kind, and as the sequel to it :

Cette poursuite ne se peut faire qu'à grands frais ; au reste, elle a
peu de biens, huit enfans, & est endettée.

This prosecution cannot but be very expensive ; besides, her
 fortune is small, she has eight children, and is in debt.

Du reste is used when that which follows is not of the same 4.
 nature with what went before, or is said in contradiction and
 opposition to it :

Il étoit colère, bizarre, prodigue ; du reste, homme d'honneur &
bon ami.

He was passionate, whimsical, extravagant ; but, in other
 respects, a man of honour and a good friend.

Au reste sometimes, elegantly, comes after the first word, or 5.
 words, of the sentence ; *du reste* always comes the first. 6.

18. *Savoir* and *connoître* both signify *to know ;* with this dif- 7.
 ference, that *savoir* is said of *intellectual knowledge*, and *connoître* 8.
 of *personal knowledge arising from the evidence of our senses :*

Savez-

Savez-vous votre leçon ?

Do you know, can you say your lesson ?

Il sait le Latin ; He understands Latin.

Je sais ce que vous dites ; I know what you say.

Il sait mieux qu'il ne dit ;

He knows better than he says he does.

Faire savoir quelque chose à quelqu'un ;

To inform one, acquaint him, of a thing.

9. Whenever *to know* can be resolved by *to understand*, it is
10. *savoir* ; otherwise it is *connoître*.

11. *Connoître* is proper in cases like the following, agreeably to the rule before laid down :

Je connois cet homme-là ; I know that man.

Je connois ce pays-là ; I am acquainted with that country.

12. ¶ *Savoir* is used idiomatically in these instances :

Savoir bon gré à quelqu'un d'une chose ;

To take a thing kindly of any one, (to *know, acknowledge* (that we owe) *good-will to any one for something bestowed on, or done for us.*)

Lui en savoir mauvais gré ;

1. To take it unkindly, amiss, of him.

19. *Devoir* (to owe), when it comes before an infinitive without a preposition, denotes only futurity in the action of the verb following, and is turned by the future of the second verb in English, or by the verb *to be* (in a tense correspondent to that in which *devoir* is used) before an infinitive :

Il doit venir ; He is to come.

Elle doit partir demain ;

She will set out, she means to set out to-morrow.

2. *Devoir* sometimes has a consequential force :

Il est tout nud, il doit avoir froid ;

He is quite naked, he must needs be cold.

20. *Ecouter, entendre.*

3. *Ecouter* sometimes signifies to hearken and to listen to, with a reference merely to the natural sense of hearing :

Ecoutez ; hark-ye.

Il écoute ce que nous disons ;

He is listening to what we are saying.

And

And sometimes to *mind*, *attend to*, in regard to the action of 4.
the mind ;

Ecoutez ce qu'on dit ; Mind what is said.

Entendre is sometimes used in the sense of *overbearing*, i. e. 5.
hearing those who do not mean to be heard :

Il nous a entendus tout le tems ;

He has *overheard* us all the time.

21. *Emplir, remplir* (to fill).

Emplir is said of *liquids* only, in a natural sense : 6.

Emplir un tonneau, une bouteille, &c.

Remplir, except in its signification of reduplication, is ap- 7.
plied to any thing *not liquid*, and in a figurative sense : 7a.

Remplissez le verre ; Fill up the glass again.

Remplir ses coffres d'or & d'argent ;

To fill his coffers with gold and silver.

Vous m'avez rempli le cœur de joie ;

You have *filled* my heart with joy.

22. *Enfermer, renfermer.*

Enfermer is said of what is locked or shut up in a box, trunk, 8.
chamber, &c.

J'ai enfermé l'argent dans mon bureau ;

I have *locked up* the money in my bureau.

Renfermer, of what nature produces, and is contained in the 9.
earth :

Que de trésors la terre ne renferme-t-elle pas dans son sein !

What treasures does not the earth *contain* in her bosom !

23. *Enfer*, in the *Christian* sense of the word, is not used in 10.
the plural number :

Les peines de l'enfer ; The pains of hell.

Except in this article of the creed :

Il est descendu aux enfers ; He descended into hell. 11.

In the *Pagan* acceptation it is used in the plural : 12.

Mercuré conduisoit les âmes aux enfers ;

Mercury conducted the souls to the *shades below*.

24. *Entendre*

13. 24. *Entendre* is both to *hear* and to *understand*, according as
 14. the thing is the object of the *sense of hearing*, or that of the *understanding* :

J'e vous entends ; I hear you, I understand you.

Il entend cela mieux que vous ;

He understands that better than you do.

15. *Faire entendre* has the force of to *intimate* :

16. To *understand* signifies also *savoir*, when the thing spoken of is an art or science :

Elle fait le Latin ; She understands Latin.

17. And when the object of the verb, *i. e.* the thing supposed to be understood, is some substance obvious to the senses, whose quality is in question, to *understand* is made by *connoître*, in the reflected form, with the prepositions *en* or *à* :

Il se connoît en toiles ; He understands cloths.

Vous y connoissez-vous ? Do you understand these things ?

18. 25. *Espérer* (to hope), is never said in French of what is present or past, because hope is the expectation of things to come, though not certain or sure : therefore do not say,

J'espère que vous vous portez bien ;

I hope that you are well.

J'espère qu'il s'est bien porté, à la campagne ;

I hope that he has been well in the country.

But say rather,

Il paroît, il me semble, je présume, que vous vous portez bien ; je me flatte, j'ai lieu de croire, je m'imagine, qu'il s'est bien porté à la campagne.

It appears, it seems to me, I presume that you are well ; I flatter myself, I have reason to believe, I imagine, that he has been well in the country.

19. Or simply ask the question :

Vous portez-vous bien ? How do you do ?

Comment s'est-il porté à la campagne ?

How has he been in the country ?

26. *Eveiller* and *réveiller* (to awake, to call up), have each a peculiar force.

Eveiller

Eveiller is said of a regular time, and intimates something natural and usual :

On m'éveille tous les matins à cinq heures ; ne m'éveillez demain qu'à sept ;

I am waked every morning at five o'clock ; do not awake me to-morrow till seven.

• *Réveiller* implies something irregular and sudden, extraordinary and unusual :

Un grand bruit m'a réveillé ; A great noise has awaked me.

Le ministre veut qu'on le réveille toutes les fois qu'il arrive un courrier ;

The minister wishes to be waked whenever an express or messenger comes.

27. *Faire*, in its primary signification, is *to make, to do* ; but it has many more particular significations, which are much in use.

1. *Faire* before an infinitive, without any preposition, signifies generally *to get, bid, cause, or order*, with the noun expressing the object *after* the verb in the infinitive, and not *before*, as in English ; and when it signifies *to cause or order*, the French infinitive is turned from the *active* voice into the *passive* ; the agent, if there is any expressed, being governed in the dative :

Faites lire cet enfant ; Make that child read.

Faites venir cet homme ; Bid that man come.

Il le fit mettre à mort ; He caused him to be put to death.

2. Before the infinitive of *faire*, it signifies *to bespeak, get made* :

Il a fait faire une montre d'or à répétition ;

He has had a repeating gold watch made.

3. It signifies *to take care, to see that, do in such a manner that* ; and then it governs the subjunctive with *que* :

Faites qu'il soit content, Faites en sorte qu'il soit content ;

See that he is contented, satisfied, &c.

4. To counterfeit, to pretend to, set up for, personate, act :

Ceux qui font les fous à propos ne le sont guères ;

Those who counterfeit themselves mad, when it is convenient for them to be so, are hardly so in reality.

Il fait le philosophe ; He sets up for a philosopher.

Elle fait la belle ;

She pretends to be handsome, acts the beauty.

Vous ferez l'avare ; You will play, personate the miser.

10. 5. It has a variety of significations, in conformity to the regimen following it :

Faire la chambre ; To clean, set to rights, the room.

Faire la cuisine ; To cook, or dress victuals.

Faire le lit ; To make up the bed.

Faire des armes ; To fence.

Faire l'office ; To perform divine service.

L'air fait ressort ; The air is an elastic body.

Faire sentinelle, faire la garde ;

To stand sentry, be upon guard, &c.

11. 6. *Se faire* is to use, accustom one's self to, to form one's self to :
Se faire à la fatigue ; To use, inure one's self to fatigue.

12. 7. *Faire*, used impersonally with an adjective, expresses the state of the weather :

Il fait froid ; It is cold.

Il fait beau, or beau tems ; It is fine weather.

Il fait divin (SEVIGNE') ; It is heavenly weather.

13. 8. *Faire* is used as to do in English, i. e. instead of repeating the verb which has just been expressed in the sentence, especially after a comparative ; but this is not so common as in English :

Il apprend mieux qu'il ne faisoit ;

He learns better than he used to do.

14. 28. *Faire grace, faire une grace*, deserve to be distinguished.

1. *Faire grace* signifies to forgive, excuse, pardon :

Je vous fais grace de la moitié des dépens ;

I forgive, excuse you half the charges.

Le roi lui a fait grace ; The king has granted him his pardon.

15. *Faire une grace* is to do a favour.

Faites-moi une grace ; Do me a favour.

16. We also say,

Il lui fait grace, for, He favours, befriends him.

Dieu lui en fasse la grace ! God grant he may !

1. 29. *Fleurir* signifies, in its proper sense, to blossom ; and
 2. figuratively, to flourish, to be in repute. In order to distinguish
 between

between these two significations, an irregularity in some of the inflexions of this verb has been introduced, which is worth remarking. The regular participle in *ant*, of *fleurir*, we know, is *fleurissant* :

Les arbres fleurissant; The trees being in blossom.

But in a figurative sense it is *florissant* :

Un état florissant; A flourishing state, &c.

The same particularity prevails in the imperfect, under the same circumstances :

Cet arbre fleurissoit deux fois tous les ans;

That tree blossomed twice every year.

Les arts & les sciences florissoient alors;

Arts and sciences flourished at that time.

We say figuratively, with the participle of this verb,

Un style fleuri; A florid style.

Un teint fleuri; A high, blooming complexion.

30. *Se fier* (to trust) may be construed with *à*, *en*, or *sur* :

Se fier à son mérite; To trust to one's merit.

Se fier sur son mérite; To rely on.

Se fier en; To confide in.

31. *Fournir* (to afford, supply with) governs either an accusative of the person, and a genitive of the thing; or a dative of the person, and an accusative of the thing :

La rivière le fournit de sel;

Literally, The river furnishes him with salt.

La rivière lui fournit du sel;

Literally, The river furnishes salt to him.

The former mode of expression signifies properly that the river furnishes him with as much salt as he can use in his family; the latter may signify, besides, that the river affords him so great a quantity of salt, as to sell and trade therewith; (at least the signification does not restrain the quantity merely to his own consumption, and may therefore be extended to the sense supposed by Chambaud.)

32. *Gens* (people) is very worthy of notice in its constructions. *Gens* is a plural noun, which is never said of a

- determinate number of people, unless attended by an adjective : therefore we do not say, *Trois ou quatre gens*, &c. as in
1. English, *three or four people*, &c. but we say,
Trois honnêtes gens ; Three honest persons.
Dix jeunes gens ; Ten young people.
 2. And without an adjective,
Trois ou quatre personnes ; Three or four persons.
 3. *Gens* is masculine when it comes before its adjective, and
 4. feminine when it comes after it :
Ce sont des gens résolus ; *ce sont de bonnes gens* ;
They are resolute people ; they are good people.
 5. But though the adjective coming before *gens* be feminine,
 - 5a. yet if there follows another adjective, or a participle, this last, by the figure *syllépse*, must be masculine :
Il y a de certaines gens qui sont bien fots ;
Some people are very foolish.
Ce sont les meilleures gens que j'aie jamais vus ;
They are the best sort of people I have ever seen.
 6. The adjective *tout*, coming before *gens*, is put in the masculine, when it is attended by no other adjective, or by one
 7. which is common in its termination ; but when the adjective is feminine, *tout* must be put in the feminine also :
Tous les gens qui ; All the people who.
Tous les honnêtes gens ; All honest people.
Toutes les vieilles gens ; All old people.
 8. *Gens* signifies also *domestics*, and in that sense is used with a determinate number, though without an intervening adjective :
Il arriva avec quatre de ses gens ;
He arrived with *four* of his *men, servants, or people*.
 9. 33. *Bonne grace*, in the singular, implies a *genteel graceful manner and deportment* :
Elle a bonne grace ; She is *genteel*.
Il salue de bonne grace ; He bows in a *genteel manner*.
 10. In the plural, *bonnes grâces* signifies *favour, esteem, &c.*
Il est dans ses bonnes grâces ;
He is in her *favour, good graces* (as we also say in English).
Conservez-moi l'honneur de vos bonnes grâces ;
Do me the favour to continue me in your *esteem*.

34. *Jouer (to play)* is used both in an active and neuter sense :

Jouer quelque chose ;

To play for something (i. e. properly, to risk something).

Jouons un écu ; Let us play for a crown.

The particle *à*, used after the word *playing*, before the names of games and sportive exercises, is expressed in French by *à* :

Jouer aux cartes ; To play at cards.

Jouer au piquet, aux échecs, à la paume, aux barres ;

To play at piquet, chess, tennis, running-bars, &c.

And the particle *on*, used after *playing*, before the names of instruments of music, by *de* :

Jouer des instrumens, du violon, de la flûte, &c.

To play upon instruments, upon the violin, flute, &c.

PHRASES.

4.

Jouer une pièce de théâtre ; To act a play.

Jouer gros jeu ; To play high or deep.

Jouer quelqu'un ; To make a fool of one, play upon him.

Jouer au plus fin avec quelqu'un ;

To vie with any one in cunning, to play at sharps with any one.

Jouer de la prunelle ; To ogle or leer at.

Jouer à quitte ou à double ;

Literally, To play at double or quit ; figuratively, to run all hazards.

Jouer une pièce (or jouer pièce, SULLY) un tour à quelqu'un ;
or, lui en jouer d'une ;

To play or serve one a trick, put a trick upon one.

Jouer, before an infinitive with the preposition *à*, signifies to hazard, venture, run the risk of :

Vous jouez à vous faire tuer ;

You venture your life, or run the risk of losing it.

Se jouer, is to sport, divert one's self :

6.

Se jouer de quelqu'un ;

To make sport for one's self of any one, to make a fool of him.

Jouer is, besides, used in some phrases like these :

7.

Ne vous jouez pas à lui ; Do not meddle with him.

Ne vous y jouez pas ; Do not fool with it ; let it alone.

35. *Jour* and *journée* (a day). The fundamental difference between these words, as well as all like them, is the same as that which has already been pointed out between *an* and *année*; the one being the *name of the portion of time*, the other the *portion so named*. The following loose observations of Chambaud, on their use and application, will not, however, be wholly unprofitable.

1. *Journée* is usually understood and said of what is done *during* one day :
Payer la journée aux ouvriers;
 To pay the workmen *for their day's labour*.
Marcher à grandes journées;
 To advance by forced marches, *marching a great distance each day*.
Il y a huit journées de chemin;
 It is an *eight days' journey*.
2. We say,
La journée d'Actium, la journée de Fontenoy;
 The *battle of Actium*, and of *Fontenoy*.
3. We use *jour* only when we speak of time, and absolutely ;
Les jours sont courts ; The days are short.
Il y a plus de huit jours que cela est passé;
 It is more than a week since that happened.
4. We say indifferently,
Voilà un beau jour, and, une belle journée;
 This is a fine day.
J'ai travaillé tout le jour, and toute la journée;
 I have worked the whole day.
 (Tout defining, evidently, the extent of the meaning of both.)
5. The following phrase,—*Vivre au jour la journée*, To live from hand to mouth, i. e. to live each day, by the day's work or gain,—shews the difference between *jour* and *journée*.
6. There is the same difference between *matin* and *matinée*, *soir* and *soirée*.
7. 36. *Laisser* signifies to let, leave, and sometimes to forget :
Il ne veut pas me laisser parler ; He will not let me speak.

Laissez

Laissez ici votre manteau ; Leave your cloak here.

J'ai laissé ma bourse sur ma table ;

I have left or forgotten my purse upon the table.

Laisser being construed with *ne* and *pas*, and governing and preceding an infinitive with *de*, denotes only affirmation in the next verb, and is rendered into English by *yet*, *still*, *nevertheless*, for all that :

Cela ne laisse pas d'être vrai, quoique vous en doutiez ;

Although you doubt it, it is nevertheless true, &c.

37. *Livres* and *francs* have the same signification, but are not used indiscriminately ; yet so perplexed is their use, that it is difficult to give any clear and easy directions concerning it.

In the enumeration of sums, when *mille* is followed by *cent* ; as also when the terms *de rente*, *de pension*, are added ; *livres* is used, and not *francs* :

Six mille neuf cents livres ; Six thousand nine hundred livres.

Il a quatre mille livres de pension ;

He has a pension of four thousand livres.

Il a vingt mille livres de rente ;

He has twenty thousand livres per annum.

Un, joined to another number, takes always *livre*, and not *franc* after it :

Vingt & une livre, trente & une livre, &c.

Twenty-one pounds, thirty-one pounds, &c.

When the sum is simply *thousands*, i. e. without being followed by *cent*, we must use *francs*, and not *livres* :

Sa maison lui a coûté vingt mille francs ;

His house cost him twenty thousand livres.

Un sac de mille francs ;

A bag in which there is a thousand livres.

We say too,

Quatre francs ; Four livres.

Six francs ; Six livres.

Sept francs ; Seven livres.

Huit francs ; Eight livres :

To Vingt francs ; Twenty livres.

Quarante francs ; Forty livres.

Quatre-vingt francs ; Eighty livres.

Cent francs ; An hundred livres.

5. When the sum is *hundreds*, and exceeds *one hundred*, and especially when we speak of a debt, we use, indifferently, *livres* or *francs*:

Il me doit deux cents livres, or, deux cents francs;

He owes me two hundred livres.

Je dois quinze ou seize cents livres or francs;

I owe fifteen or sixteen hundred livres.

6. Instead of *une livre* or *un franc*, of *deux livres*, *trois livres*, we
 7. say, for the first, *vingt sous*, twenty pence; for the second,
 8. *quarante sous*, forty pence; and for the third, *un écu*, half a
 9. crown. Instead of *cinq livres* or *cinq francs*, we use *cent sous*, a
 10. crown; instead of *trente livres* or *francs*, *dix écus*, ten half-
 11. crowns; and of *soixante*, *vingt écus*, twenty half-crowns. But
 12. when some odd *sous* make part of the sum, we are then always
 to use *livre*, and not *franc*:—*Quatre livres dix sous*, four livres
 and ten pence; *six livres huit sous*, six livres and eight pence.

13. When people distinguish, as in countries foreign from
 France, between the *livre sterling* or *pound sterling*, and the *livre*
Tournois or the *French livre*, they must always use *livre*:

Il a apporté de France douze mille livres Tournois, c'est-à-dire
près de cinq cents livres sterling;

He has brought from France ten thousand livres, i.e. near
 five hundred pounds sterling.

1. 38. *Un coup de main* signifies a bold action:

Un homme de main;

A man fit for a bold and hazardous enterprize.

Des coups de main; Handy blows.

Main forte; Assistance, help, succour.

A pleines mains; Largely, plentifully.

Sous main; Underhand, secretly.

Donner or prêter la main à quelqu'un; To help one.

Donner les mains à quelque chose; To consent to a thing.

Etre en main, or à main pour faire une chose;

To be in a convenient posture or situation to do a thing.

En venir aux mains; To come to blows, to engage.

Prêter main forte à quelqu'un;

To succour, come to his assistance.

Donner de main en main; To hand about.

Cela est fait à la main; That is a mere collusion.

Lever la main;

To take one's oath before a judge, to swear, to lay one's hand upon the bible.

☞ To have a good hand at any thing may be well rendered, *S'entendre à faire quelque chose.*

39. *Marcher* and *se promener* both signify to walk; with this difference, that *marcher* is said of going out for business, and imports going from one place to another on foot; and *se promener* is said of taking a walk, exercising one's self for pleasure:

J'ai beaucoup marché aujourd'hui;

I have walked a great deal to-day.

Je me suis promené aujourd'hui une heure dans le jardin;

I walked an hour to-day in the garden.

We say,

Se promener à cheval, ou en carrosse;

To take a ride, an airing on horseback, or in a coach

Se promener sur l'eau, sur la rivière;

To go upon the water, &c.

Envoyer quelqu'un se promener;

To send one packing, about his business.

Promener is also used actively:

Promener quelqu'un;

To lead one about, take him with one to walk.

Promener sa vue sur différens objets;

To extend, carry one's view to different objects.

Promener, dans les mers d'Asie, un pavillon formidable (RAYNAL, Hist. Philosoph. & Politique);

To display, all over the Asiatic seas, a formidable standard—from one sea to another.

Marcher sur quelqu'un, or sur quelque chose;

To tread upon somebody or something.

Marcher sur les traces de quelqu'un; To follow one's steps.

Marcher droit; To act uprightly, properly.

Je le ferai bien marcher droit;

I'll keep him to his good behaviour.

1. 40. *Marier, épouser, se marier* (to marry). The two first are active, and the last is a reflected verb, signifying *to marry*, with a particular distinction, as will appear in the following examples :

Monsieur A — doit épouser Mademoiselle B, & c'est M. le Curé qui les mariera ;

Mr. A — is to marry Miss B, and the rector or parson of the parish is to marry them.

Elle ne veut point se marier ; She will not marry.

41. *Mener* and *porter* (to carry), *amener* and *apporter* (to bring).

3. *Mener* is said of animals, whether rational or irrational, which have by nature the power of walking, and have not been disabled from it by accident or malady.

4. *Porter* is said of things which have no power of beginning motion ; and of animals, whether rational or irrational, which have not yet walked, or can no longer walk, through natural or contingent infirmity :

Menez Monsieur chez cette dame ;

Carry, take, conduct the gentleman to that lady's house.

Menez le cheval à l'écurie, ou chez le maréchal ;

Take the horse to the stable, or to the farrier's.

Portez-y vos chansons nouvelles ;

Carry your new songs thither.

Portez cette étoffe chez le tailleur ;

Carry that stuff to the taylor.

Cet enfant est las, portez-le à la maison ;

That child is tired, carry him home, because he cannot walk.

5. Again, *mener* and *amener*, *porter* and *apporter*, import a relation of place, and answer to the questions *where, whither* : *amener* and *apporter* are used with reference to the local adverbs, *here, hither* ; and *mener* and *porter*, to *there, thither* :

Amenez-moi votre ami ; Bring your friend to me.

Aportez-moi votre ouvrage ; Bring me your work.

Il les y a menés ; He carried them thither.

Portez votre ouvrage à votre sœur ;

Carry your work to your sister.

42. *Mourir* (to die), joined with certain substantives, assumes a sense correspondent to their signification, in an extreme and excessive degree.

<i>Mourir</i>	{ <i>de faim,</i>	to starve with hunger.
	<i>de soif,</i>	to be choaked with thirst.
	<i>de froid,</i>	to be extremely cold.
	<i>de chaud,</i>	to be excessively hot.
	<i>de peur,</i>	to be affrighted to death.
	<i>d'envie,</i>	{ to long impatiently, eagerly for.
	<i>d'impatience,</i>	
	<i>de chagrin,</i>	to grieve one's self to death.
	<i>de déplaisir,</i>	to be mortally vexed.
	<i>de douleur,</i>	to be in an agony of grief, miserable beyond description.

43. *Neuf* and *nouveau* (new) have something peculiar in their construction: *neuf* always comes after the noun; and *nouveau* may either be put before or after. But there is this difference in their application, that *neuf* is only used when we speak of material objects which belong to mechanical arts, and *nouveau* of immaterial things which belong to liberal arts, and relate to the mind, or else are produced by nature:

Un habit neuf; A new suit of clothes.

Un nouvel ouvrage, or, *un ouvrage nouveau*;

A new performance.

Of these two expressions,—*un livre neuf*, and *un livre nouveau*,—the former is said of a book on its first coming out of the bookseller's shop, not yet used or worn; the latter imports its contents to have been newly composed, and, in short, considers it merely as the work of the mind. *Neuf* is also said with respect to what is newly done; and *nouveau*, to what surprises one, as strange and unexpected: thus, *une maison nouvelle*, is an house which he had not seen before, and which therefore is new and strange to us; but, *une maison neuve*, is an house newly built, without any regard being paid to the effect which the sight of it produces on us.

44. *Parents* is applicable to all those with whom we are connected by the ties of blood.

His or her parent is, *son père ou sa mère*; and his parents, *son père & sa mère*, or *ses père & mère*.

1. 45. *Personne* has been considered in the Syntax already, as a pronoun; but it is besides a noun feminine of very extensive use; answering in its signification to a man as well as a woman, when mentioned without any particular reference to sex:

Je vis hier la personne dont vous parlez;

I saw the person yesterday (whether man or woman) of whom you are speaking.

2. (*L'homme* and *la femme* being used only out of scorn and contempt, and *le monsieur* and *la dame* only in derision and by way of banter, or when we speak of persons in a station eminently superior to one's own.)

Des personnes honnêtes & civiles;

Genteel and civil people or persons.

3. Although the noun *personne*, when used in the plural, requires an adjective feminine, yet if two adjectives, or some pronouns referring to it, meet in the same sentence, the pronouns and the second adjective must be masculine, regard being then had, by the figure *syllepsis*, to the thing signified by the word, viz. *men in general*, and not the grammatical gender of the word:

Les personnes consommées dans la vertu, ont en toutes choses une droiture d'esprit, & une attention judicieuse qui les empêche d'être médisans;

People perfect in virtue have in every thing an uprightness of mind and a judicious attention, which prevents them from being slanderers.

It is to be observed, that in order to make the adjective which refers to *personnes* masculine,

7. 1st, There must be a sufficient number of words between the noun and adjective, to divert the attention from the gender of *personnes* to its import, as in the aforesaid instance.
- 2dly, That the adjective must not be governed by the verb which has *personnes* for its subject; otherwise it must be feminine, whatever number of words there may be between *personnes* and the adjective: thus we say,

Les personnes qui ont le cœur bon, & les sentimens de l'ame élevés, sont ordinairement généreuses;

People who are good-natured, and have elevated sentiments, are commonly generous.

Nor

Nor do we use the masculine pronoun *ils*, though never so far from *personnes*, when it is near the adjective feminine, referring to *personnes*; lest the eye and the ear should be shocked by it :

Les personnes qui ont l'esprit pénétrant, & une expérience de beaucoup d'années, sont presque toujours si judicieuses, qu'elles se trompent rarement ;

People of a sagacious mind, that have the experience of many years, are almost always so judicious that they are seldom mistaken.

Again, we do not say, 10.

Les personnes qui ont l'ame belle, sont si ravies, quand elles trouvent l'occasion de reconnoître un bienfait, qu'ils ne la laissent jamais échapper ;

People of a noble soul are so delighted when they find an opportunity of being grateful for a good turn, that they never let it slip.

Because the first pronoun (*elles*) determines the gender of the second. But we say, 11.

Il y a à Paris une société de personnes très-savantes, auxquelles l'Europe est très-redevable d'un nombre infini de connoissances utiles ; ils n'ont en vue que la perfection des arts & des sciences ; & c'est dans ce motif, qu'ils font tous les jours d'utiles découvertes.

There is at Paris a society of very learned men, to whom Europe is much beholden for a vast deal of useful knowledge ; they have nothing in view but the perfection of arts and sciences ; and it is with this motive that they every day make useful discoveries.

In which instance the pronoun *ils* refers to *men*, implied by *personnes*, and is therefore masculine, being sufficiently removed from *personnes* to admit of the syllepsis ; and the adjective *savantes* is feminine, because it is so near to the feminine *personnes* ; a similar reason also influencing the gender of *auxquelles*, inasmuch as that is generally contiguous to the adjective feminine.

NOTE.

And here, as mention has been made of the figure *syllipsis*, we will take leave to digress for a moment, in order to cite another instance of it with respect to number :

De deux mille hommes qu'ils étoient, six cents demeurèrent sur la place, & le reste se sauva, par la connoissance qu'ils avoient du pays ;

Out of two thousand men that were there, six hundred fell upon the spot, and the rest escaped by their being acquainted with the country.

Where we see *ils avoient* used with a reference to *le reste*, on account of the signification it implies of a *plurality of men*; its situation being sufficiently remote to reconcile the eye and ear to the *syllable*, while the immediate connection of *se saura* with *le reste* precludes the use of it there with any propriety.

1. 46. *Pâque* is spelt without an *s*, and is masculine, when it signifies *Easter-day*:
Pâque est bien reculé & bien chaud cette année;
Easter is very late and very hot this year.
2. But it is feminine when it is used for the *Jewish passover*:
Manger la Pâque; To eat the *passover*.
Préparer la Pâque; To prepare the *passover*.
3. *Pâques* (in the plural number) signifying the *devotions of that season*, is feminine:
Mes Pâques sont faites;
I have received the sacrament this Easter.
4. We say, ironically, of immoral people who receive the sacrament at that time, *Faire de belles Pâques*.
5. 47. *Se passer de quelque chose* (to go or do without a thing):
Si vous ne voulez pas me donner cela, il faudra bien que je m'en passe;
If you won't give me that, I must go without it.
6. 48. *Penser* and *songer* both signify to *think*, with the preposition *à* before their regimen:
Penser à quelque chose; To think of a thing, consider it.
7. *Vous ne songez pas à ce que vous faites*, [which is better than *vous ne pensez pas*, &c.)
You do not think of what you are doing.
- 7a. But when *to think* is used as a verb *active*, and not *neuter*, it is *penser*, and not *songer*:
On pense de vous cent choses désavantageuses;
People think an hundred things to your disadvantage.
8. *Penser à mal* signifies, to have some ill design:
Il ne pense pas à mal; He means no harm.
9. *Penser*, in the compound of the present, and the simple preterite, before an infinitive without a preposition, signifies any thing that was like, or near to have been done, but has not been done, and is englished by, *to be near, to be like, to be within a trifle of*—:

Il pensa se noyer ; He was nearly drowned.

J'ai pensé mourir ; I had like to have died.

Nous pensâmes nous couper la gorge ;

We were very near cutting one another's throats.

49. *Plus, davantage, encore*, all signify *more*, but in different ways. *Plus* is never used at the end of an affirmative sentence ; therefore say,—

Donnez-m'en davantage ; Give me more of it.

En voulez-vous davantage ? En voulez-vous encore ?

Will you have any more ?

Encore un peu ; A little more.

And never, *Donnez-m'en plus, En voulez-vous plus ? Un peu encore.*

Davantage, at the end of negative sentences, requires that two negatives should be used, after the accustomed manner of French negation ; whereas *plus*, in the same situation, requires only one, viz. *ne* :

Je n'en veux pas davantage ; or, je n'en veux plus ;

I do not chuse any more of it.

Davantage can never govern a noun after it, as *plus* ; therefore we must not say,

Mangez davantage de pain avec votre viande ;—but,

Mangez plus de pain avec votre viande ;

Eat more bread with your meat.

Encore, at the end of negative sentences, does not signify *more*, but as yet, or again :

Je n'en veux pas encore ; I won't have any yet.

50. *Plaire* (to please), must be attended by *à* before a noun or pronoun, i. e. governs a dative :

Plaire à quelqu'un ; To please one.

The impersonal *il plaît* is rendered personally into English, with the dative made the nominative of the English verb :

S'il vous plaît ; If you please.

S'il plaît à Dieu ; If God pleases.

With respect to the verbal regimen of *plaître*, a difference is visible when it is personal, and when it is impersonal. When it is personal, which seems to be but rare in this form, its regimen is preceded by *à* :

Cela lui plaît à dire ; He is pleased to say so.

When

9. When it is impersonal, its regimen is preceded by *de* :
Il a plu au roi d'ordonner— ;
 The king has been pleased to order—.
10. It is besides made a reflected verb :
Se plaire à quelque chose ;
 To take pleasure, or delight in a thing.
Il se plaît à faire du mal ; He delights in [doing] mischief.

51. *Peinture*, *portrait*, and *tableau*, all signify a picture or painting, but each with something peculiar when taken in its proper sense.

1. 1st. *Peinture* signifies the art of painting and drawing :
Il excelle dans la peinture ; He excels in the art of painting.
2. 2d. The colours in general :
La peinture de ce tableau n'est pas encore sèche ;
 The colours of that picture are not dry yet.
3. 3d. What is painted on a wall or wainscot :
On ne peut rien distinguer aux peintures du dôme de S. Paul ;
 One cannot distinguish any thing in the paintings of the cupola of St. Paul's.
Les peintures du dôme des Invalides sont des chef-d'œuvres de l'art ;
 The paintings of the cupola of the Invalids are masterpieces of art.
4. *Portrait* signifies a picture drawn after the life to represent any particular person :
Voilà mon portrait ; That is my picture.
Le portrait du roi ne lui ressemble pas ;
 The king's picture is not like him.

5. *Tableau* signifies, and is said of any picture upon wood, cloth, or brass, representing a piece of history, landscape, building ; in short, any thing which can be thought of, even what is drawn from the imagination, or after a statue or bust ; nay, a picture taken from one after the life, is not called *portrait*, but *tableau*.

6. In a figurative sense, these three words are considered as synonymous :

Se bien garder de faire une chose ;
To avoid doing a thing, to be sure not to do it.

54. *Rompre, briser, casser* (to break), have something particular in their application, which we shall do well to remark.

1. *Rompre* is said of a thing broken asunder ; *briser*, of things broken in pieces :

Un des piés de la table est rompu ;
One of the feet of the table is broken.

La table est brisée ; The table is broken to pieces.

2. *Rompre* is said of metals, stones, and wood ; and *casser* is said of wares, glass, and such like fragile substances :

La colonne est rompue, ou brisée ;
The post or pillar is broken asunder, or in pieces.

Le pot est cassé, les verres sont cassés, &c.
The pot is broken, the glasses are broken, &c.

3. (*To bruise is bossuer, faire une bosse ; and to split, fendre.*)

4. In a figurative sense, we say,

Casser un testament, un contrat, des vœux ; (and never *briser*, or *rompre, un testament, &c.*)

To reverse, annul, make void, a will, contract, &c.

Casser un parlement ; To dissolve a parliament.

Casser un officier ; To cashier, break an officer,

Casser des troupes ; To disband troops.

Casser quelqu'un ; To turn one out of his place.

5. ¶. *Rompre la glace*, signifies to take the first steps in an affair, overcome the first difficulties of it.

6. 55. *Seulement* signifies sometimes *so much as, even* :

J'ai salué une personne qui n'a pas seulement daigné me regarder, &c.

I have bowed to one who has-not so much as vouchsafed to look at me,

7. 56. *Suppléer* (to supply, make up) is sometimes indifferently used, either with the accusative or dative case :

Je suppléerai le reste, or au reste ; I will make up the rest.

8. But *suppléer*, with an accusative regimen, signifies properly,
9. to make up all that is deficient ; and with a dative, to be sufficient for supplying, or making amends for, the defects of a thing :

La valeur supplée au nombre ;

Valour supplies the deficiency of numbers.

57. *Traiter mal* (to abuse) implies such kind of ill-treatment 1.
as does not go beyond ill language ; and *mal traiter*, such as 2.
extends to blows.

58. *Valoir* is to be as good as, to be equal in value, where any 3.
comparison is made :

Vous ne les valez pas ; You are not as good as they are.

Il valoit mieux qu'elle ; He was better than she.

It signifies to be worth, when we speak of things bought and 4.
sold :

Cela ne vaut pas dix chelins ; That is not worth ten shillings.

NOTE.

But to be worth, when we speak of people's fortune and circumstances, is expressed 5.
in French by *avoir du bien*, and sometimes *avoir vaillant* : 6.

Il a dix mille livres sterling de bien ; He is worth ten thousand pounds.

Il n'a pas mille livres sterling vaillant ; He is not worth a thousand pounds.

Il a du bien ; He is worth money.

Il n'a rien ; He is worth nothing.

59. *Voilà* and *voici*.—*Voilà* points at something or some- 7.
body, and has the force of a verb, making a complete sentence, 8.
with a noun after it, or a pronoun before, which is usually
englished by *there is, that is, there are, those are, &c.*

Voilà l'homme ; That is the man.

Le voilà ; There he is.

La voilà ; There she is, &c.

Voici is construed after the same manner, but it denotes, and 9.
points at, a very near object. Sometimes *le voici* and *voilà* are 10.
followed by a relative and a verb :

Le voici qui vient ; Here he is coming.

La voilà qui gronde ; There she is scolding.

There is a material difference to be observed in the use of
voici and *voilà* : in many sentences where they are used, *voici* 11.
refers to something coming after it, and *voilà* to something 12.
which had gone before :

*Je l'ai envoyé chercher, & voici pourquoi ; j'ai des affaires qui
exigent que nous nous voyions.*

I have sent for him, and this is the reason ; I have business which requires that we should see one another.

Voici there marks that the reason is to follow :

J'ai des affaires avec cet homme, qui exigent que nous nous voyions, voilà pourquoi je l'ai envoyé chercher ;

I have business with that man, which requires that we should see one another, that is the reason why I have sent for him.

Where *voilà* evidently shews the reason to have preceded it.

13. *Voilà*, followed by an adjective, and preceded by a pronoun personal, denotes, and stands for, the verb *être* in the present tense :

Voyez comme les voilà mouillés ; See how wet they are.

Comme la voilà triste ; How sorrowful she is.

Nous voilà quittes ; We are quit, or even.

Les voilà fâchés ; They are vexed or angry.

Voilà qu'on m'appelle ; Somebody calls me.

Ne nous voilà pas mal ; We are in a fine pickle.

Voilà bien du préambule ! What a deal of preamble !

Les sottes raisons que voilà ! Foolish reasons those !

1. 60. *Il y a*, with a negative and *que*, is used in the following acceptance :

Vous vous imaginez qu'il n'y a qu'à demander ;

You fancy that you have nothing to do but ask.

Elle croit qu'il n'y a qu'à dire ;

She thinks that speaking will do.

61. The names of some parts of the bodies of some animals are not the same in French as in English.

2. With respect to the foot, we use *pié* of such animals only as
3. are hoofed ; and *patte* of all the others :

Le pié d'un cheval ; The foot of a horse.

D'un bœuf ; Of an ox.

D'un cerf, &c. Of a stag, &c.

La patte d'un chien ; The paw of a dog.

D'un chat ; Of a cat.

D'une souris ; Of a mouse.

D'un lion ; Of a lion.

D'un oiseau, &c. Of a bird, &c.

We say,

Les griffes *d'un lion* ; The claws of a lion. 1.

D'un chat ; Of a cat.

Les serres *d'un aigle*, *d'un épervier* ; 2.

The talons of an eagle, a hawk, &c.

Les bras *d'une écrevisse* & *d'un cancre* ; 3.

The claws of a crayfish and of a crab.

Les défenses *d'un sanglier* ; The hinder claws of a wild boar. 4.

With respect to the mouth, we say,

La bouche *d'un cheval* ; A horse's mouth. 5.

La gueule *d'un lion*, *d'un chien*, *d'un chat*, *d'un loup*, *d'un serpent*, *d'un dragon*, &c. 6.

The mouth of a lion, &c.

Le muffle *d'un cerf*, *d'un lion*, *d'un tigre*, *d'un taureau* ; 7.

The muzzle or mouth of a stag, &c.

We say, for the nostrils of a horse, Les naseaux *d'un cheval*, 8.
and not les narines :

Le groin *d'un porceau* ; The snout of a hog. 9.

La hure *d'un sanglier*, *d'un saumon*, & *d'un brochet* ; 8.

The head of a wild boar, of a pike, and the jowl of a salmon.

Le poil *d'un chien*, *d'un chat*, *d'un cheval*, & des autres 9.
animaux ;

The hair of a dog, &c.

La crinière *d'un cheval*, & *d'un lion* ; 10.

The mane of a horse, and of a lion.

Du crin ; Horse-hair (of the tail). 11.

The hair of the human body is le poil ; but that of the head, 12.
les cheveux. 13.

Speaking of deer, we call bois what in English is called 14.
horns or head :

Un bois *de cerf*, *de daim*, *de chevreuil* ;

A stag's, doe's, or roebuck's horn.

But when it is manufactured, we call it corne : 15.

Le manche de mon couteau est de corne de cerf, &c.

The handle of my knife is of deer's horn.

62. The sounds of beasts and birds deserve to be remarked.

Les oiseaux chantent & gazouillent ; Birds sing and chirp. 16.

1. Le ramage des oiseaux ;
The singing, chirping, or warbling of birds.
2. Le perroquet parle ; The parrot talks.
3. La p. caquette ; The magpie chatters.
4. Le merle siffle ; The black-bird whistles.
5. La colombe gémit ; The dove cooes.
6. Le coq chante ; The cock crows.
7. Le corbeau & la grenouille croassent ;
The raven and the frog croak.
8. Le chien aboie & hurle ; The dog barks and howls.
9. Les petits chiens japent ; The puppies yelp.
10. Le chat miaule & file ; The cat mews and purrs.
11. Le loup hurle ; The wolf howls.
12. Le renard glapit ; The fox yelps.
13. Le lièvre crie ; The hare squeaks.
14. La brebis bêle ; The sheep bleats or bays.
15. Le serpent siffle ; The snake hisses.
16. Le porceau grogne ; The hog grunts.
17. Le cheval hennit ; The horse neighs.
18. L'âne brait ; The ass brays.
19. Le bœuf & la vache beuglent & meuglent ;
The ox and cow bellow and low.
20. Le taureau mugit ; The bull roars.
21. Le lion rugit ; The lion roars.

63. The following list of verbs, attended by certain nouns without the article, with a particular, idiomatical meaning, will not be found unworthy of attention.

22. Ajouter	foi	to give credit, believe
23. Avoir	accès,	to have free access.
	affaire,	to have to do, or business.
	besoin,	to want, to be in want of.
	appétit,	to have a stomach, or
	bon	a good appetite.
	grand } appétit,	
	faim,	to be hungry.
	grand faim,	very hungry.
	soif,	to be dry or thirsty.
	grand soif,	— very thirsty.

Avoir

Avoir

froid,
chaud,
cours
envie,
dessein,
droit,
égard,
coutume,
espérance,
compassion,
pitié,
honte,
attention,
part,
patience,
confiance,
peur,
connoissance, avis,
permission
carte blanche,
plein pouvoir,
tout pouvoir,
lieu,
sujet,
raison,
justice,
soin,
grand soin,
ordre,
occasion,
obligation,
tort,
grand tort,
horreur,
vent & marée
querelle,
rapport,

to be cold.
—— hot.
to take, be in vogue.
to have a mind, desire.
to design, intend.
to have a right.
to have a regard.
to use, to be wont.
to hope.
to compassionate, commiserate.
to pity, have pity for.
to be ashamed.
to attend to.
to have a share of, to be con-
to have patience. [cerned in.
to repose confidence in.
to fear, be afraid.
to have notice.
—— permission, leave, or
—— power.
full power, and
liberty.
to have room.
—— reason.
to be in the right,
to have justice.
—— care.
—— great or special care,
to receive orders.
to have an opportunity.
to be obligated.
to be in the wrong.
—— very much in the wrong,
to quake with horror,
to sail with wind and tide,
to have a quarrel,
to regard, respect, refer to.

mal { *à la tête,*
aux dents,
aux yeux,
aux pieds,
au ventre,
au côté,

to have

{ the head-ach,
tooth-ach.
sore eyes,
sore feet.
the belly-ach.
a pain in one's side.

1. *Avoir*

mal	{	au bras, à l'épaule, au nez, à l'oreille,	to have	{	a pain in one's arm.
					a pain in one's shoulder.
					a fore nose,
					fore ears.

2. *Chanter*

pouilles, goguettes, matines, vépres,	{		to call names, rail at one.
	{		to rattle one sharply.
	{		to sing } matins.
	{		} vespers.

3. *Chercher*

chicane, fortune, querelle, malheur,		to cavil.
		to seek one's fortune.
		to pick a quarrel.
		to court misfortune.

4. *Couper*

court,	to make it short.
--------	-------------------

5. *Courir*

risque,	to run the risk.
---------	------------------

6. *Crier*

vengeance,	to call for vengeance.
------------	------------------------

7. *Demander*

audience, avis, caution, compte, conseil, grace, pardon, quartier, justice, raison, satisfaction,	{	to ask an audience.
		— advice.
		— security.
		— an account,
		— counsel.
		— pardon.
		to beg for quarter.
		to demand justice.
		— — satisfaction.

8. *Demeurer*

court,	to be at a stand, to stop.
--------	----------------------------

9. *Dire*

vrai,	to speak truth.
faux,	to say what is false.
matines,	to say matins.
vépres, &c.	— vespers, &c.

10. *Donner*

atteinte,	to strike at.
audience,	to give an audience.
avis,	to give advice, to let one know.
beau jeu,	— fair play.
conseil,	— counsel.
caution,	— bail, security.

Donner

Donner	<i>carrière à son esprit,</i>	to give full scope to one's wit.	1.
	<i>congé,</i>	— leave, also an holiday.	
	<i>courage,</i>	to encourage.	
	<i>permission,</i>	to give permission.	
	<i>envie,</i>	to give one a desire, set him agog.	
	<i>exemple,</i>	to set an example.	
	<i>parole,</i>	to give one's promise.	
	<i>pouvoir,</i>	— power.	
	<i>plein pouvoir,</i>	— full power,	
	<i>tout pouvoir,</i>	and	
	<i>carte blanche,</i>	— liberty.	
	<i>part,</i>	to impart a thing to one.	
	<i>ordre,</i>	to give orders.	
	<i>charge,</i>	to charge one.	
	<i>vent,</i>	to give vent.	
	<i>leçon,</i>	to give a lesson.	
	<i>heure,</i>	to appoint an hour.	
	<i>jour,</i>	to fix upon a day.	
	<i>cours,</i>	to make a thing current.	
	<i>prise,</i>	to give one an advantage, a hold	
	<i>quartier,</i>	to give quarter. [upon one.	
	<i>quittance,</i>	to give a receipt, discharge.	
	<i>rendez-vous,</i>	to make an assignation, appoint	
		[a place of meeting.	
	<i>lieu,</i>	to give room.	
	<i>sujet,</i>	— occasion.	
	<i>raison,</i>	— reason.	
	<i>occasion,</i>	— an opportunity.	
Entendre	<i>malice</i>	{ to be acquainted with the	2.
	<i> finesse</i>		
	<i>raillerie*,</i>	{ jest.	
	<i>vêpres,</i>	to take a joke well.	
		to be at vespers.	
L'échapper	<i>belle,</i>	to have a narrow escape.	
Faire	<i>abjuration,</i>	to abjure, recant.	4.
	<i>abstinence</i>	to fast.	
	<i>alliance,</i>	to make an alliance.	
	<i>halte,</i>	to halt.	
	<i>aiguade,</i>	to take in fresh water.	
	<i>amas,</i>	to heap up.	

Faire

* Il n'entend pas raillerie; He is no joker.

1. *Faire**argent,*
amitié,} *sur la per-*
} *sonne de*
} *quelqu'un,**affaire,*
attention,
binet,
cas (de)
compte,
affront,
banqueroute,
bonne ou} *à*
} *quelque*
} *chose,*
} *mau-*
} *vaïse*
} *mine**brèche,*
bombance,
bonne chère,
grand chère,
choix,
dépit (à quelqu'un),
difficulté,
*conscience,**compassion,*
confidence,
corps neuf,
éclat,
envie,
emplette,
épreuve,
excuse,
face,
feu,
faux feu,
faute,
fête,
feinte,
fond,
fortune,
flèche,
front,
*foi,*to raise money.
to shew one's self kind to one,
[do him favours.
to arrest one.to make an end of a business.
to attend to, mind.
to make use of a save-all.
to value.
to assure one's self.
to affront.
to break, be a bankrupt.} to put a good or a bad face
} on the matter.
to cut.

to feast, live, feed luxuriously.

to make choice of, chuse.
to vex, despite one.
to make a scruple.
to scruple, to make a con-
science of.to excite compassion.
to trust a secret with one.
to take a new lease.
to break out, make a noise.
to raise envy.
to purchase.
to make an experiment, trial.
to beg pardon, excuse one's self.
to face.to fire.
to flash in the pan, miss fire.
to want for a thing.
to entertain one agreeably.
to pretend.
to depend upon.
to make a fortune.
to make a shift.
to face.
to prove.*Faire*

Faire

<i>grace,</i>	to favour.	
<i>gloire (d'une chose),</i>	to value one's self upon a thing.	
<i>gras ou maigre,</i>	to eat flesh, or abstain from it.	
<i>honneur,</i>	to do honour.	
<i>deshonneur,</i>	to disgrace.	
<i>honte,</i>	to shame, disgrace (one).	
<i>horreur,</i>	to strike (one) with horror.	
<i>insulte,</i>	to abuse, insult.	
<i>injure,</i>	to do an injury, offend.	
<i>inventaire,</i>	to make an inventory.	
<i>impression,</i>	to make an impression.	
<i>justice,</i>	to do justice.	
<i>jour (se faire),</i>	to make way, break through.	
<i>marché,</i>	to make a bargain, an agree-	
<i>main basse,</i>	to put to the sword. [ment.	
<i>mine (de)</i>	to look as if, seem.	
<i>montre</i>	}	to make a parade, or show.
<i>parade,</i>		
<i>montre (à une armée),</i>	to review, pay off an army.	
<i>nauffrage,</i>	to be shipwrecked. [SULLY.	
<i>ombrage,</i>	to give umbrage.	
<i>pact,</i>	to make an alliance, compact.	
<i>part,</i>	to impart, communicate.	
<i>pari,</i>	}	to lay, or lay a wager.
<i>gageure,</i>		
<i>pitié,</i>	to move or raise pity, com-	
<i>peine,</i>	to make uneasy. passion.	
<i>plaisir,</i>	to do a pleasure.	
<i>peur,</i>	to affright,	
<i>partie,</i>	to make a party.	
<i>pénitence,</i>	to do penance, repent, atone for,	
<i>présent,</i>	to make a present, present with.	
<i>place,</i>	to make room.	
<i>provision,</i>	to provide or supply one's self	
<i>preuve,</i>	to prove. [with.	
<i>quartier,</i>	to give quarter.	
<i>raison,</i>	to pledge one, satisfy one.	
<i>réflexion,</i>	to reflect.	
<i>réparation,</i>	to make reparation.	
<i>ressort,</i>	to fly back again, after being	
<i>repaille,</i>	to feast, junket. [beat.	
<i>route,</i>	to sail, be bound to (a sea term).	
<i>satisfaction,</i>	to satisfy.	

Faire

2. *Faire* *semblant,* to pretend, feign, make as if one
 scrupule, to scruple. [were.
 sentinelle, to stand sentry.
 serment, to take an oath.
 signe, to make a sign, beckon to.
 tapage, to make a noise, racket, &c.
 tort, to wrong.
 trafic ou commerce, to traffic, deal, or trade.
 trêve, to forbear.
 trophée, to glory in a thing, pride one's
 usage, to use, make use of. [self in it.
 vie qui dure, to live within compass.
 bonne vie, }
 joyeuse vie, } to lead a merry life.
 voile, to set sail.
2. *Il fait* *jour,* it is day-light, or
 clair, — broad day.
 nuit, — night.
 sombre, — cloudy.
 obscur, — dark.
 chaud, — hot
 froid, — cold.
 beau, — fine.
 beau }
 mauvais } *tems,* — fine }
 vilain } — bad } weather,
 sale, }
 crotté, } dirty (weather.)
 brouillard, — foggy.
 vent, the wind blows, it is windy.
 soleil, the sun shines.
 clair de lune, it is moonlight, the moon shines.
3. *Filer* *doux,* to give fair words.
4. *Gagner* *pays,* to scamper away.
5. *Jeter* *feu & flammes,* to fret and fume.
6. *Lâcher* *prise,* to let go one's hold.
7. *Laisser* *parole,* to leave word,

<i>Lier</i>	<i>commerce,</i> <i>amitié,</i>	}	to engage in a familiar cor- respondence or friendship (with one).	1.
<i>Mettre</i>	<i>bas,</i> <i>fin,</i> <i>pié à terre,</i> <i>ordre à ses affaires,</i>		to bring forth. put an end. to alight. to settle one's affairs.	2.
<i>Obtenir</i>	<i>permission</i>		to obtain permission.	3.
<i>Parler</i>	<i>raison,</i> <i>sens commun,</i> <i>juste,</i> <i>vrai,</i> <i>François,</i> <i>Latin,</i> <i>Anglois, &c.</i>		to speak reason. —— common sense. —— right. —— true. —— French, —— Latin, —— English, &c.	4.
			} or plain, when spoken respectively, by different na- tions, of their own language.	
<i>Perdre</i>	<i>courage,</i> <i>patience,</i> <i>terre,</i> <i>fond,</i>		to be disheartened, to despond. to lose one's patience. to go out of one's depth. to drive from anchor.	5.
<i>Plier,</i>	<i>bagage,</i>		to pack off, bag and baggage.	6.
<i>Porter,</i>	<i>bonheur,</i> <i>malheur,</i> <i>guignon,</i> <i>compassion,</i> <i>coup,</i> <i>préjudice,</i> <i>envie,</i> <i>témoignage,</i> <i>honneur,</i> <i>respect,</i>		to bring, or cause good —— ill —— bad	7.
			} for- tune, or luck, to pity. to strike home. to be prejudicial, to prejudice. to envy. to bear witness. to honour. to respect.	
<i>Prendre</i>	<i>avantage,</i>		to take advantage (of).	8.

Prendre

conseil,

avis,

chair,

courage,

congé,

garde,

feu,

confiance,

connoissance,

couleur,

cours,

heure,

*exemple (sur }
quelqu'un,*

faveur,

fin,

gout,

jour,

haleine,

langue,

naissance,

médecine,

pitié,

part,

intérêt,

plaisir,

place,

patience,

possession,

pié,

racine,

peine,

séance,

sel,

soin,

terre,

prétexte,

parti,

to take (one's) advice.

to gather flesh.

to take courage, cheer up.

to take one's leave.

to take care or notice. (*To take care governs the subjunctive with me; to take notice, the indicative.*)

to take, to catch fire.

to confide.

to inform one's self of a thing.

to begin to be brown.

to take, to be in vogue.

to fix upon a time, day, hour.

to take pattern (by any one).

to get in favour.

to end.

to like.

to appoint a day, make an as-

to take breath. [*signation.*]

to get intelligence, find out.

to be born.

to take physic.

to take pity, compassion.

to take part, interest, concern (in any thing).

to take pleasure, delight in a

to take one's place. [*thing.*]

to take patience, bear, wait pa-

to enter into possession. [*tiently.*]

to take, get footing.

to take root, get a footing.

to take pains.

to take one's place (in); &c.

to take salt, to answer well for salting (spoken of meats).

to take care of, look to, or after

to land, get ashore. [*a thing.*]

to take a pretence.

to enlist as a soldier.

Prévoir

<i>Prêter</i>	<i>serment,</i>	to promise wonders.	
<i>Promettre</i>	<i>merveilles,</i>	to promise wonders.	
<i>Recevoir</i>	<i>ordre,</i>	to receive orders.	1.
<i>Rendre,</i>	<i>compte,</i>	to account for, give an ac- [count of.]	
	<i>gorge,</i>	to bring off the stomach, dis-	
	<i>gloire,</i>	to give glory.	[glory]
	<i>grace,</i>	to return thanks.	
	<i>hommage,</i>	to pay homage.	
	<i>justice,</i>	to do justice.	
	<i>raison,</i>	to give an account of.	
	<i>service,</i>	to do service.	
	<i>témoignage,</i>	to witness.	
	<i>visite,</i>	to pay a visit.	
<i>Savoir</i>	<i>gré,</i>	to take a thing kindly.	5.
<i>Tenir</i>	<i>bon,</i>	to stand firm, not to give over.	6.
	<i>compte (de quelque</i>	to keep an account of, allow	
	<i>chose à quelqu'un),</i>	one for any thing.	
	<i>lieu (de),</i>	to be in the place of.	
	<i>tête,</i>	to cope with one, oppose, resist.	
	<i>parole,</i>	to be as good as one's word.	
	<i>pié à boulev.</i>	to stand fair.	
	<i>table ouverte,</i>	to keep an open table.	
	<i>boutique,</i>	to keep a shop, be a shopkeeper.	
	<i>café,</i>	to keep a coffee-house.	
	<i>cabaret,</i>	to keep a tavern.	
<i>Tirer</i>	<i>avantage, ou</i>	to make an advantage of a thing.	7.
	<i>parti,</i>		
<i>Vivre</i>	<i>content,</i>	to live contentedly.	8.
<i>Vouloir</i>	<i>mal (à quelqu'un),</i>	to bear one a grudge.	9.

Some words are joined to *c'est* in like manner :

C'est fâcheux, dommage, honteux, &c.

It is *sad, pity, a shame, &c.*

to mention two, with respect to the French, as compared with the English.

In English, *I wish you would not do that*, where the *would* is joined to the latter verb; but in French we never say *J'aimerais que vous ne fassiez cela*, but, *Je ne souhaiterois que vous fassiez cela*, or, *Je ne veux pas que vous fassiez cela*.

In English we also say, *You ought not to have done that*, putting the infinitive in the past time, without changing the first verb: on the contrary, in French, the change of time is placed with the first verb, and the infinitive verb continues present:

Vous n'avez pas dû faire cela; You ought not to have done

elle l'a juré, quand elle en auroit dû révoquer l'engagement, si ses sens étoient faits pour régner sur elle; (ROUSSEAU's *Emile*.)

She has sworn it, when she ought to have revoked the engagement, if her senses were made to govern her.

F I N I S.